kaspersky

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

© 2026 AO Kaspersky Lab

Contents

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Help

About Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

- What's new
- Fixed issues
- Using Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal
- Distribution kit
- Hardware and software requirements
  - Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions
  - Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions
  - Compatibility of KUMA versions with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
  - Compatibility of XDR versions with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
  - Compatibility of KPSN versions with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
  - Compatibility of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with VK Cloud
- Limitations
  - Deploying Central Node as a cluster
  - Deploying an application on virtualization platforms
  - Sensor limitations
  - Sandbox limitations
  - Using the application in distributed solution and multitenancy mode
  - XDR compatibility limitations
  - Integration with a proxy server via ICAP

Data provision

- Service data of the application
- Data of the Central Node and Sensor components
  - Traffic data of the Sensor component
  - Data in detections
  - Data in reports
  - Storage item details
- Sandbox component data
- Data transmitted between application components
- Data contained in application trace files
- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows data
- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux data

Application licensing

- About the End User License Agreement
- About the License Certificate
- About the license
- About the license key
- About the key file
- About the activation code
- About the subscription
- Adding a license key

Replacing the license key
Removing a license key
Viewing information about the added license key in the web interface of the Central Node
Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement in the web interface of the Central Node
Viewing the text of the Privacy Policy in the web interface of the Central Node
Viewing information about the third-party code used in the application
Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement in the web interface of the Sandbox
Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement for the Endpoint Agent component
Application modes based on the license
Architecture of the application
Sensor component
Central Node component
Sandbox component
Endpoint Agent component
Operating principle of the application
Distributed solution and multitenancy
Distributed solution and multitenancy mode transition scenario
Modifications of application settings for the distributed solution and multitenancy mode
Assigning the PCN role to a server
Assigning the SCN role to a server
Processing SCN to PCN connection requests
Viewing information about tenants, PCN and SCN servers
Adding a tenant to the PCN server
Deleting a tenant from the PCN server
Renaming a tenant on the PCN server
Restoring the SCN to PCN connection
Disconnecting an SCN from PCN
Modifications of application settings for disconnecting an SCN from PCN
Sizing Guide
Common scenarios for deployment and installation of application components
Two-server deployment scenario
Three-server deployment scenario
Scenario of deployment on four or more servers
Sizing calculator
Calculations for the Sensor component
Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA functionality
Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA and NDR functionality
Calculations for the Central Node component when integration with external systems is configured
Calculations for the Central Node component when integrating with Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway
Calculations for the Central Node component when using ICAP functionality
Calculations for the Central Node component in the distributed solution and multitenancy mode
Calculations for the Central Node component deployed as a cluster
Calculations for small-scale configurations of the solution
Calculations for the Sandbox component
Preparing for installing application components
Preparing the IT infrastructure for installing application components
Preparing the IT infrastructure for integration with a mail server used for receiving messages via POP3

Preparing the IT infrastructure for integration with a mail server used for receiving messages via SMTP
Preparing the virtual machine in VMware ESXi for installing the Sandbox component
Preparing an installation disk image with the Central Node, Sensor, and Sandbox components
Installing and performing initial configuration of the application
Procedure for installing and configuring application components
Installing the Sandbox component
Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy
Step 2. Selecting a disk for installing the Sandbox component
Step 3. Configuring the minimum password length for the Sandbox administrator password
Step 4. Creating the Sandbox administrator account
Step 5. Configuring the management network interface
Step 6. Assigning a hostname and adding DNS server addresses
Step 7. Configuring a static network route
Deploying the Central Node component with Embedded Sensor as a cluster
Deploying a storage server
Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy
Step 2. Selecting a server role
Step 3. Selecting the deployment mode
Step 4. Selecting a disk for installing the component
Step 5. Selecting a network mask for server addressing
Step 6. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components
Step 7. Selecting the cluster network interface
Step 8. Selecting the external network interface
Step 9. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces
Step 10. Creating an administrator account and authenticating the server in the cluster
Creating the administrator account
Authenticating the server in the cluster
Step 11. Adding DNS server addresses
Step 12. Configuring time synchronization with an NTP server
Step 13. Selecting disks for the Ceph storage
Deploying the processing server
Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy
Step 2. Selecting a server role
Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component
Step 4. Selecting a network mask for cluster server addressing
Step 5. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components
Step 6. Selecting the cluster network interface
Step 7. Selecting the external network interface
Step 8. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces
Step 9. Authenticating the server in the cluster
Step 10. Selecting the localization language for the NDR functionality and configuring the receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports
Selecting the localization language for the NDR functionality
Configuring receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports
Purging hard drives on storage servers

- Installing the Central Node component with Embedded Sensor on a server
  - Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy
  - Step 2. Selecting a server role
  - Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component
  - Step 5. Selecting a network mask for server addressing
  - Step 5. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components
  - Step 6. Selecting the external network interface
  - Step 7. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces
  - Step 8. Creating the administrator account
  - Step 9. Selecting the localization language for the NDR functionality
  - Step 10. Adding DNS server addresses
  - Step 11. Configuring time synchronization with an NTP server
  - Step 12. Enabling the retrospective traffic analysis mode
- Installing the Sensor component on a standalone server
  - Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy
  - Step 2. Selecting a server role
  - Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component
  - Step 4. Selecting a network mask for server addressing
  - Step 5. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components
  - Step 6. Selecting the external network interface
  - Step 7. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces
  - Step 8. Creating the administrator account
  - Step 9. Adding DNS server addresses
  - Step 10. Configuring time synchronization with an NTP server
- Optimization of network interface settings for the Sensor component
- Connecting and configuring external storage for the Sensor component

Configuring the sizing settings of the application

Configuring firewall rules

- Ports used on computers with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components
- Ports used by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform services in a cluster configuration
- Ports used by services of a Central Node deployed as a server
- Ports used by services in a configuration with the Sensor component installed on a standalone server
- Ports for communication between network traffic analysis services
- Managing MTU settings in iptables

Configuring integration of the Endpoint Agent component with the NDR functional block

- Integration servers table
- Scenario for preparing to receive data from the Endpoint Agent component
- Adding an integration server
- Creating a communication data package for clients of an integration server
- Enabling or disabling an integration server
- Editing integration server settings
- Removing an integration server

Integration with mail sensors

Getting started with the application

- Getting started with the application web interface with an administrator account
- Getting started with the application web interface using an OSMP account

- Getting started with the application administrator menu
- Getting started with the application in Technical Support Mode

Managing accounts of application administrators and users

- Creating an administrator account for the application web interface
- Creating a user account for the application web interface
- Configuring user account table display
- Viewing the user account table
- Filtering user accounts
- Clearing the account filter
- Changing access permissions to PCN and SCN data for a user account
- Enabling or disabling a user account
- Changing the password of a user account
- Changing the password of your own user account
- Deleting a user account

Authentication using domain accounts

- Creating a keytab file
- Configuring integration with Active Directory
- Disabling integration with Active Directory

Authentication using OSMP accounts

- Configuring integration with OSMP
- Disabling integration with OSMP
- Updating the secret

Participation in Kaspersky Security Network and use of Kaspersky Private Security Network

- Viewing the KSN Statement and configuring participation in KSN
- Enabling the use of KPSN
- Configuring a connection to a local reputation database of KPSN
- Configuring information to be saved to a local reputation database of KPSN
- Declining participation in KSN and use of KPSN

Managing the Sandbox component through the web interface

- Updating the Sandbox component databases
  - Updating databases manually
  - Selecting a database update source
  - Updating component databases using Kaspersky Update Utility
  - Downloading update packages using Kaspersky Update Utility
  - Enabling and disabling a proxy server for database update
  - Configuring proxy server connection settings for database update
- Configuring connection between the Sandbox and Central Node components
- Processing connection requests from the Central Node servers and OSMP in the Sandbox web interface
- Configuring the Sandbox component network interfaces
  - Configuring DNS settings
  - Configuring settings of the management network interface
  - Configuring settings of a network interface used for Internet access of processed objects
  - Adding, changing and removing static network routes
- Sandbox authentication policies
  - Terminating inactive Sandbox sessions
  - Notifications about failed Sandbox authentication attempts
- Setting the Sandbox system date and time

- Making virtual machines ready for work
- Managing operating system and application images in the Sandbox Storage
  - Viewing the table of operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage
  - Uploading operating system and application images to Storage
  - Activating operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage
  - Deleting operating system and application images from Sandbox Storage
- Managing virtual machine templates
  - Creating a virtual machine template
  - Viewing the table of templates
  - Turning a template on or off
  - Edit template
  - Configuring the operating system and software
    - Mitigating Spectre and Meltdown vulnerabilities
    - Uninstalling Windows Defender
  - Exporting a template
  - Importing a template
  - Deleting a template
- Managing virtual machines
  - Creating a virtual machine
    - Creating a virtual machine in the Virtual machines section
    - Creating a virtual machine in the table of templates
    - Creating a virtual machine in the template view
    - Creating and installing a virtual machine using the command line
  - Viewing the table of preset virtual machines
  - Viewing the table of custom virtual machines
  - Installing a virtual machine
  - Deleting a virtual machine
  - Downloading debug symbols
- Recommendations for increasing the detection rate
  - Managing Microsoft Office settings
- Setting the maximum number of simultaneously running virtual machines
- Changing the number of license keys for a custom virtual machine
- Exporting Sandbox settings
- Importing Sandbox settings
- Restarting the Sandbox server
- Powering off the Sandbox server
- Changing the Sandbox administrator account password

Uploading your own certificate to the Sandbox server

For administrators: Getting started with the application web interface

- Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Interface
- Monitoring the performance of the application
  - About widgets and layouts
  - Selecting a tenant and a server to manage in the Dashboard section
  - Adding a widget to the current layout
  - Moving a widget in the current layout
  - Changing the display of information in NDR widgets
  - Removing a widget from the current layout

Saving a layout to PDF
Configuring the data display period in widgets
Monitoring the receipt and processing of incoming data
Monitoring the queues for data processing by application modules and components
Monitoring the processing of data by the Sandbox component
Viewing the working condition of modules and components of the application
Managing Central Node or Sensor server information
Viewing information about Central Node or Sensor servers
Viewing network interface information
Identifying the Ethernet port associated with a network interface
Managing Central Node, PCN, or SCN servers using the application web interface
Configuring the date and time on the server
Generating or uploading a TLS certificate of the server
Downloading the TLS certificate of the server
Setting the FQDN of the server
Configuring DNS settings
Configuring settings of the network interface
Configuring the default network route
Configuring proxy server connection settings
Configuring the mail server connection
Managing traffic saving settings
Managing the settings for saving traffic dump files
Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox
Managing the Sensor component
Connecting the Sensor component to the Central Node
Connecting the Sensor component using a communication data package
Adding and connecting the Sensor component automatically over the network
Removing the Sensor component
Editing the settings of a Sensor installed separately from Central Node
Preparing to edit the settings of a Sensor installed separately from Central Node
Managing the certificate of the Sensor server
Generating a TLS certificate for the Sensor server in the administrator menu of the Sensor server
Uploading your own TLS certificate in the administrator menu of the Sensor server
Downloading the TLS certificate of the Sensor server to your computer
Changing the server name
Managing monitoring points
Adding a monitoring point
Renaming a monitoring point
Enabling monitoring points
Disabling monitoring points
Deleting a monitoring point
Configuring the maximum size of a scanned file
Configuring HTTP packet body dumping
Configuring integration with a mail server via SMTP
Configuring integration with a proxy server via ICAP
Enabling and disabling integration with a proxy server via ICAP
Enabling or disabling real-time scanning of ICAP traffic

Configuring real-time scanning of ICAP traffic
Configuring the display of notification pages
Configuring recording of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports
Selecting network protocols for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports
Configuring the recording of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports
Configuring integration with a mail server via POP3
Authentication policies
Enforced password change after the first successful authentication
Enforced regular password change
Termination of inactive sessions
Notifications about failed authentication attempts
Managing the cluster
Viewing the table of servers of the cluster
Adding a server to a cluster
Increasing the disk space on the storage server
Restarting servers in a cluster
Decommissioning servers
Removing a server from a cluster
Starting up and shutting down the cluster
Notifications about the maximum allowed CPU and RAM load for the Central Node and Sensor servers
Configuring the maximum allowable CPU and RAM load of the Central Node and Sensor servers
Configuring an SNMP protocol connection
Description of MIB objects of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Configuring integration with the Sandbox component
Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component
Creating a request to connect to the server with the Sandbox component
Enabling and disabling a connection with the Sandbox component
Deleting a connection with the Sandbox component
Receiving files from computers with the Endpoint Agent component for scanning in Sandbox
Enabling and disabling the reception of files from the Endpoint Agent for scanning in Sandbox
Configuring integration with the Endpoint Agent component for scanning files in Sandbox
Configuring a trusted connection with Kaspersky Endpoint Security
Downloading the TLS certificate of the Central Node server
Generating a TLS certificate for the Central Node server in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate for the Central Node server using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Enabling the validation of the TLS certificate of the Endpoint Agent component in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Generating a TLS certificate of the Endpoint Agent component in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and downloading a crypto container
Uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate of the Endpoint Agent component using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Viewing the table of TLS certificates of the Endpoint Agent component in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Filtering and searching TLS certificates of the Endpoint Agent component in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Deleting TLS certificates of the Endpoint Agent component in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Configuring traffic redirection from the Endpoint Agent component to the Sensor server
Viewing information about computers with the Endpoint Agent component for scanning files in Sandbox
Selecting a tenant to manage in the Endpoint Agents section
Viewing the table of computers with the Endpoint Agent component on a standalone Central Node server
Viewing information about a computer
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by host name
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that have been isolated from the network
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by PCN and SCN server names
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by computer IP address
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by operating system version on the computer
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by component version
Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by their activity
Quickly creating a filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Resetting the filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component
Configuring activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component
Removing computers with the Endpoint Agent component
Manually removing computers with the Endpoint Agent component
Automatic removal of inactive computers with the Endpoint Agent component
Configuring integration with external systems
Viewing the table of external systems
Processing a request from an external system
Removing an external system from the list of those allowed to integrate
Configuring the priority for processing traffic from mail sensors
Configuring integration with Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response
Enabling the MDR integration
Sending additional data for analysis to MDR
Disabling the MDR integration
Replacing the MDR configuration file
Configuring integration with an SIEM system
Enabling and disabling information logging to a remote log
Configuring the main settings for SIEM system integration
Uploading a TLS certificate
Enabling and disabling TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system
Content and properties of syslog messages about detections
Managing connectors
Managed and unmanaged connectors
Sending events, application messages, and audit records to third-party systems
Automatic network access control for devices via Cisco Switch connectors
Adding a connector
Viewing the table of connectors
Enabling or disabling a connector
Editing connector settings
Creating a new communication data package for a connector
Deleting a connector

- Adding and deleting connector types
  - Viewing the table of connector types
  - Adding a connector type
  - Removing a connector type
- Integration with NGFW solutions
  - Adding a connector for integration with an NGFW solution
  - Viewing the table of connectors for integration with NGFW solutions
  - Enabling and disabling connectors for integration with NGFW solutions
  - Managing the settings of a connector for integration with NGFW solutions
  - Deleting connectors for integration with NGFW solutions
- Managing account credentials secrets for remote connections
  - Adding a secret
  - Viewing table of secrets
  - Protecting against compromise of secrets when connected to remote devices
  - Editing the settings of a secret
  - Deleting secrets
- Updating application databases
  - Selecting a database update source
  - Updating databases manually
  - Updating application databases using Kaspersky Update Utility
  - Downloading update packages using Kaspersky Update Utility
- Renewing the certificate for connecting to the Central Node using the API
- Creating a list of passwords for archives
- Integration with tools that unwrap encrypted SSL/TLS traffic
- Configuring the PCAP file storage
- Configuring storage for observables

For security officers: Getting started with the application web interface

- Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Interface
- Selecting a tenant to manage in the web interface of the application
- Monitoring the performance of the application
  - About widgets and layouts
  - Adding a widget to the current layout
  - Moving a widget in the current layout
  - Changing the display of information in NDR widgets
  - Removing a widget from the current layout
  - Saving a layout to PDF
  - Configuring the data display period in widgets
  - Configuring the widget display scale
  - Basics of managing "Alerts" type widgets
  - Information in the Devices widget
  - Information in the Events widget
  - Viewing the working condition of modules and components of the application
- Managing technologies
  - Enabling or disabling technologies
  - Configuring Device Activity Detection mode
  - Managing technology inheritance
- Viewing the alert table

Configuring the alert table display
Filtering, sorting, and searching alerts
Filtering alerts by VIP status
Filtering and searching alerts by time
Filtering alerts by level of importance
Filtering and searching alerts by categories of objects detected
Filtering and searching alerts by obtained information
Filtering and searching alerts by source address
Filtering and searching alerts by destination address
Filtering and searching alerts by server name
Filtering and searching alerts by technology name
Filtering and searching alerts by the status of their processing by the user
Filtering and searching alerts by the name of the user to which they are assigned
Sorting alerts in the table
Quickly creating an alert filter
Saving filters
Resetting the alert filter
Recommendations for processing alerts
Recommendations for processing AM alerts
Recommendations for processing SB alerts
Recommendations for processing YARA alerts
Recommendations for processing IDS alerts
Recommendations for processing NDR:IDS and AA alerts
Viewing alerts
Viewing alert details
General information about an alert of any type
Information in the Object information section
Information in the Alert details section
Information in the Information about scanning using NDR technologies section
Information in the Information about KSMG scan section
Information in the Scan results section
Information in the IDS rule section
Information in the URL section
Information in the IP addresses of detection-related devices section
Information in the Network event section
Sandbox scan results
Viewing the activity tree
Information in the Change log section
Sending alert data
Viewing alert relations
User actions performed on alerts
Assigning alerts to a specific user
Marking the completion of single alert processing
Marking the completion of alerts processing
Modifying the status of VIP alerts
Adding a comment to an alert

Monitoring network traffic events
NDR event scores and severity levels
NDR event registration technologies
NDR event statuses
Table of registered NDR events
Configuring the table of registered events
Viewing events nested inside an aggregate event
Viewing details of an NDR event
Changing the status of an NDR event
Adding markers
Copying NDR events to a text editor
Downloading traffic for events
Creating a directory for exporting events to a network share
Monitoring of observables
Viewing the table of observables
Viewing information about an observable
Filtering, sorting, and searching observables
Filtering observables
Sorting observables
Searching for items in the table of observables
Searching for alerts related to an observable
Monitoring of access to cloud services by employees of the organization
Enabling or disabling service discovery
Viewing the table of services
Enabling and disabling the monitoring of access to services
Managing assets
Viewing the table of devices
Viewing device information
Automatically adding and updating devices
Manually adding devices
Adding a device when working with the table of devices
Adding a device while managing the topology map
Adding a device based on an unknown device node on the network interaction map
Adding a device based on an unmanaged switch on the topology map
Automatically assigning device status
Automatically grouping devices based on a criterion
Automatically grouping devices based on a criterion, starting from the root of the group tree
Automatically grouping devices in a selected device group
Manually arranging devices into groups
Including a device in a group
Adding multiple devices to a group
Removing a device from a group
Removing multiple devices from groups
Moving servers with components and groups to other groups on the network interaction map
Device group tree

- Manually editing the device group tree
  - Adding a group
  - Renaming a group
  - Deleting groups
  - Moving a group
  - Searching for groups
  - Updating the tree
- Adding and removing device labels
  - Adding labels for one device
  - Adding labels to multiple devices
  - Removing labels from an individual device
  - Clearing the lists of labels for multiple devices
- Monitoring users on devices
- Monitoring file execution on devices
- Active device polling jobs
  - Adding active polling job
  - Editing an active polling job
  - Viewing the table of active polling jobs
  - Starting and stopping active polling jobs
  - Viewing general information about the active polling job runs
  - Viewing a report on the active polling job execution
  - Deleting active polling jobs
- Network isolation of devices
  - Viewing the table of network isolation rules
  - Creating network isolation rules
    - Creating a network isolation rule in the Threat response section
    - Creating a network isolation rule while viewing information about a network event
  - Viewing network isolation rule details
  - Disabling network isolation
  - Deleting network isolation rules

Configuring address spaces
- About address space rules
- About address space subnets
- Adding an address space
- Creating a subnet list for Asset Management
  - Adding a subnet
  - Editing subnet settings
  - Deleting subnets
- Viewing information about devices with IP addresses from the selected subnets
- Changing an address space
- Deleting an address space

Working with the network interaction map
- Nodes on the network interaction map
- Device groups on the network interaction map
- Links on the network interaction map
- Viewing object details
- Zooming the network interaction map

- Positioning the network map
- Pinning and unpinning nodes and groups
- Manually rearranging nodes and groups
- Automatically arranging nodes and groups
- Searching for nodes on the network interaction map
- Filtering objects on the network interaction map
  - Comprehensive filtering of nodes and links
    - Filtering using a period on the timeline
    - Filtering by registered events
  - Filtering nodes
    - Filtering nodes by device status
    - Filtering nodes by device security state
    - Filtering nodes by device category
    - Showing and hiding nodes linked to filtered nodes
  - Filtering links
    - Filtering links by severity score
    - Filtering links by communication protocol
    - Filtering links by OSI model layer
  - Resetting filtering criteria
- Saving and loading network interaction map display settings
  - Adding a new view and saving the current display settings of the network interaction map
  - Refreshing a view while keeping the current display settings of the network interaction map
  - Renaming a network interaction map view
  - Deleting a network interaction map view
  - Applying settings saved in the view to the network interaction map

Monitoring network sessions
- Network sessions table
- Viewing network session details
- Downloading network session traffic
- Downloading network session details
- Searching network packets
- Preconfigured network packet search rules
- Protocols detected by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Monitoring risks
- About risks of the Vulnerability category
- Implementation scenario for a continuous risk management process
- Viewing the risk table
- Viewing risk information
- Manually changing risk status
- Viewing risk information while managing the table of devices

Configuring NDR event types
- Viewing the table of event types
- Editing the settings of a system event type
- Configuring automatic saving of traffic for system event types
- Configuring the forwarding of events through connectors
- Common substitution variables in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
- NDR event registration technologies

System event types in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
System event types of the Intrusion Detection technology
System event types of the Asset Management technology
System event types of the External systems technology
System event types of the Endpoint Protection Platform technology
Configuring risk types
Viewing the table of risk types
Changing the base score for a risk type
Managing the settings for storing risks
Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox
Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component
Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox
Managing user-defined rules
Managing user-defined Intrusion Detection rules
Viewing the table of Intrusion Detection rules
Configuring the display of the Intrusion Detection rule table
Additional Intrusion Detection methods
Enabling and disabling sets of Intrusion Detection rules
Loading and replacing user-defined sets of Intrusion Detection rules
Removing user-defined sets of Intrusion Detection rules
Managing Network Anomaly Detection rules
Creating Network Anomaly Detection rule
Changing Network Anomaly Detection rule
Generating SQL query texts for Network Anomaly Detection rules
Viewing the table of Network Anomaly Detection rules:
Enabling and disabling network anomaly detection rules
Manually starting and stopping a Network Anomaly Detection rule
Viewing general information about triggers for network anomaly detection rules
Deleting Network Anomaly Detection rules
Managing dictionaries for Network Anomaly Detection rules
Adding a dictionary
Viewing a dictionary table
Editing dictionary settings
Deleting dictionaries
Managing user-defined YARA rules
Viewing the YARA rule table
Configuring YARA rule table display
Importing YARA rules
Viewing YARA rule details
Filtering and searching YARA rules
Clearing a YARA rule filter
Enabling and disabling YARA rules
Deleting YARA rules
Managing objects in Storage
Viewing the table of objects that were placed in Storage
Viewing information about an object manually placed in Storage using the web interface
Viewing information about an object placed in Storage by a get file task

Viewing information about an object placed in Storage by a get data task
Downloading objects from Storage
Uploading objects to Storage
Sending objects in Storage for scanning
Deleting objects from Storage
Filtering objects in Storage by object type
Filtering objects in Storage by object description
Filtering objects in Storage based on scan results
Filtering objects in Storage based on the name of Central Node, PCN, or SCN server
Filtering objects in Storage by object source
Filtering objects based on the time they were placed in Storage
Clearing a Storage objects filter
Managing reports
Managing common reports
Viewing the table of templates and reports
Creating a template
Creating a report based on a template
Viewing a report
Downloading a report to a local computer
Editing a template
Filtering templates by name
Filtering templates based on the name of the user that created the template
Filtering templates by creation time
Clearing a template filter
Deleting a template
Filtering reports by creation time
Filtering reports by name
Filtering reports by the name of the server with the Central Node component
Filtering reports based on the name of the user that created the report
Clearing a report filter
Deleting a report
Managing NDR reports
Viewing the table of NDR report templates
Viewing NDR report template details
Viewing the table of NDR reports
Manually generating an NDR report based on a template
Duplicating an NDR report template
Editing an NDR report template
Exporting an NDR report to a file
Deleting an NDR report template
Deleting an NDR report
Canceling NDR report generation
Managing the settings for storing report files
Managing rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts
Viewing the table of VIP status assignment rules
Creating a VIP status assignment rule
Deleting a VIP status assignment rule

- Modifying a VIP status assignment rule
- Importing a list of VIP status assignment rules
- Exporting the list of data excluded from the scan
- Filtering and searching by type of VIP status assignment rule
- Filtering and searching by value of VIP status assignment rule
- Filtering and searching by description of VIP status assignment rule
- Clearing a VIP status assignment rule filter

Managing allow rules for NDR events

- Viewing the table of allow rules
- Creating an allow rule with blank settings or settings from a template
- Creating an allow rule from a registered event
- Copying an allow rule
- Editing the settings of an allow rule
- Enabling or disabling allow rules
- Deleting allow rules

Managing the list of scan exclusions

- Viewing the table of data excluded from the scan
- Adding a scan exclusion rule
- Deleting a scan exclusion rule
- Editing a rule added to scan exclusions
- Exporting the list of data excluded from the scan
- Filtering rules in the scan exclusion list by criterion
- Searching for rules in the scan exclusion list by value
- Resetting the rule filter in the scan exclusion list

Managing Intrusion Detection rule exclusions

- Viewing the table of Intrusion Detection rules added to exclusions
- Adding an Intrusion Detection rule to exclusions
- Editing the description of an Intrusion Detection rule added to exclusions
- Removing Intrusion Detection rules from exclusions

Managing ICAP exclusions

- Viewing the ICAP exclusion table
- Adding a rule to ICAP exclusions
- Removing rules from ICAP exclusions
- Editing or disabling a rule in the ICAP exclusion list
- Filtering rules in the ICAP exclusion list by criterion
- Filtering rules in the ICAP exclusion list by value
- Filtering rules in the ICAP exclusion list by state
- Resetting rule filter conditions in the ICAP exclusion list

Managing exclusions from observables

- Viewing the table of exclusions for observables
- Adding an exclusion rule for observables
- Deleting an exclusion rule for observables
- Editing an exclusion rule for observables
- Importing a list of exclusions from observables
- Exporting the list of exclusions from observables
- Filtering rules in the list of exclusions from observables by criterion

Filtering rules in the list of exclusions from observables by value
Resetting the rule filter in the list of exclusions from observables
Managing mirrored traffic from SPAN ports
Retrospective traffic analysis
Scenarios for running retrospective analysis of traffic
Viewing the table of PCAP files
Viewing information about a PCAP file
Uploading a PCAP file manually
Deleting PCAP files
Enabling or disabling automatic traffic analysis
Starting traffic replay manually
Clearing traffic analysis results
Getting an authentication token for PCAP file upload automation
Creating a list of passwords for archives
Managing Central Node or Sensor server information
Viewing Central Node settings
Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component
Viewing the settings of the set of operating systems used for scanning objects in Sandbox
Viewing the table of external systems
Managing user-defined Sandbox rules
Viewing the table of user-defined Sandbox rules
Configuring the Sandbox rule table display
Filtering and searching Sandbox rules
Clearing a Sandbox rule filter
Viewing the information of a user-defined Sandbox rule
Creating a user-defined Sandbox rule for scanning files
Creating a user-defined Sandbox rule for URL scanning
Copying a user-defined Sandbox rule
Importing user-defined Sandbox rules for file scanning
Editing a user-defined Sandbox rule
Enabling or disabling user-defined Sandbox rules
Exporting user-defined Sandbox rules for file scanning
Deleting user-defined Sandbox rules
List of extensions for file categories
Preparing data for GosSOPKA
Running the utility for preparing data for GosSOPKA
Sending notifications
Viewing the table of rules for sending notifications
Creating a rule for sending notifications about detections
Creating a rule for sending notifications about the operation of application components
Enabling and disabling a rule for sending notifications
Modifying a rule for sending notifications
Deleting a rule for sending notifications
Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules by rule type
Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules based on the notification subject
Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules by email address

Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules based on their state
Clearing a notification forwarding rule filter
Managing logs
Managing the application user activity log
Enabling and disabling the recording of information in the activity log
Downloading the activity log file
Records in the application user activity log
Sensor user activity log.
Records of user actions in the administrator menu of the Sensor component
Sandbox logs
Downloading the Sandbox system log
Downloading the Sandbox user activity log
Records in the application user activity log
Managing the NDR user activity log
Managing log storage settings
Enabling and disabling user activity audit
Viewing user activity audit records
Downloading user activity audit logs
Setting the maximum storage space limit for trace logs
Setting the maximum storage space limit for trace logs
Downloading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform logs
Viewing application messages
Downloading user activity audit logs
Configuring the retention period of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform system logs and alerts
Viewing information about files that have been sent for scanning to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Backing up and restoring data
Backing up and restoring the data of the Central Node server
Backing up and restoring the data of the Central Node server deployed as a cluster
Backing up and restoring the data of the Central Node server in distributed solution and multitenancy mode
Contents of exported data
Restoring the Embedded Sensor after restoring the application from a backup copy
Upgrading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Upgrading Central Node installed on a server
Upgrading Central Node installed as a cluster
Upgrading Central Node from version 8.0 to version 8.0.1
Restoring the Embedded Sensor after the upgrade in distributed solution and multitenancy mode
Upgrading Sensor installed on a standalone server
Restoring data on external storage connected to the Sensor component
Contents and amount of information kept when upgrading the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Managing application components in the administrator menu
Central Node administrator menu
Sensor administrator menu
Sandbox administrator menu

Using the KATA API
Integrating an external system with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
API for scanning objects of external systems
Request to scan objects
Request for scan results
Request to delete scan results
Request to display object scan restrictions
API that external systems can use to receive information about application alerts
Request for alert information
Scope of transmitted data
Data on detected objects
Data on detected threats
Data on the environment of detected objects
Using NDR API
Ensuring security when using Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API
Creating and using connectors for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API
Sources of information about the application
Contacting the Technical Support Service
How to obtain Technical Support
Technical Support via Kaspersky CompanyAccount
Glossary
Advanced persistent threat (APT)
Alert
Alternate data stream
Anti-Malware Engine
Backdoor program
Central Node
Communication channel bandwidth
CSRF attack
Detection
Distributed solution
Dump
End User License Agreement
Endpoint Agent component
ICAP client
ICAP data
Intrusion Detection System
IOA
Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
Kaspersky Private Security Network
Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway
Kaspersky Security Network (KSN)
Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal
KATA
Kerberos authentication
Keytab file
Local reputation database of KPSN

Malicious web addresses
MIB (Management Information Base)
Mirrored traffic
MITM attack
MITRE technique
Multitenancy
New generation threats
NTP server
Observables
OpenIOC
Phishing URL addresses
Sandbox
Sensor
Service principal name (SPN)
SIEM system
Signature
SPAN
Syslog
Targeted attack
Tenant
TLS encryption
Tracing
VIP status
YARA
YARA rules
Zero-day attack
Zero-day vulnerability
Information about third-party code
Trademark notices

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Help

New functions

- What's new in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Hardware and software requirements

- Hardware and software requirements
- Compatibility of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows and Linux

Licensing

- Licensing the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Getting started

- Distributed solution and multitenancy
- Sizing the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
- Installation and initial configuration of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
- Configuring the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component

Getting started in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface

- Getting started with the application web interface — For administrators
- Getting started with the application web interface — For security officers

Additional features

- Managing the Sandbox component through the web interface
- Interaction with external systems via API

Update

- Updating the previous version of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Contacting the Technical Support Service

- How to obtain Technical Support

About Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform (hereinafter also referred to as "the application") is a solution designed for the protection of a corporate IT infrastructure and timely detection of threats such as *zero-day attacks*, *targeted attacks*, and complex targeted attacks known as *advanced persistent threats* (hereinafter also referred to as "*APT*"). The solution is developed for corporate users.

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform solution includes two functional units:

- Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack (hereinafter also referred to as "KATA"), which provides perimeter security for the corporate IT infrastructure.
- Network Detection and Response (hereinafter also referred to as "NDR"), which provides protection for the internal network of the organization.

The solution can receive and process data in the following ways:

- Integrate into the local area network, receive and process mirrored *SPAN, ERSPAN and RSPAN traffic*, and extract objects and metadata from the HTTP, HTTP2, FTP, SMTP, DNS, SMB, and NFS protocols.
- Connect to the proxy server via the ICAP protocol, receive and process data of HTTP, HTTP2, and FTP traffic, as well as HTTPS traffic if the administrator has configured SSL certificate replacement on the proxy server.
- Connect to the mail server via the POP3 (S) and SMTP protocols, receive and process copies of e-mail messages.
- Integrate with Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway and Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server, receive, and process copies of email messages.
- Receive and process copies of network traffic obtained from a remote location using the Kaspersky SD-WAN application. This functionality improves the flexibility of detecting and monitoring network activity, allowing you to analyze traffic from different points on the network and take appropriate action to ensure network security.

  You can find detailed information on Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway, Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server, and Kaspersky SD-WAN in the documentation of the respective applications.
- Integrate with external systems using a REST API to scan files present in such systems.

The solution uses Threat Intelligence Tools:

- Infrastructure of Kaspersky Security Network (also referred to as "KSN") cloud services that provides access to the online Knowledge Base of Kaspersky, which contains information about the reputation of files, web resources, and software. The use of data from Kaspersky Security Network ensures faster responses by Kaspersky applications to threats, improves the performance of some protection components, and reduces the likelihood of false alarms.
- Integration with Kaspersky Private Security Network (KPSN) to access the reputation databases of Kaspersky Security Network and other statistical data without sending data from user computers to Kaspersky Security Network.
- Integration with the Kaspersky information system known as Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal, which contains information about the reputation of files and URLs.

The solution can provide the results of its operation and Threat Intelligence to the user in the following ways:

- Display the results of work done in the web interface of the Central Node, Primary Central Node (hereinafter also PCN) or Secondary Central Node (hereinafter also SCN) servers.
- Publish alerts to a SIEM system already being used in your organization via the Syslog protocol.
- Integrate with external systems via the REST API and send information on alerts generated by the solution to external systems on demand.
- Publish information on Sandbox component alerts in the local reputation database of Kaspersky Private Security Network.

Users with the **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** role can perform the following actions in the application:

- Monitor the components of the solution.
- View the table of detected signs of targeted attacks and intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure, filter and search alerts, view and manage each alert, and follow recommendations for evaluating and investigating incidents.
- Manage user-defined YARA, Sandbox, and Intrusion Detection rules: upload rules that the application uses to check for events and create alerts.
- Manage Network Anomaly Detection rules.
- Block devices by IP address using the Check Point NGFW and UserGate NGFW solutions.
- Manage copies of objects in Storage.
- Manage reports about application performance and alerts.
- Configure the sending of notifications about alerts and problems encountered by the application to email addresses of users.
- Manage the list of VIP alerts and the list of data excluded from the scan, and populate the local reputation database of KPSN.
- Store and download copies of raw network traffic for analysis in external systems.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can perform the following actions in the application:

- Monitor the components of the solution.
- View the table of detected signs of targeted attacks and intrusions into the enterprise IT infrastructure, filter and search alerts, and view the data of each alert.
- View the list of computers with the Endpoint Agent component that support automatic file exchange with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- View user-defined YARA rules, Sandbox rules, and Intrusion Detection rules.
- View Network Anomaly Detection rules.
- View network isolation rules applied through the Check Point NGFW and UserGate NGFW solutions.

- View reports about application performance and alerts.
- View the list of VIP alerts and the list of data excluded from the scan.
- View all settings made in the application web interface.
- Store and download copies of raw network traffic for analysis in external systems.

Users with the **Administrator** role can perform the following actions in the application:

- Edit application settings.
- Configure servers for the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- Set up the integration of the application with other applications and systems.
- Manage TLS certificates and set up trusted connections between the Central Node server and the Sandbox server, between Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform servers and the Endpoint Agent component, and with external systems.
- Manage accounts of application users.
- Configure automatic file exchange with applications acting as an Endpoint Agent component for subsequent scanning of the files in Sandbox.
- Monitor application health.

What's new

Changes in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform 8.0.1

Third-party components are updated in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform 8.0.1.

Changes in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform 8.0

The following changes have been introduced in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform 8.0:

- Support has been added for user authentication in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface using Open Single Management Platform accounts
- User accounts can now be deleted in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- Integration with Check Point NGFW and UserGate NGFW is now supported, with the ability to create blocking rules for malicious hosts on these platforms.
- The implementation of Cloud Access Security Broker (CASB)-based monitoring provides control over user access to prohibited cloud services and enables real-time alerts for attempts to use shadow IT resources.

- A Network Anomaly Detection capability has been added to identify sophisticated attacks and indicators of compromise that signature-based security tools miss. By analyzing network sessions, traffic volumes, and data transfer context, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform detects abnormally large volumes of traffic over DNS, ICMP, TCP, UDP, RDP, and SSH, including overnight and on weekends. These deviations are indicative of covert data exfiltration, DNS and ICMP tunneling, network policy bypassing, and unauthorized remote access.

  In addition, the platform detects suspicious connections and network segmentation violations. These include the use of non-standard ports and protocols, RDP and SSH connections to external addresses, firewall configuration errors, and attempts to bypass access control restrictions. Special focus is placed on attacks targeting domain infrastructure and user accounts, such as DCSync, DCShadow, Kerberos-based attacks, and brute-force attempts, as well as internal reconnaissance activity, including Active Directory, LDAP, and Kerberos enumeration, port scanning, and DNS zone transfers.

  This capability also enables detection of connections to suspicious external resources and attacker command-and-control servers, including DGA domains, DNS TXT tunneling, and tunneling and file-sharing services, allowing early identification of compromised hosts and insider activity. All detected anomalies are displayed in the context of network sessions and are enriched with attributes for rapid analysis and investigation.

  Flexible configuration of thresholds, object lists, and attributes allows detection logic to be adapted to a specific infrastructure without vendor support. This increases the effectiveness of the security monitoring center and reduces the time required to detect complex attacks.

- The traffic copy analysis functionality has been expanded. It is now possible to view a list of verified URLs and files, as well as filter and search for objects in the list. All observed objects are automatically extracted from the mirrored network traffic to ensure maximum transparency and control.

- Alert data has been expanded:

  - Alerts generated during object inspection by Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway now include information on the actions performed on the objects.

  - Visualization of the activity tree in alerts generated by the Sandbox component has been improved.

  - The following new alert types have been added:

    - CASB-based alerts triggered by access to prohibited cloud services;

    - Network Anomaly Detection alerts triggered by detected network anomalies.

- A new deployment mode has been added that enables retrospective analysis of previously recorded network traffic in automatic or manual mode.

- Additional alert data from Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can now be transferred to Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response upon request by the MDR solution administrator.

- Support has been added for the automatic ingestion and dynamic analysis of files received from Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux in the Sandbox component.

- The KEDR functional block is no longer included in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. It is now available as the standalone solution Kaspersky EDR Expert.

- The number of Endpoint Agent components that can connect to a single Central Node has increased to 15,000.

- Support has been added for Sandbox analysis of encrypted archives received from Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway.

- Support has been added for detecting insecure transmission of credentials (username and password) in unencrypted traffic. When this type of transmission is detected, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform generates an IDS event and a corresponding alert.

- Support has been added for automatic detection of personal and unmanaged (BYOD) devices on the network without the use of third-party systems or manual analysis. The feature facilitates rapid identification of BYOD-related threats that bypass corporate policies, helping prevent data leaks, infections, and compliance violations. When BYOD devices are detected, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform generates an EXT event and assigns the risk *Unauthorized access (violation of the BYOD usage policy)*.

Changes in Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.11 for Windows

You can view the list of changes in Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.11 for Windows in the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows Online Help.

Changes in Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.5.0 for Linux

You can view the list of changes in Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.5.0 for Linux in the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux Online Help.

Fixed issues

The following table contains information about issues discovered in the current version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and fixed by updates.

Issues discovered in the current version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and fixed by updates

Update release date	Number of the update revision	Application version in which the issue first appeared	Issue description
04/30/2026	8.0.1	8.0	[9643875, 9431457] Third-party components updated.

Using Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal

For additional information about files that you consider to be suspicious, you can go to the website of the Kaspersky application Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal, which analyzes each file for malicious code and shows information about the reputation of the file.

Access to the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence application is provided on a commercial basis. Authorization on the application website requires that an application access certificate is installed in the certificate storage on your computer. In addition, you must have a user name and password for access to the application.

For more details about the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal, please visit the Kaspersky website.

Distribution kit

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform distribution kit includes the following files:

1. Disk image (file with the ISO extension) containing the installation files for the Ubuntu® Server 22.04 operating system and for the Sensor, Central Node, Sandbox components.
2. Archive (.tar.gz file) of the Sensor, Central Node components for creating an iso image based on Astra Linux Special Edition 1.8.2.
3. Archive (.tar.gz file) of the Sandbox component for creating an iso image based on Astra Linux Special Edition 1.8.2.
4. Disk images (.iso files) of operating systems in which the Sandbox component runs files.
5. Utility (.tar file) for creating an iso image based on Astra Linux Special Edition 1.8.2.
6. Utility for preparing data for GosSOPKA (gossopka_alert_exporter.tar.gz).
7. Update package for the Central Node and Sensor components based on the Ubuntu operating system.
8. Update package for the Central Node and Sensor components based on the Astra Linux operating system.
9. File with information about third-party code used in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Hardware and software requirements

Software requirements for installing the Central Node on a server

When installing the application based on the Astra Linux operating system, in the settings of the UEFI or BIOS software, you need to enable CPU performance management at the operating system level (this allows the application to automatically set the maximum performance mode for the CPU during installation or after a server restart).

Software requirements for virtual platforms for installing Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can deploy the application components on the following virtual platforms:

- Central Node and Sensor:
  - VMware ESXi™ 6.7.0 or 7.0
  - KVM
  - "Brest" 3.3 virtualization software
  - "RED Virtualization" 7.3
  - zVirt Node 4.2
- Sandbox:
  - VMware ESXi™ 6.7.0 or 7.0
  - "Brest" 3.3 virtualization software
  - "RED Virtualization" 7.3
  - zVirt Node 4.2

To deploy the application on a VMware ESXI virtual platform, you must install the current update package for the hypervisor.

If you want to deploy the application on the Astra Linux operating system in a VMware ESXI hypervisor, you need to ensure that the server hardware you are using is compatible with the Astra Linux operating system. For a full list of supported server hardware, please refer to the Astra Linux developer website.

For the Central Node, Sensor and Sandbox hardware requirements see the Sizing Guide.

Limitations may apply when deploying the application on virtual platforms. We recommend understanding these before installing the application.

Hardware and software requirements for installing the Endpoint Agent component

The hardware and software requirements of the Endpoint Agent component reflect the hardware and software requirements of the applications that act as the Endpoint Agent component, and are described in the documentation of these applications:

- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows.
- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

Hardware and software requirements for using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

One of the following browsers must be installed on the computers in order to configure and manage the application using the web interface:

- Mozilla™ Firefox™ for Linux.
- Mozilla Firefox for Windows.
- Google™ Chrome™ for Windows.
- Google Chrome for Linux.
- Edge (Windows).
- Safari (Mac).

Minimum screen resolution to use web interface: 1366x768.

Proxy server software requirements when configuring integration over ICAP

When configuring proxy server integration over ICAP, we recommend using the following applications as the proxy server:

- Squid version 6 or later
- User Gate 7.2
- CheckPoint R81.20 T634

Advanced protection of Central Node and Sensor servers

You can install the Kaspersky Next Endpoint Security for Linux application on the Central Node and Sensor servers to ensure advanced protection for these servers. For detailed information about installing and configuring the application, refer to the Kaspersky Next Endpoint Security for Linux Help.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

You can use Kaspersky Endpoint Security as the Endpoint Agent component.

To integrate with the NDR functional block as the Endpoint Agent, you need to use Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.7, 12.8, 12.9, 12.10, or 12.11.

If you want to configure receiving files from Endpoint Agent for subsequent scanning in Sandbox, you can use any version of Kaspersky Endpoint Security compatible with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. Information about the compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

Kaspersky Endpoint Security version	Compatibility with KATA 4.0	Compatibility with KATA 4.1	Compatibility with KATA 5.0	Compatibility with KATA 5.1	Compatibility with KATA 6.0	Compatibility with KATA 6.1	Compatibility with KATA 7.0	Compatibility with KATA 7.1	C
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1, 12.2	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	There are limitations	There are limitations	N
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.3, 12.4	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	There are limitations	There are limitations	N
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.5, 12.6	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	There are limitations	There are limitations	N
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.7	No	No	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	Yes	There are limitations	Y
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.8, 12.9	No	No	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	Yes	Y
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.10, 12.11	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Y

For more information about compatibility limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Security versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions, refer to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Help for the corresponding version.

Starting from version 12.8, Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows can be used as the Light Agent for Windows component for the Kaspersky Security for Virtualization application. For more details about the integration, see Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent Help.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

You can use Kaspersky Endpoint Security as the Endpoint Agent component.

To integrate with the NDR functional block as the Endpoint Agent, you need to use Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.2, 12.3, or 12.4.

If you want to configure receiving files from Endpoint Agent for subsequent scanning in Sandbox, you can use any version of Kaspersky Endpoint Security compatible with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. Information about the compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions

Kaspersky Endpoint Security version	Compatibility with KATA 4.0	Compatibility with KATA 4.1	Compatibility with KATA 5.0	Compatibility with KATA 5.1	Compatibility with KATA 6.0	Compatibility with KATA 6.1	Compatibility with KATA 7.0	Compatibility with KATA 7.1	
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 11.4	No	No	No	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12	No	No	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.1	No	No	No	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	
Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.2, 12.3, 12.4	No	No	No	No	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	There are limitations	

For more information about compatibility limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Security versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions, refer to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Help for the corresponding version.

Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, starting from version 12, can be used as the Light Agent for Linux component for Kaspersky Security for Virtualization. When using Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux as the Light Agent for Linux component, Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux remains integrated with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

For more information about the integration, refer to the Kaspersky Security for Virtualization Light Agent Help.

Compatibility of KUMA versions with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can use KUMA as a SIEM system.

Information about the compatibility of KUMA versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of KUMA versions with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

KUMA version	Compatibility with KATA 4.1	Compatibility with KATA 5.0	Compatibility with KATA 5.1	Compatibility with KATA 6.0	Compatibility with KATA 6.1	Compatibility with KATA 7.0	Compatibility with KATA 7.1	Compatibility with KATA 8.0
KUMA 2.0	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No
KUMA 2.1	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No
KUMA 3.0.2	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
KUMA 3.0.3	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
KUMA 3.2	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
KUMA 3.3	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	No	No
KUMA 3.4	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
KUMA 4.1	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes
KUMA 4.2	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes

Compatibility of XDR versions with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can use XDR as a SIEM system.

Information about the compatibility of XDR versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of XDR versions with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

XDR version	Compatibility with KATA 4.1	Compatibility with KATA 5.0	Compatibility with KATA 5.1	Compatibility with KATA 6.0	Compatibility with KATA 6.1	Compatibility with KATA 7.0	Compatibility with KATA 7.1	Compatibility with KATA 8.0
XDR 1.0	No	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
XDR 1.1	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
XDR 1.2	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	No	No
XDR 1.3	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	There are limitations	There are limitations
XDR 1.4	No	No	No	No	No	No	There are limitations	There are limitations
XDR 1.5	No	No	No	No	No	No	There are limitations	There are limitations
XDR 2.0	No	No	No	No	No	No	There are limitations	There are limitations

Compatibility of KPSN versions with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can use Kaspersky Private Security Network (KPSN) instead of Kaspersky Security Network (KSN) to avoid sending your organization's data beyond the corporate LAN.

Information about the compatibility of KPSN versions with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform versions is listed in the table below.

Compatibility of KPSN versions with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

KPSN version	Compatibility with KATA 4.1	Compatibility with KATA 5.0	Compatibility with KATA 5.1	Compatibility with KATA 6.0	Compatibility with KATA 6.1	Compatibility with KATA 7.0	Compatibility with KATA 7.1	Compatibility with KATA 8.0
KPSN 3.3	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
KPSN 3.4	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
KPSN 3.5	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
KPSN 4.0	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Compatibility of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with VK Cloud

You can deploy Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on virtual machines created in the VK Cloud public cloud in the following configuration: one Central Node component (in the single role), to which one or more KSMG mail sensors and several Sandboxes are connected.

The following restrictions apply when deploying Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on virtual machines created in the VK Cloud public cloud:

- Central Node must be installed on the server in the single role.
- Only the certified version of the application based on Astra Linux is supported.
- Installation of a KATA or KATA+NDR license key is supported.
- Only scenarios related to receiving and processing messages from KSMG installed outside VK Cloud are supported. Other scenarios are not supported.

For the Sandbox component to work, the following requirements must be met:

- Nested virtualization must be enabled for the virtual machine.
- The network interface settings must be correctly configured to provide Internet access to objects being processed.

  Windows images can only be activated if the network interface with internet access is configured correctly.

- The network interface used for Internet access of processed objects must be isolated from the local network of your organization.
- The network interface used by processed objects for Internet access must be connected to a subnet that is not the same as the subnet to which the control interface is connected.
- We recommend using external firewall rules to restrict incoming connections on the network interface use for internet access of processed objects.

Limitations

Known limitations of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform 8.0.1 has the following known limitations:

- In a file alert created based on the results of scanning a copy of web traffic, the **User name** field is empty if the user is authenticated on the proxy server with basic authentication.
- If the date on the Central Node server is over 30 days behind the current date, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform cannot work. We recommend making sure that the current date is set on the server on which you want to install the application component.
- The value of payload size per packet (maximum transmission unit, MTU) for the link between the Central Node and Sensor servers, as well as the PCN and SCN, is 1500 by default. If you know that your ISP limits the MTU on the links between the solution components, you need to configure the MTU so that its size does not exceed the value allowed by your ISP.
- When checking the reputation of a file in Kaspersky Security Network, information about the vendor of the trusted signature is not recorded in the log.
- Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform correctly processes ERSPAN traffic received through the virtual interface at a rate of up to 2 Gbps. A higher rate of ERSPAN traffic results in data loss.
- Using a name identical to the name of a previously deleted user account when creating a user account on a PCN or SCN can lead to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform errors. We strongly recommend assigning unique names to new user accounts that do not match the names any deleted accounts.

- Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform processes network events and creates corresponding IDS alerts without a delay at up to 1,000,000 alerts per day. If this threshold is exceeded, the application generates alerts with a delay: it takes 1 hour to catch up with a lag of 100,000 alerts.

- For the connection between Central Node, Sensor, PCN and SCN to work correctly, servers with the installed components must be placed in the same subnet. Network Address Translation (NAT) is not supported. This limitation does not apply to Endpoint Agent components, which can be located in a subnet separate from the Central Node subnet.

Limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.11 for Windows

You can view the list of limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.11 for Windows in the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows Online Help.

Limitations of Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.5.0 for Linux

You can view the list of limitations in Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.5.0 for Linux in the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux Online Help.

Deploying Central Node as a cluster

When deploying the Central Node component as a cluster, the following limitations apply:

1. A cluster must include at least 4 servers: 2 storage servers and 2 processing servers. You can scale the cluster to increase the amount of traffic handled or the number of connected computers in accordance with the Sizing Guide.

2. The cluster is high-availability, but not high-performance. Adding more worker servers to the cluster than recommended in the sizing guide does not infinitely increase the amount of telemetry that can be received or of traffic that can be processed.

3. If some of the servers in the cluster fail, the functionality of the cluster can be restored only if at least two servers that have the manager role in the Docker swarm are in working order.

4. We recommend adding servers with the same hardware configuration to the cluster. Otherwise, a proportional increase in performance is not guaranteed.

5. Adding an extra server to the cluster does not speed up the processing of objects that are already in the scan queue.

6. The web interface of the application can be temporarily unavailable if the server on which it is hosted fails.

7. If the processing server fails, you may lose ICAP, POP3, and SMTP traffic data as well as the copies of emails that are waiting to be processed and the detections associated with them.

8. If the processing server is configured to receive mirrored traffic from SPAN ports, then SPAN traffic is not processed if this server fails.

9. The Sensor component can only be connected to a processing server in the cluster. This server must be **configured to receive mirrored traffic from SPAN ports**.

   You can enable the receipt of mirrored traffic when installing the component. If you disabled the receipt of traffic at the installation stage:

   To turn on receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

   1. If Central Node is installed on the server, enter the management console of the relevant server using SSH or a terminal.

   2. If Central Node is deployed as a cluster, log in to the management console of any worker server in the cluster using SSH or a terminal.

   3. Run the following command:

      ```
      kata-enable-span
      ```

   The receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports is enabled.

10. When installing Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform as a cluster or when updating a cluster configuration, it may happen that the Embedded Sensor does not start.

    In this case, we recommend doing the following:

    - If the Sensor is not connected, you must remove it in the web interface of the application, then in Technical Support Mode, execute the **sequence of commands to start the Sensor**.

      1. `kata-sensor-tool reset`

      2. `kata-sensor-tool reset-core`

      3. `kata-sensor-tool init-embedded-sensor`

    - If the Sensor is not running, you need to execute a sequence of commands in Technical Support Mode to **start the Sensor**.

      1. `kata-sensor-tool reset`

      2. `kata-sensor-tool reset-core`

      3. `kata-sensor-tool init-embedded-sensor`

    After some time, the Sensor appears in the web interface.

11. Installation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform as a cluster is not supported on zVirt Node, "RED Virtualization", KVM, VMware ESXi virtual platforms.

Deploying an application on virtualization platforms

zVirt Node, "RED Virtualization", KVM, VMware ESXi

High-availability deployment of the application (a Central Node cluster) is not supported on zVirt Node, "RED Virtualization", KVM, or VMware ESXi virtual platforms.

"Brest", zVirt Node, "RED Virtualization"

If you want to use the Sandbox component on the "Brest" virtual platform, zVirt Node, or "RED Virtualization", you must additionally configure the time for scanning objects using the component to increase the probability of detection. To configure it, please contact Technical Support.

Nutanix

If you are using a Nutanix cluster and intend to use Central Node in a cluster configuration on this platform, all servers of the Central Node cluster must be deployed on the same host of the Nutanix cluster. This is necessary for correct routing of packets through the internal virtual switch.

Sensor limitations

The Sensor component has the following limitations:

1. Only Sensor components installed on standalone servers can be used to capture network traffic at the maximum speed of 10 Gbps.

2. Capturing FTP traffic at the maximum speed of 10 Gbps can result in a high level of loss.

3. Real-time ICAP traffic scanning on standalone servers with the Sensor component can only be configured in Technical Support Mode.

Sandbox limitations

The Sandbox component has the following limitations:

1. The following versions of operating systems are supported for custom images:
   - Windows 7
   - Windows 8.1 64-bit
   - Windows 10 64-bit (up to version 1909)
2. The following localizations are fully supported for custom operating system images: Russian, English, Chinese (simplified), Arabic, Spanish (Mexico).
3. License keys for activating the operating systems and software are not provided.
4. If some of the operating systems selected in the set of operating systems on the Central Node server are not installed on the Sandbox server, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not send objects to the Sandbox component for scanning. If multiple servers with the Sandbox component are connected to the server with the Central Node component, the application sends objects to those servers whose installed operating systems match the set selected on the Central Node.

Using the application in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

When the application is used in distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the following limitations apply:

1. On a PCN server, the **Assets** → **Devices** tab displays only hosts that are connected to that PCN server.
2. User account passwords can be changed only on the PCN server.
3. Disconnecting an SCN from a PCN is irreversible Subsequent connection of the SCN to any PCN server is not supported.

XDR compatibility limitations

Limited compatibility of XDR versions with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

The scope of data transmitted by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform 8.0 when integrated with XDR 1.3, XDR 1.4, XDR 1.5, and XDR 2.0 is limited: asset data is not transmitted.

Integration with a proxy server via ICAP

When integrating with a proxy server via ICAP, the following limitations apply:

1. It is not possible to configure ICAP integration with the SQUID service version 5.9 or lower.

2. The number of simultaneous connections to the application through the proxy server may not exceed 20,000. The recommended value is 1000.

Data provision

The operation of certain components of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform requires data processing on the Kaspersky side. Components do not send data without the consent of the administrator of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

You can view the list of data and the terms on which it is used as well as give consent to data processing in the following agreements between your organization and Kaspersky:

- In the End User License Agreement (for example, during installation of the application).

  According to the terms of the End User License Agreement, you agree to automatically send Kaspersky the information listed in the End User License Agreement under Data Provision. The End User License Agreement is included in the application distribution kit.

- In the KSN Statement (for example, during installation of the application or in the administrator menu after installation).

  When you participate in Kaspersky Security Network, information obtained as a result of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform operation is automatically sent to Kaspersky. The list of transmitted data is specified in the KSN Statement. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user independently decides on his/her participation in KSN. The KSN Statement is included in the application distribution kit.

  Before KSN statistics are sent to Kaspersky, they are accumulated in the cache on servers hosting Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components.

Kaspersky protects any information received in this way as prescribed by law and applicable rules of Kaspersky. Data is sent over encrypted communication channels.

When using Kaspersky Private Security Network, Kaspersky is not sent information about the operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. However, KSN statistical data is accumulated in the cache on servers hosting Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components to the same extent as when using Kaspersky Security Network. This accumulated KSN statistical data may be transmitted beyond the perimeter of your organization if a server with the Kaspersky Private Security Network application is located outside of your organization.

The Kaspersky Private Security Network administrator must personally ensure the security of such data.

Service data of the application

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform resources provide no capability to restrict the rights of the users of servers and operating systems to which the Central Node component is installed. The administrator is advised to use any system resources at their own discretion to control how the users of servers and operating systems with the application installed may be granted access to the personal data of other users.

Information about the service data of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is provided in the table below

Data type	Location and duration of storage
User account information • User account ID. • User account name. • Password (salted hash).	The information is stored indefinitely on the Central Node server in the `/data` directory.
Information about MDR, KSN, KPSN integration.	
OSMP integration settings: • IP address or FQDN of the Central Node server to which the OSMP Console redirects • IP address or FQDN of the OSMP server that is responsible for user authentication when logging in to the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform • Secret data (stored in an encrypted form).	
Information about applied license keys or activation codes.	
Endpoint Agent settings.	
Settings of the mail server used for sending notifications: • IP address and port of the server. • Fingerprint of the certificate. • Login and password hash of the user authorized on the server. • Name of the secret that is used as the decryption key. • Whether encryption is being used.	
Name of the current server.	
Addresses of servers connected to the current server and information about certificates used for mutual authentication with them.	
Connector settings: • Address of the connector server. • Server address of the third-party system with which the connector interacts.	
Information about secrets and user account information of Central Node users.	
Address of the monitoring point.	
Information about ICAP exclusions.	
Settings of Sensor integration with ICAP: • State (enabled or disabled). • Maximum number of connections. • Connection address in REQMOD mode. • Connection address in RESPMOD mode. • ICAP request header that contains the IP address of the client that made the HTTP request when this request is received through the proxy server. • ICAP request header that contains the port of the client that made the HTTP request when this request is received through the proxy server. • User name. • ICAP request header that contains the user name of the client that made the HTTP request when this request is received through the proxy server. • Whether base64 decoding was used. • Operating mode. • Scan timeout. • Detection importance. • Page returned to the user when a file is blocked • Page returned to the user when a URL is blocked • Interfaces listened on.	

Data type	Location and duration of storage
Settings for sending user-defined intrusion detection rules to KSN.	
Information about the state and names of Keytab files used in Kerberos authentication.	
Information about KSMG email message scanning priorities.	
CPU and RAM load notification settings: • CPU, hard drive, and RAM usage thresholds. • Statistics update interval.	
Information about certificates used for mutual authentication of Sensor and Central Node.	
Settings of Sensor integration with POP3: • IP address and port of the POP3 server. • Login and password hash of the user authorized on the POP3 server. • Name of the secret that is used as the decryption key. • Certificate verification policy. • Client certificates.	
Proxy server settings: • IP address and port of the proxy server. • Login and password hash of the user authorized on the proxy server. • Name of the secret that is used as the decryption key. • State of the proxy server.	
Storage server settings: • Storage size. • Storage duration.	
Settings of Sandbox servers: • IP address and name of the server. • State of the server. • Fingerprint of the certificate.	
Sandbox component settings: • List of virtual machine images. • Sandbox synchronization state.	
Security settings: • Password change and reset period. • Failed authentication counter. • Maximum user inactivity time. • **Dashboard** locking state because of user inactivity.	
Settings of Sensor servers: maximum size of a file that can be sent for scanning.	
SIEM settings: • State of local and remote update and action logs. • TLS encryption state. • SIEM server addresses and ports. • Network protocol being used. • ID of the host sending data to SIEM. • TLS encryption certificate.	
Settings of Sensor integration with SMTP: • Certificates used for mutual authentication. • Domain and subdomain names. • SMTP client networks and subnets. • TLS security level. • Status of requesting client TLS certificate. • Status of the SMTP integration.	

Data type	Location and duration of storage
SNMP connection settings: • Login. • Password hash. • Name of the secret that is used as the decryption key. • Protocol version. • Status of the SNMP integration.	
Settings of Sensor integration with SPAN: • Interfaces listened on. • State of saving HTTP headers. • SPAN state. • Client certificates.	
Settings of storage for mirrored traffic from SPAN ports: • Storage state and size. • Directory being used. • Maximum number of files.	
Time zone settings.	
Update settings: • Update server type. • Custom URL of the update server.	The information is stored indefinitely on the Central Node server in the `/data` directory.
System event log	OS log files are stored indefinitely in the `/var/log` directory on the server hosting the Central Node component.
Log with information about the application operation.	The log file is stored indefinitely in the /data directory on the server hosting the Central Node component, if the component is installed on a server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers indefinitely.
File scan queue.	Files are stored on the server hosting the Central Node component in the /data directory if the component is installed on a server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers. The data is retained until the scan is completed.
Files received from computers with the Endpoint Agent component.	Files are stored on the server hosting the Central Node component in the /data directory if the component is installed on a server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers. Data is rotated when disk space becomes full.
Files with YARA and IDS rules (user-defined and from Kaspersky).	Files are stored indefinitely in the /data directory on the server hosting the Central Node component, if the component is installed on a server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers indefinitely.
Files with data about detections sent to external systems.	Files are stored indefinitely on the server hosting the Central Node component in the /data directory if the component is installed on a server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers indefinitely.
Artifacts of the Sandbox component.	Files are stored on the server hosting the Central Node component in the /data directory if the component is installed on the server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers. Data is rotated when disk space becomes full.
Files for which detections were created by the Sandbox component.	Files are stored on the server hosting the Central Node component in the /data directory if the component is installed on the server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers. Data is rotated when disk space becomes full.
Certificate files used for the authentication of application components.	Files are stored indefinitely in the /data directory on the server hosting the Central Node, PCN, SCN, Sensor component or on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component.
Encryption keys that are transmitted between application components.	Files are stored indefinitely in the /data directory on the server hosting the Central Node, PCN, SCN, Sensor component or on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component.
Copies of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports.	Files are stored in storage mounted on the server with the Sensor component. Data is deleted as disk space becomes full.

Data type	Location and duration of storage
ICAP exclusion filters.	Files are stored indefinitely on the server hosting the Central Node component in the /data directory if the component is installed on the server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers indefinitely.
• Dumps of traffic relevant to registered events. • Dumps of traffic relevant to network sessions. • Information about observables. • Information about Network Anomaly Detection rules. • NGFW connector settings.	The data is stored on the Central Node server in the /data/storage/volumes/nta_database directory. Data is rotated as disk space becomes filled.
Information about an email message sent for scanning to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway: • Message ID assigned by Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway. • Information about actions applied to the message by Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway.	When Central Node is installed on a server (not as a cluster), data is stored on the Central Node server in the /data directory. When Central Node is installed as a cluster, the data is stored in the ceph storage. If an alert is generated as a result of scanning a message, the data is rotated when the number of alerts created as a result of scanning by a specific technology reaches 1,000,000. If no alert is generated, the data is rotated after 7 days.
Passwords for scanning encrypted archives sent for scanning from Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway.	Data is stored on the Central Node server in the /data directory if the component is installed on a server. When the Central Node component is deployed as a cluster, data is stored on storage servers. The data is rotated after the encrypted archive is scanned.

Data type	Location and duration of storage
Information about custom widget layouts: • ID of the user account that owns the custom layout. • Settings of the custom layout.	Files are stored indefinitely on the server hosting the Central Node component in the /data directory if the component is installed on a server. When the Central Node component is installed on a cluster, data is stored on storage servers indefinitely.
Information about user accounts: • User account ID. • User account name. • Domain name of the user. • User account role. • Account status. • Tenant access permissions. • ID of the tenant in which the user account was created. • Date and time of the last password change for the user account.	
Information about Central Node components: • Central Node server ID. • IP address of the Central Node server. • Central Node server name. • Central Node activity indicator.	
Information about tenants: • Tenant ID. • Tenant name. • Names of servers with the Central Node component assigned to this tenant. • Tenant creation date.	
Information about computers connected to the Central Node with the Endpoint Agent component: • ID of the Endpoint Agent computer assigned by Kaspersky Security Center. • Name of the Endpoint Agent computer. • Date and time when the first and last telemetry packet were sent to the Central Node component. • Status of the Endpoint Agent self-defense mechanism. • Operating system of the Endpoint Agent computer. • IP address of the Endpoint Agent computer. • Version of the application that acts as the Endpoint Agent component. • License key status of the application that acts as the Endpoint Agent component. • ID of the Endpoint Agent computer.	
Data of the scanned object: domain.	
Information about custom intrusion detection rules: • User name of the user account that uploaded the file with user-defined Intrusion Detection rules. • Date and time when the file with user-defined Intrusion Detection rules was uploaded. • Status of the user-defined Intrusion Detection rule. • Importance specified in the user-defined Intrusion Detection rule file.	
Information about scan exclusions: • List of objects excluded from the scan. • Exclusion rule ID. • User name of the user that added the scan exclusion rule. • Name of the exclusion rule. • Creation date and time of the exclusion rule. • ID of the tenant for which the exclusion rule was created. • Names of components to which the exclusion rules apply.	

Data type	Location and duration of storage
Information about reports and report templates: • ID of the user account that created or modified the report template. • Template creation date. • Date of last modification of the template. • Text of the template as HTML code. • Tenant ID. • Name of the template. • ID of the user account that created the template. • Report creation date. • Period specified in the report. • Servers for which the report was generated. • Report description. • Report templates • Text of the report as HTML code.	
Information about Endpoint Agent component certificates: • User name of the user account that uploaded the Endpoint Agent component certificate file. • Digest of the certificate. • Serial number of the certificate. • Public key. • Expiration date of the certificate.	
Information about user-defined Sandbox rules: • State of the Sandbox component scan rule • Type of the rule • Masks of included objects • Masks of excluded objects • Size of scanned files • Rule creation date and time • ID of the virtual machine where the rule is assigned	
Virtual machine configuration information: • IP address of the server hosting the Sandbox component • List of virtual machines	

Data type	Location and duration of storage
Information about user accounts on devices: • User account ID. • User account name. • Name of the computer on which the user is authorized.	The data is stored on the Central Node server in the /data/storage/volumes/nta_database directory. Data is rotated as disk space becomes filled.
Network session information: • Names of the participants in the network communication. • IP and MAC addresses of the participants of the network communication.	
Information about devices registered in the application: • Device names. • IP and MAC addresses of devices.	
Data saved when integrated with the Endpoint Agent component as part of the NDR functionality: • IP and MAC addresses of the computer with the Endpoint Agent component. • Name of the computer with the Endpoint Agent component. • Name of the user account registered on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component. • The operating system that the computer is running. • User Agent.	
Information about network traffic events: IP and MAC addresses of devices.	
Information about executable files on Endpoint Agent computers connected as part of the NDR functionality: • File name. • Path to the file. • File version. • MD5 and SHA256 hash of the file.	
Audit log for user activity related to the NDR functionality.	

Data of the Central Node and Sensor components

This section contains the following information about user data that is stored on the server with the Central Node component and on the server with the Sensor component:

- Contents of stored data
- Storage location
- Storage duration
- User access to data

Traffic data of the Sensor component

Traffic data of the Sensor component is stored on the server with the Sensor component or on the server with Sensor and Central Node components if Sensor and Central Node are installed on the same server or deployed as a cluster.

Traffic data is recorded and stored in sequentially created files. The application stops recording data in one file and starts logging data in the next file if:

- The maximum file size is reached (you can configure this setting)
- The configured time interval has elapsed (you can configure this setting)
- The traffic saving service or the entire Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform application is restarted

As traffic data accrues, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform filters data and keeps only the information about PCAP files in which:

- Source or destination IP address matches an IP address from the detection
- Traffic data belongs to the time period within 15 minutes from the detection time

Filtered traffic data is moved to a separate section. The rest of the traffic data (that do not satisfy filtering criteria) is deleted.

Filtered traffic data is saved in sequentially created files. The application stops recording data in one file and starts logging data in the next file if:

- The maximum file size is reached
- The configured time interval has elapsed

Filtered data traffic is stored for the last 24 hours. Older data is deleted.

Data in detections

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform resources provide no capability to restrict the rights of the users of servers and operating systems to which the Central Node component is installed. The administrator is advised to use any system resources at their own discretion to control how the users of servers and operating systems with the application installed may be granted access to the personal data of other users.

Information about the data that may be stored when creating detections is listed in the table below.

Data type	Location and duration of storage
The following data is stored on the server for all detections: • Detection creation date and time. • Date and time of detection modification. • Scan results for the object. • Category of the detected object. • Name of the detected file. • Type of the detected file. • Source of the detected object. • Detected URL. • MD5 and SHA256 hash of the detected file. • User agent. • The user account to which the alert associated with the detection was assigned. • List of files. • Alert importance depending on the security impact this alert may have on the computer or corporate LAN, based on Kaspersky experience. • The technology that made the detection. • Status of the alert associated with the detection. • Name of the user to which the alert associated with the detection was assigned. • ID of the user that has processed or is processing the alert associated with the detection. • ID of the event in network traffic (when using the NDR functionality). • Device IDs (when using the NDR functionality). • Name of the computer from which the data was sent. • Name of the computer that received the data. • Additional information about the alert.	If the Central Node is installed on a server, detection information is stored on the Central Node server in the /data directory. If Central Node is installed as a cluster, detection information is stored in a ceph storage. Data is rotated when the number of detection records generated by an individual scanning technology reaches 1,000,000.
When the alert associated with the detection is modified, the following information is stored on the server: • The user account that modified the alert. • The user account to which the alert was assigned. • Date and time of alert modification. • Alert status. • User comment.	
If alerts are generated as a result of scanning by NDR technologies (Intrusion Detection or Aggregated Alerts), the following information may be stored on the server: • Source of the detected object. • Data transfer systems • Source address and port of the network interaction • Name of the technology that generated the alert • Name of the Kaspersky IDS rule that generated the alert • Package that was scanned to generate the alert • Payload that was scanned to generate the alert • HTTP request method • HTTP request body • Name of the monitoring point from which the traffic was received • ID of the network interface on which the monitoring point is located • Version of the application databases used to generate the detection • Scan results	
If the detection was created as a result of scanning by the Cloud Access Security Broker technology, the following information may be stored on the server: • Source of the detected object. • Source address and port of the network interaction • Name of the cloud service to which access was registered. • Category of the cloud service for which the alert was registered. • File sharing indicator. • Version of the application databases used to generate the detection. • Data transfer systems • Scan results	

Data type	Location and duration of storage
If the detection was created as a result of scanning a file, the following information may be stored on the server: • File name. • Full name of the file. • Source of the detected object. • MD5- and SHA256 hash of the file. • File size. • Information about the signature of the file. • Metadata of scanned files and their sources.	
If the detection was created as a result of scanning FTP traffic, the following information may be stored on the server: • URI of the FTP request.	
If the detection was created as a result of scanning HTTP traffic, the following information may be stored on the server: • URI of the HTTP request. • URI of the request source. • User agent. • Information about the proxy server.	
If the detection was created as a result of scanning by the Intrusion Detection technology, the following information may be stored on the server: • Name of the computer from which the data was sent. • Name of the computer that received the data. • The IP address of the computer from which the data was sent. • The IP address of the computer that received the data. • Transmitted data. • Data transfer time. • URL extracted from the file containing the traffic, User Agent, and method. • File containing the traffic where the detection occurred. • List of detected objects.	
If the detection was created as a result of scanning by the URL Reputation technology, the following information may be stored on the server: • Name of the computer from which the data was sent. • Name of the computer that received the data. • The IP address of the computer from which the data was sent. • The IP address of the computer that received the data. • The URI of the transferred resource. • URI from the email message. • Information about the proxy server. • ID of the email message. • Email addresses of the sender and recipients of the message (including the recipients of copies and blind carbon copies of the message). • Subject of the email message. • Date and time when the message was received by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, with precision up to the second. • List of detected objects. • Time of network connection. • URL of network connection. • User agent. • Server name.	
If the detection was created as a result of scanning HTTP traffic, the following information may be stored on the server: • Version of the application databases used to generate the detection. • Names of detected objects. • MD5 hashes of detected objects. • Information about detected objects. • Scan result.	

Data type	Location and duration of storage
If the detection was created as a result of scanning by the Anti-Malware technology, the following information may be stored on the server: • ID of the computer on which the detection was generated. • Name of the computer from which the data was sent. • The IP address of the computer from which the data was sent. • Versions of databases of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components that were used to generate the alert. • List of detected objects. • Additional information about the detection.	
If the detection was created as a result of a DNS activity detection, the following information may be stored on the server: • DNS query data. • Contents of the DNS server response to the query. • List of queried hosts.	
If the detection was created using YARA rules, the following information can be stored on the server: • Database version of YARA rules that were used to generate the detection. • Scan result. • Name of the detected object. • MD5 hash of the detected object. • Additional information about the detection.	
If the detection was created as a result of scanning a file, the following information may be stored on the server: • Email addresses of the sender and recipients of the message, including the recipients of copies and blind carbon copies of the message. • Subject of the email message. • Date and time when the message was received by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, with precision up to the second. • All service headers of the message (as they appear in the message).	If the Central Node is installed on a server, detection information is stored on the Central Node server in the /data directory. If Central Node is installed as a cluster, detection information is stored in a ceph storage. The data is stored indefinitely.
If the detection was created as a result of a rescan, the following information may be stored on the server: • Name of the detected file. • MD5 and SHA256 hash of the detected file.	
If the detection was created as a result of scanning a file, the following information may be stored on the server: • Email addresses of the sender and recipients of the message, including the recipients of copies and blind carbon copies of the message. • Subject of the email message. • Date and time when the message was received by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, with precision up to the second. • All service headers of the message (as they appear in the message).	If the Central Node is installed on a server, detection information is stored on the Central Node server in the /data directory. If Central Node is installed as a cluster, detection information is stored in a ceph storage. The data is stored indefinitely.
If the detection was created as a result of a rescan, the following information may be stored on the server: • Name of the detected file. • MD5 and SHA256 hash of the detected file.	

Data in reports

If the Central Node component is installed on a server, report data is stored in the `/data` directory indefinitely. If Central Node is installed as a cluster, the information is stored in ceph storage indefinitely.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform resources provide no capability to restrict the rights of the users of servers and operating systems to which the Central Node component is installed. The administrator is advised to use any system resources at their own discretion to control how the users of servers and operating systems with the application installed may be granted access to the personal data of other users.

Reports may contain the following information:

- Report creation date.
- Time period covered in the report.
- ID of the user account that generated the report.
- Report status.
- Text of the report as HTML code.
- Report description.
- Name of the template that the report was generated from.

If the NDR functionality is used, the reports may contain the following information:

- Name of the template that the report was generated from.
- Report creation date.
- ID of the user account that generated the report.
- Text of the report as HTML code.

Storage item details

If the Central Node component is installed on a server, data about objects in Storage is stored in the /data directory indefinitely. If Central Node is installed as a cluster, the information is stored in ceph storage indefinitely.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform resources provide no capability to restrict the rights of the users of servers and operating systems to which the Central Node component is installed. The administrator is advised to use any system resources at their own discretion to control how the users of servers and operating systems with the application installed may be granted access to the personal data of other users.

Information objects in Storage may contain the following data:

- Name of the object.
- MD5- and SHA256 hash of the file.
- File size.
- ID of the user who placed the object in Storage.
- Event ID.
- Results for the object scanned using individual modules and technologies of the application.
- File download time.
- Metadata of scanned objects and their sources.
- Resulting status of the object in Storage.

Sandbox component data

For the processing time, the body of the file sent by the Central Node component is saved in open form on the server hosting the Sandbox component. During processing, the server administrator can access the sent file in Technical Support Mode. The scanned file is deleted by a special script according to the schedule. Once every 60 minutes by default.

Information about the data stored on the server with the Sandbox component is provided in the table below.

Data stored on the server with the Sandbox component

Scope of data	Storage location	Storage duration	Access t
Scanned files	`/var/opt/kaspersky/sandbox/library/`	After the Central Node component receives the scan results or until automatic deletion, but no more than 24 hours.	User access is defined b using operating system t
File scan results	• `/var/opt/kaspersky/sandbox/library/` • `/tmp/`	After the Central Node component receives the scan results or until automatic deletion, but no more than 24 hours.	User access is defined b using operating system t
Task settings	• `/var/opt/kaspersky/sandbox/library/` • Sandbox component database	After the Central Node component receives the scan results or until automatic deletion, but no more than 24 hours in the directory `/var/opt/kaspersky/sandbox/library/`. Up to 90 days in the Sandbox component database.	User access to the direc `/var/opt/kaspersky/` is defined by the adminis operating system tools. A password is required f authentication in the da database files is grantec started database proce root privileges. Access is provided only IPSec channel.
Trace files	`/var/log/kaspersky/sandbox/`	Up to 21 days.	User access is defined b using operating system t Only authorized users ca with trace files. Information about actio saved in the application

Scope of data	Storage location	Storage duration	Access t
Settings of the update source	`/var/opt/kaspersky/apt-updater`	Until modified or deleted.	User access is defined b using operating system t
Minimum password length settings	`/var/opt/kaspersky/apt-config-ram-common/validator.conf`	Until modified or deleted.	User access is defined b using operating system t
Virtual machines	`/vm`	Until modified or deleted.	User access is defined b using operating system t
Downloaded images of operating systems and applications in iso format	`/var/opt/kaspersky/sandbox/custom_images/iso`	Until modified or deleted.	User access is defined b using operating system t

Data transmitted between application components

Central Node and Sandbox

The Central Node component sends to the Sandbox component files and URLs extracted from the network and email traffic. The files are not changed in any way prior to sending. The Sandbox component sends scan results to the Central Node component.

Central Node and Sensor

The application may transmit the following data between Central Node and Sensor components:

- Files and email messages.
- Data on alerts generated by the Intrusion Detection System and URL Reputation technologies.
- License information.
- List of data excluded from the scan.
- Application databases, if receiving database updates from the Central Node component is configured.

Servers with PCN and SCN roles

If the application is running in distributed solution mode, data about the following things is transmitted between the PCN and connected SCNs:

- Alerts.
- About scanning using custom IDS and YARA rules.
- Data on user accounts.
- About the license.
- Objects placed in Storage.
- Files attached to alerts.
- YARA files.

Data contained in application trace files

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform resources provide no capability to restrict the rights of the users of servers and operating systems to which the Central Node component is installed. The administrator is advised to use any system resources at their own discretion to control how the users of servers and operating systems with the application installed may be granted access to the personal data of other users.

Trace files can include any personal data of the user or confidential data of your organization. Files are stored in the `/var/log/kaspersky` directory indefinitely.

Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows data

For detailed information about data transmitted by Kaspersky Endpoint Security, see the Online Help of the application:

- Provision of data under the End User License Agreement.
- Provision of data when Kaspersky Security Network is used.
- Compliance with European Union law (GDPR).

Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux data

For detailed information about data transmitted by Kaspersky Endpoint Security, see the Online Help of the application.

Application licensing

This section covers the main aspects of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform licensing.

About the End User License Agreement

The *End User License Agreement (EULA)* is a binding agreement between you and AO Kaspersky Lab, stipulating the terms on which you may use the application.

Read through the terms of the End User License Agreement carefully before you start using the application.

You can view the terms of the End User License Agreement (EULA) in the following ways:

- During installation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- By reading the text named /EULA/License.<language>.

  This file is included in the application distribution kit.
- In the application web interface, in the **Settings** section, **License** subsection, by clicking the **License Agreement** button.
- In the web interface of the Sandbox component, in the menu, by clicking the **End User License Agreement** link.

By confirming that you agree with the End User License Agreement when installing the application, you signify your acceptance of the terms of the EULA. If you do not accept the terms of the End User License Agreement, you must abort application installation and must not use the application.

About the License Certificate

The *License Certificate* is a document provided with the key file or activation code.

The License Certificate contains the following license information:

- License ID or order number.
- Details of the license holder.
- Information about the application that can be activated using the license.
- Limitation on the number of licensing units (devices on which the application can be used under the license).
- License start date.
- License expiration date or license validity period.
- License type.

About the license

A license is a limited-time right to use Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform granted under the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement (EULA).

The scope of services and application usage term depend on the type of license under which the application is activated.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides the following types of licenses:

- NFR (not for resale) is a free license for a set period, intended to familiarize the user with the application and to carry out test deployments.
- Commercial—Paid license that is provided when you buy the application.

When the license expires, the application continues to work but with limited functionality. To use the application full functionality, you must purchase a commercial license or renew a commercial license.

We recommend renewing your license no later than its expiration date to prevent interrupting the protection of your device against computer security threats.

The update functionality (including anti-virus signature updates and code base updates) may be unavailable in the territory of the USA.

In the current version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, the available functionality of the application also depends on the type of the added license key.

About the license key

A *license key* is a sequence of bits used to activate and use the application in accordance with the End User License Agreement. A license key is generated by Kaspersky.

You can add a license key to the application by applying a *key file* or entering an *activation code*. After you add the license key to the application, it is displayed in the application interface as a unique alphanumeric sequence.

Kaspersky can block a license key over violations of the End User License Agreement. If a license key has been blocked, you must add a different license key to use the application.

In the current version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, the available functionality of the application depends on the type of the added license key:

- **KATA + NDR license key**. Full functionality of the application.
- **KATA license key**. The functionality in the **Custom rules**, **Storage**, **Assets** sections of the web interface is limited, the functionality of saving and downloading network traffic in the **SPAN traffic processing** section is limited.

About the key file

A *key file* is a file with the .key extension that you receive from Kaspersky. Key files are designed to activate the application by adding a license key.

The key file is sent to the email address that you specified after purchasing Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform or after ordering Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the NFR license type.

You do not need to connect to Kaspersky activation servers in order to activate the application with a key file.

You can recover a key file if it is accidentally deleted. You may need a key file to register with Kaspersky CompanyAccount.

To recover a key file, you must do one of the following:

- Contact the vendor you bought the license from.
- Get a key file on the Kaspersky website using your activation code.

About the activation code

An *activation code* is a unique sequence of twenty Latin characters and numerals. You enter an activation code to add a license key that activates Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. The activation code is sent to the email address that you specified after purchasing Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform or after ordering Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the NFR license type.

To activate the application using an activation code, you need internet access for connecting to Kaspersky activation servers.

If you lose your activation code after activating the application, contact the Kaspersky partner from which you purchased the license.

About the subscription

A *subscription to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform* is an order for using a solution with the chosen parameters (expiration date of the subscription, number of protected devices).

The subscription is limited (for example, for one year). To continue using Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform after your limited subscription expires, you must renew the subscription. If the subscription is not renewed, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform continues operating in limited functionality mode.

To use Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform under a subscription, you must enter an activation code. After applying the activation code, a license key is added that determines the license for using the application under the subscription. Information about the license key is displayed in the web interface of the Central Node server.

Activation codes purchased under subscription cannot be used to activate previous versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Adding a license key

In distributed solution mode, a key can be replaced only on the PCN server.

You can add a license key to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in one of the following ways:

- Enter an activation code.
- Upload a key file.

To add a license key to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using an activation code:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.
2. Click **Enter an activation code**.
   This opens the activation window.
3. In the field, enter the activation code that was sent to the email address that you provided.
4. Carefully read the Kaspersky Security Network Statement and select one of the following options:
   - **I agree to participate in KSN**, if you accept the terms of the KSN Statement and want to participate in KSN.
   - **I do not agree to participate in KSN**, if you do not accept the terms of the KSN Statement and do not want to participate in KSN.

     If you do not agree with the terms of the Statement, use of Kaspersky Security Network will not be enabled.
5. Click **Apply**.

The license key is added to the application.

To add a license key to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using a key file:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.
2. Click **Upload a key file**.
   This opens the activation window.
3. Click **Upload**.
   This opens the file selection window.

4. Select a key file to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.

5. Carefully read the Kaspersky Security Network Statement and select one of the following options:

   - **I agree to participate in KSN**, if you accept the terms of the KSN Statement and want to participate in KSN.
   - **I do not agree to participate in KSN**, if you do not accept the terms of the KSN Statement and do not want to participate in KSN.

     If you do not agree with the terms of the Statement, use of Kaspersky Security Network will not be enabled.

6. Click **Apply**.

The license key is added to the application.

Replacing the license key

In distributed solution mode, a key can be replaced only on the PCN server.

You can replace the license key of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with a different license key in one of the following ways:

- Replace with activation code.
- Replace with a key file.

To replace the current license key of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform by entering an activation code:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.
2. Click **Replace.** In the displayed drop-down list, select **Replace using an activation code**.

   This opens the license key replacement window.

3. In the field, enter the activation code that was sent to the email address that you provided.

4. Carefully read the Kaspersky Security Network Statement and select one of the following options:

   - **I agree to participate in KSN**, if you accept the terms of the KSN Statement and want to participate in KSN.
   - **I do not agree to participate in KSN**, if you do not accept the terms of the KSN Statement and do not want to participate in KSN.

     If you do not agree with the terms of the Statement, use of Kaspersky Security Network will not be enabled.

5. Click **Apply**.

The license key is replaced.

To add a license key to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using a key file:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.
2. Click **Replace**. In the displayed drop-down list, select **Replace using a key file**.

   This opens the license key replacement window.
3. Click **Upload**.

   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select a key file to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.
5. Carefully read the Kaspersky Security Network Statement and select one of the following options:

   - **I agree to participate in KSN**, if you accept the terms of the KSN Statement and want to participate in KSN.
   - **I do not agree to participate in KSN**, if you do not accept the terms of the KSN Statement and do not want to participate in KSN.

     If you do not agree with the terms of the Statement, use of Kaspersky Security Network will not be enabled.

6. Click **Apply**.

The license key is replaced.

Removing a license key

In distributed solution mode, a license key can be removed only on the PCN server.

You can remove a license key that was added to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. After the license key is removed, the application enters the limited functionality mode.

To remove a license key:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.
2. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the license key removal confirmation window.
3. Click **Yes**.

   The key removal confirmation window closes.

The license key is removed.

Viewing information about the added license key in the web interface of the Central Node

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can view information about the license and the added key in the web interface of PCN servers and all connected SCNs under the account of an administrator, or users of the application web interface.

To view the information about the added license key,

In the web interface of the server hosting the Central Node component, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.

The web interface displays the following information about the license key:

- **Serial number**.
- **Feature set**.
- **Activation date**.
- **Expiration date**.
- **Days remaining**.

During the period within 30 days of license expiration, the **Dashboard** section displays a notification about the need to renew the license. This notification is displayed on all servers with the Central Node component (in distributed solution and multitenancy mode – on PCNs and all connected SCNs) for all users, regardless of their role.

Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement in the web interface of the Central Node

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can view the text of the End User License Agreement in the web interface of PCN servers and all connected SCNs under the account of a local administrator, administrator, or users of the application web interface.

To view the text of the End User License Agreement:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.
2. Click the **License Agreement** button in the upper-right corner of the workspace.
3. In the opened window, carefully read the text of the End User License Agreement.
4. When you are done, click the **Close** button.

Viewing the text of the Privacy Policy in the web interface of the Central Node

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can view the text of the Privacy Policy in the web interface of PCN servers and all connected SCNs under the account of a local administrator, administrator, or users of the application web interface.

To view the text of the Privacy Policy:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.
2. Click the **Privacy Policy** button in the upper-right corner of the workspace.
3. In the opened window, carefully read the text of the Privacy Policy.
4. When you are done, click the **Close** button.

Viewing information about the third-party code used in the application

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can view information about third-party code used in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in the web interface of PCN servers and all connected SCNs under the account of a local administrator, administrator, or users of the application web interface.

To view third-party code information:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **License** subsection.
2. Click the **Third-party code** button in the upper-right corner of the workspace.
3. In the opened window, view the information about third-party code.
4. When you are done, click the **Close** button.

Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement in the web interface of the Sandbox

To view the text of the End User License Agreement in the Sandbox web interface:

1. Sign in to the Sandbox web interface using the account credentials that you specified during installation of the Sandbox component.
2. Click on the link with your user name in the lower part of the application web interface window.
3. In the list that opens, select **About**.
4. This opens a window; in that window, click the **End User License Agreement** link.
5. Carefully read the text of the End User License Agreement.
6. When you are done, click the × button.

Viewing the text of the End User License Agreement for the Endpoint Agent component

You can view the text of the End User License Agreement for the application that is being used as the Endpoint Agent component. For details on how to view the text of the End User License Agreement, see the Online Help for the relevant application.

About the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows End User License Agreement

About the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux End User License Agreement

Application modes based on the license

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides various operating modes depending on the added license keys.

No license

After the application is installed and the web interface is started, the application operates in this mode until you add a license key.

Unlicensed mode has the following limitations:

- Application databases are not updated.
- There is no connection to the Kaspersky Security Network Knowledge Base.
- Receiving and processing of data from network traffic and mail traffic is limited.
- The functionality of the **Custom rules**, **Storage**, **Assets** sections of the web interface is limited.
- Installing Sensor on a standalone server is not available.

Commercial

To switch to the *Commercial* mode, you must replace the license key or add a new license key for the commercial license.

In this mode, the application:

- Updates databases.
- Connects to the Kaspersky Security Network Knowledge Base.

Removal of the other limitations described for the *Unlicensed* mode in the current version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform depends on the type of the added license key:

- **KATA + NDR license key**. Full functionality of the application.
- **KATA license key**. The functionality in the **Custom rules**, **Storage**, **Assets** sections of the web interface is limited, the functionality of saving and downloading network traffic in the **SPAN traffic processing** section is limited.

Architecture of the application

The application includes the following main components:

- *Sensor*. Receives and scans data, can also be used as a proxy server during data exchange between Endpoint Agent and Central Node.
- *Central Node*. Receives and scans data, analyzes the behavior of objects, and publishes analysis results in the web interface of the application.
- *Sandbox*. Starts virtual images of operating systems. Starts files in these operating systems and tracks the behavior of files in each operating system to detect malicious activity and signs of targeted attacks to the corporate IT infrastructure.
- *Endpoint Agent*. Installed on workstations and servers in the IT infrastructure of the organization. Sends information to the Central Node about NDR events and about devices and protocols involved in the connection between the devices. Can be used to automatically send files to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform for scanning in Sandbox.

Sensor component

The component can be deployed on the same server with the Central Node (Embedded Sensor) or on a standalone server.

The following modules of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform run on each Sensor server:

- *Sensor*. Receives data from network and mail traffic and sends the data for processing to the server with the Central Node component.
- *Intrusion Detection System* (hereinafter also referred to as *IDS*). Scans the Internet traffic for signs of intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure.
- *KSN*. Checks the reputation of files and URL addresses in the Knowledge Base of Kaspersky Security Network on behalf of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and provides information about categories of websites (for example, malicious website, phishing website).

  *Kaspersky Security Network (*hereinafter also *"KSN")* is an infrastructure of online services that provides access to Kaspersky's online Knowledge Base with information on the reputation of files, web resources, and software. The use of data from Kaspersky Security Network ensures faster responses by Kaspersky applications to threats, improves the performance of some protection components, and reduces the likelihood of false alarms.

  If you do not want to participate in KSN, you can use *Kaspersky Private Security Network* (hereinafter also referred to as *KPSN*). KPSN is a solution that allows users to access the reputation databases of Kaspersky Security Network and other statistical data without actually sending data from their own computers to Kaspersky Security Network.
- *URL Reputation*. Detects malicious and phishing URL addresses, and URL addresses that were previously used by hackers in targeted attacks against and intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure.

The Sensor can also be used as a proxy server for outgoing connections from the Endpoint Agent component.

Central Node component

The component can be deployed on one server or as a high availability cluster that consists of 2 roles: storage servers and processing servers.

High availability is achieved through duplication of data between the storage servers and the redundancy of computing resources: if one server fails, its functions are performed by another server with the same role. Meanwhile, the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform continues to work.

> Only one failure of a server in a cluster is tolerated. If multiple servers fail, the cluster becomes inoperable.

The following application modules, kernels and technologies run on each server or cluster with the Central Node component:

- *Anti-Malware Engine* (hereinafter also referred to as *AM* or *AM Engine*). Scans files and objects for viruses and other threats to the corporate IT infrastructure using anti-virus databases.
- *Mobile Attack Analyzer* (also referred to as *MAA*). Scans executable files in the APK format in the cloud infrastructure using a machine learning technology. As a result of the scan, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives information about detected threats or absence of threats.
- *YARA*. Scans files and objects for signs of targeted attacks on the corporate IT infrastructure using YARA Rules databases created by users of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- *KSN*. Checks the reputation of files and URL addresses in the Knowledge Base of Kaspersky Security Network on behalf of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and provides information about categories of websites (for example, malicious website, phishing website).
- *Cloud Access Security Broker (CASB)*. Monitors the access to cloud services by employees of the organization.

Sandbox component

Servers hosting the Sandbox component run virtual machines with images of operating systems.

The Sandbox component starts objects in these operating systems and analyzes the behavior of the objects to detect malicious activity and signs of targeted attacks to the corporate IT infrastructure.

Special considerations involved in file scanning

The following special considerations apply when scanning files in Sandbox:

- The maximum number of objects in the scan queue depends on the free disk space available on the Central Node server. When free space runs out, the application stops sending new objects for scanning, while the objects queued earlier continue to be processed.
- The total number of objects sent from one archive may not exceed 20.
- Files down to 3 levels of nesting (inclusive) are scanned.

Endpoint Agent component

Software component.

It can be represented by the following applications:

- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows
- Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux

These applications are installed on workstations and servers in the IT infrastructure of the organization (hereinafter also referred to as "computers") and transmit the following data to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

- Information about network traffic events recorded in the event database as a result of the EPP technology triggering (workstation and server protection events).
- Device information (for example, operating system version, model or vendor information).
- Information about the connections of devices on the network interaction map.
- Information about protocols used to establish connections between devices.

Computers intended for installation of applications must meet hardware and software requirements.

Operating principle of the application

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform application includes two functional units:

- Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack (hereinafter also referred to as "KATA"), which detects threats on the perimeter of the enterprise IT infrastructure.
- Network Detection and Response (hereinafter also referred to as "NDR"), which provides protection of the corporate LAN.

You can use the full functionality of the application (KATA+NDR key) as well as partial functionality (only the KATA key).

Principle of operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack includes the following components:

- Sensor.
- Central Node.
- Sandbox.
- Endpoint Agent (optional, for scanning files in Sandbox).

Sensor, Central Node and Sandbox interoperate as follows:

- The Sensor component receives mirrored SPAN, ERSPAN, RSPAN traffic, objects and metadata of HTTP, FTP, SMTP, and DNS protocols, HTTP and FTP traffic data, as well as HTTPS traffic data (if the administrator has configured SSL certificate replacement on the proxy server), copies of email messages, and does the following with the obtained data:
  - Scans Internet traffic for signs of intrusion into the corporate IT infrastructure using the Intrusion Detection System technology (hereinafter also referred to as IDS).

    IDS technology can recognize and detect network activity in 80 protocols, particularly in 53 application layer protocols of the TCP/IP model, detecting suspicious traffic and network attacks. Supported protocols include TCP, UDP, FTP, TFTP, SSH, SMTP, SMB, CIF, SSL, HTTP, HTTP/2, HTTPS, TLS, ICMPv4, ICMPv6, IPv4, IPv6, IRC, LDAP, NFS, DNS, RDP, DCERPC, MS-RPC, WebSocket, Citrix and others.
  - Checks the reputation of files and URLs against the Kaspersky Security Network database (hereinafter also referred to as "KSN") or Kaspersky Private Security Network (hereinafter also referred to as "KPSN").
  - Sends objects and files to be scanned by the Central Node component.

    You can also use a *mail sensor* as a Sensor component, which is a server or virtual machine on which Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway (KSMG) or Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server (KLMS) is installed.

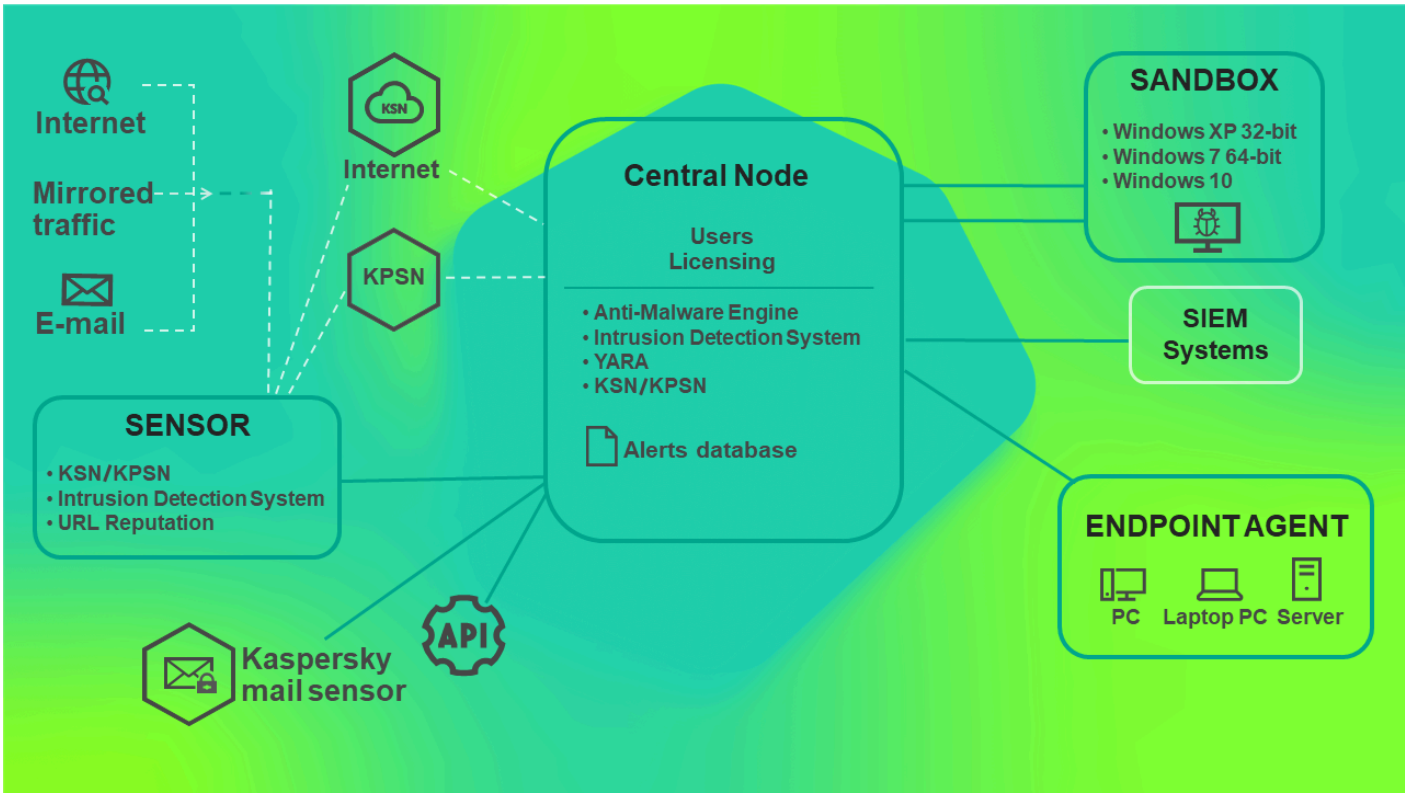
- The Central Node component scans files and objects using anti-virus databases, YARA rule databases created by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack users, and if necessary, sends files and objects to be scanned by the Sandbox component.

- The Sandbox component analyzes the behavior of objects in virtual operating systems to detect malicious activity and signs of targeted attacks on corporate IT infrastructure, and sends scan results to the Central Node server.

If any threats are detected, the Central Node server records relevant information in the alert database. You can view the alert table in the **Alerts** section of the application web interface or by generating an alert report.

Alert information can also be published to a SIEM system that is used in your organization, as well as external systems. Information on Sandbox component alerts can be published in the local reputation database of Kaspersky Private Security Network.

The principle of operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is shown in the following picture.

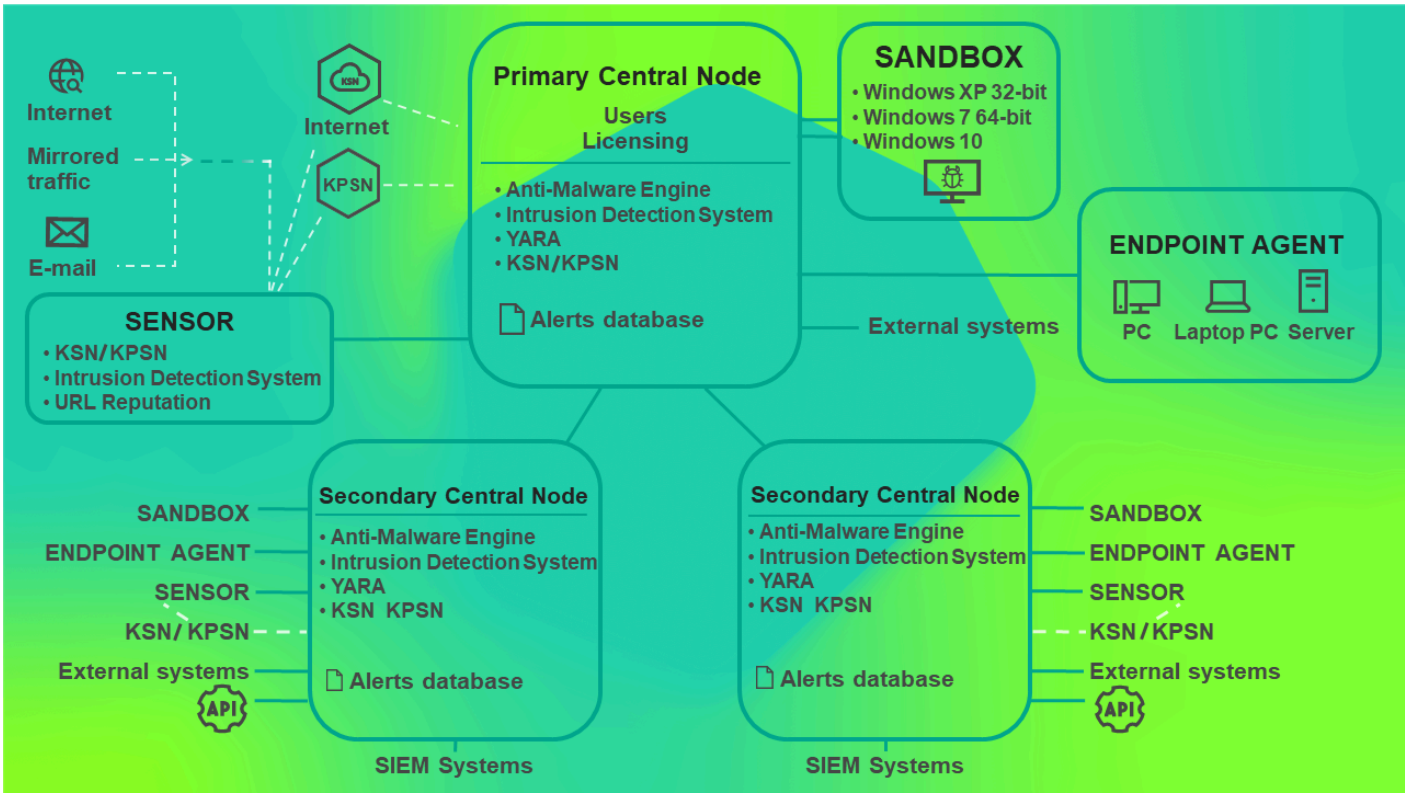


Principle of operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can configure settings of each Central Node component individually or manage several components in a centralized way in distributed solution mode.

A distributed solution is a two-tier hierarchy of Central Node servers. This structure sets apart a primary control server known as the Primary Central Node (PCN) and secondary servers known as Secondary Central Nodes (SCN).

The principle of operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in distributed solution mode is shown in the following picture.



Principle of operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in distributed solution mode

Distributed solution and multitenancy

You can configure settings of each Central Node component individually or manage several components in a centralized way in distributed solution mode.

The distributed solution is a two-tier hierarchy of servers with Central Node components installed. This structure sets apart a primary control server known as the *Primary Central Node (PCN)* and secondary servers known as *Secondary Central Nodes (SCN)*. Interaction of servers requires connecting SCN to PCN.

If you have deployed the Central Node component as a cluster, the entire cluster takes on the role of a PCN or SCN.

PCN and SCN scan files and objects using the same technology as the individually managed Central Node component.

The distributed solution allows centralized management of the following functional areas of the application:

- Users.
- Alerts.
- Custom rules.
- Storage.
- Reports.

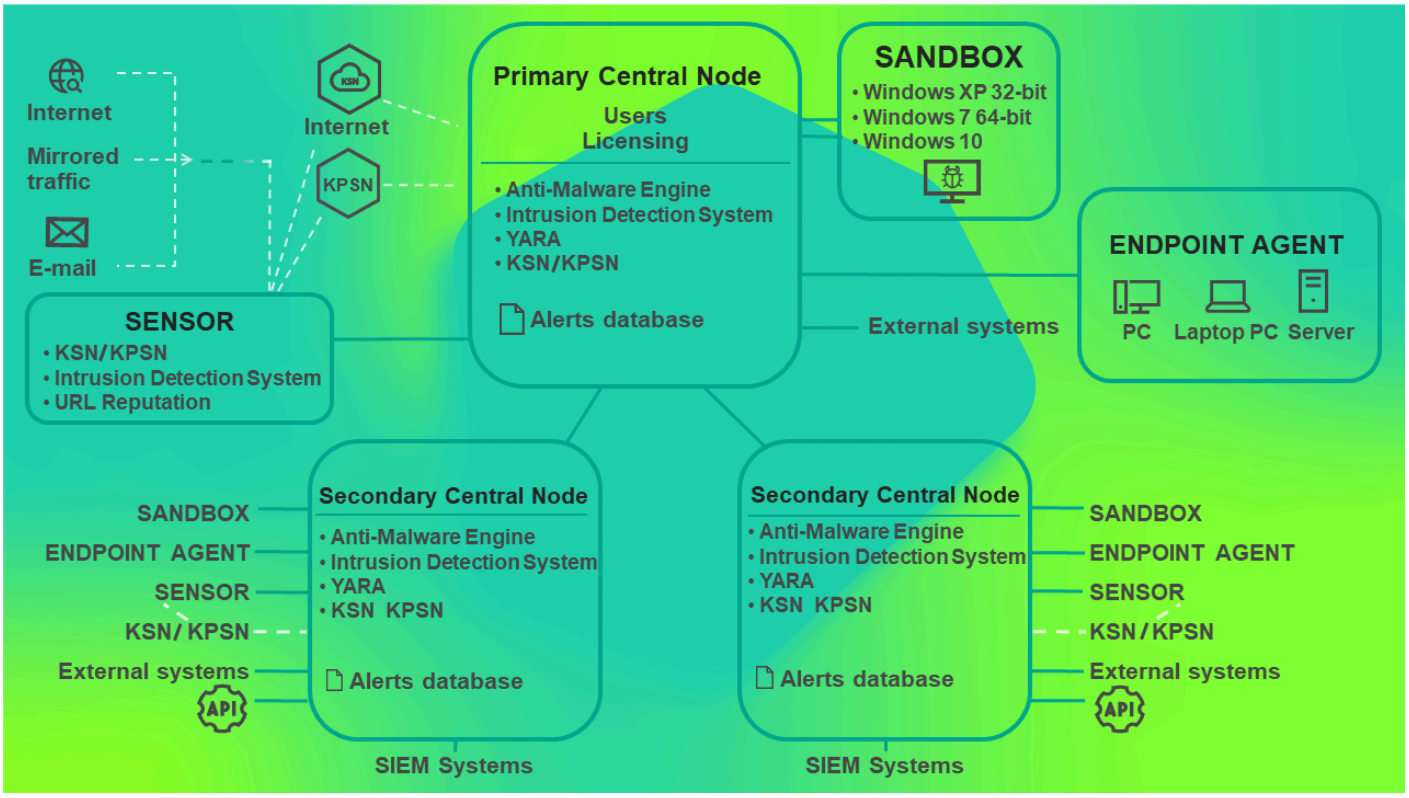
If you are supporting multiple organizations or branch offices of the same organization, you can use the application in multitenancy mode.

Multitenancy mode lets you use the application to simultaneously protect the infrastructure of multiple organizations or branch offices of the same organization (hereinafter also referred to as "tenants"). You can install Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on one or more Central Node for each tenant. Each tenant can manage the application independently from other tenants. The service provider can manage the data of multiple tenants.

The Central Node components that you want to organize in a hierarchy must be based on the same operating system (Ubuntu or Astra Linux). The versions of the component must be the same.

For each user account, the number of simultaneous application management sessions is limited to one IP address. If the same user name is used to log in to the application from a different IP address, the earlier session is terminated.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the limit is enforced for each PCN and SCN server separately.



Operation of the application in distributed solution mode

You can use the distributed solution and multitenancy mode in the following cases:

- For centralized management of the application in different business units of the tenant
- For centralized management of the application on servers of multiple tenants
- For processing network traffic at a maximum rate of 10 Gbps if your network includes more than one 10 Gbps segment and if you want to process traffic in these segments

When the application switches to the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, all previously added license keys are deleted from servers with the SCN role. Each connected SCN receives a key from the PCN. If full functionality of the application is used for the PCN (KATA+NDR key), and partial functionality is used for the SCN (KATA key), the SCN server load limit may be exceeded because of the increased volume of data. If partial application functionality is used for the PCN (KATA key), and full functionality is used for the SCN (KATA+NDR key), the application functionality is partially unavailable.

License keys can be managed only on the PCN.

You can use the following scenarios to deploy the application in distributed solution and multitenancy mode:

- Install the Central Node component on new servers and assign PCN and SCN roles to those servers.
- Assign PCN and SCN roles to servers that already have the Central Node component installed.

  In this case, you must upgrade the Central Node component to version 8.0.1.

Before you switch servers with Central Node components installed to distributed solution mode, you should review the changes that will be applied to the system after the operating mode is changed. Assigning the PCN role to a server is irreversible.

Distributed solution and multitenancy mode transition scenario

Switching the application to the distributed solution and multitenancy mode involves the following steps:

1. **Assigning a DNS name to the Central Node server that you want to use as the PCN**

   If a DNS name has been assigned previously, make sure it is specified correctly.

2. **Assigning the PCN role to a server**

3. **Creating an application administrator account on the PCN server**

   You will use this account to connect SCN servers to the PCN. If Active Directory or OSMP integration is configured for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you must select the **KATA user account** authentication type when creating the account.

4. **Assigning the SCN role to the servers and sending connection requests to the PCN**

5. **Processing a SCN to PCN connection request**

After switching to the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the application may need some time to configure the components. In this case, the web interface of the SCN does not display the application menu, and in the PCN web interface in the **Dashboard** section, an error is displayed: *Data has not been transmitted to SCN for more than 5 minutes.* The time it takes to configure the components depends on the amount of accumulated data; on average it takes 20 to 30 minutes.

Modifications of application settings for the distributed solution and multitenancy mode

Modifications of application settings for the distributed solution and multitenancy mode are listed in the following table.

Modifications of application settings when switching to the distributed solution and multitenancy mode

Functional area	PCN	SCN
Users	Users and roles assigned to them are preserved. Additionally, PCN users are granted access rights to work with PCN and all connected SCNs.	All users are deleted except the user that was created while Central Node was deployed. After that, the SCN requests a list of users from the PCN and uses that list to create local users with the same parameters: • Name • Password • Role • Status Users that do not have rights to access the SCN, are not displayed in the list of users.

Functional area	PCN	SCN
Alerts	Information about all alerts from all connected SCNs is added to the PCN database.	The user name is no longer displayed in existing alert information. User data are deleted from alert operation history.
Network traffic events	No changes.	No changes.
Dashboard	On the **Alerts** tab, you can now select the SCNs whose information must be displayed in the widget. On the **System health** tab, the status of connection of the PCN with connected SCNs is now displayed.	On the **System health** tab, the status of connection with the PCN is now displayed.
Reports	Templates and reports created before the switch to distributed solution mode are preserved. The **Servers** column is added to the report table, containing information about the SCN to which the alert belongs. After switching to distributed solution mode, only reports created on a PCN are displayed.	Templates and reports created before the switch to distributed solution mode are preserved. Information about the user who created the report is preserved if the PCN has a user with the same ID (guid). In other cases user information is deleted. After switching to distributed solution mode, only reports created on an SCN are displayed.
Storage	All files and metadata that were stored on PCNs before the switch to distributed solution mode are preserved. The name of the PCN is displayed for them in the **Central Node** column. The PCN also keeps the contents of the Storage of all connected SCNs.	All files and metadata that were stored on SCNs before the switch to distributed solution mode are preserved.
VIP status	No changes.	No changes.
Notification rules	No changes.	No changes.
Integration with mail sensors	No changes.	No changes.
Custom rules - Intrusion detection	No changes.	No changes.
Custom rules - YARA	YARA rules that were added on the Central Node server before it was assigned the PCN role are applied only to this PCN server. Rules added after the server got the PCN role are also applied to the SCN.	YARA rules added on the PCN, as well as YARA rules added on this SCN before and after switching to distributed solution mode are displayed.
Assets	No changes.	No changes.
Network map	No changes.	No changes.
Risks and anomalies	No changes.	No changes.
Backup of the application	Backup of the application is only available on a PCN that does not have SCNs connected. To back up the application on a PCN, disconnect all SCNs from the PCN.	Backup of the application on an SCN is not available. To back up the application on an SCN, disconnect that server from the PCN by switching it to standalone server mode.

Assigning the PCN role to a server

Assigning the PCN role to a server is irreversible. After changing the server role to PCN, you will not be able to change the role of that server to SCN or standalone server. To change the role of that server you will have to reinstall the application.

To assign the PCN role to the server:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   You need to log in to the web interface of the server to which you want to assign the PCN role.

2. Select the **Operating mode** section.
3. Click **Distributed solution**.
4. In the **Server role** drop-down list, select **Primary Central Node**.
5. In the **Tenant name** field, enter the name of the tenant to which this Central Node server belongs.
6. Click **Assign the PCN role**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

   > After confirming the action, log in to the application web interface again.

7. Click **Yes**.

The server is assigned the PCN role and the name of the tenant.

After logging in to the application web interface with administrator credentials, the **Operating mode** section of the application web interface displays the following information:

- **Current mode** – Distributed solution.
- **Server role** – Primary Central Node.
- **Certificate fingerprint** – the fingerprint of the server's certificate required for authentication when establishing connection with an SCN.
- **Tenants** – information about tenants to which this server and connected SCN servers belong:
  - **IP** – Primary Central Node for this server and IP addresses of SCN servers (after they connect).
  - **Server** – name of this server and names of SCN servers (after they connect).

    This name is not related to name of the host where the application is installed. You can change it.
  - **Certificate fingerprint** – blank value for this server and certificate fingerprints of SCN servers (after they connect).
  - **Status** – connection state of SCN servers (after they connect) and the number of servers connected to tenants.
- The **Servers pending authorization** table contains information about connected SCN.

Assigning the SCN role to a server

To assign the SCN role to the server:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   You need to log in to the web interface of the server to which you want to assign the SCN role.
2. Select the **Operating mode** section in the window of the application web interface.

3. Click **Distributed solution**.

4. In the **Server role** drop-down list, select **Secondary Central Node**.

5. In the **Server name (FQDN)** field, enter the FQDN of the server to which you want to assign the SCN role.

6. In the **PCN IP** field, enter the IP address of the server that has the PCN role, to which you want to connect the SCN.

7. Click **Get certificate fingerprint**.

   A fingerprint of the certificate of the server that has the PCN role is displayed in the workspace.

8. Contact the administrator of the PCN and compare the certificate fingerprint you received with the fingerprint displayed on the PCN in the **Certificate fingerprint** field of the **Operating mode** section.

9. If certificate fingerprints on the SCN and the PCN match, in the **User name** and **Password** fields, enter the user name and password of the administrator account created on the PCN for connecting SCNs.

10. Click **Send connection request**.

    This opens a confirmation window.

11. Click **Yes**.

The SCN role is assigned to the server.

Processing SCN to PCN connection requests

To process a SCN to PCN connection request:

1. Log in to the web interface of the PCN server that you want to use to process connection requests from other servers.

2. Select the **Operating mode** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The workspace displays the **Servers pending authorization** table.

3. Contact the SCN administrator who sent the connection request and check the certificate fingerprint in the **Servers pending authorization** table. It must match the fingerprint displayed on the SCN in the **Operating mode** section, in the **Certificate fingerprint from request** field.

4. If the certificate fingerprints on the PCN and the SCN match, do one of the following:

   - If you want to reject the connection request from the SCN, click the **Reject** button.
   - If you want to accept the connection request from the SCN, follow these steps:

     a. Click **Accept**.

     b. This opens the **Accept connection request** window.

c. In the **Tenant** list, select the tenant to which you want to assign this SCN server. The list is populated with tenants added earlier.

d. Click **Accept**.

We do not recommend accepting connection requests if certificate fingerprints do not match. Make sure the data you entered is correct.

While the SCN server is connected to the PCN, all buttons in the **Operating mode** window are locked. After the connection is finished, the buttons become unlocked again.

If you reject the connection request, the SCN continues to run as a standalone Central Node.

Viewing information about tenants, PCN and SCN servers

In the web interface of the PCN server, you can view information about this server and about all SCN servers that are connected to it.

To view information about PCN and SCN servers in multitenancy mode:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   You need to log in to the web interface of the PCN server.

2. Select the **Operating mode** section in the window of the application web interface.

The workspace displays the following information about servers:

- **Current mode** – Distributed solution.
- **Server role** – Primary Central Node.
- **Certificate fingerprint** – certificate fingerprint of the PCN server.
- **Tenants** – information about tenants to which the server belongs, as well as all SCN servers connected to the PCN.
  - **IP** – Primary Central Node for the PCN server and IP addresses of SCN servers connected to the PCN.
  - **Server** – name of the server and names of SCN servers that connect to the PCN.

    This name is not related to name of the host where the application is installed. You can change it.
  - **Certificate fingerprint** – blank value for the PCN server and certificate fingerprints of SCN servers waiting to connect to the PCN.
  - **Status** – connection status of SCN servers and the number of servers connected to the tenant.

- The **Servers pending authorization** table contains the following information:
  - **IP** – IP address or domain name of the SCN server.
  - **Server** is the name of the SCN server that is displayed in the application web interface.

    This name is not related to name of the host where the application is installed. You can change it.
  - **Certificate fingerprint** – certificate fingerprint of the SCN server that is sent to the PCN with the connection request.
  - **Status** – status of the SCN to PCN connection.

Adding a tenant to the PCN server

To add a tenant in the PCN server web interface:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   You must log in to the web interface of the PCN server for which you want to add a tenant.
2. Select the **Operating mode** section in the window of the application web interface.
3. In the right part of the **Tenants** workspace, click **Add**.
4. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the tenant that you want to add.
5. Click **Add**.

The tenant is added and is displayed in the list.

Deleting a tenant from the PCN server

To delete a tenant in the PCN server web interface:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   You must log in to the web interface of the PCN server for which you want to delete a tenant.
2. Select the **Operating mode** section in the window of the application web interface.
3. In the **Tenants** workspace, select the tenant that you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

The action is irreversible. All global objects as well as reports and report templates of this tenant are lost.

5. Click **Yes**.

The tenant is deleted.

Renaming a tenant on the PCN server

To rename a tenant in the web interface of the PCN server:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   You must log in to the web interface of the PCN server for which you want to rename a tenant.

2. Select the **Operating mode** section in the window of the application web interface.

3. In the **Tenants** list, click next to the tenant that you want to rename.

   This opens a window in which you can rename the tenant.

4. In the **Name** field, enter the new name of the tenant.

5. Click **Save**.

The tenant is renamed.

Restoring the SCN to PCN connection

It may happen that a SCN loses connection with the PCN for a long time (more than a day), and as a result, the token used for the connection expires. In this case, in the **Dashboard** section, a *PCN token expired. Log in to the SCN and restore the PCN connection* message is displayed.

To restore the SCN to PCN connection:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

   You need to log into the web interface of the specific SCN that you need to reconnect to the PCN.

2. Select the **Operating mode** section in the window of the application web interface.

3. Click the **Log in** link to open the window for authorization on the PCN server.

4. Enter the IP address of the PCN server to which the SCN was connected, and the user name and password of the administrator account created on the PCN for the SCN connection.

5. Click **Log in**.

After some time, SCN is reconnected to the PCN, and the *PCN token expired. Log in to the SCN and restore the PCN connection* message is no longer displayed in the **Dashboard** section.

Disconnecting an SCN from PCN

If you want to disconnect an SCN from the PCN, be mindful of the following special considerations:

- Starting with version 7.0, an SCN server cannot be reconnected to any PCN server.
- If you want to reconnect the server as an SCN, you will need to reinstall the Central Node component on this server.
- Disconnecting an SCN from the PCN changes application settings.

The administrator of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is responsible for the confidentiality of data on PCN, SCN, and Central Node servers. If you plan to move an SCN server from one tenant to another, you must delete all data remaining on the server after using Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform before handing over the server to the different tenant.

To disconnect an SCN from a PCN:

1. Log in to the web interface of the PCN server from which you want to disconnect the SCN using the administrator account.
2. Select the **Operating mode** section in the window of the application web interface.
3. In the server list, select the SCN that you want to disconnect.
4. Click **Disconnect**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
5. Click **Yes**.

The SCN is disconnected from the PCN and continues working as a standalone Central Node server.

Modifications of application settings for disconnecting an SCN from PCN

Modifications of application settings after an SCN is disconnected from the PCN are listed in the following table.

Modifications of application settings after disconnecting an SCN from PCN

Functional area	PCN	SCN
Users	The disconnected SCN is not removed from the list of servers to which user rights apply. Information about changes of the user account that has rights on the disconnected SCN is not sent to the SCN.	User accounts received from the PCN are not deleted. You can create new user accounts again, as well as disable and change passwords for existing user accounts.
Alerts	Alert information on the disconnected SCN is deleted.	Operation history and all alert information is preserved.

Functional area	PCN	SCN
Reports	All reports created earlier concerning the disconnected SCN are preserved, as well as the ability to filter the report list by this server.	Templates and reports are not modified.
Storage	All objects related to the disconnected SCN are deleted from Storage.	All objects in the Storage are preserved. The link to the task stops working in information about objects received as part of tasks created on the PCN.
VIP status	No changes.	No changes.
Notification rules	No changes.	No changes.
Integration with mail sensors	No changes.	No changes.
Backup of the application	Backup of the application remains unavailable.	Backup of the application becomes available.

Sizing Guide

To obtain and maintain optimum performance under varying operational conditions of the application, you must take into account the number of networked devices, network topology, and the set of application features that you need.

Selection of the optimal application configuration consists of the following steps:

1. Selecting a common deployment scenario
2. Calculating hardware requirements using the sizing calculator

Common scenarios for deployment and installation of application components

The scenario for deployment and installation of application components is determined by the planned load on the application servers.

You can install one or multiple Central Node components. If you install multiple Central Node components, you can use them independently of each other or combine them for centralized management in distributed solution mode.

The criteria for choosing a deployment scheme are presented in the table below. The selection algorithm is as follows:

1. In each row of the table, select the cell containing the value of the criterion corresponding to your IT infrastructure.

   If a row contains two cells with identical values, you must select the cell on the left.

2. Select the right-most column in which there are marked cells.

Selecting a deployment scenario when using KATA functionality

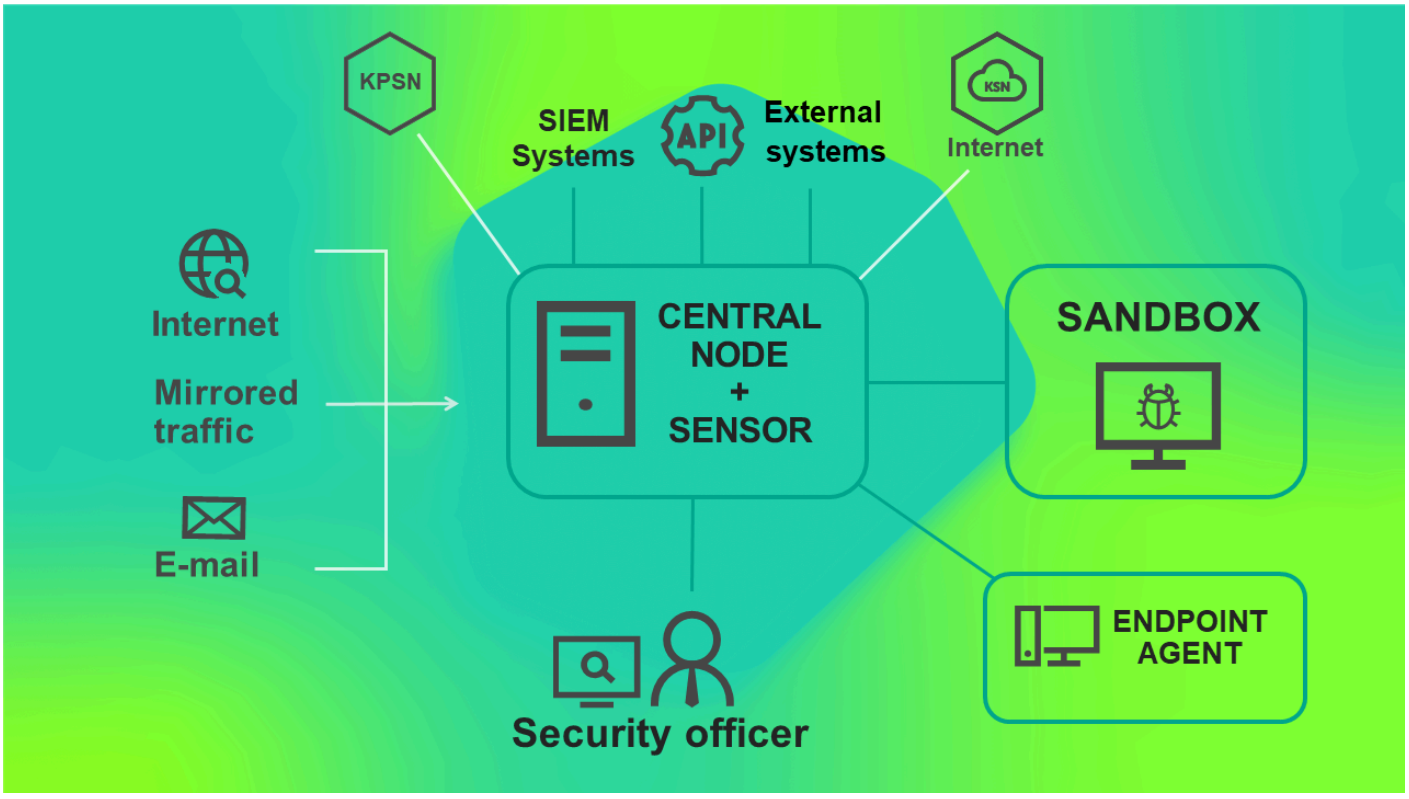
Criterion	Two-server scenario	Three-server scenario	Four- or more server scenario
Network traffic and mail traffic cannot be received on the same device.	No	Yes	Yes
Communication channel bandwidth	1 Gbps	From 1 to 2 Gbps	Over 2 Gbps
The number of remote infrastructures in which traffic needs to be analyzed.	No	One	Two or more
The capacities of one Sandbox component are insufficient to analyze all objects within acceptable time frames.	No	No	Yes

Two-server deployment scenario

When using this deployment scenario, the Central Node and Sensor components are installed on the same server or cluster. This server or cluster receives traffic, performs an initial analysis of traffic and a deeper analysis of extracted files. Based on the scan results, components detect signs of targeted attacks on the organization's IT infrastructure.

The Sandbox component is installed on the other server.

The scenario for application operation when deployed on two servers is presented in the figure below.



Application operating scenario when deployed on two servers

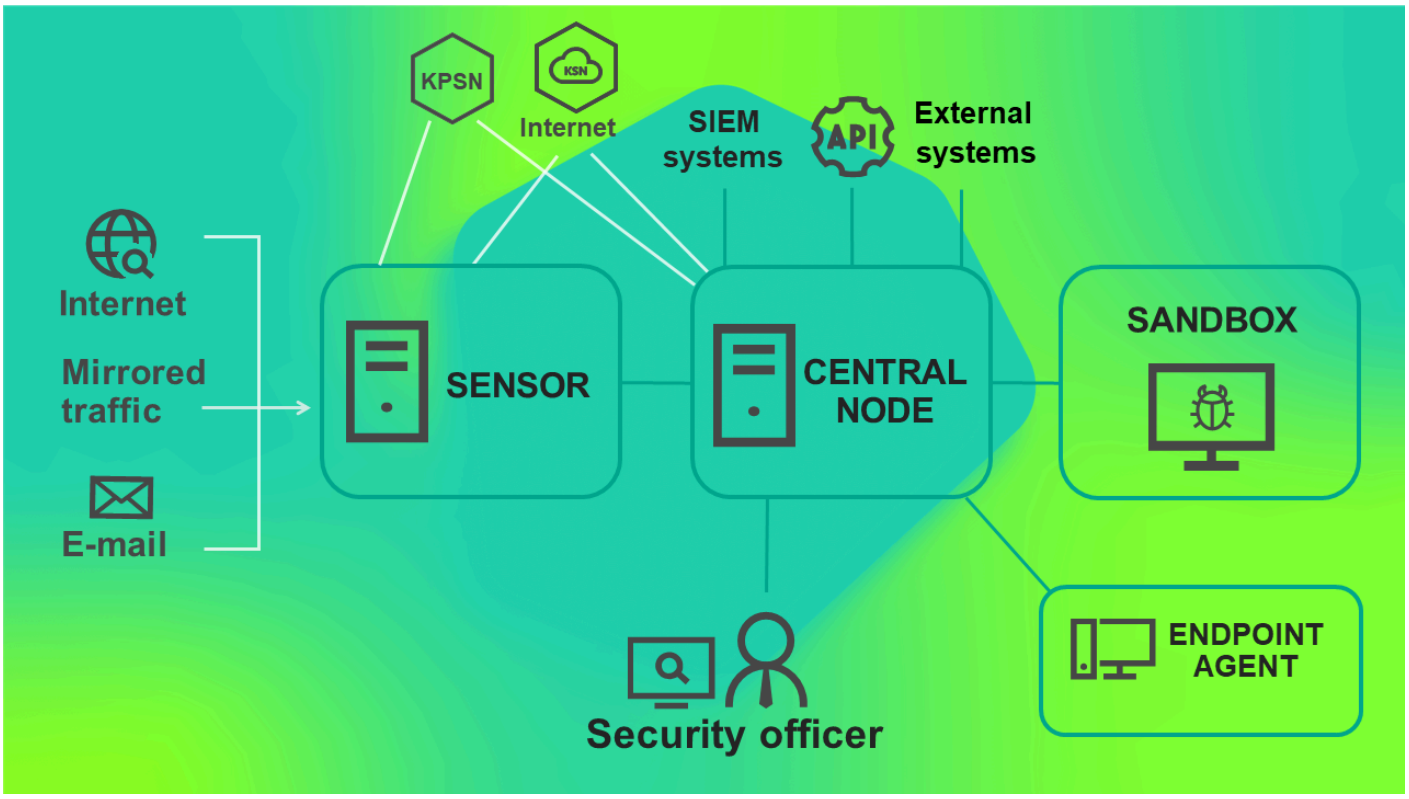
Three-server deployment scenario

When using this deployment scenario, the Sensor, Central Node and Sandbox components are installed on separate servers. The Central Node component can also be deployed as a cluster. The Sensor receives traffic, performs an initial analysis, extracts files and forwards them to the Central Node component for a deeper analysis.

Using this deployment scenario, the Central Node component can receive traffic and perform an initial analysis of data in the main infrastructure. In this case, you can install the Sensor component on a server of a remote infrastructure whose traffic needs to be analyzed. If the link bandwidth in the main infrastructure is more than 2 Gbps, we recommend installing the Sensor in the main infrastructure.

The traffic exchanged between the Central Node and Sensor components comprises up to 20% of traffic received by the Sensor component.

The application operating scenario when deployed on three servers is presented in the figure below.



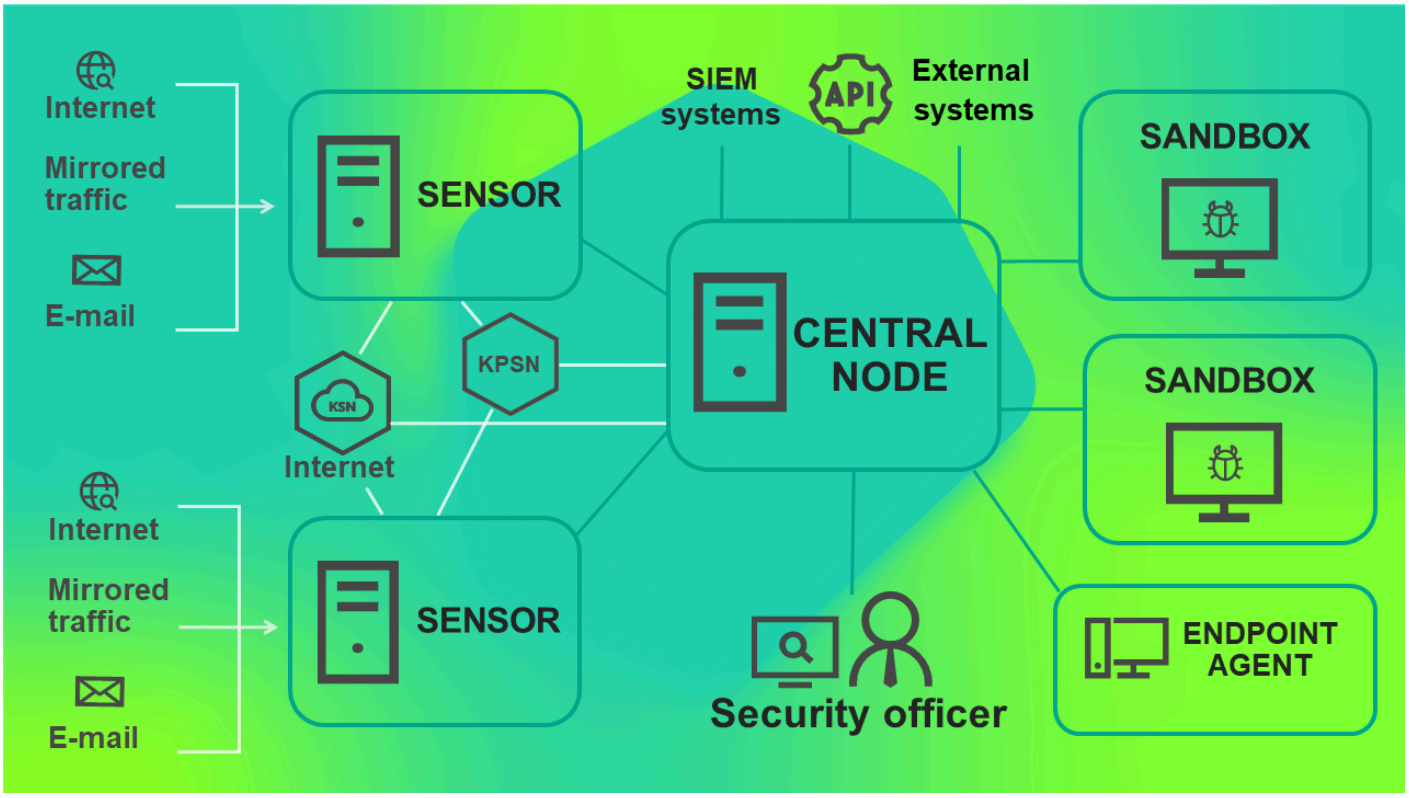
Application operating scenario when deployed on three servers

Scenario of deployment on four or more servers

If there is a large volume of traffic, you can install multiple Sensor components or multiple Sandbox components on different servers. This scenario is recommended for deployment in large organizations.

You can also use one Sandbox component to connect to multiple Central Node components.

The operating schematic of the application when deployed on four or more servers is presented in the figure below.



Application operating scenario when deployed on four or more servers

Sizing calculator

After you have selected the deployment scenario that is most appropriate for your IT infrastructure, you must calculate the hardware requirements for servers used for installing application components.

The hardware requirements for 7.1 Central Node servers are different from the hardware requirements of the previous version of the component. We strongly recommend making sure that your server configuration satisfies the requirements listed in the Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA functionality and Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA and NDR functionality sections.

If necessary, you can use version 8.0.1 of the application on hardware designed for version 5.1 of the application.

In this case, the following restrictions apply:

- You can only use the application functionality that is available in version 5.1. If you want to use the functionality of other versions of the application, the hardware of the Central Node servers must satisfy the hardware requirements listed in the Help for those versions.

  You can find the list of new features in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform 6.0–8.0.1 in the *What's new* section of the Help for the corresponding version.

- The application must be deployed on the Ubuntu Server operating system.

- You can only use the KATA license key.

- Upgrading the application from version 5.1 to version 8.0.1 is only possible if the CPU of the Central Node server supports the BMI2, AVX, and AVX2 instruction sets. If the instruction sets listed above are not supported, you can install version 8.0.1 of the application from the distribution kit, bypassing the update process.

  The upgrade must be performed sequentially from version 5.1: 5.1 → 6.0, 6.0 → 6.0.2, 6.0.2 → 6.1, 6.1 → 7.0.3, 7.0.3 → 7.1.1, 7.1.1 → 7.1.3, 7.1.3 → 7.1.7, 7.1.3 or 7.1.7 → 8.0.

Calculations for the Sensor component

When calculating the hardware requirements for the Sensor component, consider that the maximum traffic volume that can be processed is 10 Gbps. This maximum traffic volume can be processed on one Sensor installed on a standalone server or on multiple Sensors installed on standalone servers which are connected to one Central Node. The total traffic volume from all Sensors connected to one Central Node may not exceed 10 Gbps.

> If the network includes more than one 10 Gbps segment and you need to process traffic in these segments, you must use the distributed solution mode.

You can use the Sensor server as a proxy server for communication between Endpoint Agents that scan files in the Sandbox and the Central Node, which helps simplify the configuration of network rules. For example, if computers with Endpoint Agent are in a separate segment of the network, it is sufficient to configure a connection between Central Node and Sensor servers.

If you are using the Sensor as a proxy server for communication between the Endpoint Agent and Central Node components, you need to take into account that the maximum allowed loss of packets between the Sensor and Central Node servers is 10% with a packet delay of up to 100 ms.

The required bandwidth of the link between Central Node and Sensor servers depends on the traffic volume that must be processed and is calculated as follows:

```
<10% of the traffic on the SPAN port at normal load or 20% of the traffic on the SPAN
port at peak load> + <mail traffic> + <ICAP traffic>
```

Hardware requirements for the Sensor server

The Sensor component can be integrated with the IT infrastructure of the organization in the following ways:

- Receive mirrored traffic from from SPAN ports of network devices.
- Connect to a mail server over the POP3 protocol.
- Connect to a mail server over the SMTP protocol.
- Receive traffic from a proxy server over the ICAP protocol.
- Receiving data from the Endpoint Agent component for scanning files in Sandbox

The hardware requirements for a physical or virtual Sensor server are listed in the tables below.

Sensor was tested on virtual platforms with a load of up to 1000 Mbit/s inclusive; however, virtual platforms support greater loads. If you want to deploy the Sensor component on a virtual platform and plan to process up to 1000 Mbps of traffic, you can use the tables below to calculate the hardware requirements for the Sensor server. If you plan to process more traffic, please contact your account manager to get a calculation of hardware requirements.

Hardware requirements of the Sensor server depending on the volume of processed traffic from SPAN ports when using the KATA functionality

Volume of processed traffic (Mbps)	Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores
100	20	6
500	24	10
1000	32	14
2000	48	20
4000	56	30
7000	128	44
10000	160	60

Hardware requirements of the Sensor server depending on the volume of processed traffic from SPAN ports when using the KATA and NDR functionality

Volume of processed traffic (Mbps)	Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores	Minimum number of logical cores when saving mirrored traffic dumps
100	28	6	8
500	32	12	14
1000	40	16	18
2000	64	24	26
4000	80	36	40
7000	160	52	56
10000	192	72	76

If the same Sensor server is processing traffic via multiple protocols, to calculate the server configuration, remember that when integration with a mail server or mail sensor is configured, you need to disable SMTP traffic processing.

Hardware requirements for a Sensor server when using additional server protection

You can install Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux on the Sensor server to cover this server with advanced protection. In this case, in addition to the requirements listed in the tables above, you need to add 1 logical core plus 0.8 cores per 1000 Mbps of traffic processed.

For detailed information about installing and configuring the application, refer to the Kaspersky Next Endpoint Security for Linux Help.

Hardware requirements for the Sensor server when using Sensor as a proxy server

If the Sensor is used as a proxy server for receiving telemetry from up to 1000 Endpoint Agents, you need to add 2 more logical cores and 4 GB of extra RAM to the requirements listed in the tables above. When using from 1000 to 15,000 Endpoint Agent components, you will need 8 more logical cores and 12 GB of extra RAM.

Hardware requirements of the Sensor server when saving dumps of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports

If you save dumps of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports, you need to install separate storage in the form of a RAID array pool or DAS with a maximum throughput calculated using the following formula:

D = 3*M

where

- D is the throughput of the disk storage.
- M is the maximum volume of traffic to be recorded.

The capacity of the disk storage is determined by the retention period that you need and the maximum volume of stored traffic, taking filters into account. As a ballpark figure, to store 7 days of 10 Gbps traffic, you need a disk storage with a capacity of 750 TiB.

Mitigations

If you want to process only email messages, but not mirrored traffic from SPAN ports, we recommend using a Sensor installed on the same server as the Central Node.

Disk space requirements on the Sensor server

We recommend using a RAID 1 disk array. You need at least 600 GB of total disk space.

Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA functionality

This section describes the software and hardware requirements for physical and virtual Central Node servers when using the KATA functionality.

Hardware requirements for the Central Node physical server

Hardware requirements for a Central Node physical server depend on the following conditions:

- Volume of processed traffic

Decrypted SSL/TLS traffic in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform increases the load required for its processing by 5 times compared to unencrypted traffic (standard traffic coming from SPAN ports). In this case, to determine the volume of processed traffic for calculating the load on the server, use the following formula:

```
<volume of decrypted traffic> = 5 * <volume of unencrypted traffic>
```

The volume of traffic processed on the ICAP server is calculated in accordance with the table in the Calculations for the Central Node component when using ICAP functionality section.

- Number of email messages processed per second.

If the volume of processed traffic is greater than 1 Gbps, you must install Central Node and Sensor components on standalone servers.

The hardware requirements for the Central Node physical server are listed in the table below.

Hardware requirements for the Central Node physical server

Maximum number of email messages per second	Maximum SPAN traffic on an Embedded Sensor (Mbps)	Maximum SPAN traffic on a standalone Sensor (Mbps)	Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores at 3 GHz	First disk subsystem (RAID 1 or RAID 10)			
					ROPS (read operations per second)	WOPS (write operations per second)	Disk array size (TB)	The number of disks in the array
2	500	Not processed	72	24	100	1000	2	4
2	1000	Not processed	88	32	100	1000	2	4
5	Not processed	2000	64	32	100	1000	2	2
20	Not processed	4000	80	56	100	1000	3	2
20	Not processed	7000	112	92	200	1500	4	2
20	Not processed	10,000	128	128	200	1500	4	2

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not support operation with software RAID array.

Hardware requirements for the Central Node virtual server

When installing the component on a VMware ESXi virtual platform, you need to increase the minimum number of logical cores (the figure specified in the physical Central Node server hardware requirements table) by 10%.

If you want to install Central Node component on a "Brest", "RED Virtualization", KVM, or zVirt Node virtual platform, you need to increase the minimum number of logical cores by 40%. If you want to mitigate Spectre or Meltdown type vulnerabilities at the level of the hypervisor OS, you need to additionally increase the minimum number of logical cores by 1.5 times.

The other hardware requirements for virtual servers are similar to the requirements for physical servers.

Central Node was tested on virtual platforms with a load of up to 1000 Mbps inclusive.

Hardware requirements for a Central Node server when using additional server protection

You can install Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux on the Central Node server to cover this server with advanced protection. In this case, in addition to the requirements listed above, you need to add 2 logical cores plus 0.8 cores per 1000 Mbps of SPAN traffic processed. If you use the ICAP functionality, you also need to add 0.5 cores for every 100 ICAP requests per second.

For detailed information about installing and configuring the application, refer to the Kaspersky Next Endpoint Security for Linux Help.

Software requirements for the Central Node virtual server

In virtual disk settings, a Thick Provision Eager Zeroed disk type must be selected.

To avoid possible performance degradation when deploying the application on a virtual platform, you need to do the following:

- Set Latency Sensitivity to High.

  If your hypervisor does not support High Latency Sensitivity, you can use other virtual machine prioritization mechanisms, such as CPU Affinity or resource reservation.

- Reserve all memory.

- Reserve all CPU.

Additional requirements for the Central Node servers

Additional hardware requirements for physical Central Node servers are given in the following sections: Calculations for the Central Node component when integration with external systems is configured, Calculations for the Central Node component when using ICAP functionality, Calculations for the Central Node component in the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, Calculations for the Central Node component deployed as a cluster.

Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA and NDR functionality

This section describes the software and hardware requirements for physical and virtual Central Node servers when using the KATA and NDR functionality.

Hardware requirements for the Central Node physical server

Hardware requirements for a Central Node physical server depend on the following conditions:

- Volume of processed traffic

  Decrypted SSL/TLS traffic in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform increases the load required for its processing by 5 times compared to unencrypted traffic (standard traffic coming from SPAN ports). In this case, to determine the volume of processed traffic for calculating the load on the server, use the following formula:

  ```
  <volume of decrypted traffic> = 5 * <volume of unencrypted traffic>
  ```

  The volume of traffic processed on the ICAP server is calculated in accordance with the table in the Calculations for the Central Node component when using ICAP functionality section.

- Number of email messages processed per second.

If the volume of processed traffic is greater than 1 Gbps, you must install Central Node and Sensor components on standalone servers.

The hardware requirements for the Central Node physical server are listed in the table below.

Hardware requirements for the Central Node physical server

Maximum number of email messages per second	Maximum SPAN traffic on an Embedded Sensor (Mbps)	Maximum SPAN traffic on a standalone Sensor (Mbps)	Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores at 3 GHz	First disk subsystem (RAID 1 or RAID 10)			
					ROPS (read operations per second)	WOPS (write operations per second)	Disk array size (TB)	The number of disks in the array
2	500	Not processed	96	38	100	1000	2	4
2	1000	Not processed	112	48	200	2000	2	4
5	Not processed	2000	96	44	200	2000	3	4
20	Not processed	4000	112	72	200	2000	3	4
20	Not processed	7000	144	104	300	2500	4	4
20	Not processed	10,000	160	140	300	2500	4	4

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not support operation with software RAID array.

When connecting up to 1000 Endpoint Agents NDR, the hardware requirements for the Central Node server are similar to those listed in the table above. When connecting more than 1000 Endpoint Agents NDR, you need an additional 4 GB of RAM and 3 logical cores.

When installing the component on a VMware ESXi virtual platform, you need to increase the minimum number of logical cores (the figure specified in the physical Central Node server hardware requirements table) by 10%.

The other hardware requirements for virtual servers are similar to the requirements for physical servers.

Hardware requirements for a Central Node server when using additional server protection

You can install Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux on the Central Node server to cover this server with advanced protection. In this case, in addition to the requirements listed above, you need to add 2 logical cores plus 0.8 cores per 1000 Mbps of SPAN traffic processed. If you use the ICAP functionality, you also need to add 0.5 cores for every 100 ICAP requests per second.

For detailed information about installing and configuring the application, refer to the Kaspersky Next Endpoint Security for Linux Help.

Software requirements for the Central Node virtual server

In virtual disk settings, a Thick Provision Eager Zeroed disk type must be selected.

To avoid possible performance degradation when deploying the application on a virtual platform, you need to do the following:

- Set Latency Sensitivity to High.

  If your hypervisor does not support High Latency Sensitivity, you can use other virtual machine prioritization mechanisms, such as CPU Affinity or resource reservation.

- Reserve all memory.

- Reserve all CPU.

Additional requirements for the Central Node servers

Additional hardware requirements for physical Central Node servers are given in the following sections: Calculations for the Central Node component when integration with external systems is configured, Calculations for the Central Node component when using ICAP functionality, Calculations for the Central Node component in the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, Calculations for the Central Node component deployed as a cluster.

Calculations for the Central Node component when integration with external systems is configured

If you have configured integration to scan objects of an internal system using REST API, you need to increase the hardware requirements for the physical Central Node server described in the Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA functionality and KATA and NDR sections. Additional hardware requirements are presented in the table below.

Hardware requirements for a Central Node physical server with integrations with external systems

Maximum number of processed objects per second	Number of additional logical cores	Number of additional Sandbox servers
8	2	1
16	4	2
24	7	3

If you configured integration to send events to an external system using the REST API, you must increase the hardware requirements of the Central Node server by 1 logical core and 6 GB of RAM.

Calculations for the Central Node component when integrating with Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway

The table below lists the hardware requirements for the Central Node physical server when using the KATA functionality and integrating with Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway 2.1.1.

Hardware requirements for the Central Node physical server when using the KATA functionality and integrating with Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway 2.1.1

Maximum number of email messages per second	Maximum volume of traffic from SPAN ports (Mbps)	Disk			
		Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores	Logical core clock rate	WOPS (write operations per second)
1	10,000	36	4	1.15	200
2	10,000	36	4	1.15	200
5	10,000	36	6	1.15	200
10	10,000	36	10	1.15	200
20	10,000	36	12	1.5	200
30	10,000	36	16	2.7	200
50	10,000	36	20	2.7	200
100	10,000	36	40	2.7	200

Calculations for the Central Node component when using ICAP functionality

The **AV_rps** value in the table below stands for the number of files per second sent for anti-virus scanning.

On average, two anti-virus scan jobs are created per second for 1 Mbps of traffic. The total number of ICAP requests may not exceed 5000 per second.

Configurations of physical Central Node servers

Lite: AV_rps up to 65; 75 Mbps	
Minimum number of logical cores	16
Minimum RAM	64 GB
First disk subsystem (RAID 10)	4 drives, 1200 GB each
Medium: AV_rps up to 250; 0.3 Gbps	
Minimum number of logical cores	32

Minimum RAM	80 GB
First disk subsystem (RAID 10)	4 drives, 1200 GB each
High: AV_rps up to 750; 1 Gbps	
Minimum number of logical cores	72
Minimum RAM	96 GB
First disk subsystem (RAID 10)	4 drives, 1200 GB each

Calculations for the Central Node component in the distributed solution and multitenancy mode

You can connect up to 150 SCNs to one PCN.

If you want to connect up to 10 SCNs to one PCN, the minimum amount of RAM and the minimum logical core count on the PCN server must be 20% higher than on a Central Node server not in distributed solution mode. The load on the SCNs can vary within the limits specified in the hardware requirements for the Central Node server.

When connecting 11 to 150 SCN to one PCN, the hardware configuration of the PCN server must satisfy the following requirements:

- <Minimum number of logical cores listed in the hardware requirements for the Central Node server> + 10.
- <Minimum RAM listed in the hardware requirements for the Central Node server> + 32.
- <ROPS listed in the hardware requirements for the Central Node server> + 1500.
- <WOPS listed in the hardware requirements for the Central Node server> + 3000.

If you want to use the PCN only for SCN management and do not intend to connect external data sources to it (for example, Endpoint Agents or external systems), the PCN physical server can have the following configuration:

- CPU:
  - Clock rate: 2.5 GHz.
  - Number of threads: 20.
  - Number of cores: 10.
- RAM: 80 GB.
- 2 SSDs (Write Intensive (WI)).

Calculations for the Central Node component are provided in the following sections:

- *Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA functionality*.
- *Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA and NDR functionality*.

Calculations for the Central Node component deployed as a cluster

A cluster must include at least 4 servers: 2 storage servers and 2 processing servers. If you have up to 15,000 connected Endpoint Agent components, you need at least 2 processing servers. If you have from 15,000 to 30,000 connected Endpoint Agent components, you need at least 3 processing servers. The number of storage servers is determined by the amount of disk space required for storing data.

Each cluster server must have two network adapters to configure cluster and external subnet. The cluster subnet must be capable of up to 10 Gbps.

The cluster subnet must also meet the following requirements:

- A cluster subnet must include only the cluster servers and network switches.
- The cluster subnet must be isolated.
- The cluster servers must all be in the same L1 or L2 segment. To do this, you can connect all the servers in the cluster to a single network switch or use software tunneling. For example, L2TPv3 or Overlay Transport Virtualization (OTV).
- The "network latency" value must meet the "single digit latency" requirement, that is, the value must be less than 10 milliseconds.

Hardware requirements for cluster physical servers

Hardware requirements for processing servers depend on the use of KATA and NDR functionality and are equivalent to those specified in the following sections: *Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA functionality*, *Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA and NDR functionality*.

The hardware requirements for the storage servers are listed in the table below.

Hardware requirements for the storage servers

Minimum RAM (GB)	Minimum number of logical cores	First disk subsystem			Second disk subsystem	
		RAID disk array type	Number of disks in the RAID array	Single HDD volume (GB)	Number of disks	Single HDD volume (GB)
128	16	RAID 1	2	1200	at least 6	at least 1200

We recommend using same-size disks for the two disk subsystems. The second disk subsystem uses disks that are not combined into a RAID array.

The performance requirements for disk subsystems are equivalent to those specified in the following sections: *Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA functionality*, *Calculations for the Central Node component when using KATA and NDR functionality*.

Calculations for small-scale configurations of the solution

To deploy the application on the KVM virtual platform, you need to install the KVM hypervisor based on the Debian GNU/Linux 12 operating system using QEMU 8.0.2.

The software requirements for the VMware ESXi virtual platform are provided in the *Hardware and software requirements* section.

When deploying Central Node on a virtual platform, you must keep in mind the following limitations:

- KVM:
  - The application can be installed only with Ubuntu installation files.
  - Only the non-high-availability version of the application can be installed.
  - Only Embedded Sensor can be used.
  - You can only connect a Sandbox component deployed outside the KVM virtualization platform on a physical server or on another supported virtualization platform.
  - For each Central Node server deployed in a virtual infrastructure, a separate network interface must be used for receiving mirrored SPAN traffic.
  - The alert information API for external systems cannot be used.
  - Support of KVM virtualizations used in cloud solutions is not guaranteed.
  - In the virtual machine settings, the **host** value must be set for the **type** parameter in the CPU settings and the **VMware vmxnet3** value for the **model** parameter in the network adapter settings.
- VMware ESXi:
  - Only the non-high-availability version of the application can be installed.
  - Only Embedded Sensor can be used.
  - For each Central Node server deployed in a virtual infrastructure, a separate network interface must be used for receiving mirrored SPAN traffic.

The hardware requirements for the Central Node server depending on the functionality being used are listed in the table below.

Hardware requirements of the Central Node server when using KATA functionality

Maximum number of email messages per minute	Maximum volume of traffic from SPAN ports on the server with the Central Node component (Mbps)	Minimum number of logical cores at 3 GHz	Minimum RAM (GB)
1	20	6	31*/32
5	50	6	31/32
30	100	12	31/40
30	100	12	31/46

* The value before the slash represents the amount of RAM required to install the Central Node component. After installation, the amount of RAM must be brought up to the value after the slash.

Calculations for the Sandbox component

The hardware requirements for the server with the Sandbox component depend on the type and volume of traffic being processed and on the allowed object scan time.

By default, the allowed time for scanning an object is 1 hour. To reduce this time, you need a more powerful server or a greater number of Sandbox servers.

We recommend calculating the configuration of the Sandbox component as follows:

1. As a pilot deployment, install the Central Node and Sensor components on one server and the Sandbox component on another server.

   To get enough statistics, the application needs to process the organization's traffic for a week.

2. Run the script to record data by running the following commands:

   ```
   sudo kata-run.sh kata-collect --output-dir path-to-folder
   ```

   ```
   --output-dir <path to directory>
   ```

   When the script finishes, the *collect.tar.gz* archive is placed in the specified directory.

3. Forward this archive to Kaspersky staff for analysis.

   Having multiple virtual machines are running simultaneously improves the speed at which objects from the queue are processed.

The Sandbox component is not supported on AMD CPUs.

Hardware requirements for the Sandbox server

The calculated numbers of Sandbox servers when using preconfigured images of operating systems are shown in the table below.

Hardware requirements for the Sandbox component when using preconfigured images of operating systems

Maximum number of email messages per second	Maximum volume of traffic from SPAN ports (Mbps)	Maximum number of computers with the Endpoint Agent component	Number of physical servers with the Sandbox component when all images are used
1	200	1000	1
2	500	3000	1
1	1000	5000	1
5	2000	5000	1
20	4000	10,000	2

Maximum number of email messages per second	Maximum volume of traffic from SPAN ports (Mbps)	Maximum number of computers with the Endpoint Agent component	Number of physical servers with the Sandbox component when all images are used
20	7000	15,000	3
20	10,000	15,000	4

If you want to install the Sandbox component on a VMware ESXi virtual machine, you need 5 times more virtual servers to get the same performance you would get from a physical server. When installing the Sandbox component on the "Brest", "RED Virtualization", or zVirt Node virtual platform, you need 13 times as many servers. The estimate for the number of servers is given with the need to configure the object scan duration in mind.

Additional capacity may be required if you are using custom images for Sandbox servers. To calculate the number of physical servers with the Sandbox component required when using custom operating system images, you can use the following formula:

```
<number of files that need to be processed per hour in accordance with to user-defined Sandbox rules> * <number of custom operating system images> / 1000
```

To calculate the number of VMware ESXi virtual machines with the Sandbox component required when using custom operating system images, you can use the following formula:

```
<number of files that need to be processed per hour in accordance with to user-defined Sandbox rules> * <number of custom operating system images> / 200
```

When installing the Sandbox component on the "Brest" or zVirt Node virtualization platforms, you can use the following formula to calculate the number of virtual machines required when using custom operating systems images:

```
<Number of physical servers with the Sandbox component> * 5 * 2.6
```

When installing the Sandbox component on the RED Virtualization platform, you can use the following formula to calculate the number of virtual machines required when using custom operating systems images:

```
<Number of physical servers with the Sandbox component> * 5 * 2.5
```

For the number of physical servers with the Sandbox component, see the *Hardware requirements for the Sandbox component when using preset images of operating systems* table above.

The estimated number of Sandbox servers is provided for servers with the following configurations:

- When installing the Sandbox component on a physical server:
  - 2 Intel® Xeon® 8 Core™ (HT) CPUs at 2.6 GHz or more
  - 80 GB of RAM.
  - 2 HDDs of 300 GB each, in a RAID 1 array.

  When installing the Sandbox component on a physical server with this configuration, you need to set the limit for the number of simultaneously running virtual machines to 48.

- When installing the Sandbox component on a virtual machine:

  - Intel Xeon 15 Core (HT) CPU, at 2.1 GHz or more.

    When installing the Sandbox component on "Brest", zVirt Node, or RED Virtualization platforms, we recommend using Intel processors of the Ice Lake generation or later.

  - 32 GB of RAM.

  - 300 GB HDD.

    On a virtual machine:

    1. Nested virtualization is allowed.
    2. High Latency Sensitivity settings are enabled (only when installing on a VMware ESXi virtual machine).
    3. All RAM is reserved.
    4. The entire CPU frequency is reserved.

  When installing the Sandbox component on a virtual machine with this configuration, you need to set the limit for the number of simultaneously running virtual machines to 12.

If you intend to use custom operating system images, we recommend increasing the amount of disk space to 600 GB or more.

Preparing for installing application components

This section provides information on how to prepare your corporate IT infrastructure for the installation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components.

Preparing the IT infrastructure for installing application components

This section describes the ports you must configure before installing the application. For correct operation of the application components after installation, you must configure firewall rules.

Before installing the application, prepare your corporate IT infrastructure for the installation of components of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

1. Ensure that the servers, the computer intended for working with the application web interface, and the computers to be installed with the Endpoint Agent component all satisfy the hardware and software requirements.

2. To protect the network from the objects being analyzed, deny access to the local network of the Sandbox server for the management network interface and the network interface used for internet access of processed objects.

3. Prepare the corporate IT infrastructure in accordance with the table below:

Ports for interaction between Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components

Source	Direction	Port or protocol	Description
Central Node	Inbound	TCP 22	Connecting to the server over SSH
		TCP 8085	Receiving data from the Endpoint Agent
		TCP 8443	Access to the web interface of the application
		TCP 7423, 8443, 9081, 13520	Communication with the Sensor server
		UDP 53	
	Outgoing	TCP 80, 443, 1443	Communication with the KSN servers and Kaspersky update servers
		TCP 443	Sending objects to Sandbox for scanning
		TCP 601	Sending messages to the SIEM system
		TCP 9443	Communication with the Sensor server
		UDP 53	
	Inbound and outbound	ESP	For interaction between Central Node and Sensor over a secure link based on the IPSec protocol

Source	Direction	Port or protocol	Description
Sensor	Inbound	TCP 22	Connecting to the server over SSH
		TCP 1344	Receiving traffic from the proxy server
		TCP 25	Receiving SMTP traffic from the mail server
		TCP 443	When Sensor is used as a proxy server for communication between workstations with Endpoint Agent and Central Node
		TCP 8085	Receiving data from the Endpoint Agent (NDR)
		TCP 9444	Access to the web interface of the component. The port is closed by default.
		TCP 9443	Communication with the Central Node server
		UDP 53	
	Outgoing	TCP 80 TCP 443	Communication with the KSN servers and Kaspersky update servers
		TCP 995	Integration with the mail server for secure connections
		TCP 110	Integration with the mail server for unsecured connections
		TCP 7423, 8443, 9081, 13520	Communication with the Central Node server
		UDP 53	
	Inbound and outbound	ESP	For interaction between Central Node and Sensor over a secure link based on the IPSec protocol
Sandbox	Inbound (management interface)	TCP 22	Connecting to the server over SSH
		TCP 443	Interaction with the Central Node
		TCP 8443	Access to the web interface of the application
	Outbound (management interface)	TCP 80 TCP 443	Communication with Kaspersky update servers
	Outbound and inbound in response (interface for access of processed objects)	Any	Access to the internet for analyzing the network behavior of processed objects. Deny access to the organization's LAN to protect the network from the analyzed objects.
SCN (when using the distributed solution mode)	Outgoing	TCP 8443, 8444	For interaction between SCN and PCN over a secure link based on the IPSec protocol
	Inbound and outbound	TCP 443, 53, 11000:11006, UDP 53 ESP	
PCN (when using the distributed solution mode)	Inbound	TCP 8443, 8444	
	Inbound and outbound	TCP 443, 53, 11000:11006, UDP 53 ESP	

If you install an additional network interface that receives only mirrored traffic in a VMware ESXi™ virtual environment, use the E1000 network adapter or disable the LRO (large receive offload) option on a VMXNET3 network adapter.

For the connection between Central Node, Sensor, PCN and SCN to work correctly, servers with the installed components must be placed in the same subnet. Network Address Translation (NAT) is not supported. This limitation does not apply to Endpoint Agent components, which can be located in a subnet separate from the Central Node subnet.

The figures below show the diagram of network communication between application components and systems that the application depends on. Arrows in the diagram indicate the direction of the link: each arrow points from the object that initiates the connection to the object that responds.

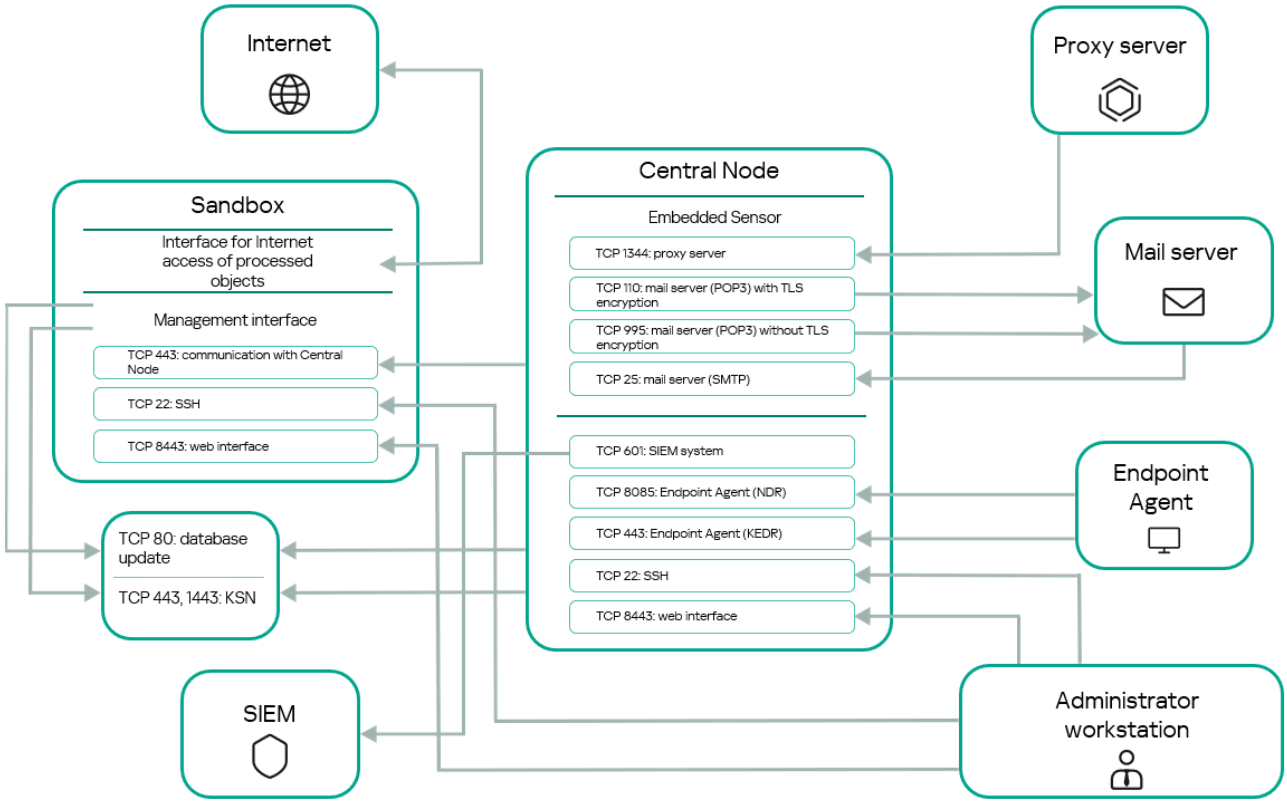


Diagram of network communication between application components and systems that the application depends on. Central Node deployed with Embedded Sensor

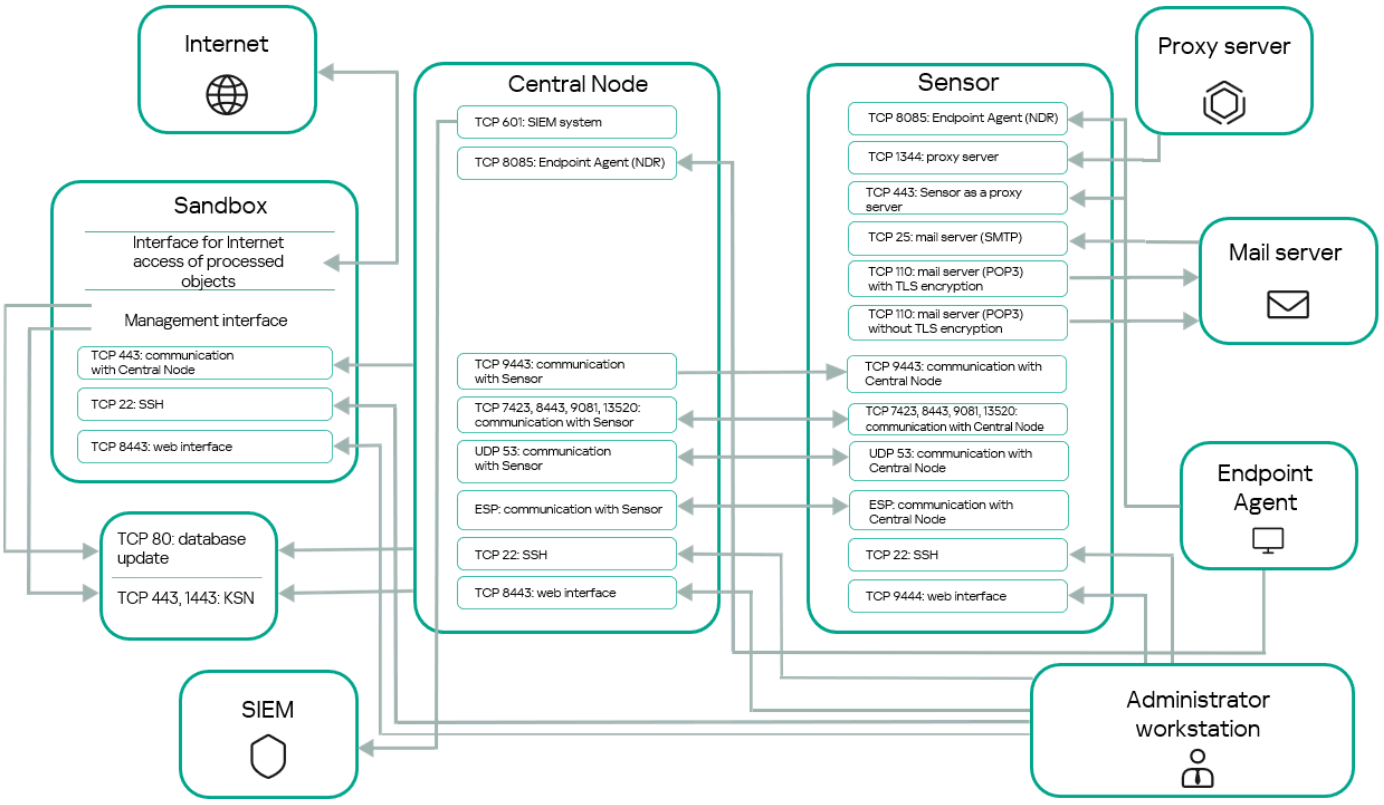


Diagram of network communication between application components and systems that the application depends on. Sensor deployed on a different server than the Central Node

Preparing the IT infrastructure for integration with a mail server used for receiving messages via POP3

If you are using a Microsoft Exchange mail server as your mail server and an email sender configured a request for read receipt notification, you must disable read receipt notifications. Otherwise, read receipt notifications will be sent from the email address that you have configured as the email address used for receiving messages of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. You must also disable automatic processing of meeting requests to prevent filling of the mailbox used for receiving messages of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

To disable sending read receipt notifications from the email address used for receiving messages of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

1. On the Microsoft Exchange server, check whether or not notifications are enabled. To do so, execute the command:

   ```
   Get-MailboxMessageConfiguration -Identity <email address for receiving messages by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform> | fl
   ```

2. If notifications are enabled, run the following command:

   ```
   Set-MailboxMessageConfiguration -Identity <email address for receiving messages by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform> -ReadReceiptResponse NeverSend
   ```

   This will disable read receipt notifications from the email address used for receiving messages of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

To disable automatic processing of meeting requests:

1. On the Microsoft Exchange server, check whether or not notifications are enabled. To do so, execute the command:

   ```
   Get-CalendarProcessing -Identity <email address for receiving messages by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform> | fl
   ```

2. If automatic processing of meeting requests is enabled, run the following command:

   ```
   Set-CalendarProcessing -Identity <email address for receiving messages by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform> -AutomateProcessing:None
   ```

Automatic processing of meeting requests will be disabled.

Preparing the IT infrastructure for integration with a mail server used for receiving messages via SMTP

To prepare your corporate IT infrastructure for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform integration with a mail server over the SMTP protocol:

1. On the external mail server, configure rules for forwarding copies of the messages that you want to send for scanning by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to the addresses specified in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

2. Specify the route for forwarding email messages to the Sensor server.

   It is recommended to specify a static route – IP address of the Sensor server.

3. Configure the firewall of your organization to allow inbound connections to port 25 of the Sensor server from mail servers that are forwarding copies of email messages.

You can also improve the security of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform integration with a mail server over the SMTP protocol.

To improve the security of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform integration with a mail server over the SMTP protocol.

1. Configure authentication of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server on the side of the mail servers forwarding email messages for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

2. Configure mandatory encryption of traffic on mail servers that are forwarding email messages for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

3. Configure authentication of mail servers forwarding email messages for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side.

Preparing the virtual machine in VMware ESXi for installing the Sandbox component

To prepare the virtual machine in VMware ESXi for installing the Sandbox component:

1. Run the VMware ESXi hypervisor.
2. Open the virtual machine management console.
3. In the context menu of the virtual machine on which you want to install the Sandbox component, choose **Edit Settings**.

   This opens the virtual machine properties window.
4. On the **Virtual Hardware** tab, expand the **CPU** settings group and select the **Expose hardware-assisted virtualization to guest OS** check box.
5. On the **VM Options** tab in the **Latency Sensitivity** drop-down list, select **High**.
6. Click **OK**.

The virtual machine is ready for installing the Sandbox component.

Preparing an installation disk image with the Central Node, Sensor, and Sandbox components

Before installing the application, you must prepare an iso image of the installation disk with the Central Node, Sensor, and Sandbox components based on the Astra Linux operating system.

Minimum hardware requirements for a device that can be used to create the iso image:

- CPU: 4 cores, clock rate 2500 MHz or more.
- RAM: 8 GB.
- Available disk space: 100 GB.

Software requirements:

- Operating system based on an up-to-date Linux kernel.
- Docker 20 or later

- An ISO image of Astra Linux Special Edition 1.8.2.8 **without** Debian Installer (no '-di' in the name of the image). In this section, the image is referred to as `astra-installation.iso`.

  Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not support other versions of the Astra Linux operating system.

You can create an ISO image of the Central Node and Sensor components of the following versions:

- 8.0.0.1
- 8.0.1.1

To mount an iso image of the Central Node and Sensor or Sandbox components based on the Astra Linux operating system:

1. Download the following files from the distribution kit:

   a. The Central Node and Sensor distribution kit named kata-cn-distribution-<component version>-x86_64_en-ru-zh.tar.gz.

   b. The Sandbox distribution kit named kata-sb-distribution-8.0.0.1-x86_64_en-ru-zh.tar.gz.

   c. The file for making an iso image named iso-builder-8.0.1.1-x86_64_en-ru-zh.tar.

2. Create an iso_builder.sh file **with the following content**.

```
#!/bin/bash
usage="Builds the KATA install ISO.
Usage:
$(basename "$0") [-h] source_iso distribution iso_builder_image build target_iso_name
where:
    -h, --help        - show this text and exit
    source_iso        - absolute path to the source OS ISO file
    distribution      - absolute path to the KATA distribution archive
    iso_builder_image - absolute path to the iso_builder docker image
    build             - absolute path to a temporary build directory
    target_iso_name   - absolute path to the resulting ISO file
"
if [ "$#" -eq 0 ] || [ "$1" == "-h" ] || [ "$1" == "--help" ]
then
    echo "$usage"; exit 10;
fi
if [ "$#" -lt 5 ]
then
    echo "Error: not enough arguments. Please refer to the help text."; exit 11;
fi
docker load -i $3
docker run -v $1:$1 -v $2:$2 -v $4:/build kaspersky/kata/deployment/iso_builder:6.0 --
source-iso-uri file://$1 --kata-distribution-uri file://$2 --target-iso-name $5
```

3. Make this file executable:

```
chmod +x iso_builder.sh
```

4. Run the following command:

```
mkdir /var/kata_builder
```

5. Put the files listed in step 1 and the `astra-installation.iso` image in the newly created /var/kata_builder directory.

6. Run the following command:

   - If you are preparing a disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components:

     ```
     sudo ./iso_builder.sh /var/kata_builder/astra-installation.iso
     /var/kata_builder/kata-cn-distribution-<component version>-x86_64_en-ru-zh.tar.gz
     /var/kata_builder/iso-builder-8.0.1.1-x86_64_en-ru-zh.tar /var/kata_builder
     buildCNSensorAstra.iso
     ```

   - If you are preparing a disk image with the Sandbox component:

     ```
     sudo ./iso_builder.sh /var/kata_builder/astra-installation.iso
     /var/kata_builder/kata-sb-distribution-8.0.0.1-x86_64_en-ru-zh.tar.gz
     /var/kata_builder/iso-builder-8.0.1.1-x86_64_en-ru-zh.tar /var/kata_builder
     buildSandboxAstra.iso
     ```

   After running the commands, the installation disk image named buildCNSensorAstra.iso or buildSandboxAstra.iso is placed in the /var/kata_builder directory.

7. If you keep files in different directories, you can run the following command:

   ```
   sudo ./iso_builder.sh <path to the Astra Linux Special Edition 1.8.1.16 distribution
   package> <component distribution package> <path to the iso-builder-8.0.1.1-x86_64_en-
   ru-zh.tar file> <path at which the ISO image will be mounted, without the assigned ISO
   image name> <name assigned to the ISO image>
   ```

Installing and performing initial configuration of the application

This section contains instructions on installation and initial configuration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

A number of limitations apply to components. We recommend understanding these before installing the application.

Procedure for installing and configuring application components

Installing and configuring the application involves the following steps:

1. **Installing the disk image containing the Sandbox component**
2. **Configuring the Sandbox component through the Sandbox web interface**
3. **Installing the disk images of Microsoft Windows operating systems and applications for the Sandbox component**
4. **Installing the Central Node components with Embedded Sensor**

   You can install the Central Node component with Embedded Sensor in one of the following configurations:

   - Cluster.
   - Server.

   If there are multiple Central Node components, you can use the application in distributed solution mode.
5. **Connecting the Sandbox component to the Central Node**
6. **Installing the Sensor component on a different server than the Central Node**

   If there are multiple Sensor components, you can install and configure the Sensor component on the necessary number of servers.
7. **Connecting the Sensor component to the Central Node**
8. **Configuring the Central Node and Sensor components**
9. **Installing the Endpoint Agent component on computers of the corporate IT infrastructure.**

   As the Endpoint Agent component, you may use following applications: Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

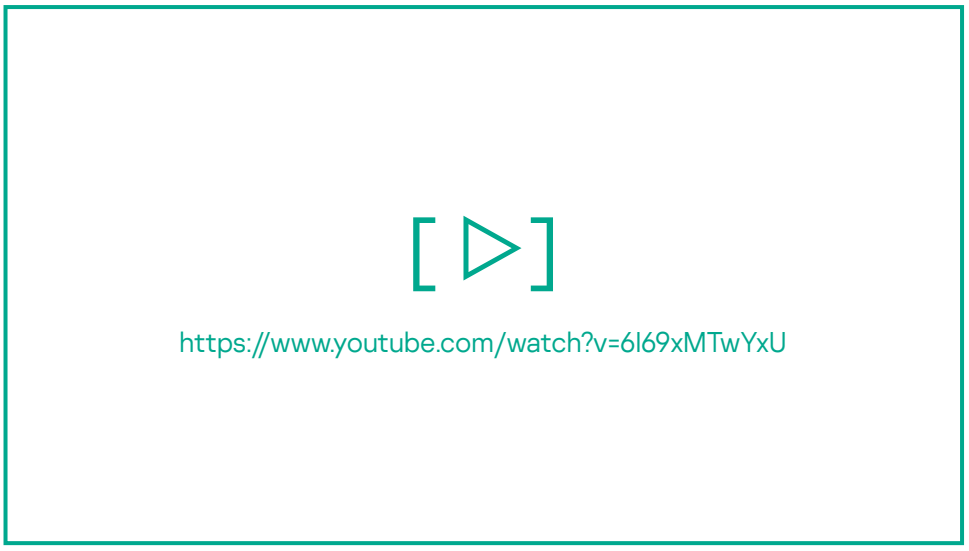
   Information about the compatibility of versions of applications that represent the Endpoint Agent component with versions of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is provided in the following Help sections: Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

For details about installing Kaspersky Endpoint Security, see the Online Help of the application:

- Installing Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows
- Installing Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux

If your hosts have earlier versions of applications installed, you can upgrade them.

Watch a video tutorial on deploying EDR on Microsoft Windows. You can play the video on the Help page (see below) or follow the link https://youtu.be/6l69xMTwYxU?si=lQU1mWrchjvZmuQW.



Deploying EDR on Microsoft Windows

Installing the Sandbox component

This section provides step-by-step instructions on installing the Sandbox component.

Before installing the component, you need to enable nested virtualization support for the virtual machine on which you want to install it. Otherwise, the installation will finish with an error.

To start installing the Sandbox component:

1. Run the disk image containing the Sandbox component.

   The Setup Wizard starts.

2. Select **Continue** and press **ENTER**.

   The installation is started.

If nested virtualization is disabled for the virtual machine on which you are installing the component, an error is displayed after starting the installation.

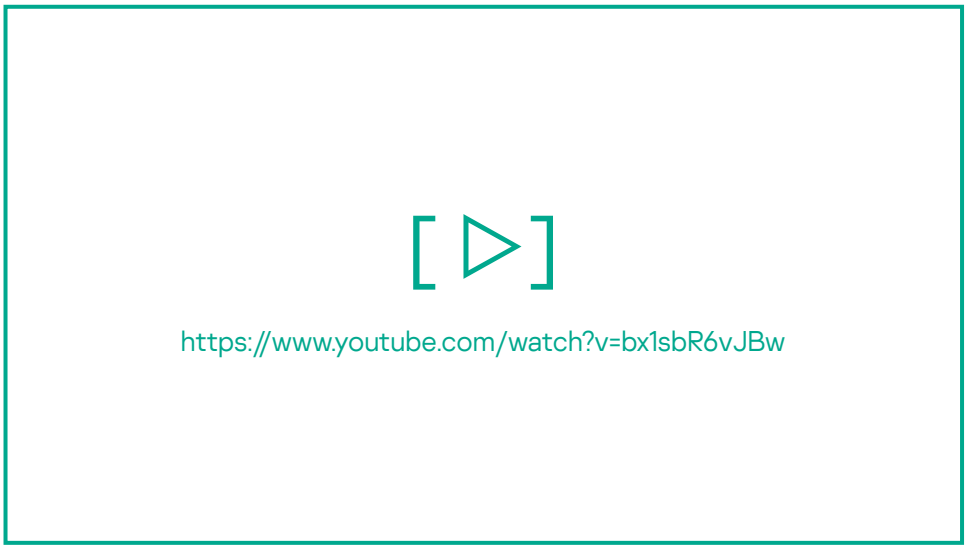
To resolve the error:

1. Power off the virtual machine on which you have installed the component.
2. Enable nested virtualization support for this virtual machine.
3. Power on the virtual machine.
4. Start the installation of the component by following the instructions above.

The error is resolved.

After installing the component, you need to configure its connection to the Central Node.

Watch a video tutorial on deploying the Sandbox component. You can play the video on the Help page (see below) or follow the link https://youtu.be/bx1sbR6vJBw?si=D1PrZ5o4vwlxaNoP.



Deploying the Sandbox component

Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy

To proceed with the installation, you must read and accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy of AO Kaspersky Lab (hereinafter also referred to as the "End User License Agreement" and the "Privacy Policy" respectively). Installation will not continue until you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy.

To accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy of AO Kaspersky Lab when installing the Sandbox component based on the Ubuntu Server operating system:

1. Select the language for viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy in the list and press **Enter**.

   To move up and down, you can use the keys: ↑, ↓, **PageUp**, and **PageDown**.

   This opens a window showing the End User License Agreement text.

2. Please read the End User License Agreement.

3. If you accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window displaying the text of the Privacy Policy.

4. Please carefully read the Privacy Policy.

5. If you accept the terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

To accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy of AO Kaspersky Lab when installing the Sandbox component based on the Astra Linux operating system:

1. Select the language for viewing the End User License Agreement for Astra Linux operating systems, the End User License Agreement, and the Privacy Policy in the list and press the **Enter** key.

   To move up and down, you can use the keys: ↑, ↓, **PageUp**, and **PageDown**.

   This opens a window with the text of the Astra Linux End User License Agreement.

2. Read the End User License Agreement of the Astra Linux operating systems.

3. If you accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement of Astra Linux operating systems, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window with the text of the AO Kaspersky Lab End User License Agreement.

4. Please read the End User License Agreement.

5. If you accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window displaying the text of the Privacy Policy.

6. Please carefully read the Privacy Policy.

7. If you accept the terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 2. Selecting a disk for installing the Sandbox component

Select a physical disk for installing the Sandbox component.

All data on the selected drive will be deleted.

If less than 150 GB of disk space is available, installation finishes with an error.

To select a disk for installing the component:

1. Select one of the suggested drives for installing the component and press **Enter**.

   A confirmation window is displayed asking you to confirm the deletion of all data from the disk with subsequent installation of the component on this disk.

2. Select **Install** and press the **Enter** to confirm the deletion of all data on the disk and the installation of the component on this disk.

   The device will be restarted during installation.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 3. Configuring the minimum password length for the Sandbox administrator password

To set the minimum length of the administrator password for the Sandbox component:

1. In the **Minimal password length** field, enter the password's length in characters (at least 8).

   Passwords 12 or more characters long are recommended.

2. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 4. Creating the Sandbox administrator account

Create an administrator account for working in the Sandbox web interface in the administrator menu and in the management console of the server with the Sandbox component.

To create a Sandbox administrator account:

1. In the **New username** field, enter the name of the administrator account. The 'admin' account is used by default.
2. In the **New password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.

   The password must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Must contain at least 8 characters.
   - Must contain at least three types of characters:
     - Uppercase character (A-Z).
     - Lowercase character (a-z).
     - Number.
     - Special character.
   - Must not be completely or substantially the same as the user name.
   - May not contain three or more identical characters in a row.

3. Enter the password again in the **Confirm password** field.

4. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 5. Configuring the management network interface

To ensure proper functioning of the Sandbox component, you must connect at least two network cards and configure the following network Interfaces:

- Management network interface. This interface is intended for providing SSH access to the Sandbox server; the Sandbox server also uses this interface to receive objects from the Central Node.
- Network interface used for Internet access of processed objects. Objects that are processed by Sandbox can use this interface to attempt activities on the Internet, and Sandbox can analyze their behavior. If you block Internet access, Sandbox cannot analyze the behavior of objects on the Internet, and will therefore only analyze the behavior of objects without internet access.

  > The network interface used for Internet access of processed objects must be isolated from the local network of your organization.

Select the network interface that you want to use as the management interface and configure it.

To select a management network interface and configure it:

1. In the list of network interfaces, select the network interface that you want to use as the management interface.

2. Press **Enter**.

3. In the **Address** field, enter the IP address that you want to assign to this network interface.

4. In the **Netmask** field, enter the network mask in which you want to use this network interface.

5. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.

6. Select **Continue** and press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 6. Assigning a hostname and adding DNS server addresses

Assign a server host name to be used by DNS servers and add DNS server addresses.

To assign a server host name and add DNS server addresses:

1. In the **DNS settings** window, select **Host name**.
2. Enter the full domain name of the server into the **Hostname** field.

   Specify the server name in FQDN format (for example: host.domain.com or host.domain.subdomain.com).
3. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.
4. In the **DNS settings** window, select **DNS servers**.
5. Select **New** and press **Enter**.

   This opens the DNS server address entry window.
6. In the **DNS server** text box, enter the IP address of the primary DNS server in IPv4 format.
7. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.

   The DNS server address entry window is closed.
8. If you want to add the IP address of an additional DNS server, repeat steps 5 through 7 of these instructions for each server that you want to add.
9. Having added all DNS servers, select **Go back** and press **Enter**.
10. In the **DNS servers** window, select **Continue** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 7. Configuring a static network route

To configure a static network route:

1. In the **IPv4 Routes** window, select **New** and press **Enter**.

   This opens the **IPv4 Static Route** window.
2. In the **Address/Mask** field, enter the IP address and mask of the subnet for which you want to configure the network route.

   If you want to use the default network route, enter 0.0.0.0/0.
3. In the **Gateway** field, enter the IP address of the gateway.
4. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.
5. If you want to add other network routes, repeat steps 1 through 5 of these instructions for each network route that you want to add.
6. If you are done adding network routes, click **Continue**.

The configuration may take some time. Then the installation is complete.

Deploying the Central Node component with Embedded Sensor as a cluster

A cluster must include at least 4 servers: 2 storage servers and 2 processing servers. You can use the Sizing Guide determine the right number of servers for your organization.

Deployment of the Central Node component with Embedded Sensor in the form of a cluster includes the following steps:

1. **Deploying the first storage server**

   The first step is to deploy the storage server. After the storage server is deployed, you can add additional storage and processing servers to the cluster.

2. **Deploying processing servers and additional storage servers**

   You can deploy the servers in any order.

3. **Configuring the sizing settings of the application**

   At the final stage of cluster deployment, you need to configure the scaling settings of the application: specify the planned volume of SPAN traffic, email traffic, the number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component, as well as the size of the Storage and event database.

   Immediately after installing the application, we recommend configuring (enabling or leaving disabled) the mandatory password change after the first successful authentication.

If you have a cluster deployed on physical servers and want to add more hard drives to these servers or replace some of the existing drives and then reinstall the cluster, you must purge the drives previously allocated for the OSD (Object Storage Daemon) on the storage servers before installing components. Otherwise, the application is not guaranteed to work correctly. If you want to completely disconnect the drives and no longer plan to reconnect them to the server, purging the drives is not necessary.

Deploying a storage server

To deploy a data storage server, you need to run a disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components.

If an error occurred while performing the steps of the Setup Wizard, contact Technical Support.

The capacity of the system disk and the number and capacity of Ceph storage disks that the component needs to work can be determined using the Sizing Guide. The minimum system disk capacity needed just to install the component is 150 GB. The minimum number of Ceph storage disks needed just to install the component is 3. Each disk must have at least 30 GB of disk space.

Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy

To proceed with the installation, you must read and accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy of AO Kaspersky Lab (hereinafter also referred to as the "End User License Agreement" and the "Privacy Policy" respectively). Installation will not continue until you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy.

To accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy when installing the components based on the Ubuntu operating system:

1. Select the language for viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy in the list and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window showing the End User License Agreement text.

2. Please read the End User License Agreement.

   To move up and down, you can use the keys: **↑, ↓, PageUp**, and **PageDown**.

3. If you accept the End User License Agreement, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window displaying the text of the Privacy Policy.

4. Please carefully read the Privacy Policy.

5. If you accept the terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

To accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy when installing the components based on the Astra Linux operating system:

1. Select the language for viewing the End User License Agreement for Astra Linux operating systems, the End User License Agreement, and the Privacy Policy in the list and press the **Enter** key.

   To move up and down, you can use the keys: ↑, ↓, **PageUp**, and **PageDown**.

   This opens a window with the text of the Astra Linux End User License Agreement.

2. Read the End User License Agreement of the Astra Linux operating systems.

3. If you accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement of Astra Linux operating systems, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window with the text of the AO Kaspersky Lab End User License Agreement.

4. Please read the End User License Agreement.

5. If you accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window displaying the text of the Privacy Policy.

6. Please carefully read the Privacy Policy.

7. If you accept the terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 2. Selecting a server role

To select a server role:

1. In the list of possible roles, select **storage**.

   This role is for installing a storage server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.

2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 3. Selecting the deployment mode

To select a deployment mode:

1. Select one of the following options:

   - **First node installation**.

     Select this value when deploying the first server in the cluster.

   - **Add extra node to the cluster**.

     Select this value when deploying a server that will be added to an existing cluster.

2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 4. Selecting a disk for installing the component

At this step, you need to select the disk for installing the component (system disk). The system disk capacity that the component needs to work can be determined using the Sizing Guide. The minimum system disk capacity needed to install the component is 150 GB.

If less than 150 GB of disk space is available, installation finishes with an error.

To select a disk for installing the component:

1. Select one of the suggested drives for installing the component and press **Enter**.

   The confirmation window is displayed.

2. Select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 5. Selecting a network mask for server addressing

We recommend using the default value.

The netmask may not match netmasks used in the organization's infrastructure.

To specify the network mask for server addressing:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, select the **Ok** button and press **Enter**.

  Default value: 198.18.0.0/16.

- If you want to specify a different network mask, in the **Subnet** field, enter your value, select the **OK** button, and press **Enter**.

  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 6. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components

We recommend using the default value.

The network for application component addressing must not overlap with the network for cluster server addressing.

To specify the network mask for addressing the main components of the application:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, select the **Ok** button and press **Enter**.

  Default value: 198.19.0.0/16.

- If you want to specify a different network mask, in the **Bridge/overlay subnets** field, enter your value, select the **Ok** button, and press **Enter**.

  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 7. Selecting the cluster network interface

The cluster network interface is used for communication between cluster servers.

To select the cluster network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the internal network.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 8. Selecting the external network interface

The external network interface is used for SSH access to the server, managing the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and other external connections.

To select the external network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the external network.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 9. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces

To select a method for obtaining an IP address for network interfaces:

1. Select the row containing the **Configuration type:** and press **Enter**.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.
2. In the opened window, select one of the following options:
   - **dhcp**.
   - **static**.
3. If you selected **static**:
   a. Select the row containing the parameter and press the **Enter** key.
   b. This opens a window; in that window, enter the required information.

   > You need to specify a value for each parameter.

4. Select **OK**.

5. Press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 10. Creating an administrator account and authenticating the server in the cluster

During this step, you need to do one of the following:

- Create an administrator account if you are deploying the first server in the cluster.
- Authenticate a server in the cluster if you are deploying additional storage servers.

Creating the administrator account

> An administrator account is only required when deploying the first server in the cluster. If you are deploying an additional storage server, instead of opening a window that prompts you to create an administrator account, the application prompts you to authenticate the server in the cluster.

When deploying the first server in the cluster, you need to create an administrator account. This user account is used for managing the web interface of the application, the administrator menu of the application, and for managing the application in Technical Support Mode.

By default, the user name of the administrator account is *admin*. You must enter a password for that user account.

To enter a password for the administrator user account:

1. This opens a window; in that window, in the **min length** field, enter the minimum password length. You must enter a value of 8 or greater.

2. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

   This opens the password creation window.

3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.

4. In the **confirm** field, enter the password again.

5. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Authenticating the server in the cluster

Authenticating a server in the cluster is only required when deploying additional storage servers. If you are deploying the first server in the cluster, the application prompts you to create an administrator account instead of authenticating the server.

To authenticate a server in the cluster, you need to enter the admin account password that was set when the first server in the cluster was deployed.

To authenticate a server in the cluster:

1. In the **password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.
2. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

   To select a button, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.

The server in the cluster will be authenticated. The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 11. Adding DNS server addresses

This step is available if you are deploying the first server in the cluster.

Configure the DNS settings for the operation of servers with application components.

Make sure that you have specified IP addresses of DNS servers correctly. If the specified IP addresses are incorrect, time synchronization with NTP servers will fail and the installation of the application will be interrupted.

To add DNS server addresses:

1. Select the **Add** field and press **Enter**.
2. Enter the IP address of the DNS server in the IPv4 format.
3. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.
4. If you want to add the IP address of an additional DNS server, repeat steps 1 through 3 of these instructions.

   Having added all DNS servers, select **Continue** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 12. Configuring time synchronization with an NTP server

This step is available if you are deploying the first server in the cluster.

Configure synchronization of the server time with the NTP server.

1. Select the **Add** field and press **Enter**.
2. Enter the IP address or name of the NTP server.
3. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.
4. If you want to add the IP address or name of an additional NTP server, repeat steps 1 through 3 of these instructions.
5. Having added all NTP servers, select **Continue** and press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

For the cluster to function, time must be synchronized on servers of the cluster. Make sure that the NTP server that you are adding is working correctly and can assure time synchronization among the cluster servers.

Step 13. Selecting disks for the Ceph storage

Select the disks for the Ceph storage. The number and capacity of disks needed for the Ceph storage can be determined using the Sizing Guide. The minimum number of disks required just to install the component is 3. Each disk in this case must have at least 30 GB of disk space.

To select disks for the Ceph storage:

1. Select the row containing the required drive.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.
2. Press **Enter**.
3. Repeat steps 1 to 2 to select more drives if you want to select multiple drives.
4. Select the **Apply and finish** field and press **Enter**.

   The confirmation window is displayed.
5. Select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

   The configuration may take some time. Then the installation is complete. You can proceed to configure the servers of the cluster.

Deploying the processing server

To deploy a processing server, you need to run a disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components.

If an error occurred while performing the steps of the Setup Wizard, contact Technical Support.

The system disk capacity that the component needs to work can be determined using the Sizing Guide. The minimum system disk capacity needed just to install the component is 150 GB.

Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy

To proceed with the installation, you must read and accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy of AO Kaspersky Lab (hereinafter also referred to as the "End User License Agreement" and the "Privacy Policy" respectively). Installation will not continue until you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy.

To accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy when installing the components based on the Ubuntu operating system:

1. Select the language for viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy in the list and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window showing the End User License Agreement text.

2. Please read the End User License Agreement.

   To move up and down, you can use the keys: **↑, ↓, PageUp**, and **PageDown**.

3. If you accept the End User License Agreement, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window displaying the text of the Privacy Policy.

4. Please carefully read the Privacy Policy.

5. If you accept the terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

To accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy when installing the components based on the Astra Linux operating system:

1. Select the language for viewing the End User License Agreement for Astra Linux operating systems, the End User License Agreement, and the Privacy Policy in the list and press the **Enter** key.

   To move up and down, you can use the keys: ↑, ↓, **PageUp**, and **PageDown**.

   This opens a window with the text of the Astra Linux End User License Agreement.

2. Read the End User License Agreement of the Astra Linux operating systems.

3. If you accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement of Astra Linux operating systems, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window with the text of the AO Kaspersky Lab End User License Agreement.

4. Please read the End User License Agreement.

5. If you accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window displaying the text of the Privacy Policy.

6. Please carefully read the Privacy Policy.

7. If you accept the terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 2. Selecting a server role

To select a server role:

1. In the list of possible roles, select **processing**.

   This role is for installing a processing server for deploying the Central Node component as a cluster.

   > The role also includes the installation and configuration of the Sensor component.

2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component

At this step, you need to select the disk for installing the component (system disk). The system disk capacity that the component needs to work can be determined using the Sizing Guide. The minimum system disk capacity needed to install the component is 150 GB.

> If less than 150 GB of disk space is available, installation finishes with an error.

To select a disk for installing the component:

1. Select one of the suggested drives for installing the component and press **Enter**.

   The confirmation window is displayed.

2. Select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 4. Selecting a network mask for cluster server addressing

> We recommend using the default value.

> The netmask may not match netmasks used in the organization's infrastructure.

To specify the network mask for cluster server addressing:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, select the **Ok** button and press **Enter**.

  Default value: 198.18.0.0/16.

- If you want to specify a different network mask, in the **Subnet** field, enter your value, select the **OK** button, and press **Enter**.

  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 5. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components

We recommend using the default value.

The network for application component addressing must not overlap with the network for cluster server addressing.

To specify the network mask for addressing the main components of the application:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, select the **Ok** button and press **Enter**.

  Default value: 198.19.0.0/16.

- If you want to specify a different network mask, in the **Bridge/overlay subnets** field, enter your value, select the **Ok** button, and press **Enter**.

  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 6. Selecting the cluster network interface

The cluster network interface is used for communication between cluster servers.

To select the cluster network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the internal network.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.

2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 7. Selecting the external network interface

The external network interface is used for SSH access to the server, managing the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and other external connections.

To select the external network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the external network.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 8. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces

To select a method for obtaining an IP address for network interfaces:

1. Select the row containing the **Configuration type:** and press **Enter**.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.
2. In the opened window, select one of the following options:
   - **dhcp**.
   - **static**.
3. If you selected **static**:
   a. Select the row containing the parameter and press the **Enter** key.
   b. This opens a window; in that window, enter the required information.

   > You need to specify a value for each parameter.
4. Select **OK**.
5. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 9. Authenticating the server in the cluster

To authenticate a server in the cluster, you need to enter the admin account password that was set when the first server in the cluster was deployed.

To authenticate a server in the cluster:

1. In the **password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.
2. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

   To select a button, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.

The server in the cluster will be authenticated. The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 10. Selecting the localization language for the NDR functionality and configuring the receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports

If you are deploying the first worker server of the cluster, at this step, you must complete the steps of the Setup Wizard in the following order:

1. Select the localization language for the NDR functionality.
2. Configure the receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports.

If you are deploying an additional worker server, the NDR localization selection step is omitted. After authenticating the server in the cluster, the Setup Wizard proceeds to the step at which you configure the receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports.

Selecting the localization language for the NDR functionality

The selected language is used to display the parts of the application that have to do with the NDR functionality.

To select the localization language for the NDR functionality:

Select it in the list and press Enter.

The localization language of the NDR functionality is selected. The Setup Wizard proceeds to the step at which you configure the receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports.

Configuring receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports

For the application to work correctly, receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports must be enabled on one of the processing servers in the cluster. If you do not actually need to process mirrored traffic from SPAN ports, specify 0 for SPAN traffic when configuring sizing.

Mirror traffic processing must be enabled on only one processing server in the cluster.

To turn on the receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

In the window that is displayed, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

The configuration may take some time. Then the installation is complete. For the application to work correctly, you must configure the server.

To turn off the receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

In the opened window, select **No** and press **Enter**.

The configuration may take some time. Then the installation is complete. For the application to work correctly, you must configure the server.

Purging hard drives on storage servers

If you have a cluster deployed on servers and want to add more hard drives to these servers or replace some of the existing drives and then reinstall the cluster, you must purge the drives previously allocated for the OSD (Object Storage Daemon) on the storage servers before installing components. Otherwise, the application is not guaranteed to work correctly.

To purge the disks allocated for OSD on a live storage server:

1. Sign in to the management console of the server where you want to purge the disks over SSH or through the terminal.
2. Stop the OSD starter service by running `sudo systemctl stop kata-osd-starter.service`.
3. Stop OSD containers by running `sudo docker ps --filter name=osd -q | xargs docker stop`.
4. Get a list of OSD disks by running `sudo ceph-volume --cluster ceph lvm list | grep devices`.
5. Use the `sudo wipefs -af /dev/<disk name>` command to remove the file system signatures and the partition table from these disks.

   You must run this command for each drive that you got at step 4. For example: `sudo wipefs -af /dev/sda`.
6. Purge these disks by running `sudo ceph-volume lvm zap --destroy /dev/<disk name>`.

   You must run this command for each drive that you got at step 4. For example: `sudo ceph-volume lvm zap --destroy /dev/sda`.

The OSD daemon is removed from the disks.

If the server is not live, you must delete the information about volume groups from each disk allocated for the OSD.

To delete the information about volume groups from each disk allocated for the OSD on a non-live server:

1. Start the server with the alternative operating system.
2. Get group IDs for each disk allocated for the OSD using the `sudo pvs` command.

   This command outputs a table where `PV` are physical volumes, `VG` indicates logical group membership, `Fmt` indicates the volume format, and `Size` indicates the physical volume size.
3. Remove the relevant volume groups by running `sudo vgremove <volume group ID>`.

Information about volume groups on disks allocated for OSD is deleted.

Installing the Central Node component with Embedded Sensor on a server

Installing the Central Node component with Embedded Sensor on the server involves the following steps:

1. **Installing the Central Node component with Embedded Sensor**

   To install the component on the physical server, you need to boot from a disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components.

   To install the component on a virtual server, you need to connect the disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components to the selected virtual machine and run it. The installation starts immediately after the virtual machine is turned on. You can manage the installation process using the console of the virtual machine.

2. **Managing application sizing options or adding a monitoring point**

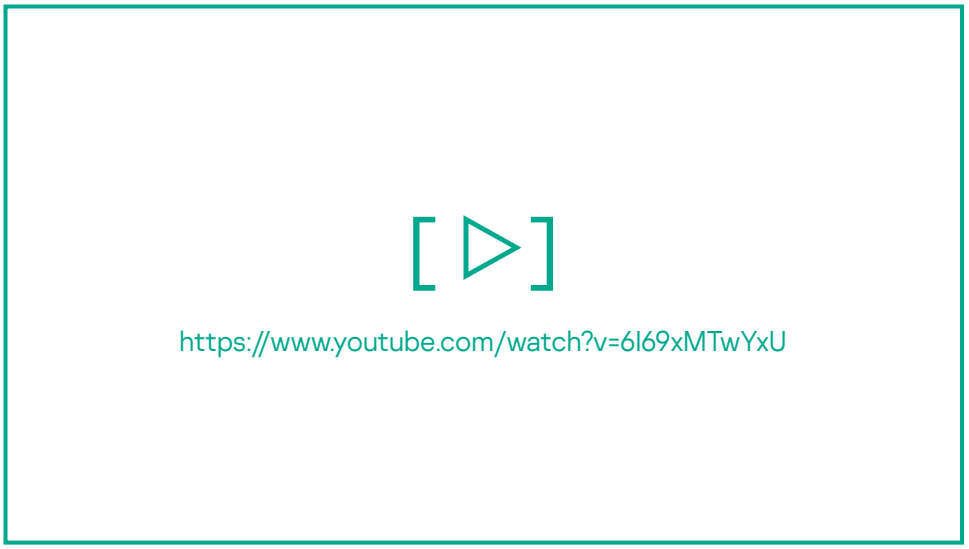
   If you have installed the component to work in standard mode, at the final stage of cluster deployment, you need to manage the sizing options of the application: specify the planned volume of SPAN traffic, email traffic, the number of hosts with the Endpoint Agent component, as well as the size of the Storage and event database.

   Immediately after installing the application, we recommend configuring (enabling or leaving disabled) the mandatory password change after the first successful authentication.

   If you have installed the component for retrospective analysis of traffic, you need to add and enable a monitoring point.

If an error occurred while performing the steps of the Setup Wizard, contact Technical Support.

Watch a video tutorial on deploying the Central Node component. You can play the video on the Help page (see below) or follow the link https://youtu.be/6l69xMTwYxU?si=lQU1mWrchjvZmuQW.



Deploying the Central Node component

Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy

To proceed with the installation, you must read and accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy of AO Kaspersky Lab (hereinafter also referred to as the "End User License Agreement" and the "Privacy Policy" respectively). Installation will not continue until you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy.

To accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy when installing the components based on the Ubuntu operating system:

1. Select the language for viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy in the list and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window showing the End User License Agreement text.

2. Please read the End User License Agreement.

   To move up and down, you can use the keys: **↑, ↓, PageUp**, and **PageDown**.

3. If you accept the End User License Agreement, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window displaying the text of the Privacy Policy.

4. Please carefully read the Privacy Policy.

5. If you accept the terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

To accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy when installing the components based on the Astra Linux operating system:

1. Select the language for viewing the End User License Agreement for Astra Linux operating systems, the End User License Agreement, and the Privacy Policy in the list and press the **Enter** key.

   To move up and down, you can use the keys: ↑, ↓, **PageUp**, and **PageDown**.

   This opens a window with the text of the Astra Linux End User License Agreement.

2. Read the End User License Agreement of the Astra Linux operating systems.

3. If you accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement of Astra Linux operating systems, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window with the text of the AO Kaspersky Lab End User License Agreement.

4. Please read the End User License Agreement.

5. If you accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window displaying the text of the Privacy Policy.

6. Please carefully read the Privacy Policy.

7. If you accept the terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 2. Selecting a server role

To select a server role:

1. In the list of possible roles, select **single**.

   This role is for installing the Central Node and Sensor components on the same server.

2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component

At this step, you need to select the disk for installing the component (system disk). The system disk capacity that the component needs to work can be determined using the Sizing Guide. The minimum system disk capacity needed to install the component is 150 GB.

If less than 150 GB of disk space is available, installation finishes with an error.

A SAN storage system cannot be used as a component installation drive.

To select a disk for installing the component:

1. Select one of the suggested drives for installing the component and press **Enter**.

   The confirmation window is displayed.

2. Select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 5. Selecting a network mask for server addressing

We recommend using the default value.

The netmask may not match netmasks used in the organization's infrastructure.

To specify the network mask for server addressing:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, select the **Ok** button and press **Enter**.

  Default value: 198.18.0.0/16.

- If you want to specify a different network mask, in the **Subnet** field, enter your value, select the **OK** button, and press **Enter**.

  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 5. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components

We recommend using the default value.

The network for application component addressing must not overlap with the network for server addressing.

To specify the network mask for addressing the main components of the application:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, select the **Ok** button and press **Enter**.

  Default value: 198.19.0.0/16.

- If you want to specify a different network mask, in the **Bridge/overlay subnets** field, enter your value, select the **Ok** button, and press **Enter**.

  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 6. Selecting the external network interface

The external network interface is used for SSH access to the server, managing the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and other external connections.

To select the external network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the external network.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.

2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 7. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces

To select a method for obtaining an IP address for network interfaces:

1. Select the row containing the **Configuration type:** and press **Enter**.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.
2. In the opened window, select one of the following options:
   - **dhcp**.
   - **static**.
3. If you selected **static**:
   a. Select the row containing the parameter and press the **Enter** key.
   b. This opens a window; in that window, enter the required information.

   > You need to specify a value for each parameter.

4. Select **OK**.
5. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 8. Creating the administrator account

The administrator account is used for managing the web interface of the application, the administrator menu of the application, and for managing the application in Technical Support Mode.

By default, the user name of the administrator account is *admin*. You must enter a password for that user account.

To enter a password for the administrator user account:

1. This opens a window; in that window, in the **min length** field, enter the minimum password length. You must enter a value of 8 or greater.
2. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.
   This opens the password creation window.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.

4. In the **confirm** field, enter the password again.
5. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 9. Selecting the localization language for the NDR functionality

The selected language is used to display the parts of the application that have to do with the NDR functionality.

To select the localization language for the NDR functionality:

Select it in the list and press Enter.

Step 10. Adding DNS server addresses

Configure the DNS settings for the operation of servers with application components.

> Make sure that you have specified IP addresses of DNS servers correctly. If the specified IP addresses are incorrect, time synchronization with NTP servers will fail and the installation of the application will be interrupted.

To add DNS server addresses:

1. Select the **Add** field and press **Enter**.
2. Enter the IP address of the DNS server in the IPv4 format.
3. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.
4. If you want to add the IP address of an additional DNS server, repeat steps 1 through 3 of these instructions.
5. Having added all DNS servers, select **Continue** and press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 11. Configuring time synchronization with an NTP server

Configure synchronization of the server time with the NTP server.

1. Select the **Add** field and press **Enter**.
2. Enter the IP address or name of the NTP server.
3. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.

4. If you want to add the IP address or name of an additional NTP server, repeat steps 1 through 3 of these instructions.

5. Having added all NTP servers, select **Continue** and press **Enter**.

   The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 12. Enabling the retrospective traffic analysis mode

If you want to use the component for retrospective analysis of traffic, at this step, you need to enable the retrospective traffic analysis mode. In this mode, a number of restrictions apply to the component, which you can learn about in the *Retrospective traffic analysis* section.

Change the mode of the server after installation is impossible.

To enable the retrospective analysis mode:

1. Select **Retrospective analysis mode** and press **Enter**.

   An X sign is displayed next to the line.

2. Select the line containing **Apply and finish** and press **Enter**.

   Retrospective traffic analysis mode is enabled.

If you do not want to enable the retrospective traffic analysis mode:

Select the line containing **Apply and finish** and press **Enter**.

The component is deployed in standard mode.

Installation is complete.

If the component is deployed in standard mode, you need to manage the server configuration for the application to work correctly. If the retrospective traffic mode is selected for the component, you do not need to manage the sizing settings.

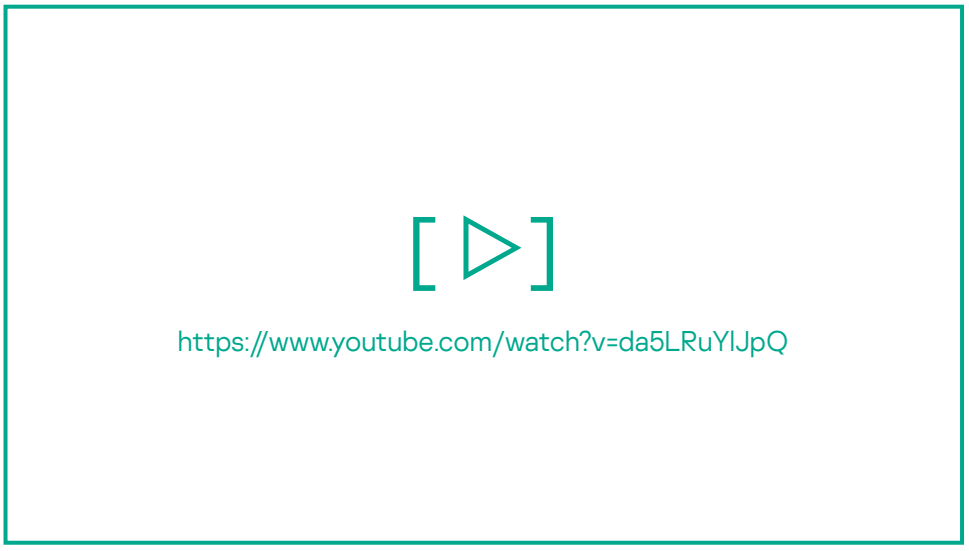
Installing the Sensor component on a standalone server

To install the Sensor component on a physical server, you need to run a disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components.

To install the Sensor component on a virtual server, you need to connect the disk image with the Central Node and Sensor components to the selected virtual machine and run it. The installation starts immediately after the virtual machine is turned on. You can manage the installation process using the console of the virtual machine.

After installing the component, you need to connect it to the Central Node.

Watch a video tutorial on deploying the Sensor component. You can play the video on the Help page (see below) or follow the link https://youtu.be/da5LRuYlJpQ?si=JRSPsNRPlK-Jqcfc.



Deploying the Sensor component

Step 1. Viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy

To proceed with the installation, you must read and accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy of AO Kaspersky Lab (hereinafter also referred to as the "End User License Agreement" and the "Privacy Policy" respectively). Installation will not continue until you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy.

To accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy when installing the components based on the Ubuntu operating system:

1. Select the language for viewing the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy in the list and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window showing the End User License Agreement text.

2. Please read the End User License Agreement.

   To move up and down, you can use the keys: **↑**, **↓**, **PageUp**, and **PageDown**.

3. If you accept the End User License Agreement, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window displaying the text of the Privacy Policy.

4. Please carefully read the Privacy Policy.

5. If you accept the terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

To accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement and the Privacy Policy when installing the components based on the Astra Linux operating system:

1. Select the language for viewing the End User License Agreement for Astra Linux operating systems, the End User License Agreement, and the Privacy Policy in the list and press the **Enter** key.

To move up and down, you can use the keys: ↑, ↓, **PageUp**, and **PageDown**.

This opens a window with the text of the Astra Linux End User License Agreement.

2. Read the End User License Agreement of the Astra Linux operating systems.
3. If you accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement of Astra Linux operating systems, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window with the text of the AO Kaspersky Lab End User License Agreement.
4. Please read the End User License Agreement.
5. If you accept the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

   This opens a window displaying the text of the Privacy Policy.
6. Please carefully read the Privacy Policy.
7. If you accept the terms and conditions of the Privacy Policy, select **I accept** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 2. Selecting a server role

To select a server role:

1. In the list of possible roles, select **sensor**.

   This role is for installing the Sensor component on a standalone server.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 3. Selecting a disk for installing the component

At this step, you need to select the disk for installing the component (system disk). The system disk capacity that the component needs to work can be determined using the Sizing Guide. The minimum system disk capacity needed to install the component is 150 GB.

If less than 150 GB of disk space is available, installation finishes with an error.

To select a disk for installing the component:

1. Select one of the suggested drives for installing the component and press **Enter**.

   The confirmation window is displayed.
2. Select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 4. Selecting a network mask for server addressing

We recommend using the default value.

The netmask may not match netmasks used in the organization's infrastructure.

To specify the network mask for server addressing:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, select the **Ok** button and press **Enter**.

  Default value: 198.18.0.0/16.

- If you want to specify a different network mask, in the **Subnet** field, enter your value, select the **OK** button, and press **Enter**.

  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 5. Selecting a network mask for addressing of application components

We recommend using the default value.

The network for application component addressing must not overlap with the network for server addressing.

To specify the network mask for addressing the main components of the application:

- If you want to use the predefined value for the network mask, select the **Ok** button and press **Enter**.

  Default value: 198.19.0.0/16.

- If you want to specify a different network mask, in the **Bridge/overlay subnets** field, enter your value, select the **Ok** button, and press **Enter**.

  The mask must match the template: x.x.0.0/16.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 6. Selecting the external network interface

The external network interface is used for SSH access to the server, managing the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and other external connections.

To select the external network interface:

1. Select the row containing the network interface that is used for the external network.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.
2. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 7. Selecting the method of obtaining IP addresses for network interfaces

To select a method for obtaining an IP address for network interfaces:

1. Select the row containing the **Configuration type:** and press **Enter**.
   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.
2. In the opened window, select one of the following options:
   - **dhcp**.
   - **static**.
3. If you selected **static**:
   a. Select the row containing the parameter and press the **Enter** key.
   b. This opens a window; in that window, enter the required information.

      You need to specify a value for each parameter.
4. Select **OK**.
5. Press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 8. Creating the administrator account

The administrator account is used for managing the web interface of the application, the administrator menu of the application, and for managing the application in Technical Support Mode.

By default, the user name of the administrator account is *admin*. You must enter a password for that user account.

To enter a password for the administrator user account:

1. This opens a window; in that window, in the **min length** field, enter the minimum password length. You must enter a value of 8 or greater.
2. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

   This opens the password creation window.
3. This opens a window; in that window, in the **password** field, enter the password for the administrator account.

   To select a row, you can use the ↑, ↓, PageUp, and PageDown keys.
4. In the **confirm** field, enter the password again.
5. Select **Ok** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 9. Adding DNS server addresses

Configure the DNS settings for the operation of servers with application components.

Make sure that you have specified IP addresses of DNS servers correctly. If the specified IP addresses are incorrect, time synchronization with NTP servers will fail and the installation of the application will be interrupted.

To add DNS server addresses:

1. Select the **Add** field and press **Enter**.
2. Enter the IP address of the DNS server in the IPv4 format.
3. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.
4. If you want to add the IP address of an additional DNS server, repeat steps 1 through 3 of these instructions.
5. Having added all DNS servers, select **Continue** and press **Enter**.

The Setup Wizard proceeds to the next step.

Step 10. Configuring time synchronization with an NTP server

Configure synchronization of the server time with the NTP server.

1. Select the **Add** field and press **Enter**.
2. Enter the IP address or name of the NTP server.
3. Select **OK** and press **Enter**.

4. If you want to add the IP address or name of an additional NTP server, repeat steps 1 through 3 of these instructions.

5. Having added all NTP servers, select **Continue** and press **Enter**.

Installation is complete.

Optimization of network interface settings for the Sensor component

Follow these instructions if the application encounters network packet loss or performance issues when processing network traffic.

To reduce network packet loss and incomplete extraction of files from traffic:

1. Specify the maximum number of RSS queues:

   - If the data transfer rate on your network is less than 1 Gbps, set the number to 1.
   - If the data transfer rate on your network is greater than 1 Gbps, set the number to 16.

   If your network interface does not allow setting the maximum number of RSS queues to 16, set it to the maximum supported number.

2. Configure symmetric RSS hashing for the network interface. For details on configuring RSS hashing, refer to the vendor documentation of your network adapter.

3. Create an interrupts.sh file **with the following content**.

```
#!/usr/bin/env bash

set -e

dev=$1
min_cpu=$2
max_cpu=$3
step=$4

irs=($(cat /proc/interrupts | grep "$dev" | awk '{split($1,a,":"); print a[1]}'))

cpu=$min_cpu
for ir in ${irs[@]}; do
echo $cpu > /proc/irq/$ir/smp_affinity_list
cpu=$(((cpu + step) % max_cpu))
cat "/proc/irq/$ir/smp_affinity_list"
done
```

4. Run the following command:

`sudo bash interrupts.sh <dev> <min_cpu> <max_cpu> <step>`, where

- `<dev>` is the network interface whose interrupts you want to distribute among cores.
- `<min_cpu>` is the first core in the range for network adapter interrupt distribution.
- `<max_cpu>` is the last core in the range for network adapter interrupt distribution.
- `<step>` is the increment for picking the next core to assign to interrupts.

  Example:

  ```
  sudo bash interrupts.sh ens192 2 11 1
  ```

5. If you are using NVIDIA Mellanox network adapters (mlx4), configure the number of RSS queues and RSS hashing by running the following commands:

   ```
   ethtool -L $dev rx 16
   ethtool -X $dev equal 16
   ethtool -X $dev hfunc xor
   ```

6. If you are using Intel network adapters (i40e), configure the number of RSS queues and RSS hashing:

   ```
   rmmod i40e && modprobe i40e
   ifconfig $dev down
   ethtool -L $dev combined 16
   ethtool -K $dev rxhash on
   ethtool -K $dev ntuple on
   ifconfig $dev up
   ethtool -X $dev hkey
   6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:
   5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A:6D:5A equal 16
   ethtool -A $dev rx off
   ethtool -C $dev adaptive-rx off adaptive-tx off rx-usecs 125
   ethtool -G $dev rx 1024
   ethtool -N $dev rx-flow-hash tcp4 sdfn
   ethtool -N $dev rx-flow-hash tcp6 sdfn
   ethtool -N $dev rx-flow-hash udp4 sdfn
   ethtool -N $dev rx-flow-hash udp6 sdfn
   ```

The network interfaces are configured.

After restarting the application, you must reconfigure the network interfaces following the instructions.

Connecting and configuring external storage for the Sensor component

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform saves traffic received from network interfaces as network traffic dump files. If you want to ensure long-term storage of network traffic dump files, you can connect and configure external storage. You can use network traffic dump files in external storage to download network traffic as PCAP files. We recommend using SSD drives as external storage.

The steps for configuring external storage are different for the Sensor component installed on the same server as the Central Node (Embedded Sensor) and on a standalone server. The following are instructions for configuring external storage for specified Sensor configurations.

If you reconnecting a drive and want to keep the data on it, skip steps 4 and 9 below.

Connecting and configuring an external storage for network traffic dump files on a Sensor installed together with Central Node (Embedded Sensor)

To connect and configure external storage for network traffic dump files on a Sensor installed together with Central Node (Embedded Sensor):

1. Connect a disk of at least 100 GB that you want to use as external storage.
2. Enter Technical Support Mode.
3. Run the following commands:

   ```
   sudo -i
   fdisk -l
   ```

   Make sure that the disk that you connected for external storage is displayed in the console.
4. Run the following command:

   ```
   mke2fs -t ext4 -L DATA -m 0 /dev/<name of the connected disk>
   ```

   Skip this step if you want to keep traffic dumps previously recorded on the disk.
5. Opens the `fstab` file for editing in a text editor:

   ```
   nano /etc/fstab
   ```
6. Add the following line at the end of the file:

   ```
   /dev/<name of the connected disk> /data/volumes/dumps/ ext4 defaults 0 0
   ```
7. Close the text editor.

8. Restart the daemon-reload service:

   ```
   systemctl daemon-reload
   ```

9. Mount the disk:

   ```
   mount -a
   ```

10. Make sure the disk is mounted:

    ```
    df -h | grep /data/volumes/dumps
    ```

11. Run the following command:

    rm -r /data/volumes/dumps/*

    Skip this step if you want to keep traffic dumps previously recorded on the disk.

12. Run the following commands:

    ```
    chown kluser:klusers /data/volumes/dumps/
    ls -lah /data/volumes/dumps/
    lsblk
    ```

    Make sure that in the **MOUNTPOINTS** column, **/data/volumes/dumps** is displayed next to the name of the connected disk.

13. Run the following commands:

    ```
    docker service update kata_product_main_1_preprocessor_span --force
    docker ps | grep preprocessor_span
    ```

    Wait until the **Up <number of seconds> seconds** status appears in the console.

14. Run the following commands:

    ```
    docker exec -it $(docker ps | grep preprocessor_span | awk '{print $1}') bash
    lsblk
    ```

    Make sure that in the **MOUNTPOINTS** column, the **/mnt/kaspersky/nta/dumps** value is displayed next to the name of the connected disk. This means that the /data/volumes/dumps/ folder on the server was mounted in the Docker container as /mnt/kaspersky/nta/dumps.

15. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

16. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

17. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.

    This opens a window with information about the component.

18. Click **Edit**.

19. Select the **External storage** tab and use the **Connect external storage for traffic dump files** switch to enable external storage mode.

20. Set the space limit for storing the traffic dump files under **Maximum size**.

    You can select the unit of measure for the size limit: **MB** or **GB**.

21. If necessary, in the **Filtering using BPF** section, enable filtering and enter an expression for filtering using the BPF (Berkeley Packet Filter) technology. The BPF filtering expression is written in the libpcap format. For more details about the syntax, please refer to the pcap-filter manual page.

22. If necessary, in the **Storage time limit** section, enable a limit on the minimum storage time for the files and specify the relevant number of days.

23. Click **Save**.

External storage for network traffic dump files on the server with Sensor and Central Node installed is connected and configured.

Connecting and configuring external storage for network traffic dump files on a standalone server with the Sensor component installed

To connect and configure external storage for network traffic dump files on a standalone server with the Sensor component installed:

1. Connect a disk of at least 100 GB that you want to use as external storage.

2. Enter Technical Support Mode.

3. Run the following commands:

   ```
   sudo -i
   fdisk -l
   ```

   Make sure that the disk that you connected for external storage is displayed in the console.

4. Run the following command:

   ```
   mke2fs -t ext4 -L DATA -m 0 /dev/<name of the connected disk>
   ```

   Skip this step if you want to keep traffic dumps previously recorded on the disk.

5. Opens the `fstab` file for editing in a text editor:

   ```
   nano /etc/fstab
   ```

6. Add the following line at the end of the file:

   ```
   /dev/<name of the connected disk> /data/volumes/dumps/ ext4 defaults 0 0
   ```

7. Close the text editor.

8. Restart the daemon-reload service:

   ```
   systemctl daemon-reload
   ```

9. Mount the disk:

   ```
   mount -a
   ```

10. Make sure the disk is mounted:

    ```
    df -h | grep /data/volumes/dumps
    ```

11. Run the following command:

    rm -r /data/volumes/dumps/*

    Skip this step if you want to keep traffic dumps previously recorded on the disk.

12. Run the following command:

    ```
    rm -r /data/volumes/dumps/*
    ```

    These commands delete all data from the connected disk.

13. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

14. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.

    This opens a window with information about the component.

15. Click **Edit**.

16. Select the **External storage** tab and use the **Connect external storage for traffic dump files** switch to enable external storage mode.

17. Set the space limit for storing the traffic dump files under **Maximum size**.

    You can select the unit of measure for the size limit: **MB** or **GB**.

18. If necessary, in the **Filtering using BPF** section, enable filtering and enter an expression for filtering using the BPF (Berkeley Packet Filter) technology. The BPF filtering expression is written in the libpcap format. For more details about the syntax, please refer to the pcap-filter manual page.

19. If necessary, in the **Storage time limit** section, enable a limit on the minimum storage time for the files and specify the relevant number of days.

20. Click **Save**.

External storage for network traffic dump files on the standalone server with the Sensor component installed is connected and configured.

Configuring the sizing settings of the application

You can change the operational load on the Central Node component. For example, you can do this to connect additional servers with the Sensor component to it. In this case, you need to specify the planned volume of SPAN traffic, mail traffic, and the size of Storage. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will determine the optimal configuration of the Central Node server taking into account the specified settings.

If the Central Node component is deployed as a cluster, the application determines the optimal configuration of all servers in the cluster.

For the cluster to function, after configuring the sizing parameters, time must be synchronized on servers of the cluster. Before configuring sizing parameters, make sure that integration with a functioning NTP server is configured for at least one server in the cluster.

You can configure NTP server integration in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform or in the component administrator menu on any server in the cluster. If you have not previously configured NTP server integration, we recommend restarting the cluster servers after configuring it.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

If you specify smaller values for **Mail traffic, messages per second**, **SPAN traffic, Mbps**, or **Storage, GB** settings, objects may be dropped from processing queues of application components.

To configure the Central Node servers:

1. In a browser on any computer on which access to the Central Node server has been allowed, enter the IP address of the server with the Central Node component into the browser's address bar.

   If you are using the high availability version of the application, you can enter the IP address of any server of the Central Node cluster or **the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the cluster**.

   To ensure uninterrupted access to the program web interface, you can configure the Round Robin function on the DNS server. To do this, log in to the web interface of the first healthy server of the Central Node cluster.

   An input window for account credentials of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user opens.

2. Enter the user name, "admin", and the password that was set during the installation of the application.

3. Click **Log in**.

4. Go to the **Server configuration** section.

5. In the **Mail traffic, messages per second** field, specify the planned number of emails per second.

6. In the **SPAN traffic, Mbps** field, specify the planned amount of traffic from SPAN ports on servers with the Sensor component.

7. If you have installed the Central Node component on the server, enter a value in the **Storage, GB** field.

8. If you installed Central Node as a cluster, in the **Available disk space** section, specify the sizes of the Storage in one of the following ways:

   - Move the slider to the left or right.

     Keep in mind that reducing the size of the Storage irreversibly deletes the oldest data in accordance with the rotation rules. When you grow the Storage instead, the data is preserved.

   - Specify values in the **Storage, GB** field.

   Disk space is automatically reserved for the alert database when the Central Node component is installed.

9. Click **Configure**.

   If Central Node is installed on a server, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform determines the optimal server configuration in accordance with the specified parameters. If Central Node is installed as a cluster, the application configures the servers of the cluster.

   Applying the sizing settings and starting all the necessary services takes some time, so we recommend logging into the web interface and continuing to manage the application approximately 20 minutes after you finish configuring sizing.

Configuring firewall rules

Correct operation of the application and its components requires configuring firewall rules on the network equipment that links computers with the installed application components.

Operating systems of components are delivered with pre-configured firewall rules. We strongly recommend against changing the iptables rules.

Ports used on computers with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components

The described rules apply to all types of hosts, regardless of configuration. The rules are applied via the kata-firewall systemd service, only for the INPUT and DOCKER-USER chains.

INPUT chain

This chain manages all connections to computers with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components.

Networking rules are listed in the table below.

Networking rules for the INPUT chain

Destination service or protocol	Port	Protocol	sport	dport	Access from external network
SSH	22	TCP	—	✓	✓
SMTP	25	TCP	—	✓	✓
DNS	53	TCP	—	✓	✓
HTTP	80	TCP	—	✓	✓
SNMPD	161	UDP	—	✓	✓
HTTPS	443	TCP	—	✓	✓
preprocessor_icap	1334	TCP	—	✓	✓
docker swarm	2377	TCP	✓	✓	—
etcd	2379	TCP	—	✓	✓
etcd	2380	TCP	—	✓	✓
ceph_mon	3300	TCP	—	✓	✓
VXLAN	4789	TCP/UDP	✓	✓	—
ceph_mon	6789	TCP	—	✓	✓
ceph OSD	6800:6900	TCP	—	✓	✓
docker swarm	7946	TCP/UDP	✓	✓	—
ipsec_manager	8084	TCP	✓	✓	—
pcap_manager	8085	TCP	—	✓	✓

Destination service or protocol	Port	Protocol	sport	dport	Access from external network
HTTPS	8443	TCP/UDP	—	✓	✓
HTTPS	8444	TCP/UDP	—	✓	✓
suricata_metrics_exporter	9103	TCP	✓	✓	—
node_exporter	9141	TCP	✓	✓	—
cadvisor	9142	TCP	✓	✓	—
preprocessor_metrics_exporter	9191	TCP	✓	✓	—
pcap_manager_metrics_exporter	9192	TCP	✓	✓	—
ceph_mgr	9283	TCP	—	✓	✓
ceph_rgw	9284	TCP	—	✓	✓
NDR sensor	9443	TCP	—	✓	✓
kafka bootstrap	11000:11006	TCP	—	✓	✓

DOCKER-USER chain

This chain manages network connections for addressing of application components. Networking rules are listed in the table below.

Networking rules for the DOCKER-USER chain

Destination service or protocol	Port	Protocol	sport	dport
SMTP	25	TCP	—	✓
DNS	53	TCP/UDP	—	✓
HTTP	80	TCP	—	✓
HTTPS	443	TCP	—	✓
preprocessor_icap	1344	UDP	—	✓
NDR NATS (KICKS NAT)	7423	TCP	—	✓
NDR public API	8070	TCP	—	✓
deployment API	8080	TCP	✓	✓
deployment management API	8090	TCP	✓	✓
authorization service	8091	TCP	✓	✓
HTTPS	8443	TCP	—	✓
apt collector ssl	9081	TCP	—	✓
Sensor	9443	TCP	—	✓
NDR EKA	13520	TCP	—	✓

Ports used by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform services in a cluster configuration

For the application to work correctly in a cluster configuration, you must configure network access for our outgoing connections in accordance with the table below.

Ports used by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform services in a cluster configuration

Service	Port	Protocol
agent_database_configurator	2379	TCP
agent_database_configurator	5432	TCP
agent_database_synchronizer	2379	TCP
agent_database_synchronizer	5432	TCP
agent_database_synchronizer	9092	TCP
agent_database_synchronizer	9100	TCP
agent_database_synchronizer	10000:10010	TCP
agent_server	1080	TCP
agent_server	2379	TCP
agent_server	5432	TCP
agent_server	8100	TCP
agent_server	9090	TCP
agent_server	9284	TCP
antiapt_database_configurator	2379	TCP
antiapt_database_configurator	5432	TCP
authorization_service	2379	TCP
authorization_service	4567	TCP
authorization_service	8090	TCP
authorization_service	8443	TCP
authorization_service	8701	TCP
authorization_service	8899	TCP
cadvisor	Anyone	Anyone
ceph_management_api	2379	TCP
ceph_management_api	3300	TCP
ceph_management_api	6789	TCP
ceph_management_api	8765	TCP
ceph_management_api	8080	TCP
ceph_management_api	9283	TCP
ceph_management_api	9284	TCP
ceph_mgr	2379	TCP
ceph_mgr	3300	TCP
ceph_mgr	6789	TCP
ceph_mgr	6800:6900	TCP
ceph_mgr	9141	TCP
ceph_mgr	9142	TCP
ceph_mgr	9283	TCP
ceph_mgr	9284	TCP
ceph_mon	2379	TCP
ceph_mon	3300	TCP
ceph_mon	6789	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
ceph_mon	6800:6900	TCP
ceph_mon	9141	TCP
ceph_mon	9142	TCP
ceph_mon	9283	TCP
ceph_mon	9284	TCP
ceph_osd	2379	TCP
ceph_osd	3300	TCP
ceph_osd	6789	TCP
ceph_osd	6800:6900	TCP
ceph_osd	9141	TCP
ceph_osd	9142	TCP
ceph_osd	9283	TCP
ceph_osd	9284	TCP
ceph_rgw	2379	TCP
ceph_rgw	3300	TCP
ceph_rgw	6789	TCP
ceph_rgw	6800:6900	TCP
ceph_rgw	9141	TCP
ceph_rgw	9142	TCP
ceph_rgw	9283	TCP
ceph_rgw	9284	TCP
ceph_rgw_configurator	2379	TCP
ceph_rgw_configurator	3300	TCP
ceph_rgw_configurator	6789	TCP
ceph_rgw_configurator	6800:6900	TCP
ceph_rgw_configurator	9141	TCP
ceph_rgw_configurator	9142	TCP
ceph_rgw_configurator	9283	TCP
ceph_rgw_configurator	9284	TCP
clickhouse	2379	TCP
clickhouse	8123	TCP
clickhouse	9000	TCP
clickhouse_database_configurator	2379	TCP
clickhouse_database_configurator	9000	TCP
clickhouse_metrics_importer	2379	TCP
clickhouse_metrics_importer	6379	TCP
clickhouse_metrics_importer	8123	TCP
clickhouse_metrics_importer	9000	TCP
clickhouse_metrics_importer	9090	TCP
coredns	53	TCP
coredns	53	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
coredns	2379	TCP
deployment_api	22	TCP
deployment_api	2377	TCP
deployment_api	2379	TCP
deployment_api	4567	TCP
deployment_api	8080	TCP
deployment_api	8443	TCP
deployment_api	8701	TCP
deployment_api	9141	TCP
deployment_api	9284	TCP
deployment_management_api	53	TCP
deployment_management_api	2379	TCP
deployment_management_api	4567	TCP
deployment_management_api	8091	TCP
deployment_management_api	8443	TCP
deployment_management_api	8701	TCP
deployment_management_api	8702	TCP
deployment_management_api	8765	TCP
deployment_management_api	8899	TCP
deployment_management_api	9141	TCP
dhcp_server	Anyone	Anyone
edr_synchronizer	25	TCP
edr_synchronizer	80	TCP
edr_synchronizer	514	TCP
edr_synchronizer	514	UDP
edr_synchronizer	2379	TCP
edr_synchronizer	5432	TCP
edr_synchronizer	6379	TCP
edr_synchronizer	8081	TCP
edr_synchronizer	8082	TCP
edr_synchronizer	8083	TCP
edr_synchronizer	9092	TCP
edr_synchronizer	10000:10010	TCP
edr_synchronizer	33334	TCP
elasticsearch	2379	TCP
elasticsearch	9200	TCP
elasticsearch	9300	TCP
elasticsearch_data	2379	TCP
elasticsearch_data	9200	TCP
elasticsearch_data	9300	TCP
elasticsearch_exporter	2379	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
elasticsearch_exporter	9200	TCP
elasticsearch_exporter	9300	TCP
etcd	2379	TCP
etcd	2380	TCP
events_api	80	TCP
events_api	2379	TCP
events_api	5432	TCP
events_api	8080	TCP
events_api	8081	TCP
events_api	9092	TCP
events_api	9100	TCP
events_api	9284	TCP
events_api	10000:10010	TCP
fastsearch	2379	TCP
fastsearch	8080	TCP
fastsearch	8180	TCP
fastsearch_events_cleaner	9200	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	2379	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	8081	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	9092	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	9100	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	9200	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	10000:10010	TCP
hunts_database_configurator	2379	TCP
hunts_database_configurator	5432	TCP
hunts_database_synchronizer	2379	TCP
hunts_database_synchronizer	5432	TCP
hunts_database_synchronizer	9092	TCP
hunts_database_synchronizer	10000:10010	TCP
hunts_event_processor	2379	TCP
hunts_event_processor	5432	TCP
hunts_event_processor	8080	TCP
hunts_event_processor	8081	TCP
hunts_event_processor	9092	TCP
hunts_event_processor	9100	TCP
hunts_event_processor	10000:10010	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	2379	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	5432	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	8080	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	8081	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	9092	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
hunts_statistics_api	9100	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	10000:10010	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	2379	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	5432	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	8080	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	8081	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	9092	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	9100	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	9200	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	10000:10010	TCP
edr_synchronizer	25	TCP
edr_synchronizer	80	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	514	UDP
ids_alert_syncer	2379	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	5432	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	777	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	8083	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	9092	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	9200	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	10000:10010	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	33334	TCP
ipsec_manager	80	TCP
ipsec_manager	2379	TCP
kafka	2379	TCP
kafka	2181	TCP
kafka	9092	TCP
kafka	9095	TCP
kafka	10000:10010	TCP
kafka_configurator	2181	TCP
kafka_configurator	2379	TCP
kafka_configurator	9092	TCP
kafka_configurator	10000:10010	TCP
kafka_exporter	2379	TCP
kafka_exporter	9092	TCP
kafka_exporter	9100	TCP
kafka_exporter	10000:10010	TCP
kafka_proxy	Anyone	Anyone
kata_scanner	25	TCP
kata_scanner	80	TCP
kata_scanner	514	TCP
kata_scanner	514	UDP

Service	Port	Protocol
kata_scanner	443	TCP
kata_scanner	2379	TCP
kata_scanner	5432	TCP
kata_scanner	6379	TCP
kata_scanner	7777	TCP
kata_scanner	8081	TCP
kata_scanner	8082	TCP
kata_scanner	8083	TCP
kata_scanner	9081	TCP
kata_scanner	9090	TCP
kata_scanner	9092	TCP
kata_scanner	9100	TCP
kata_scanner	9284	TCP
kata_scanner	10000:10010	TCP
kata_scanner	33334	TCP
ksb_agent_server	80	TCP
ksb_agent_server	2379	TCP
ksb_agent_server	5432	TCP
ksb_agent_server	8082	TCP
ksb_agent_server	8083	TCP
ksb_agent_server	9898	TCP
ksn_proxy	80	TCP
ksn_proxy	443	TCP
ksn_proxy	514	TCP
ksn_proxy	514	UDP
ksn_proxy	2379	TCP
ksn_proxy	7777	TCP
ksn_proxy	8083	TCP
ksn_proxy	9092	TCP
ksn_proxy	9102	TCP
ksn_proxy	10000:10010	TCP
ksn_proxy	1:65535	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	2379	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	5432	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	8083	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	8088	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	9092	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	10000:10010	TCP
ksqldb_server	2379	TCP
ksqldb_server	5432	TCP
ksqldb_server	9092	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
ksqldb_server	11000:11006	TCP
management_ui	2379	TCP
management_ui	8091	TCP
monitoring_grafana	3000	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	2379	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9090	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9100	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9102	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9141	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9142	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9191	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9192	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9283	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	2379	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	4567	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	8443	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	8701	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	8090	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	8899	TCP
nginx_exporter	2379	TCP
nginx_gateway	80	TCP
nginx_gateway	81	TCP
nginx_gateway	443	TCP
nginx_gateway	2379	TCP
nginx_gateway	4443	TCP
nginx_gateway	4567	TCP
nginx_gateway	6379	TCP
nginx_gateway	8080	TCP
nginx_gateway	8081	TCP
nginx_gateway	8082	TCP
nginx_gateway	8083	TCP
nginx_gateway	8085	TCP
nginx_gateway	8090	TCP
nginx_gateway	8100	TCP
nginx_gateway	8443	TCP
nginx_gateway	8444	TCP
nginx_gateway	8701	TCP
nginx_gateway	8702	TCP
nginx_gateway	8899	TCP
nginx_gateway	9393	TCP
nginx_gateway	9898	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
node_exporter	Anyone	Anyone
nta_core	25	TCP
nta_core	80	TCP
nta_core	2379	TCP
nta_core	5433	TCP
nta_core	8082	TCP
nta_core	8083	TCP
nta_core	9443	TCP
nta_database	-	-
nta_database_configurator	2379	TCP
nta_database_configurator	5432	TCP
nta_database_configurator	5432	TCP
nta_sensor_configurator	2379	TCP
nta_sensor_configurator	8084	TCP
nta_sensor_configurator	9443	TCP
nta_sensor_configurator	50051	TCP
nta_syncer	80	TCP
nta_syncer	2379	TCP
nta_syncer	5422	TCP
nta_syncer	5423	TCP
nta_syncer	7777	TCP
nta_syncer	8084	TCP
nta_syncer	9092	TCP
nta_syncer	10000:10010	TCP
nta_syncer	50051	TCP
postfix	25	TCP
postfix	2379	TCP
postgresql_exporter	2379	TCP
postgresql_exporter	5432	TCP
postgresql_exporter	9100	TCP
postgresql_server	2379	TCP
postgresql_server	5432	TCP
preprocessor	Anyone	Anyone
preprocessor_icap	80	TCP
preprocessor_icap	1514	TCP
preprocessor_icap	1514	UDP
preprocessor_icap	2379	TCP
preprocessor_icap	4223	TCP
preprocessor_icap	6379	TCP
preprocessor_icap	7777	TCP
preprocessor_icap	8081	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
preprocessor_icap	8082	TCP
preprocessor_icap	8083	TCP
preprocessor_icap	9092	TCP
preprocessor_icap	9192	TCP
preprocessor_icap	9284	TCP
preprocessor_icap	10000:10010	TCP
preprocessor_pop	110	TCP
preprocessor_pop	514	TCP
preprocessor_pop	514	UDP
preprocessor_pop	2379	TCP
preprocessor_pop	4223	TCP
preprocessor_pop	6379	TCP
preprocessor_pop	7777	TCP
preprocessor_pop	8081	TCP
preprocessor_pop	8082	TCP
preprocessor_pop	8083	TCP
preprocessor_pop	9081	TCP
preprocessor_pop	9092	TCP
preprocessor_pop	10000:10010	TCP
preprocessor_pop	1:65535	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	514	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	514	UDP
preprocessor_smtp	2379	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	4223	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	6379	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	7777	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	8081	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	8082	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	8083	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	9081	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	9092	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	10000:10010	TCP
preprocessor_span	Anyone	Anyone
primary_database_configurator	2379	TCP
primary_database_configurator	5432	TCP
redis	2379	TCP
redis	6379	TCP
response_actions_processor	514	TCP
response_actions_processor	514	UDP
response_actions_processor	2379	TCP
response_actions_processor	5432	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
response_actions_processor	8081	TCP
response_actions_processor	9092	TCP
response_actions_processor	9100	TCP
response_actions_processor	10000:10010	TCP
response_api	514	TCP
response_api	514	UDP
response_api	2379	TCP
response_api	5432	TCP
response_api	8080	TCP
response_api	9092	TCP
response_api	9100	TCP
response_api	10000:10010	TCP
s3rotator	80	TCP
s3rotator	1080	TCP
s3rotator	2379	TCP
s3rotator	9283	TCP
s3rotator	9284	TCP
schema_registry	2379	TCP
schema_registry	8081	TCP
schema_registry	9092	TCP
schema_registry	10000:10010	TCP
sensor_event_processor	2379	TCP
sensor_event_processor	8080	TCP
sensor_event_processor	8081	TCP
sensor_event_processor	9092	TCP
sensor_event_processor	9100	TCP
sensor_event_processor	10000:10010	TCP
services_configurator	2379	TCP
siem_proxy	80	TCP
siem_proxy	514	TCP
siem_proxy	514	UDP
siem_proxy	1080	TCP
siem_proxy	1514	TCP
siem_proxy	1514	UDP
siem_proxy	2080	TCP
siem_proxy	2379	TCP
siem_proxy	9284	TCP
siem_proxy	Anyone	Anyone
snmpd	161	TCP
snmpd	2379	TCP
updater	80	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
updater	443	TCP
updater	514	TCP
updater	514	TCP
updater	2379	TCP
updater	5432	TCP
updater	6379	TCP
updater	7777	TCP
updater	8083	TCP
updater	9100	TCP
updater	9500	TCP
updater	1:65535	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	80	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	2379	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	6379	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	8083	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	9092	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	10000:10010	TCP
web_backend	25	TCP
web_backend	80	TCP
web_backend	443	TCP
web_backend	514	TCP
web_backend	514	UDP
web_backend	1080	TCP
web_backend	2379	TCP
web_backend	5432	TCP
web_backend	6379	TCP
web_backend	7777	TCP
web_backend	8080	TCP
web_backend	8081	TCP
web_backend	8082	TCP
web_backend	8083	TCP
web_backend	8085	TCP
web_backend	8090	TCP
web_backend	8123	TCP
web_backend	8283	TCP
web_backend	8443	TCP
web_backend	8444	TCP
web_backend	8899	TCP
web_backend	9090	TCP
web_backend	9092	TCP
web_backend	9284	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
web_backend	9500	TCP
web_backend	10000:10010	TCP
web_backend	33334	TCP
zookeeper	2181	TCP
zookeeper	2379	TCP
zookeeper	2888	TCP
zookeeper	3888	TCP
zookeeper	9092	TCP
zookeeper	10000:10010	TCP

Ports used by services of a Central Node deployed as a server

For the application to work correctly with the Central Node component deployed as a server, you must configure network access for outgoing connections in accordance with the table below.

Ports used by services in a configuration with the Central Node component deployed as a server

Service	Port	Protocol
agent_database_configurator	2379	TCP
agent_database_configurator	5432	TCP
agent_database_synchronizer	2379	TCP
agent_database_synchronizer	5432	TCP
agent_database_synchronizer	9092	TCP
agent_database_synchronizer	9100	TCP
agent_database_synchronizer	10000:10010	TCP
agent_server	1080	TCP
agent_server	2379	TCP
agent_server	5432	TCP
agent_server	8100	TCP
agent_server	9090	TCP
agent_server	9284	TCP
antiapt_database_configurator	2379	TCP
antiapt_database_configurator	5432	TCP
authorization_service	2379	TCP
authorization_service	4567	TCP
authorization_service	8090	TCP
authorization_service	8443	TCP
authorization_service	8701	TCP
authorization_service	8899	TCP
cadvisor	Anyone	Anyone

Service	Port	Protocol
clickhouse	2379	TCP
clickhouse	8123	TCP
clickhouse	9000	TCP
clickhouse_database_configurator	2379	TCP
clickhouse_database_configurator	9000	TCP
clickhouse_metrics_importer	2379	TCP
clickhouse_metrics_importer	6379	TCP
clickhouse_metrics_importer	8123	TCP
clickhouse_metrics_importer	9000	TCP
clickhouse_metrics_importer	9090	TCP
coredns	53	TCP
coredns	53	TCP
coredns	2379	TCP
deployment_api	22	TCP
deployment_api	2377	TCP
deployment_api	2379	TCP
deployment_api	4567	TCP
deployment_api	8080	TCP
deployment_api	8443	TCP
deployment_api	8701	TCP
deployment_api	9141	TCP
deployment_api	9284	TCP
deployment_management_api	53	TCP
deployment_management_api	2379	TCP
deployment_management_api	4567	TCP
deployment_management_api	8091	TCP
deployment_management_api	8443	TCP
deployment_management_api	8701	TCP
deployment_management_api	8702	TCP
deployment_management_api	8765	TCP
deployment_management_api	8899	TCP
deployment_management_api	9141	TCP
dhcp_server	Anyone	Anyone
edr_synchronizer	25	TCP
edr_synchronizer	80	TCP
edr_synchronizer	514	TCP
edr_synchronizer	514	UDP
edr_synchronizer	2379	TCP
edr_synchronizer	5432	TCP
edr_synchronizer	6379	TCP
edr_synchronizer	8081	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
edr_synchronizer	8082	TCP
edr_synchronizer	8083	TCP
edr_synchronizer	9092	TCP
edr_synchronizer	10000:10010	TCP
edr_synchronizer	33334	TCP
elasticsearch	2379	TCP
elasticsearch	9200	TCP
elasticsearch	9300	TCP
elasticsearch_data	2379	TCP
elasticsearch_data	9200	TCP
elasticsearch_data	9300	TCP
elasticsearch_exporter	2379	TCP
elasticsearch_exporter	9200	TCP
elasticsearch_exporter	9300	TCP
etcd	2379	TCP
etcd	2380	TCP
events_api	80	TCP
events_api	2379	TCP
events_api	5432	TCP
events_api	8080	TCP
events_api	8081	TCP
events_api	9092	TCP
events_api	9100	TCP
events_api	9284	TCP
events_api	10000:10010	TCP
fastsearch	2379	TCP
fastsearch	8080	TCP
fastsearch	8180	TCP
fastsearch_events_cleaner	9200	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	2379	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	8081	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	9092	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	9100	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	9200	TCP
fastsearch_events_importer	10000:10010	TCP
hunts_database_configurator	2379	TCP
hunts_database_configurator	5432	TCP
hunts_database_synchronizer	2379	TCP
hunts_database_synchronizer	5432	TCP
hunts_database_synchronizer	9092	TCP
hunts_database_synchronizer	10000:10010	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
hunts_event_processor	2379	TCP
hunts_event_processor	5432	TCP
hunts_event_processor	8080	TCP
hunts_event_processor	8081	TCP
hunts_event_processor	9092	TCP
hunts_event_processor	9100	TCP
hunts_event_processor	10000:10010	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	2379	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	5432	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	8080	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	8081	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	9092	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	9100	TCP
hunts_statistics_api	10000:10010	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	2379	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	5432	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	8080	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	8081	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	9092	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	9100	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	9200	TCP
hunts_statistics_processor	10000:10010	TCP
edr_synchronizer	25	TCP
edr_synchronizer	80	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	514	UDP
ids_alert_syncer	2379	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	5432	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	777	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	8083	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	9092	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	9200	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	10000:10010	TCP
ids_alert_syncer	33334	TCP
ipsec_manager	80	TCP
ipsec_manager	2379	TCP
kafka	2379	TCP
kafka	2181	TCP
kafka	9092	TCP
kafka	9095	TCP
kafka	10000:10010	TCP
kafka_configurator	2181	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
kafka_configurator	2379	TCP
kafka_configurator	9092	TCP
kafka_configurator	10000:10010	TCP
kafka_exporter	2379	TCP
kafka_exporter	9092	TCP
kafka_exporter	9100	TCP
kafka_exporter	10000:10010	TCP
kafka_proxy	Anyone	Anyone
kata_scanner	25	TCP
kata_scanner	80	TCP
kata_scanner	514	TCP
kata_scanner	514	UDP
kata_scanner	443	TCP
kata_scanner	2379	TCP
kata_scanner	5432	TCP
kata_scanner	6379	TCP
kata_scanner	7777	TCP
kata_scanner	8081	TCP
kata_scanner	8082	TCP
kata_scanner	8083	TCP
kata_scanner	9081	TCP
kata_scanner	9090	TCP
kata_scanner	9092	TCP
kata_scanner	9100	TCP
kata_scanner	9284	TCP
kata_scanner	10000:10010	TCP
kata_scanner	33334	TCP
ksb_agent_server	80	TCP
ksb_agent_server	2379	TCP
ksb_agent_server	5432	TCP
ksb_agent_server	8082	TCP
ksb_agent_server	8083	TCP
ksb_agent_server	9898	TCP
ksn_proxy	80	TCP
ksn_proxy	443	TCP
ksn_proxy	514	TCP
ksn_proxy	514	UDP
ksn_proxy	2379	TCP
ksn_proxy	7777	TCP
ksn_proxy	8083	TCP
ksn_proxy	9092	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
ksn_proxy	9102	TCP
ksn_proxy	10000:10010	TCP
ksn_proxy	1:65535	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	2379	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	5432	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	8083	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	8088	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	9092	TCP
ksqldb_configurator	10000:10010	TCP
ksqldb_server	2379	TCP
ksqldb_server	5432	TCP
ksqldb_server	9092	TCP
ksqldb_server	11000:11006	TCP
management_ui	2379	TCP
management_ui	8091	TCP
monitoring_grafana	3000	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	2379	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9090	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9100	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9102	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9141	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9142	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9191	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9192	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9283	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	2379	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	4567	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	8443	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	8701	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	8090	TCP
multitenancy_management_api	8899	TCP
nginx_exporter	2379	TCP
nginx_gateway	80	TCP
nginx_gateway	81	TCP
nginx_gateway	443	TCP
nginx_gateway	2379	TCP
nginx_gateway	4443	TCP
nginx_gateway	4567	TCP
nginx_gateway	6379	TCP
nginx_gateway	8080	TCP
nginx_gateway	8081	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
nginx_gateway	8082	TCP
nginx_gateway	8083	TCP
nginx_gateway	8085	TCP
nginx_gateway	8090	TCP
nginx_gateway	8100	TCP
nginx_gateway	8443	TCP
nginx_gateway	8444	TCP
nginx_gateway	8701	TCP
nginx_gateway	8702	TCP
nginx_gateway	8899	TCP
nginx_gateway	9393	TCP
nginx_gateway	9898	TCP
node_exporter	Anyone	Anyone
nta_core	25	TCP
nta_core	80	TCP
nta_core	2379	TCP
nta_core	5433	TCP
nta_core	8082	TCP
nta_core	8083	TCP
nta_core	9443	TCP
nta_database	-	-
nta_database_configurator	2379	TCP
nta_database_configurator	5432	TCP
nta_database_configurator	5432	TCP
nta_sensor_configurator	2379	TCP
nta_sensor_configurator	8084	TCP
nta_sensor_configurator	9443	TCP
nta_sensor_configurator	50051	TCP
nta_syncer	80	TCP
nta_syncer	2379	TCP
nta_syncer	5422	TCP
nta_syncer	5423	TCP
nta_syncer	7777	TCP
nta_syncer	8084	TCP
nta_syncer	9092	TCP
nta_syncer	10000:10010	TCP
nta_syncer	50051	TCP
postfix	25	TCP
postfix	2379	TCP
postgresql_exporter	2379	TCP
postgresql_exporter	5432	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
postgresql_exporter	9100	TCP
postgresql_server	2379	TCP
postgresql_server	5432	TCP
preprocessor	Anyone	Anyone
preprocessor_icap	80	TCP
preprocessor_icap	1514	TCP
preprocessor_icap	1514	UDP
preprocessor_icap	2379	TCP
preprocessor_icap	4223	TCP
preprocessor_icap	6379	TCP
preprocessor_icap	7777	TCP
preprocessor_icap	8081	TCP
preprocessor_icap	8082	TCP
preprocessor_icap	8083	TCP
preprocessor_icap	9092	TCP
preprocessor_icap	9192	TCP
preprocessor_icap	9284	TCP
preprocessor_icap	10000:10010	TCP
preprocessor_pop	110	TCP
preprocessor_pop	514	TCP
preprocessor_pop	514	UDP
preprocessor_pop	2379	TCP
preprocessor_pop	4223	TCP
preprocessor_pop	6379	TCP
preprocessor_pop	7777	TCP
preprocessor_pop	8081	TCP
preprocessor_pop	8082	TCP
preprocessor_pop	8083	TCP
preprocessor_pop	9081	TCP
preprocessor_pop	9092	TCP
preprocessor_pop	10000:10010	TCP
preprocessor_pop	1:65535	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	514	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	514	UDP
preprocessor_smtp	2379	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	4223	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	6379	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	7777	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	8081	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	8082	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	8083	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
preprocessor_smtp	9081	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	9092	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	10000:10010	TCP
preprocessor_span	Anyone	Anyone
primary_database_configurator	2379	TCP
primary_database_configurator	5432	TCP
redis	2379	TCP
redis	6379	TCP
response_actions_processor	514	TCP
response_actions_processor	514	UDP
response_actions_processor	2379	TCP
response_actions_processor	5432	TCP
response_actions_processor	8081	TCP
response_actions_processor	9092	TCP
response_actions_processor	9100	TCP
response_actions_processor	10000:10010	TCP
response_api	514	TCP
response_api	514	UDP
response_api	2379	TCP
response_api	5432	TCP
response_api	8080	TCP
response_api	9092	TCP
response_api	9100	TCP
response_api	10000:10010	TCP
s3proxy	80	TCP
s3proxy	1080	TCP
s3proxy	2379	TCP
s3rotator	80	TCP
s3rotator	1080	TCP
s3rotator	2379	TCP
s3rotator	9283	TCP
s3rotator	9284	TCP
schema_registry	2379	TCP
schema_registry	8081	TCP
schema_registry	9092	TCP
schema_registry	10000:10010	TCP
sensor_event_processor	2379	TCP
sensor_event_processor	8080	TCP
sensor_event_processor	8081	TCP
sensor_event_processor	9092	TCP
sensor_event_processor	9100	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
sensor_event_processor	10000:10010	TCP
services_configurator	2379	TCP
siem_proxy	80	TCP
siem_proxy	514	TCP
siem_proxy	514	UDP
siem_proxy	1080	TCP
siem_proxy	1514	TCP
siem_proxy	1514	UDP
siem_proxy	2080	TCP
siem_proxy	2379	TCP
siem_proxy	9284	TCP
siem_proxy	Anyone	Anyone
snmpd	161	TCP
snmpd	2379	TCP
updater	80	TCP
updater	443	TCP
updater	514	TCP
updater	514	TCP
updater	2379	TCP
updater	5432	TCP
updater	6379	TCP
updater	7777	TCP
updater	8083	TCP
updater	9100	TCP
updater	9500	TCP
updater	1:65535	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	80	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	2379	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	6379	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	8083	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	9092	TCP
updates_consistency_checker	10000:10010	TCP
web_backend	25	TCP
web_backend	80	TCP
web_backend	443	TCP
web_backend	514	TCP
web_backend	514	UDP
web_backend	1080	TCP
web_backend	2379	TCP
web_backend	5432	TCP
web_backend	6379	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
web_backend	7777	TCP
web_backend	8080	TCP
web_backend	8081	TCP
web_backend	8082	TCP
web_backend	8083	TCP
web_backend	8085	TCP
web_backend	8090	TCP
web_backend	8123	TCP
web_backend	8283	TCP
web_backend	8443	TCP
web_backend	8444	TCP
web_backend	8899	TCP
web_backend	9090	TCP
web_backend	9092	TCP
web_backend	9284	TCP
web_backend	9500	TCP
web_backend	10000:10010	TCP
web_backend	33334	TCP
zookeeper	2181	TCP
zookeeper	2379	TCP
zookeeper	2888	TCP
zookeeper	3888	TCP
zookeeper	9092	TCP
zookeeper	10000:10010	TCP

Ports used by services in a configuration with the Sensor component installed on a standalone server

For the application to work correctly in a configuration with the Sensor component installed on a standalone server, you must configure network access for outgoing connections in accordance with the table below.

Ports used by services in a configuration with the Sensor component installed on a standalone server

Service	Port	Protocol
cadvisor	Anyone	Anyone
ksn_proxy	80	TCP
ksn_proxy	443	TCP
ksn_proxy	514	TCP
ksn_proxy	514	UDP
ksn_proxy	2379	TCP
ksn_proxy	7777	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
ksn_proxy	8083	TCP
ksn_proxy	9092	TCP
ksn_proxy	9102	TCP
ksn_proxy	10000:10010	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	2379	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9090	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9100	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9102	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9141	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9142	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9191	TCP
monitoring_prometheus	9192	TCP
nginx_gateway	443	TCP
nginx_gateway	2379	TCP
nginx_gateway	8085	TCP
nginx_gateway	8100	TCP
nginx_gateway	8283	TCP
node_exporter	Anyone	TCP
preprocessor_icap	443	TCP
preprocessor_icap	1080	TCP
preprocessor_icap	1344	TCP
preprocessor_icap	1514	TCP
preprocessor_icap	1514	UDP
preprocessor_icap	2379	TCP
preprocessor_icap	4223	TCP
preprocessor_icap	6379	TCP
preprocessor_icap	7777	TCP
preprocessor_icap	8081	UDP
preprocessor_icap	8082	TCP
preprocessor_icap	8082	UDP
preprocessor_icap	8083	TCP
preprocessor_icap	8085	TCP
preprocessor_icap	9092	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	1514	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	1514	UDP
preprocessor_pop3	2379	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	4223	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	6379	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	7777	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	8081	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	8081	UDP

Service	Port	Protocol
preprocessor_pop3	8082	UDP
preprocessor_pop3	8083	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	9081	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	9092	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	11000	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	1514	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	1514	UDP
preprocessor_smtp	2379	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	4223	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	6379	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	7777	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	8081	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	8081	UDP
preprocessor_smtp	8082	UDP
preprocessor_smtp	8083	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	9081	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	9092	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	11000	TCP
preprocessor_span	Anyone	Anyone
preprocessor_span	13520	TCP
preprocessor_span	8081	UDP
preprocessor_span	8082	UDP
preprocessor_span	9081	TCP
preprocessor_span	7777	TCP
preprocessor_span	9092	TCP
preprocessor_span	8083	TCP
preprocessor_span	2379	TCP
preprocessor_span	6379	TCP
redis	2379	TCP
redis	6379	TCP
s3proxy	80	TCP
s3proxy	1080	TCP
s3proxy	2379	TCP
s3rotator	80	TCP
s3rotator	1080	TCP
s3rotator	2379	TCP
s3rotator	9284	TCP
sensor_management_api	Anyone	Anyone
services_configurator	2379	TCP
siem_proxy	80	TCP
siem_proxy	514	TCP

Service	Port	Protocol
siem_proxy	514	UDP
siem_proxy	1080	TCP
siem_proxy	1514	TCP
siem_proxy	1514	UDP
siem_proxy	2080	TCP
siem_proxy	2379	TCP
siem_proxy	9284	TCP
snmpd	161	TCP
snmpd	2379	TCP

Ports for communication between network traffic analysis services

For the application to work correctly, you must make sure that network traffic analysis services can communicate through the ports listed in the table below. Inbound connections for services are allowed by default.

Ports for communication between network traffic analysis services

Service	Port	Destination service	Protocol
nta_database_configurator	5433	nta_database	TCP
nta_core	5433	nta_database	TCP
nta_core	2379	etcd	TCP
nta_core	80	web_backend	TCP
nta_core	9443	internet	TCP
nta_syncer	9092	kafka	TCP
nta_syncer	2379	etcd	TCP
nta_syncer	5432	postgresql_server	TCP
nta_syncer	5433	nta_database	TCP
nta_syncer	50051	nta_core	TCP
nta_syncer	8084	nta_core	TCP
nta_sensor_configurator	50051	nta_core	UDP
nta_sensor_configurator	9443	nta_core	TCP
preprocessor_span	13520	nta_core	TCP
preprocessor_span	8081	kata_scanner	UDP
preprocessor_span	8082	kata_scanner	UDP
preprocessor_span	9081	kata_scanner	TCP
preprocessor_span	7777	ksn_proxy	TCP
preprocessor_span	9092	kafka	TCP
preprocessor_span	8083	updater	TCP
preprocessor_span	2379	etcd	TCP
preprocessor_span	6379	redis	TCP

Service	Port	Destination service	Protocol
preprocessor_icap	9092	kafka	TCP
preprocessor_icap	7777	ksn_proxy	TCP
preprocessor_icap	8081	kata_scanner	UDP
preprocessor_icap	8082	kata_scanner	UDP
preprocessor_icap	2379	etcd	TCP
preprocessor_icap	8083	updater	TCP
preprocessor_icap	4223	preprocessor_span	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	8081	kata_scanner	UDP
preprocessor_smtp	8082	kata_scanner	UDP
preprocessor_smtp	9081	kata_scanner	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	7777	ksn_proxy	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	9092	kafka	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	8083	updater	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	2379	etcd	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	6379	redis	TCP
preprocessor_smtp	4223	preprocessor_span	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	8081	kata_scanner	UDP
preprocessor_pop3	8082	kata_scanner	UDP
preprocessor_pop3	9081	kata_scanner	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	7777	ksn_proxy	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	9092	kafka	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	8083	updater	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	2379	etcd	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	6379	redis	TCP
preprocessor_pop3	4223	preprocessor_span	TCP

Managing MTU settings in iptables

If you know that your ISP limits the MTU size on the links between the solution components, you can manage the MTU settings in iptables so that the MTU size does not exceed the specified value. For example, if your ISP limits the MTU size to 1450, you can specify 1400 in iptables.

To make the configuration easier and to let the settings persist across solution components restarts, we recommend using the kata-firewall-persist-mtu utility. This utility becomes available when you upgrade Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to version 7.1.

To manage MTU settings in iptables:

1. Log in to the management console of the Central Node server over SSH or through a terminal.

   If the Central Node is deployed as a cluster, log in to the management console of any of the cluster servers that have the manager role in the Docker swarm. To view the role, use the `$ docker node ls` command.

2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

3. In the application administrator menu, select **Technical Support Mode**.

4. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **OK** and press **ENTER**.

6. Run the utility with the following options:

   ```
   kata-firewall-persist-mtu set --mss <MSS> --ip <IP address 1> --ip <IP address 2>
   ```

   where

   - `<MSS>` is the maximum segment size, calculated as the MTU size minus the length of the TCP and IP headers.
   - `<IP address 1>` and `<IP address 2>` are the IP addresses of the servers to which you want to apply the setting. This option can be specified as many times as necessary, depending on how many servers you want to apply the setting to.

   Within a few minutes, the utility saves the specified settings in iptables and ensures their persistence when the server is restarted.

7. Run the following command:

   ```
   systemctl restart kata-firewall
   ```

MTU is configured.

Additional features of the kata-firewall-persist-mtu utility

Additional features of the utility:

- View help:

  ```
  kata-firewall-persist-mtu --help
  ```

- View the current settings:

  ```
  kata-firewall-persist-mtu get
  ```

- Delete settings (the settings are no longer restored when the servers are restarted):

  ```
  kata-firewall-persist-mtu flush
  ```

Configuring integration of the Endpoint Agent component with the NDR functional block

If you use the NDR functionality, you can configure the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the Endpoint Agent component represented by Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux to receive the following information about the devices on which the component is installed:

- Information about NDR events recorded in the event database as a result of the EPP technology triggering (workstation and server protection events).
- Device information (for example, operating system version, model or vendor information).
- Information about the connections of devices on the network interaction map.
- Information about protocols used to establish connections between devices.

You can connect up to 15,000 Endpoint Agent components to a single Central Node component.

To integrate with the NDR functionality, Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux must be activated using a *KESB Advanced* or *KESB Total* license key.

Data from computers with the Endpoint Agent component is sent to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform through *integration servers*. Any server with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform component (Central Node or Sensor) installed can function as an integration server. For integration with Endpoint Agent, add integration servers to the servers that receive data from computers with Endpoint Agent.

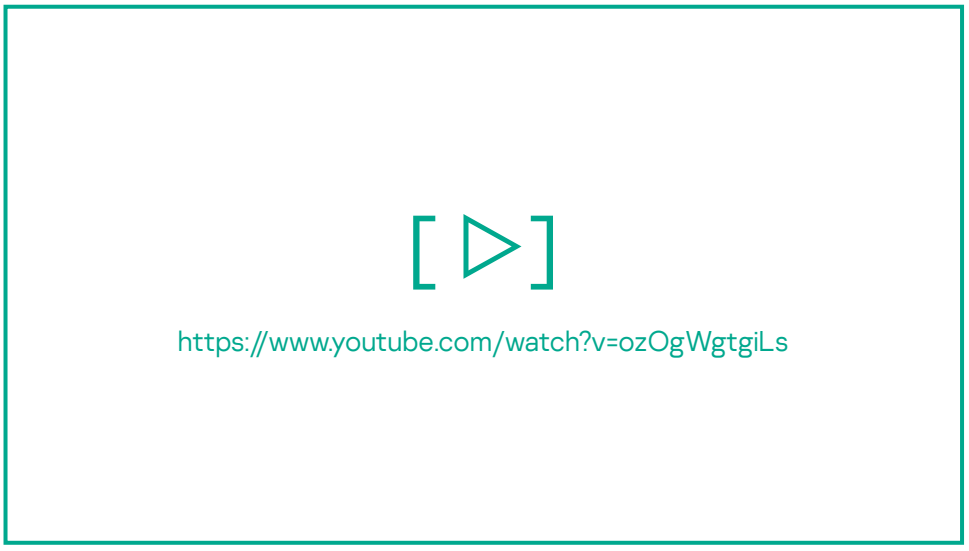
Computers hosting Endpoint Agent establish secure connections with integration servers over the HTTPS protocol. The connections are secured by certificates issued by the Central Node server. The following certificates can be used for connections:

- Integration server certificate. This certificate is verified by the computer with Endpoint Agent each time a connection is established. The connection is not established until the certificate is successfully verified.
- Client certificate. This certificate is used to authenticate integration server clients that are computers with Endpoint Agent. The same client certificate can be used by multiple computers with Endpoint Agent. By default, the integration server does not verify client certificates, but you can enable verification to improve the security of connections.

Certificates and public keys are distributed to Endpoint Agent computers using Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux. To upload this data into Kaspersky Endpoint Security, you can use a communication data package, which must be created in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform after adding the integration server.

Only users with the **Administrator** role can configure the receipt of data from Endpoint Agent components. Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of integration servers.

Watch video tutorials on how to configure the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the NDR functional unit. You can play the video on the Help page (see below) or follow the link https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ozOgWgtgiLs&t=2s.



Integration servers table

The table of integration servers is displayed in the **Settings** section, **Connection servers** subsection, on the **Integration servers** tab. This table displays information about the integration servers that have been added on the servers with the application components installed.

The table of integration servers contains the following information:

- **Node name**—Name of the server that has the application component installed.
- **IP addresses**—List of IP addresses on all network interfaces of the server with the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform component (specific network interfaces and IP addresses are not configured for integration servers because any available network interface and IP address of a computer can be used for an external connection to the integration server).
- **Requests per second**—Average number of successfully processed requests coming from clients to the integration server.
- **Status**—Current status of the integration server.
- **Verify client certificate**—Indicates whether client certificate verification is enabled or disabled (if verification is disabled, the table cell is empty).

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the table displays information only about the integration servers added on the Central Node server whose web interface you are managing.

Scenario for preparing to receive data from the Endpoint Agent component

In the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the actions on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side must be performed on the Central Node server which you want to get data from the Endpoint Agent component.

The scenario for preparing to receive data from the Endpoint Agent component involves the following steps:

1. **Installing the Endpoint Agent component on computers of the controlled network**

   At this step, you must install Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux, which acts as the Endpoint Agent component, on all computers that you want to receive information about in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. These computers must be on the same network as one of the servers with the Sensor component.

   > The current version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform supports receiving and processing data only when integrated with Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows 12.7 and later or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux 12.2 and later.

2. **Adding integration servers for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform components**

   This phase involves the completion of procedures for adding integration servers to the servers to which the Endpoint Agent components will connect. Network interactions between servers and Endpoint Agent components are possible only through network interfaces that are not being used as monitoring points. Specific network interfaces and IP addresses are not configured for integration servers because any available network interface and IP address of a computer can be used for an external connection to the integration server.

3. **Creating communication data packages for clients of integration servers**

   At this stage, you must create and download communication data packages in which the application stores certificates and keys for connections of clients to the integration servers. Each communication data package is an archive containing the following data:

   - Public key of the integration server certificate.
   - The certificate for clients of the integration server (with a private key). This certificate is added if client certificate verification is enabled on the integration server. The certificate and key are encrypted using the password specified when creating the communication data package.

4. **Uploading data for connecting to integration servers to client computers**

   We recommend using Kaspersky Security Center to do this. For Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform integration servers, clients are computers with the Endpoint Agent component. Upload certificates and/or keys from communication data packages to the Kaspersky Security Center Administration Server by using the Endpoint Agent administration plug-in. Then, create policies in Kaspersky Security Center for uploading data to computers with Endpoint Agent. For information on managing data and creating policies, see the documentation of the Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

For each integration server, at least one policy must be created, containing the following data to be uploaded to client computers:

- Public key of the integration server certificate.
- IP address for connecting to the integration server. You can specify any of the available IP addresses of the integration server node. You can view IP addresses in the web interface in the **Settings** section, **Connection servers** subsection, on the **Integration servers** tab. Port 8085 is used for the connection.
- The certificate for clients of the integration server (with a private key). This certificate is added if client certificate verification is enabled on the integration server.

5. **Enabling integration servers**

   This phase is completed after applying policies and uploading data to computers with the Endpoint Agent component. At this stage, you need to enable all integration servers to which you want data from EPP applications to be sent.

As a result of the scenario, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform starts receiving and processing data from EPP applications.

Adding an integration server

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To add an integration server:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connection servers** subsection in the window of the application web interface.
3. In the **Integration servers** tab, click the **Add Endpoint Agent integration server** button.
4. In the **Node** drop-down list, select the server with the installed Central Node or Sensor component to which you want to add an integration server.

   You can only select a node to which an integration server has not been added yet.
5. If necessary, add one or more certificates for the clients of the integration server. To do so, click the **Create new certificate** button in the **Certificates for clients (TCP mode)** section. Only certificates in TCP mode are used for integration with the Endpoint Agent component.

   You can remove unnecessary certificates from the list by clicking the × icon to the right of the field with the certificate fingerprint.

   If you have created multiple client certificates, you can select a certificate when creating the communication data package.
6. Click **Save**.

The integration server is added.

Creating a communication data package for clients of an integration server

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

After adding an integration server or after editing its settings, you need to create and download a communication data package for the clients of this server.

To create a new communication data package for the clients of the integration server:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connection servers** subsection in the window of the application web interface.
3. On the **Integration servers** tab, select the server for whose clients you want to create a new communication data package.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click ⋮.
5. Select **Get communication data package for clients**.
6. If client certificate verification is enabled for the integration server, the **Generating a new communication data package** window is displayed. Do the following:
   a. In the **Connection type** drop-down list, select **TCP**.
   b. In the **Certificate for clients** drop-down list, select the certificate that will be used for authentication of integration server clients.
   c. Specify the access password for the selected certificate. The specified password is used to encrypt the certificate in the communication data package of the connector.
   d. Click **Create communication data package**.

Central Node generates a new communication data package for the clients of the selected integration server, after which the browser saves the downloaded file. Depending on your browser's settings, a window may be displayed on your screen in which you can specify the path and name of the downloaded file.

You need to upload the contents of the communication data package to the client computers of the integration server. You can upload it using Kaspersky Security Center Administration Server policies. In Kaspersky Security Center policies, specify the IP address for connecting to the integration server (you can use one of the available IP addresses listed in the details area of the selected integration server). For more details on creating and configuring Kaspersky Security Center policies, refer to the documentation of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

Enabling or disabling an integration server

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

Integration servers can be enabled or disabled. By default, after creation, the integration server is disabled, so data from its clients is not processed by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

To enable or disable an integration server:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connection servers** subsection in the window of the application web interface.
3. On the **Integration servers** tab, select the server that you want to enable or disable.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Enable** or **Disable**.

The server is enabled or disabled.

Editing integration server settings

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

When you edit integration server settings, you can replace the certificate for the integration server itself, enable or disable verification of client certificates, and change the list of certificates for clients.

To edit integration server settings:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connection servers** subsection in the window of the application web interface.
3. On the **Integration servers** tab, select the server for whose clients you want to edit settings.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. On the toolbar, click the **Edit** button.
5. If you want to replace the certificate of the integration server itself (issue a new certificate), click **Reissue certificate**.

   Replacing the integration server certificate makes the old certificate invalid.

6. If you want to change the list of certificates for clients, you can create another certificate by clicking the **Create new certificate** button or delete previously added certificates by clicking the × icon to the right of the field with the certificate fingerprint.

   For the settings to be saved successfully, the list must contain at least one certificate.

7. Click **Save**.

Integration server settings are modified.

If you issued a new certificate for the integration server or generated new client certificates, you need to create and download the communication data package again to propagate the information about these certificates to client computers.

Removing an integration server

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To remove an integration server:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connection servers** subsection in the window of the application web interface.
3. On the **Integration servers** tab, select the server that you want to remove.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click ⋮.
5. Select **Delete**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
6. In the prompt window, click **OK**.

The integration server is removed.

Integration with mail sensors

You can configure the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with *mail sensors*. A mail sensor is a server or a virtual machine on which Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway (KSMG) or Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server (KLMS) is installed.

If this integration is enabled, applications send copies of email messages to be scanned by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and can block individual messages based on the results of this scan. When a threat is detected, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform creates an alert.

If you have configured KSMG integration, the alerts contain information about the actions that KSMG applied to the message. You can find these alerts in the table of alerts by filtering them by **Object ID** and **Actions on object**.

If you have configured scan exclusion rules by message recipient and MD5 checksum on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side, such rules are not applied when messages are processed by mail sensors.

Getting started with the application

This section contains information about how to begin managing the application in the web interface, in the administrator menu, and in Technical Support Mode.

Getting started with the application web interface with an administrator account

The web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is protected against **CSRF attacks** and operates only if the browser used for managing the application web interface provides the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. Make sure that the browser that you are using to work with the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface does not modify the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. If the connection with the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is established through a proxy server of your organization, make sure that the proxy server does not modify the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request.

Cross-Site Request Forgery (also referred to as an "XSRF attack"). Attack on website users by exploiting vulnerabilities of the HTTP protocol. The attack enables actions to be performed under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website. For example, under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website, a hacker can covertly send a request to the server of an external payment system to transfer money to the hacker's account.

After installing Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you must manage the sizing settings of the application. If the sizing settings of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform are not configured, logging in to the application web interface is not possible.

To get started with the application web interface with an administrator account:

1. In a browser on any computer on which access to the Central Node server has been allowed, enter the IP address of the server with the Central Node component into the browser's address bar.

   If you are using the high availability version of the application, you can enter the IP address of any server of the Central Node cluster or **the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the cluster**.

   To ensure uninterrupted access to the program web interface, you can configure the Round Robin function on the DNS server. To do this, log in to the web interface of the first healthy server of the Central Node cluster.

   An input window for account credentials of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user opens.

2. Enter the username, "admin", and the password that was set when deploying the Central Node component.

3. Click **Log in**.

   The **Dashboard** page of the application web interface is displayed.

You can start using the application with the administrator account.

For each user account, the number of simultaneous application management sessions is limited to one IP address. If the same user name is used to sign in to the application from a different IP address, the earlier session is terminated.

Getting started with the application web interface using an OSMP account

The web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is protected against **CSRF attacks** and operates only if the browser used for managing the application web interface provides the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. Make sure that the browser that you are using to work with the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface does not modify the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. If the connection with the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is established through a proxy server of your organization, make sure that the proxy server does not modify the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request.

Cross-Site Request Forgery (also referred to as an "XSRF attack"). Attack on website users by exploiting vulnerabilities of the HTTP protocol. The attack enables actions to be performed under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website. For example, under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website, a hacker can covertly send a request to the server of an external payment system to transfer money to the hacker's account.

After installing Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you must manage the sizing settings of the application. If the sizing settings of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform are not configured, logging in to the application web interface is not possible.

To get started with the application web interface using an OSMP user account:

1. In a browser on any computer on which access to the Central Node server has been allowed, enter the IP address of the server with the Central Node component into the browser's address bar.

   If you are using the high availability version of the application, you can enter the IP address of any server of the Central Node cluster or **the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the cluster**.

   To ensure uninterrupted access to the program web interface, you can configure the Round Robin function on the DNS server. To do this, log in to the web interface of the first healthy server of the Central Node cluster.

   An input window for account credentials of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user opens.

2. Click the **Log in via OSMP** button.

   The button is displayed if integration with OSMP is configured. For successful authentication, an account with the **OSMP user account** authentication type must be created for the user in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

The **Dashboard** page of the application web interface is displayed.

You can get started with the application.

If an OSMP server connection error is displayed on the login page of the web interface, we recommend contacting your administrator to check the OSMP integration settings.

Repeating authentication for subsequent logons to the web interface (including via direct links) is not required until the user session expires.

For each user account, the number of simultaneous application management sessions is limited to one IP address. If the same user name is used to sign in to the application from a different IP address, the earlier session is terminated.

Getting started with the application administrator menu

You can manage the settings of Sensor, Central Node, and Sandbox components in the administrator menu in the management console of each server on which the application component is installed.

Make sure that access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator menu and server management console is possible only from computers to which you have granted such access.

Make sure the computers to which you grant access are inside the secure perimeter of your network.

You can configure access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator menu and server management console from certain computers using the iptables command-line utility. For detailed information about managing iptables, see the iptables documentation.

To start working in the component administrator menu in the server management hosting the needed component:

1. Sign in to the management console of the server whose settings you want to change via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was set during the installation of the application.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

You can begin working in the application component administrator menu.

Getting started with the application in Technical Support Mode

Any actions in Technical Support Mode that are not approved and/or not recommended by Technical Support staff are prohibited and are grounds for withdrawing technical support.

You can manage the Sensor, Central Node and Sandbox components of the application in Technical Support Mode.

Technical Support Mode provides the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator with unrestricted access rights (root) to the application and all of its stored data (including personal information).

Working with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from the management console in Technical Support Mode with superuser account rights enables you to:

- Manage application operation settings using configuration files.

  You can also modify the settings for data encryption when data is transferred between application nodes, and the settings for storing and processing objects being scanned.

  In this case, data is transmitted in unencrypted form. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator must use this data independently to ensure protection of servers. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator is responsible for modifying the configuration files of the application.

- Manage trace log settings.

  Trace files may contain confidential data of the user. Such files are retained indefinitely and can be manually deleted by the administrator of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. The path for trace files is specified by the administrator of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

To start working with the Sandbox, Sensor or Central Node component in Technical Support Mode:

1. Sign in to the management console of the server whose settings you want to change via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.
2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the application administrator menu, select **Technical Support Mode**.

4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

You can proceed to manage the Central Node, Sensor, or Sandbox component in Technical Support Mode.

Managing accounts of application administrators and users

Administrator accounts

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides the following types of administrator accounts:

- Sensor. Administrator account for working in the administrator menu and in the server management console (in Technical Support Mode).

  The "admin" account that was created during Sensor installation is used by default.

- Sandbox. Administrator account for managing the web interface of the component, the administrator menu, and the server management console (in Technical Support Mode).

  The "admin" account that was created during Sandbox installation is used by default.

- Central Node. The following accounts:

  - Administrator account for managing the web interface of the application, the administrator menu, and the server management console (in Technical Support Mode).

    The "admin" account that was created during Central Node installation is used by default.

  - Administrator account of the application web interface.

The administrator account used for working in the server management console has unlimited rights to manage the server hosting the application component to which the account belongs (superuser rights). Under this account, you can turn off or restart a server, or modify the settings of the application in Technical Support Mode in the server management console.

An administrator account for working in the management console of a server (admin) has unlimited access to data on that server. The password of the administrator account for working in the server management console must be strong. The administrator must take steps to ensure the security of the servers. The administrator bears responsibility for access to data stored on servers.

User accounts

For the Central Node component, the following user accounts are provided in the application web interface: **Security auditor**, **Security officer**, and **Senior security officer**.

Where user credentials are stored

User credentials are stored on the server with the corresponding component of the solution.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, user credentials are stored on the PCN and on the server hosting the application component to which the user accounts belong.

Access to functional areas of the application depending on role

You can use an account with the **Administrator** role to manage application user accounts as well as application settings that are available to administrators of the application web interface. In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, user accounts are managed on the PCN.

An account with the **Security auditor** role can view all sections of the web interface available to administrators and security officers. A user with the **Security auditor** role can view data but cannot edit this data.

The **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles are intended for employees of your organization whose job description involves managing events, alerts, tasks of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and managing response actions. When logged in to the application under accounts that have these roles, you can see all sections of the application web interface that are available to security officers. Users with the **Senior security officer** role have access to all operations. The restrictions for users with the **Security officer** role are listed in the table below.

Access restrictions for application users with the **Security officer** role

Functional scope / Section of the web interface	Restrictions
Dashboard	The following actions are not available: • Viewing widgets for events of the VIP group • Using a link in the widget to go to the **Alerts** section
Alerts	The following actions are not available: • Viewing alert details. • Marking the completion of VIP group alert processing. • Performing operations on multiple alerts. • Exporting the list of all alerts.
Assets: **Devices**	Device grouping is not available.
Network traffic events	Operations with events related to alerts of the VIP group are not available.
Custom rules: YARA	Access only to export rules.
User-defined Sandbox rules and Intrusion Detection rules	No access.
Logs	No access to the audit log and user activity log in the web interface of the application.
Storage	No access to the following objects: • Objects that have been placed in Storage by tasks • Objects that have been uploaded by the user manually
Reports	No access.
Settings	The following actions are not available: • Creating of alert notification rules (full access to rules for sending notifications about problems encountered by the application) • Managing scan exclusions (read access) No access to the following settings: • Local KPSN reputation database connection settings • Rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts • Allow rules • Sandbox connection settings • Settings of operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox • Monitoring of services • Dictionaries • Archive passwords

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, access to tenants and the web interface of the SCN server can be allowed or denied for each account.

Creating an administrator account for the application web interface

To create an application web interface administrator account:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Click **Add**.

   This opens the **New user** window.
4. To enable an account, turn on the **Status** toggle switch.

   By default, the account is enabled.

   > If the user account is enabled, the user is allowed to gain access to the application web interface. If the user account is disabled, the user is prohibited from gaining access to the application web interface.
5. In the **Role** drop-down list, select **Administrator**.
6. Under **Authentication type**, select one of the following options:

   - **KATA user account**.

     In this case, to connect to the application web interface, the user must enter the user name and password that were configured when the account was created.

     This field is available if integration with Active Directory or OSMP is configured.

   - **Domain user account**.

     In this case, to connect to the application web interface, the user does not have to enter the user name and password; the user is authenticated with the domain account.

     This field is available if integration with Active Directory is configured.

   - **OSMP user account**.

     In this case, the user can connect to the web interface of the application using an OSMP user account. The user does not need to enter a user name and a password.

     This field is available if integration with OSMP is configured.
7. If you selected **KATA user account**:

   a. In the **User name** field, enter a user name for the account you want to create.

      The user name must meet the following requirements:

      - Must be unique in the list of user names (case-sensitive).
      - Must contain no more than 32 characters.

- Can contain letters A–Z, a–z, digits 0–9, hyphens (-), and underscores (_).
- Must begin with a letter (A–Z or a–z).

b. In the **New password** field, enter a user password that will be used to access the web interface.

The password must satisfy the following requirements:

- Must not be completely or substantially the same as the user name
- Must not contain dictionary words, popular combinations of letters, or examples of a keyboard layout (for example, Qwerty or passw0rd).
- Must contain at least 8 characters.
- Must contain at least three types of characters:
  - Uppercase character (A–Z).
  - Lowercase character (a–z).
  - Number.
  - Special character.

As you enter your password, the application checks your password to make sure it meets basic requirements. The final check is performed after you click the **Add** button. Even if the preliminary check shows that the password satisfies the requirements, the final check may reject the password, displaying an error message in the application web interface. In that case, you need to take into account the error information and come up with a different password.

c. In the **Confirm password** field, re-enter the user password that will be used to access the web interface.

8. If you selected **Domain user account**, in the **User name** field, enter the user's domain name.
9. If you selected **OSMP user account**, in the **User name** field, specify the user name from the OSMP user account in the <user name>@<domain> format.
10. Click **Add**.

The application administrator account is created.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the PCN server administrator account has access to the data of all organizations associated with that server.

Creating a user account for the application web interface

You can create user accounts with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, and **Security auditor** roles.

To create a user account for the application web interface:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Click **Add**.

   This opens the **New user** window.
4. If necessary, disable the user account using the **Status** toggle switch.

   By default, the account is enabled.

   > If the user account is enabled, the user is allowed to gain access to the application web interface. If the user account is disabled, the user is prohibited from gaining access to the application web interface.
5. Under **Authentication type**, select one of the following options:

   - **KATA user account**.

     In this case, to connect to the application web interface, the user must enter the user name and password that were configured when the account was created.

     This field is available if integration with Active Directory or OSMP is configured.

   - **Domain user account**.

     In this case, to connect to the application web interface, the user does not have to enter the user name and password; the user is authenticated with the domain account.

     This field is available if integration with Active Directory is configured.

     > If you have selected the **Domain user account** authentication type, note that the user will not be able to log in to the application web interface with a different user account.

   - **OSMP user account**.

     In this case, the user can connect to the web interface of the application using an OSMP user account. The user does not need to enter a user name and a password.

     This field is available if integration with OSMP is configured.
6. In the **Role** drop-down list, select one of the following roles:

   - **Senior security officer**
   - **Security officer**.
   - **Security auditor**
7. If you select **KATA user account**:

   a. In the **User name** field, enter a user name for the account you want to create.

The user name must meet the following requirements:

- Must be unique in the list of user names (case-sensitive).
- Must contain no more than 32 characters.
- Can contain letters A–Z, a–z, digits 0–9, hyphens (-), and underscores (_).
- Must begin with a letter (A–Z or a–z).

b. In the **New password** field, enter a user password that will be used to access the web interface.

The password must satisfy the following requirements:

- Must not be completely or substantially the same as the user name
- Must not contain dictionary words, popular combinations of letters, or examples of a keyboard layout (for example, Qwerty or passw0rd).
- Must contain at least 8 characters.
- Must contain at least three types of characters:
  - Uppercase character (A–Z).
  - Lowercase character (a–z).
  - Number.
  - Special character.

As you enter your password, the application checks your password to make sure it meets basic requirements. The final check is performed after you click the **Add** button. Even if the preliminary check shows that the password satisfies the requirements, the final check may reject the password, displaying an error message in the application web interface. In that case, you need to take into account the error information and come up with a different password.

c. In the **Confirm password** field, re-enter the user password that will be used to access the web interface.

8. If you selected **Domain user account**, in the **User name** field, enter the user's domain name.
9. If you selected **OSMP user account**, in the **User name** field, specify the user name from the OSMP user account in the <user name>@<domain> format.
10. If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, in the **Access** section, configure access rights:

    a. Turn on the **SCN web interface** toggle switch to allow the user to access not only the web interface of this PCN server, but also to web interfaces of all available SCN servers.

    b. To the right of the **Tenants** setting title, select check boxes for one or more tenants to whose web interfaces you want to grant access.

    You can use the **Select all** and **Clear all** links to select or unselect all tenants.

11. Click **Add**.

The user account is created.

Configuring user account table display

You can show or hide columns and change the order of columns in the table of application web interface user accounts.

To configure the display of the application web interface user account table:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. In the heading part of the table, click .

   This opens the **Customize table** window.
4. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

   If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

   > At least one check box must be selected.
5. If you want to change the order of columns in the table, move the mouse cursor to the row with the relevant parameter, click and move the row to its new place.
6. If you want to restore default table display settings, click **Default**.
7. Click **Apply**.

User account table display is configured.

Viewing the user account table

The user account table is displayed in the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection of the application web interface window. You can sort events in the table by the **User name**, **Role**, **Tenants**, and **Status** columns.

The table contains the following information:

1. **User name** is the user name configured when creating the account.
2. **Authentication type** is the authentication type of the user. Possible values:

   - **KATA user account**.

     In this authentication type is selected, to connect to the application web interface, the user must enter the user name and password that were configured when the account was created.

- **Domain user account**.

  If this authentication type is selected, to connect to the application web interface, the user does not have to enter the user name and password; the user is authenticated with the domain account.

- **OSMP user account**.

  If this authentication type is selected, the user can connect to the web interface of the application using an OSMP user account. The user does not need to enter a user name and a password.

3. **Role** is the role assigned to the user.

4. **Tenants** is a list of tenants to which the user has access.

   This column is displayed only in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

5. **Status** is the status of the account. Can have the following values:

   - **Enabled**

     If the user account is enabled, the user is allowed to gain access to the application web interface.

   - **Disabled**

     If the user account is disabled, the user is prohibited from gaining access to the application web interface.

Filtering user accounts

To filter or search for user accounts by required criteria:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.

2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.

3. Depending on the filtering criterion, do the following:

   - **By user name**

     a. Click the **User name** link to open the filtering menu.

     b. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

        - **Contains**

        - **Does not contain**

     c. In the text box, type the user name or a sequence of characters from the user name.

     d. Click **Apply**.

- **By authentication type**

  a. Click the **Authentication type** link to open the filtering menu.

  b. Select the check box next to the account that you want to include in filtering criteria:

  - **KATA user account**.
  - **Domain user account**.
  - **OSMP user account**.

  c. Click **Apply**.

- **By role**

  a. Click the **Role** link to open the filtering menu.

  b. Select check boxes corresponding to roles that you want to add to filter criteria.

  - **Administrator**.
  - **Senior security officer**.
  - **Security officer**.
  - **Security auditor**.

  You can select multiple check boxes.

  c. Click **Apply**.

- **By names of tenants that the user has access to**

  a. Click the **Tenants** link to open the filtering menu.

  b. Select check boxes corresponding to tenants that you want to add to filter criteria.
  You can select multiple check boxes.

  c. Click **Apply**.

- **By status**

  a. Click **Status** to expand the filter settings list.

  b. Select one of the following options:

  - **All**
  - **Enabled**
  - **Disabled**

The table displays accounts that correspond to configured filter criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing the account filter

To clear the user account filter by one or more filtering conditions:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Click to the right of the header of the user account table column for which you want to clear the filtering conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table displays only user accounts that match the specified criteria.

Changing access permissions to PCN and SCN data for a user account

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can change access rights of users with **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles to data of PCN and SCN servers as well as tenants to which those servers belong.

To change access rights of an application web interface user account, do the following in the web interface of the PCN:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Select the account whose access rights you want to change.

   This opens the **Edit user account** window.
4. If you want to enable or disable an account, move the **Status** toggle switch.
5. In the **Access** section, move the **SCN web interface** toggle switch as necessary:

   - Set the toggle switch to **Enabled** if you want to grant the user access to web interfaces of all available SCN servers in addition to the web interface of this PCN server.
   - Set the toggle switch to **Disabled** if you want to grant the user access only to the web interface of this PCN server.

6. To the right of the **Tenants** setting name, select or clear check boxes of one or more tenants for which you want to change the access rights of server web interfaces.

   You can use the **Select all** and **Clear all** links to select or unselect all tenants.

7. Click **Save**.

The access rights of the account are changed.

Enabling or disabling a user account

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, follow these steps in the web interface of the PCN. User account status management is not available in web interface of an SCN.

To enable or disable a user account:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. In the list of accounts, select the user account that you want to enable or disable.
4. In the **Status** column, do one of the following:

   - Set the toggle switch next to the name of a user account to **Enabled** if you want to enable the user account.
   - Set the toggle switch next to the name of a user account if you want to **Disabled** the user account.

   The action confirmation window is displayed.

5. Click **Yes**.

The state of the account is modified.

The Administrator account cannot be disabled.

Changing the password of a user account

Only users with the **KATA user account** authentication type can change the password of their user account.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, follow these steps in the web interface of the PCN. In the SCN web interface, you can only change the password of your own account.

To change the password of a user account:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection. In the list of accounts, select the user account whose password you want to change.

   This opens the **Edit user account** window.
3. In the **New password** field, enter a new password for the application web interface.

   The password must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Must not be completely or substantially the same as the user name
   - Must not contain dictionary words, popular combinations of letters, or examples of a keyboard layout (for example, Qwerty or passw0rd).
   - Must contain at least 8 characters.
   - Must contain at least three types of characters:
     - Uppercase character (A–Z).
     - Lowercase character (a–z).
     - Number.
     - Special character.

   As you enter your password, the application checks your password to make sure it meets basic requirements. The final check is performed after you click the **Add** button. Even if the preliminary check shows that the password satisfies the requirements, the final check may reject the password, displaying an error message in the application web interface. In that case, you need to take into account the error information and come up with a different password.
4. In the **Confirm password** field, enter the new password again.
5. Click **Save**.

The password of the application administrator account or user account is changed.

Changing the password of your account

Only users with the **KATA user account** authentication type can change the password of their user account.

To change the password of your user account:

1. Sign in to the web interface with your account.
2. Click the link with your user name in the lower-left part of the application web interface window.

3. Select the **Change password** action.

   This opens the **Change password** window.

4. In the **Old password** field, enter the current password for the application web interface.

5. In the **New password** field, enter a new password for the application web interface.

   The password must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Must not be completely or substantially the same as the user name
   - Must not contain dictionary words, popular combinations of letters, or examples of a keyboard layout (for example, Qwerty or passw0rd).
   - Must contain at least 8 characters.
   - Must contain at least three types of characters:
     - Uppercase character (A–Z).
     - Lowercase character (a–z).
     - Number.
     - Special character.

   As you enter your password, the application checks your password to make sure it meets basic requirements. The final check is performed after you click the **Add** button. Even if the preliminary check shows that the password satisfies the requirements, the final check may reject the password, displaying an error message in the application web interface. In that case, you need to take into account the error information and come up with a different password.

6. In the **Confirm password** field, enter the new password again.

7. Click **Change password**.

The user account password for accessing the application web interface is changed.

Deleting a user account

When deleting accounts, the following limitations apply:

- The user account named 'admin' cannot be deleted.

  This user account is created during the installation of the component and is used for working with the web interface, the application administrator menu, and the server management console (in Technical Support Mode).

- You cannot delete your own user account.

After deleting accounts, the following special considerations apply:

- The user account name is retained in the information about the following objects (if the user has worked with them): in alert change history, in information about objects in Storage, in custom rules, reports, report templates.
- The user account name is retained in the application logs.
- The ability to search, sort, and filter objects by the name of the user account is retained.
- If an alert assigned to the user was open at the time when the user account was deleted, the alert card is modified in the following way after the deletion:
  - The alert status changes to **New**.
  - A dash appears in the **Assigned to** field instead of the deleted assignee account.
- If an alert assigned to the user was closed at the time when the user account was deleted, the alert remains assigned to this user after the deletion.
- The session of a user account that has been deleted ends when the session expires or when the user logs in to the web interface of this SCN with the same user name as the user name of the deleted account.

To delete one user account:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Select the user account that you want to delete.

   This opens the **Edit user account** window.
4. Click **Delete**.

   The confirmation window is displayed.
5. Click **Yes**.

The user account is deleted.

To delete multiple user accounts:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Select the check boxes to the left of the names of the users whose accounts you want to delete.

   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
4. Click **Delete**.

   The confirmation window is displayed.
5. Click **Yes**.

The user accounts are deleted.

If, at the time of deleting an account, the user is authorized in the web interface of the application, after the session expires or the user navigates to a different section of the web interface, the user's session ends and a notification is displayed to the effect that the account has been deleted. If the user refreshes the page, the session ends without a notification.

Authentication using domain accounts

If authentication using domain accounts is configured, users do not have to enter Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform account credentials to connect to the application web interface.

To enable authentication using domain accounts:

1. Configure integration with Active Directory.

   To set up the Active Directory integration, you must create a keytab file containing the service principal name (hereinafter also "SPN") for the Central Node server on which you want to set up the integration.

2. Select the **Domain user account** authentication type for the user when creating the account.

Creating a keytab file

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform supports two authentication methods: some users can use an internal user account for authentication, while others use a domain user account.

For details about domain authentication in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, see the Authentication using domain accounts sections.

You can use the same Active Directory user account to authenticate on multiple Central Node servers. Service principal name (SPN)To do so, you must create a keytab file that contains *service principal names (hereinafter also SPN)* for each of these servers. When you create the keytab file, you must use an attribute to generate a *salt* (hash function input modifier).

> The generated salt must be saved in any convenient way for adding more SPNs to the keytab file in the future.

You can also create a separate Active Directory user account for each Central Node server for which you want to set up Kerberos authentication.

Creating a keytab file for authentication on multiple Central Nodes with the same user account

To create a keytab file for authentication on multiple Central Nodes with the same user account:

1. On the domain controller, in the **Active Directory Users and Computers** snap-in, create a user account (for example, with `control-user` as its name).

   When creating a user account, you can select the **Password never expires** check box. This lets you set an account password that never expires, avoiding authentication errors after the expiry of a password, which also causes cryptographic keys generated from the password and saved in the keytab file to become invalid.

2. If you want to disable password expiration date for an existing account, in the **Active Directory Users and Computers** snap-in:

   a. Open the properties of the user account that you have created.

   b. On the **Account** tab, select the **Password never expires** check box.

3. If you want to use the AES256-SHA1 encryption algorithm, in the **Active Directory Users and Computers** snap-in:

   a. Open the properties of the user account that you have created.

   b. On the **Account** tab, select the **This account supports Kerberos AES 256 bit encryption** check box.

4. Use the ktpass utility to create a keytab file for the `control-user` user. To do so, run the following command on the command line:

   ```
   C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/<fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the Central Node server>@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -mapuser control-user@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * +dumpsalt -out <path to the file>\<file name>.keytab
   ```

   The utility requests the `control-user` password when executing the command.

   The SPN of the selected server is added to the created keytab file. The generated salt is displayed on screen: `Hashing password with salt "<hash value>".`

5. Add an SPN record for each subsequent Central Node server to the keytab file. To do so, run the following command:

   ```
   C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/<fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the Central Node server>@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -mapuser control-user@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in <path and name of the previously created file>.keytab -out <path and new name>.keytab -setupn -setpass -rawsalt "<hash value of the salt obtained when creating the keytab file at step 3>"
   ```

   The utility requests the `control-user` password when executing the command.

The keytab file is created. This file contains all added SPNs of selected servers.

Example:

For example, you need to create a keytab file containing SPN names of 3 servers: `control-01.test.local`, `secondary-01.test.local`, and `secondary-02.test.local`.

To create a `filename1.keytab` file containing the SPN of the server in C:\keytabs\, run the command:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/control-01.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser control-user@TEST.LOCAL -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * +dumpsalt -out C:\keytabs\filename1.keytab
```

Let's say you got `"TEST.LOCALHTTPcontrol-01.test.local"` as the salt.

To add another SPN, run the following command:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/secondary-01.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser control-user@TEST.LOCAL -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in C:\keytabs\filename1.keytab -out C:\keytabs\filename2.keytab -setupn -setpass -rawsalt "TEST.LOCALHTTPcontrol-01.test.local"
```

To add a third SPN:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/secondary-02.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser control-user@TEST.LOCAL -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in C:\keytabs\filename2.keytab -out C:\keytabs\filename3.keytab -setupn -setpass -rawsalt "TEST.LOCALHTTPcontrol-01.test.local"
```

This creates a `filename3.keytab` file containing all three added SPNs.

Creating a keytab file for authentication with a separate user account on each Central Node

To create a keytab file for authentication with a separate user account on each Central Node:

1. On the domain controller server, in the **Active Directory Users and Computers** snap-in, create a separate user account for each server (for example, `control-user`, `secondary1-user`, `secondary2-user`, etc).

   When creating a user account, you can select the **Password never expires** check box. This lets you set an account password that never expires, avoiding authentication errors after the expiry of a password, which also causes cryptographic keys generated from the password and saved in the keytab file to become invalid.

2. If you want to disable password expiration date for an existing account, in the **Active Directory Users and Computers** snap-in:

   a. Open the properties of the user account that you have created.

   b. On the **Account** tab, select the **Password never expires** check box.

3. If you want to use the AES256-SHA1 encryption algorithm, in the **Active Directory Users and Computers** snap-in:

   a. Open the properties of the user account that you have created.

   b. On the **Account** tab, select the **This account supports Kerberos AES 256 bit encryption** check box.

4. Use the ktpass utility to create a keytab file for the `control-user` user. To do so, run the following command on the command line:

   ```
   C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/<fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the Central Node server>@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -mapuser control-user@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -out <path to the file>\<file name>.keytab
   ```

   The utility requests the `control-user` password when executing the command.

   The SPN of the selected server is added to the created keytab file.

5. Add an SPN record for each subsequent Central Node server to the keytab file. To do so, run the following command:

   ```
   C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/<fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the Central Node server>@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -mapuser secondary1-user@<realm name of the Active Directory domain in uppercase> -crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in <path and name of the previously created file>.keytab -out <path and new name>.keytab
   ```

   The utility requests the `secondary1-user` password when executing the command.

The keytab file is created. This file contains all added SPNs of selected servers.

Example:

For example, you need to create a keytab file containing SPN names of 3 servers: `control-01.test.local`, `secondary-01.test.local`, and `secondary-02.test.local`.

To create a `filename1.keytab` file containing the SPN of the server in C:\keytabs\, run the command:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/control-01.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser control-user@TEST.LOCAL -
crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -out C:\keytabs\filename1.keytab
```

To add another SPN, run the following command:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/secondary-01.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser secondary1-user@TEST.LOCAL
-crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in C:\keytabs\filename1.keytab -out
C:\keytabs\filename2.keytab
```

To add a third SPN:

```
C:\Windows\system32\ktpass.exe -princ HTTP/secondary-02.test.local@TEST.LOCAL -mapuser secondary2-user@TEST.LOCAL
-crypto AES256-SHA1 -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -pass * -in C:\keytabs\filename2.keytab -out
C:\keytabs\filename3.keytab
```

This creates a `filename3.keytab` file containing all three added SPNs.

Configuring integration with Active Directory

For details about domain authentication in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, see the Authentication using domain accounts sections.

To configure integration with Active Directory:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Go to the **Active Directory integration** tab.
4. Select the **Integration** check box if you want to enable integration with Active Directory.
5. Click **Browse** to upload the keytab file.
6. Select the keytab file and click **Open**.

After you upload the file, the following fields are displayed:

- **Keytab file status**. Possible values:
  - **File contains SPN for this server** means the uploaded keytab file contains the SPN for that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server.
  - **No SPN for this server** means the uploaded keytab file does not contain the SPN for that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server.
- **File contents** is the list of SPNs that the file contains.

7. Click **Apply**.

Integration with Active Directory is configured.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, Active Directory integration settings configured on the PCN server are **not** applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN server. If you want to set up Active Directory integration on individual SCN servers, you must complete the steps above on each of the selected SCN servers.

Disabling integration with Active Directory

For details about domain authentication in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, see the Authentication using domain accounts sections.

When integration with Active Directory is disabled, user authentication with domain accounts is not available.

To disable integration with Active Directory:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Go to the **Active Directory integration** tab.
4. Clear the **Integration** check box.
5. Click **Apply**.

Integration with Active Directory is disabled. The uploaded keytab file is permanently deleted.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, Active Directory integration settings configured on the PCN server are **not** applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN server. If you want to disable Active Directory integration on individual SCN servers, you must complete the steps above on each of the selected SCN servers.

Authentication using OSMP accounts

The Open Single Management Platform (hereinafter also referred to as "OSMP") provides a streamlined detection and response process using integrated components in a unified interface to improve the efficiency of security officers.

If authentication using OSMP accounts is configured, users with the **Administrator**, **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, and **Security auditor** roles can connect to the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using an OSMP account. Users do not need to enter a user name and a password.

To configure authentication using OSMP user accounts:

1. Configure DNS.
2. Configure integration with OSMP.
3. Select the **OSMP user account** authentication type for the user when creating the account.

The applications communicate over the OAuth 2.0 protocol.

When the integration configuration is completed on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side, the data (registration_access_token, client_secret, and registration_client_URI parameters in OAuth 2.0) are saved as a secret, which allows users to navigate from the OSMP web interface to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface without entering credentials. To maintain information security, you can update the secret.

Configuring integration with OSMP

To configure integration with OSMP:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.

   In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
2. Select the **Integration with OSMP** tab.
3. Select the **Integration** check box.

   The integration is disabled by default.
4. In the **KATA server** field, enter the IP address or FQDN of the Central Node server to which the OSMP console must redirect (the redirect_URI parameter in OAuth 2.0).
5. In the **OSMP server** field, enter the IP address or FQDN of the OSMP server that is responsible for user authentication when logging in to the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform
6. Click **Get certificate fingerprint**.

   The **Certificate fingerprint** field displays the TLS certificate fingerprint of the OSMP server. Make sure the certificate fingerprint matches the certificate fingerprint on the OSMP side.
7. In the **Client name** field, enter the name that you want to identify the Central Node server (the client_ID parameter in OAuth 2.0).

8. In the **API token** field, enter the API token obtained in OSMP

   For more information on obtaining a token, see the *Creating a token* section in the Help of the Symphony XDR: Open Single Management Platform application.

9. Click **Apply**.

   Integration with OSMP is configured.

Integration settings are applied 1–2 minutes after saving. Before making more changes, we recommend waiting until the last change is applied.

If the application cannot establish a connection to OSMP, the *OSMP server connection problem. Contact your administrator to check connection settings and try again* error is displayed. In this case, we recommend checking the integration settings.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, OSMP integration settings configured on the PCN server are **not** applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN server. If you want to set up OSMP integration on individual SCN servers, you must complete the steps above on each of the selected SCN servers.

Disabling integration with OSMP

When you disable the integration, the following data is permanently deleted: client name, OSMP server address, and API token. Sessions of users authenticated in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform at the time of disabling the integration remain active. After a session ends, the user authenticated using an OSMP account will not be able to log in to the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform until integration with OSMP is configured and enabled.

To disable integration with OSMP:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.

   In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.

2. Select the **Integration with OSMP** tab.

3. Clear the **Integration** check box if you want to disable OSMP integration.

4. Click **Apply**.

   The integration is disabled.

Updating the secret

When the integration configuration is completed on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side, the data (registration_access_token, client_secret, and registration_client_URI parameters in OAuth 2.0) are saved as a secret, which allows users to navigate from the OSMP web interface to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface without entering credentials. To maintain information security, you can update the secret. After updating, the registration_access_token and client_secret parameters are modified.

To update the secret:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Users** subsection.
3. Select the **Integration with OSMP** tab.
4. Click the **Reset secret** button.
5. If an error occurs while updating the secret, in the **Client name** field, enter a new name that will be used to identify the Central Node server in OSMP, and click the **Apply** button.

The secret is updated.

Participation in Kaspersky Security Network and use of Kaspersky Private Security Network

To protect the user's computer more effectively, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform uses data that is obtained from users around the globe. *Kaspersky Security Network* is designed to obtain such data.

Kaspersky Security Network (hereinafter also "KSN") is an infrastructure of online services that provides users with access to the Kaspersky online knowledge base containing information on the reputation of files, web resources, and software. Use of data from Kaspersky Security Network ensures that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform responds faster to new objects that have not yet been added to the anti-virus databases, improves the performance of some protection components, and reduces the likelihood of false alarms.

Thanks to users who participate in Kaspersky Security Network, Kaspersky is able to promptly receive information about the types and sources of objects that have not yet been added to the anti-virus databases, develop solutions for neutralizing them, and minimize the number of false alarms. User participation also helps other users of Kaspersky Security Network promptly receive information about threats to the IT infrastructure of their organizations.

When you participate in Kaspersky Security Network, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends Kaspersky Security Network requests about the reputation of files, web resources and software, and receives a response containing data about the reputation of those objects.

Personal information of the user is not collected, processed, or stored. For information about data that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends to Kaspersky Security Network, refer to the KSN Statement.

Participation in Kaspersky Security Network is voluntary. The decision to participate in Kaspersky Security Network is made during installation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and that decision can be changed at any time.

If you do not want to participate in KSN, you can use Kaspersky Private Security Network (hereinafter also referred to as "KPSN"). KPSN is a solution that allows users to access the reputation databases of Kaspersky Security Network and other statistical data without actually sending data from their own computers to Kaspersky Security Network.

If you want to purchase the Kaspersky Private Security Network application, please contact Kaspersky partners in your region.

Participation in KSN is configured on the Central Node server and is applied to all connected Sensor servers.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, participation in KSN is configured on the PCN server. Configured participation in KSN is applied to all SCN servers connected to the PCN.

The update functionality (including anti-virus signature updates and code base updates), as well as the KSN functionality may be unavailable in the territory of the USA.

Viewing the KSN Statement and configuring participation in KSN

To configure the participation in Kaspersky Security Network:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. On the right of the **Reputation database** setting, click the **KSN** button.
4. Carefully read the Kaspersky Security Network Statement and select one of the following options:
   - **I agree to participate in KSN**, if you accept the terms of the KSN Statement and want to participate in KSN.
   - **I do not agree to participate in KSN**, if you do not accept the terms of the KSN Statement and do not want to participate in KSN.

     If you do not agree with the terms of the Statement, use of Kaspersky Security Network will not be enabled.
5. Click **Apply**.

Participation in Kaspersky Security Network will be configured.

Enabling the use of KPSN

To correctly connect to KPSN, you must use the ports that are listed for the ksn_proxy service in the *Ports used by services of a Central Node deployed as a server* section. When KPSN integration is configured with other ports, the connection attempt fails.

To enable the use of KPSN:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. On the right of the **Reputation database** setting, click the **KPSN** button.
4. In the **KPSN configuration files** section, upload the kc_private.xms, kh_private.xms, and ksncli_private.dat files by clicking **Browse**.
5. Click **Apply**.

Use of Kaspersky Private Security Network will be enabled.

Configuring a connection to a local reputation database of KPSN

The application can save information about Sandbox component alerts to the local reputation database of KPSN. In this case, the *Untrusted* status is assigned to objects. Data of local reputation databases is available only to corporate LAN computers.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the connection of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to a local KPSN reputation database:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KPSN reputation database** subsection.
3. In the **Host** field, specify the IP address of the KPSN server on which the local reputation database of KPSN is stored.
4. Click **Browse** to the right of the **TLS certificate** field.

   This opens the file selection window.
5. Select the certificate file for user authentication in KPSN and click the **Open** button.
6. Click **Browse** to the right of the **TLS encryption key** field.

   This opens the file selection window.
7. Select the file containing the private encryption key, and click the **Open** button.

The connection to the local reputation database of KPSN will be configured.

Configuring information to be saved to a local reputation database of KPSN

The application can save MD5 and SHA256 hashes of objects detected by the Sandbox component in the local reputation database of KPSN. In this case, the *Untrusted* status is assigned to objects. Data of local reputation databases is available only to corporate LAN computers.

To configure the saving of objects detected by the Sandbox component to the local reputation database of KPSN:

1. Log in to the application web interface under the senior security officer account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KPSN reputation database** subsection.

3. Do one of the following:

   - Turn on the **Assign the "Untrusted" status to objects** switch if you want the application to set the status of objects to *Untrusted* and save information about them in the local reputation database of KPSN.
   - Turn off the **Assign the "Untrusted" status to objects** switch if you do not want to save information about detected objects in the local reputation database of KPSN.

4. Click **Save**.

The saving of information to the local reputation database of KPSN is configured.

Declining participation in KSN and use of KPSN

To decline participation in Kaspersky Security Network and the use of KPSN:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. On the right of the **Reputation database** setting, click the **Not used** button.
4. Click **Apply**.

You will not participate in KSN and will not use KPSN.

Managing the Sandbox component through the web interface

The Sandbox web interface is located on the server hosting the Sandbox component.

The Sandbox web interface is protected against **CSRF attacks** and operates only if the web interface user's browser provides the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. Make sure that the browser that you are using to work with the Sandbox web interface does not modify the Referrer header of an HTTP POST request. If the connection with the web interface is established through a proxy server of your organization, check the settings and make sure that the proxy server does not modify the Referrer header for an HTTP POST request.

Cross-Site Request Forgery (also referred to as an "XSRF attack"). Attack on website users by exploiting vulnerabilities of the HTTP protocol. The attack enables actions to be performed under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website. For example, under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website, a hacker can covertly send a request to the server of an external payment system to transfer money to the hacker's account.

To get started with the web interface of the Sandbox application:

1. In a browser on any computer on which access to the server with the Sandbox component is allowed, enter the IP address of the server with the Sandbox component.

   This opens the Sandbox component administrator credentials input window.

2. Enter the Sandbox component administrator user name and password that you specified when installing the Sandbox component.

You can now start working in the Sandbox web interface.

For each user account, the number of simultaneous Sandbox management sessions is limited to one IP address. If the same user name is used to sign in to Sandbox from a different IP address, the earlier session is terminated.

If you use more than one servers with the Sandbox component, configure settings of each Sandbox component from the Sandbox web interface of such server.

Updating the Sandbox component databases

The Sandbox component databases are files with records that make it possible to detect a malicious code and signs of suspicious behavior in scanned objects.

Virus analysts at Kaspersky detect hundreds of new threats daily, create records to identify them, and include them in *database upgrade packages* (or upgrade packages). Upgrade packages consist of one or more files containing records to identify threats that were detected since the previous upgrade package was released. We recommend that you regularly receive upgrade packages.

During the license validity period, you can obtain update packages automatically once every hour or update the databases manually.

If you have deployed Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in an isolated network or in a network with limited internet bandwidth, you can configure component database updates using the Kaspersky Update Utility. Sandbox can also receive database updates from the Central Node to which it is connected, if this Central Node is selected as the update source.

Updating databases manually

To start a database update manually:

1. Select the **Database update** section in the Sandbox web interface window.

   The **Last update** settings group will show time and status of the last Sandbox database update.

2. Click **Start**.

Selecting a database update source

To select a database update source:

1. Select the **Database update** section in the Sandbox web interface window.
2. In the **Update source** settings group, select a source from which you want to receive upgrade packages:

   - **Kaspersky update server**.

     The application connects to Kaspersky update server over HTTP and downloads up-to-date databases.

   - **Kaspersky update server (secure connection)**.

     The application connects to Kaspersky update server over HTTPS and downloads up-to-date databases. It is recommended to use HTTPS for database updates.

   - **Custom server**.

     The application connects to your FTP or HTTP server or a directory with application databases on your computer to download up-to-date databases. You can also select the Central Node to which Sandbox is connected as the update source.

     HTTP must be used for communication between your HTTP server and Sandbox. HTTPS is not supported in this case.

3. If you selected **Custom server**:

   - If you want to specify an FTP or HTTP server as the update source, in the field below this setting, specify the full path to the application database update package directory.

   - If you want to specify the Central Node to which Sandbox is connected as the update source, under the field, left-click the IP address of the Central Node server that you want to use. The field displays the address of the Central Node server in the http://<Central Node IP address>/retranslation format.

4. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

The database update source is selected.

Updating component databases using Kaspersky Update Utility

If you have deployed Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in an isolated network or in a network with limited internet bandwidth, you can configure component database updates using the Kaspersky Update Utility. In this case, the utility downloads update packages to a computer outside the organization's local network, from where they are copied to your FTP or HTTP server. Sandbox receives update packages from this server.

Configuring component database updates using the utility involves the following steps:

1. Download update packages using Kaspersky Update Utility.

   First, you need to contact Kaspersky Technical Support and request the distribution package of the utility and a list of servers from which you can download updates.

2. Uploading update packages obtained using the Kaspersky Update Utility to your FTP or HTTP server.

3. Selecting your FTP or HTTP server as the database update source.

Downloading update packages using Kaspersky Update Utility

You need to contact Kaspersky Technical Support and request the distribution package of the utility and a list of servers from which you can download updates.

To install the Kaspersky Update Utility:

1. Download the folder with the utility distribution package to your computer.

2. Run the UpdateUtility-Gui.exe file.

3. In the window that is opened, click the **Applications** button and select the check box to the left of the **8.0** version.

4. Click **OK** and **Apply**.

The utility is installed. You can download service packs by following the steps below.

To download update packages using Kaspersky Update Utility:

1. In the main window of the utility, click the **Settings** button and select **Download**.

2. Under **Updates source**, select **Other** and enter the address of your server for downloading updates.

3. Click **OK** and **Apply**.

4. Click **Start**.

The update packages are downloaded to the computer on which you are running the utility. The files are ready to be uploaded to your FTP or HTTP server.

Enabling and disabling a proxy server for database update

To enable or disable a proxy server for updating the Sandbox component databases:

1. Select the **Database update** section in the Sandbox web interface window.
2. In the workspace, do one of the following:
   - Enable the switch next to the **Proxy server** settings group name if you want to use the proxy server for the Sandbox component database update.
   - Disable the switch next to the **Proxy server** settings group name if you do not want to use the proxy server for the Sandbox component database update.

Configuring proxy server connection settings for database update

To configure the proxy server connection for updating Sandbox component databases:

1. Select the **Database update** section in the Sandbox web interface window.
2. Enable the switch next to the **Proxy server** settings group name.
3. In the **Address** field, enter the proxy server address.
4. In the **Port** field, enter the proxy server port number.
5. In the **User name** field, enter the proxy server user name.
6. In the **Password** field, enter the password to obtain connection to the proxy server.
7. Do one of the following:
   - Select the **Bypass proxy server for local addresses** check box if you do not want to use the proxy server for internal IP addresses of your organization.
   - Clear the **Bypass proxy server for local addresses** check box if you want to use the proxy server irrespective of whether the IP addresses belong to your organization.
8. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Configuring connection between the Sandbox and Central Node components

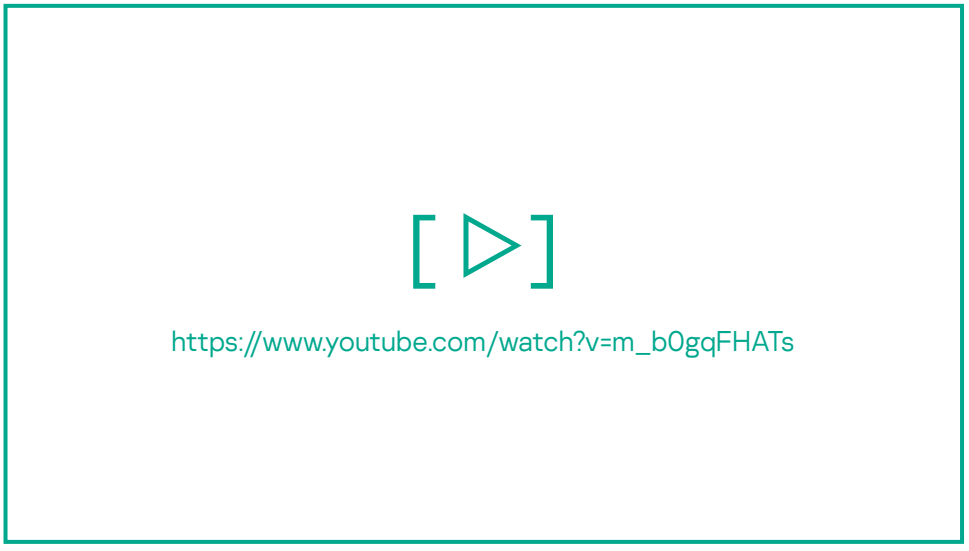
The following procedure is used to configure Sandbox connection with the Central Node component:

1. A request for connection to the Sandbox component is created in the application web interface.
2. The Sandbox web interface shows connection requests.

   You can accept or reject the request.

After configuring the connection, the Sandbox server needs 5 to 10 minutes to get ready for operation. During this time, the **System health** window of the application web interface displays a warning: *A problem occurred with the standard configuration*. When the server is ready for operation, the warning disappears.

Watch a video tutorial on how to connect the Sandbox and Sensor components. You can play the video on the Help page (see below) or follow the link https://youtu.be/m_b0gqFHATs?si=TCUGbvi0RV8JA1Kd.



Connecting the Sandbox and Sensor components, health check

Processing connection requests from the Central Node servers and OSMP in the Sandbox web interface

You can accept, reject, or revoke a previously accepted connection request from the Central Node servers or OSMP in the Sandbox web interface.

To accept, reject, or revoke a connection request from Central Node servers or OSMP:

1. Select the **Authorization** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.

   The **Central Node connection requests** section will show a list of connection requests from the Central Node servers or OSMP.

Each connection request contains the following information:

- **IP**—IP address of the server.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Thumbprint of the server TLS certificate used to establish an encrypted connection.
- **State**—Status of the connection request.

  May have the values **Pending** or **Accepted**.

2. Make sure that the Central Node or OSMP certificate thumbprint matches the certificate thumbprint configured for the Central Node or OSMP.
3. Click one of the following buttons in the line containing the connection request from the servers:
   - **Accept** if you want to accept the connection request.
   - **Reject** if you want to reject the connection request.
   - **Revoke** if you want to revoke a previously accepted connection request.
4. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

The connection request is accepted, rejected, or revoked.

Configuring the Sandbox component network interfaces

This section describes configuration of the Sandbox component network interfaces.

Configuring DNS settings

To configure DNS:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Host name** field, enter the name of the server on which you are installing the Sandbox component in FQDN format (for example, sandbox).
3. To the right of the **DNS servers** parameter name, click the **Add** button.

   This will add an empty field for the DNS server IP address input.
4. Enter the IP address of the primary DNS server in IPv4 format.
5. Click the ✓ button to the right of the entry field.

   The DNS server will be added.
6. If you want to add an additional DNS server, repeat steps 2-5.

7. If you want to remove a previously added DNS server, click the button to the right of the line containing the DNS server IP address.

   You can only remove additional DNS servers. You cannot remove the primary DNS server. If you added 2 and more DNS servers, you can remove any of them, and the remaining DNS server will be used as the primary server.

Configuring settings of the management network interface

A management network interface is intended for providing access to the server with the Sandbox component via the SSH protocol, and the Sandbox component will also receive objects from the Central Node component via this interface.

You can configure a management network interface during installation of the Sandbox component.

You can also configure a management network interface from the Sandbox web interface.

To configure a management network interface from the Sandbox web interface:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Management interface** settings group from the **Interface** drop-down list, select a network interface, which you want to use as a management interface.
3. In the **IP** field, enter the IP address that you want to assign to this network interface if no IP address is assigned.
4. In the **Mask** field, enter the network mask in which you want to use this network interface.
5. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Configuring settings of a network interface used for Internet access of processed objects

Objects processed by the Sandbox component may attempt activities on the Internet via the network interface used for Internet access of processed objects. The Sandbox component can analyze the behavior of these objects.

If you block Internet access, the Sandbox component cannot analyze the behavior of objects on the Internet, and will therefore only analyze the behavior of objects without Internet access.

The network interface used for Internet access of processed objects must be isolated from the local network of your organization.

If the security policy of your organization denies access to the Internet from computers of local network users, and you have configured the Sandbox network interface for Internet access of processed objects, there is a risk of the following scenario:

A hacker can attach a malicious application to a random file and initiate a Sandbox scan of this file from the computer of a local network user. This file will be taken over outside the local network through the network interface used for Internet access of processed objects in the course of scanning the file by the Sandbox component.

Unavailability of the Sandbox network interface for Internet access of processed objects eliminates any risk of such data transfer but compromises the quality of alerts.

To configure the network interface used for Internet access of processed objects:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Internet interface** settings group from the **Interface** list, select a network interface that you want to use for Internet access of processed objects.

   The management network interface that you configured previously cannot be selected from this list of network interfaces.
3. In the **IP** field, enter the IP address that you want to assign to this network interface.
4. In the **Mask** field, enter the network mask in which you want to use this network interface.
5. In the **Default gateway** field, enter the gateway address of the network in which you want to use this network interface.
6. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Adding, changing and removing static network routes

You can configure static network routes during installation of the Sandbox component.

You can also add, remove or change static network routes from the Sandbox web interface.

To add a static network route:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Static routes** settings group, click the **Add** button.

   A line with empty fields will be added in the list of static network routes.
3. In the **IP** field, enter the IP address of the server for which you want to configure a static network route.
4. In the **Mask** field, enter the subnet mask.
5. In the **Gateway** field, enter the IP address of the gateway.
6. From the **Interface** list, select a network interface for which you want to add a static network route.
7. Click ✓.
8. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

To remove a static network route, proceed as follows:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Static routes** settings group in the line containing the static network route that you want to remove, click the 🗑 button.
3. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

To modify a static network route:

1. Select the **Network interfaces** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Static routes** settings group in the line containing the static network route that you want to change, click the ✎ button.

   The static network route line will become editable. You can change one or more parameters of a static network route.
3. In the **IP** field, change the IP address of the server for which you want to configure a static network route.
4. In the **Mask** field, change the subnet mask.
5. In the **Gateway** field, change the IP address of the gateway.
6. From the **Interface** list, select the network interface for which you are editing the network route.
7. Click ✓.
8. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Sandbox authentication policies

You can configure Sandbox authentication policies for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform users. These policies apply to all Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform users with the **KATA user account** account type regardless of their assigned role.

Termination of inactive sessions

If the user is not doing anything (the session is idle), we recommend terminating such a session. This reduces the risk of unauthorized access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in cases when the user is actually done working with the application, but did not end the session.

Notifications about failed authentication attempts

Frequent failed attempts to log in to the web interface or the management console may indicate that a cybercriminal is trying to gain access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform by brute-forcing the password. To prevent such unauthorized access, we recommend to enabling notifications about the failed authentication attempt limit being exceeded.

Terminating inactive Sandbox sessions

If the user is not doing anything (the session is idle), we recommend terminating such a session. This reduces the risk of unauthorized access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in cases when the user is actually done working with the application, but did not end the session.

To enable and configure the termination of inactive sessions:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Authentication policies** section.
2. In the **Terminate inactive sessions** section, specify the time after which you want the user session to be terminated if the user does not perform any actions. Enter the time in minutes in the **Terminate inactive sessions after** field.
3. Click **Apply**.

Inactive user sessions will be terminated after the specified time.

Notifications about failed Sandbox authentication attempts

Frequent failed attempts to log in to the web interface or the management console may indicate that a cybercriminal is trying to gain access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform by brute-forcing the password. To prevent such unauthorized access, we recommend to enabling notifications about the failed authentication attempt limit being exceeded.

To enable and configure notifications about failed authentication attempts:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Authentication policies** section.
2. In the **Count authentication attempts** section set the **Count attempts** toggle switch to **Enabled**.
3. In the **Counting period** field, enter the time period for which you want to count failed authentication attempts. The time is specified in minutes. If a user attempts to log in to the web interface or the management console and fails more than two times in a row, the following takes place:

   - A record about the user's failed authentication attempts is written to the user activity log.
   - If a rule has been created for sending notifications about too many failed authentication attempts (for information on how to create such a rule, see below), an email message is sent to the addresses specified in the notification rule. The message contains information about the failed user authentication attempts.

   In the **Counting period** field, you may specify `0`, in which case all failed authentication attempts are counted, regardless of the how much time has passed between them.
4. Click **Apply**.

   Failed authentication attempts are counted, and if the specified threshold is exceeded (two failed authentication attempts in a row), information about this is saved and becomes available for review.

To send notifications about failed authentication attempt thresholds being exceeded, you need to enable and configure the notifications in the web interface of the Central Node to which the Sensor is connected. If the Sensor is connected to multiple Central Nodes, you can configure notification sending on any of the Central Nodes.

To enable and configure notifications about the failed authentication attempt being exceeded:

Follow the steps to create a rule for sending notifications about the operation of application components. While creating the rule, under **Components**, select the **Authorization attempts** check box.

A message is sent to the email addresses specified in the notification rule with information about failed user authentication attempts if more than two such attempts happen in a row within the specified time interval (see the **Counting period** setting above).

Setting the Sandbox system date and time

To set the date and time on the server hosting the Sandbox component:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select **Date and time**.
2. In the **Time zone** drop-down list, select the relevant time zone.
3. If you prefer to synchronize the time with the NTP server, select **Synchronization with NTP servers**.
4. If you prefer to set the date and time manually, do not enable the switch to the right of the **Synchronization with NTP servers** parameter name and proceed as follows:
   a. In the **Date** field, enter the current date or click the 🗓 button and select a date in the calendar.
   b. In the **Time** field, enter the current time.
5. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Making virtual machines ready for work

Sandbox uses virtual machines to run objects in various operating systems in order to analyze the behavior of the objects and detect their malicious activity, if any.

You can install two types of virtual machines:

- Preset. Such virtual machines are based on images of operating systems (files with the ISO extension) from the distribution kit. These images or applications installed on the virtual machines cannot be modified.

  > You will need to activate some operating systems and applications. Activation is performed using your licenses.

- Custom. Such virtual machines are based on operating systems of your choice. You can install any applications on these operating systems to simulate a realistic working environment.

  Custom operating systems must be configured in accordance with the instructions in *Configuring the operating system and software*. To scan objects in such operating systems, you need to create user-defined Sandbox rules.

You can use custom and preset operating system images at the same time.

> We strongly recommend that you use all available preset operating system images from the distribution kit on each Sandbox server. If only some of the images from the distribution kit or only custom images are used, objects may be scanned with a reduced quality.

Creating preset virtual machines based on operating system images from the distribution kit

The process of creating virtual machines based on operating system images from the distribution kit involves the following steps:

1. Importing a template
2. Creating a virtual machine
3. Installing the virtual machine

Creating custom virtual machines based on your own operating system images

Creating virtual machines based on your own operating system images involves the following steps:

1. Uploading the image of the operating system and applications that you want to install on the operating system to the Sandbox Storage.

   You can skip this step and upload the images while creating and editing a template.

2. Creating or importing a user-defined template.
3. Configuring the operating system in accordance with the instructions in the *Configuring the operating system and software* section, if it has not been configured before. The configuration is performed when editing a template.
4. Creating a virtual machine
5. Installing the virtual machine

If you encounter problems with installed virtual machines, you can refer to the Kaspersky Customer Service Knowledge Base.

In case of problems with activation of operating systems or applications, the web interface of the Sandbox component displays an error message. If this happens, please contact Kaspersky Technical Support.

Managing operating system and application images in the Sandbox Storage

Custom images of operating systems and applications that you want to install on these operating systems are placed in Sandbox Storage.

We strongly recommend using original Microsoft ISO images.

You can upload the following custom operating system images to Storage:

- Windows XP SP3 or later
- Windows 7
- Windows 8.1 64-bit
- Windows 10 64-bit (up to version 1909)

Uploaded files must have the .ISO extension.

Uploading custom images of server Windows operating systems or any Linux operating systems is not supported.

If you want to use custom operating system images in a template, you must configure those operating systems.

Viewing the table of operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage

To view the table of operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Storage** section.

   The table of operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **Uploaded** is the image upload time.
- **Name** is the name of the image.
- **Size** is the size of the image.
- **Actions** are operations available for the image. Possible values: **Create VM**, **Export**, **Delete**.

Uploading operating system and application images to Storage

To upload to Storage the custom images of operating systems and applications that you want to install on these operating systems:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Storage** section.
3. Click **Upload**.

4. This opens the file upload window.

5. Select the .ISO file that you want to upload to Storage.

6. Click **Open**.

   If you want to upload multiple images, repeat steps 1 to 6 for each image.

The image is uploaded to Storage and displayed in the table of objects.

Activating operating system and application images in Sandbox Storage

You can create a virtual machine with non-activated images of Windows 7 (64-bit), Windows 10 (64-bit) and applications required by the Sandbox component and activate them using your own license code after installing the virtual machine.

Windows images and the Microsoft Office suite can be activated using the kata_images.py file. To get the file, please contact Technical Support.

Correct activation of Windows images and the Microsoft Office suite requires Internet access. Make sure Internet access is configured correctly.

During the activation procedure in the **Dashboard** section, the Central Node alerts you to a self-diagnostics error of Sandbox. After successful activation, the Sandbox self-diagnostics error is no longer displayed. During activation, objects are not sent to Sandbox for scanning.

To activate Windows images and the Microsoft Office suite:

1. Make sure that virtual machines with non-activated images of Windows 7 (64-bit), Windows 10 (64-bit) and the Microsoft Office suite are created and installed.

2. Log in to the management console of the server with the Sandbox component via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.

3. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was set during the installation of the application.

   The administrator menu of the Sandbox server is displayed.

4. In the application administrator menu, select **Technical Support Mode**.

5. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

6. Select **Yes** and press **ENTER**.

7. Activate the Windows images and the Microsoft Office suite by running the following sequence of commands:

   a. `cd /opt/kaspersky/sandbox/bin/`

   b. `sudo -s`

   c. `./sbimages_cli activate --vm_id Win7_x64 --component Win7 --key <Windows 7 64 bit activation code>`

   d. `./sbimages_cli activate --vm_id Win7_x64 --component Office2010 --key <Microsoft Office 2010 activation code>`

   e. `./sbimages_cli activate --vm_id Win10_x64 --component Win10 --key <Windows 10 64 bit activation code>`

   f. `./sbimages_cli activate --vm_id Win10_x64 --component Office2016 --key <Microsoft Office 2016 activation code>`

   The activation code has the following format: XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX.

8. Create recovery points for virtual machines with added license keys:

   `./sbimages_cli snapshot --vm_ids Win7_x64,Win10_x64`

   The process may take some time.

9. Make sure the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface does not display any warnings about the Sandbox component not working.

Windows images and the Microsoft Office suite are activated. You must activate images of Windows operating systems and the Microsoft Office application suite on all Sandbox servers.

If you encounter any problems while trying to activate, we recommend contacting Technical Support.

Deleting operating system and application images from Sandbox Storage

To remove an operating system or application image from Sandbox Storage:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Storage** section.
3. In the **Action** column next to the relevant image, click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The image is deleted.

Managing virtual machine templates

Virtual machines are created from templates. To create a virtual machine, you must first import or create a template for it. Multiple virtual machines can be created based on the same template.

You can perform the following operations with templates: view the table of templates, enable or disable templates, edit, export, or delete templates.

> Operations with a template are not available if a custom virtual machine is being created or installed from this template. After the virtual machine creation and installation process is complete, you can again perform operations with the template.

Creating a virtual machine template

To create a virtual machine, you must first create a template for it.

To create a template for a virtual machine:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. From the **Add** drop-down list, select **Create template**.
   This opens the template creation window.
4. At the **Preparing the image** step:
   a. In the **Name** field, type the name of the template.
   b. In the **Description** field, enter the template description. This field is optional.
   c. In the **OS image** drop-down list, do one of the following:
      - Select the operating system image that you want to use for the template from the list of available images.
        For an image to be displayed in the list, you must first upload it to Storage.
      - To upload the operating system image, click the **Upload** link, select the relevant file, and click **Open**.
        The uploaded file must have the ISO extension.
5. Click **Proceed**.
6. At the **Customizing the template** step, do one of the following:
   a. In the **Mount ISO** drop-down list, select the image of the application that you want to install in the operating system.

For the image to be displayed in the list, do one of the following:

- Upload the image to Storage.
- In the **Mount ISO** drop-down list, click the **Upload** link, select the relevant file, and click **Open**.

  The uploaded file must have the ISO extension.

b. If you want to unmount the installed image, in the **Mount ISO** drop-down list, click the ⏏ icon next this image.

c. Configure the operating system and installed software.

d. In the **Shut down** drop-down list, you can do one of the following:

- **Shut down** if you want to shut down the system while saving the results of running applications.
- **Power off** if you want to shut down the system without saving the results.

> If a template is enabled, you cannot create a virtual machine from it, and you cannot export the template. If you want to continue configuring the template, enable it.

The virtual machine template is created. You can create a virtual machine based on it.

Viewing the table of templates

To view the table of templates:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.

The table of templates is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **Created** is the template creation time.
- **Type** is the type of operating system: custom or preset.
- **Name** is the name of the template.
- **Status** is the status of the template, for example, **Power on** or **Powered off**.
- **Size** is the size of the template.
- **OS** is the version of the operating system used for the template.
- **VMs** is the virtual machine created based on this template.

- **Actions** are operations available for the template. The following operations are available: **Create VM**, **Export** ( ), **Delete** ( ).
- **Description** is the description specified when creating a template.

Turning a template on or off

If the template is turned off, you can perform the following operations with it: create a virtual machine based on the template, export, or delete it. If a template is turned on, you can edit it.

To turn a template on or off:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. In the **Customizing the template** section, do one of the following:
   - If you want to turn on the template, click **Power on** in the template management console.
   - If you want to turn off the template, select one of the options in the **Shut down** drop-down list in the template management console:
     - **Shut down** if you want to shut down the system while saving the results of running applications.
     - **Power off** if you want to shut down the system without saving the results.

The template is turned on or off.

Editing a template

To edit a template:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. If the template is turned off, turn it on by clicking **Power on**.
5. If you want to install an application on the operating system that is used for the template, select the relevant application image from the **Mount ISO** drop-down list.

   For an image to be displayed in the list, you must first upload the image to Storage.

6. If you want to unmount the installed image, in the **Mount ISO** drop-down list, click the **Unmount** ⏏ icon next to that image.

7. Configure the operating system and installed software.

The template is edited.

Configuring the operating system and software

Preparing operating systems for use

After installing Windows 7, 8.1, or 10 operating systems, you must satisfy the following requirements:

- Disable the screen saver.
- Select the **Always On** power plan.
- Disable automatic updates.
- Disable the firewall.

If you are using Windows 7, support of the SHA-2 hash algorithm is required. To make sure this hash algorithm is supported, install the Security Update for Windows 7 for x64-based Systems (KB3033929). For 32-bit Windows 7 operating systems, update KB3033929 must also be installed.

Do not install update KB4474419. This update may cause a crash during virtual machine deployment.

In Windows 7, you must enable TLS 1.1 and TLS 1.2 in the operating system settings. To do this, in the **Control Panel** → **Internet Options** → **Advanced** section, select the **Use TLS 1.1** and **Use TLS 1.2** check boxes.

When using Windows 8.1 and 10 operating systems, you must disable fast startup and enable autologon.

Localization of operating systems

You can select a localization language when installing the operating system or install the operating system with English localization and additionally install a localization package. We recommend selecting one of the following languages: Russian, English, Chinese (Simplified), Arabic, Spanish (Mexico). If you select a different localization, the quality of object scanning is diminished.

For the Windows XP operating system, only Russian and English are supported.

Configuring operating systems

After installing the operating system, follow these steps:

- Make sure the default command shell is being used.
- Activate the operating system and other licensed software without introducing the virtual machine into the domain.
- Disable automatic updates of installed software.
- Uninstall System Monitor.

When using the Windows 10 operating system, you also need to mitigate the Spectre and Meltdown vulnerabilities and uninstall Windows Defender.

You can do the following with the installed operating system:

- Assign a static name to the computer.
- Create user accounts.

  In this case, you need to configure automatic logon.

- Install software.

  Limitations on software installation:

  - Only one image at a time can be connected to one template.

    After the template has been saved, you can disconnect one image and mount another.

  - The following versions of Microsoft Office are supported: Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010 for Windows 7 and Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2016 for Windows 10.
  - Installing the following types of software is strongly discouraged:
    - Software that injects its code into another running process
    - Drivers for protection
    - Anti-virus applications, including Kaspersky applications and Windows Defender
    - The Easy Access service
  - Detection of malicious activity of files that rely on highly specialized software to run is not guaranteed.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not notify about problems with software installed on the operating system.

To increase the detection rate, you can follow the recommendations in the Recommendations for increasing the detection rate section.

Mitigating Spectre and Meltdown vulnerabilities.

To successfully install a custom virtual machine based on the Windows 10 operating system, you need to mitigate Spectre and Meltdown vulnerabilities.

To mitigate Spectre and Meltdown vulnerabilities:

1. On the command line of the guest operating system, run the following sequence of commands:

   ```
   reg add "HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Session Manager\Memory Management" /v FeatureSettingsOverride /t REG_DWORD /d 3 /f
   ```

   ```
   reg add "HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Session Manager\Memory Management" /v FeatureSettingsOverrideMask /t REG_DWORD /d 3 /f
   ```

2. Restart the virtual machine.

Vulnerabilities of the Specter and Meltdown types are mitigated.

Uninstalling Windows Defender

To successfully install a custom virtual machine based on the Windows 10 operating system, you must uninstall Windows Defender.

> All actions must be performed in the guest operating system.

To uninstall Windows Defender:

1. Create a DWORD32 value in the "HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Policies\Microsoft\Windows Defender" registry key.
2. Add the following values to the DWORD32 value that you created at step 1:
   - AllowFastServiceStartup = 0.
   - ServiceKeepAlive = 0.
   - DisableAntiSpyware = 1.
3. Create a "Real-Time Protection" key under the "HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Policies\Microsoft\Windows Defender" registry key.
4. Create a DWORD32 value under the Real-Time Protection key.
5. Add the following values to the DWORD32 value that you created at step 4:
   - DisableIOAVProtection = 1.
   - DisableRealtimeMonitoring = 1.

6. Create a Spynet key under the "HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Policies\Microsoft\Windows Defender" registry key.

7. Create a DWORD32 value under the Spynet key.

8. Add the following values to the DWORD32 value that you created at step 6:

   - DisableBlockAtFirstSeen = 1.
   - LocalSettingOverrideSpynetReporting = 1.
   - SubmitSamplesConsent = 1.

9. Disable Windows Defender using group policies. To do so:

   a. Press Win+R.

   b. This opens the **Run** dialog box; in the **Open** field, enter gpedit.msc.

   c. Click **OK**.

   d. Navigate to the **Turn Off Microsoft Defender Antivirus** setting: **Computer Configuration** → **Administrative Templates** → **Windows Components** → **Microsoft Defender Antivirus** → **Turn Off Microsoft Defender Antivirus** → **Edit policy setting**.

   e. Select **Disabled**.

10. Enter safe mode:

    a. Press Win+R.

    b. In the **Run** dialog box, in the **Open** field, enter msconfig.

    c. Click **OK**.

    d. In the window that is displayed, go to the **Boot** tab.

    e. Select the **Safe boot** check box.

    f. Under the **Safe boot** check box, select the **Minimal** option.

    g. Click **Apply** and then **OK**.

    h. In the displayed window, select **Restart**.

11. After restarting, delete the WinDefend key from the registry:

    a. Press Win+R.

    b. This opens the **Run** dialog box; in the **Open** field, enter regedit.

    c. Click **OK**.

    d. Delete the 'WinDefend' key under the "HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services" registry key.

12. Disable Safe mode:

    a. Press Win+R.

    b. In the **Run** dialog box, in the **Open** field, enter msconfig.

    c. Click **OK**.

    d. In the window that is displayed, go to the **Boot** tab.

    e. Clear the **Safe boot** check box.

    f. Click **Apply** and then **OK**.

    g. In the displayed window, select **Restart**.

Windows Defender is disabled.

Exporting a template

You can export a template in one of the following ways:

- In the table of templates.
- When viewing a template.

The template must be turned off.

To export a template in the table of templates:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. In the **Action** column next to the relevant image, click .

   The template is exported. The file download starts automatically.

To export a template when viewing a template:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. In the **Actions** drop-down list, select **Export**.

   The file download starts automatically.

Importing a template

You can import a previously created template.

To import a template:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. In the **Add** drop-down list, select **Import template**.
4. This opens the file upload window.
5. Select the file that you want to import.
6. Click **Open**.

   The template appears in the list of templates.

You can edit a template, create a virtual machine from it, export, or delete it.

Deleting a template

When you delete a template, all virtual machines created based on that template are deleted.

You can delete a template in one of the following ways:

- In the table of templates.
- When viewing a template.

The template must be turned off.

To delete a template in the table of templates:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. In the **Action** column next to the relevant image, click .
   This opens the action confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

   The template is deleted.

To delete a template when viewing a template:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. In the **Actions** drop-down list, select **Delete**.
   This opens the action confirmation window.
5. Click **Yes**.

The template is deleted.

Managing virtual machines

You can create, install, or delete installed virtual machines and virtual machines pending installation. You can also view lists of virtual machines with preset and custom operating systems.

Creating a virtual machine

You can create a virtual machine in the Sandbox web interface in one of the following ways:

- In the **Virtual machines** section.
- In the table of templates.
- In the template view.

The virtual machine template must be turned off. After the virtual machines is created, it must be installed.

Creating a virtual machine in the Sandbox web interface may fail due to the restrictions of your browser. If you encounter such restrictions, you can create and install a virtual machine using the command line.

Internet access is required to create a custom virtual machine.

Creating a virtual machine in the Virtual machines section

*To create a virtual machine with a preset operating system image in the **Virtual machines** section:*

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Virtual machines** section.

3. Click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.

4. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.

5. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.

6. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.

7. Click **Save**.

8. Some operating systems from the distribution kit require accepting the terms of the relevant end user license agreement. Read the text of the end user license agreement and click **Accept**.

The virtual machine with a preset operating system image is created.

*To create a virtual machine with a custom operating system image in the **Virtual machines** section:*

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.

2. Go to the **Virtual machines** section.

3. Click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.

4. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.

5. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.

   > The name must consist of Latin characters.

6. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.

7. Click **Save**.

8. If internet access is not configured for the server on which you are creating the virtual machine, the *No internet access* error message is displayed in the **Templates** window. To complete the virtual machine creation process, you must download debug symbols.

The virtual machine with a custom operating system image is created.

Creating a virtual machine in the table of templates

To create a virtual machine with a preset operating system image in the template table:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.

   Go to the **Templates** section.

2. In the **Actions** column next to the template, click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.

3. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.

4. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.

5. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.

6. Click **Save**.

7. Some operating systems from the distribution kit require accepting the terms of the relevant end user license agreement. Read the text of the end user license agreement and click **Accept**.

The virtual machine with a preset operating system image is created.

To create a virtual machine with a custom operating system image in the template table:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.

   Go to the **Templates** section.

2. In the **Actions** column next to the template, click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.

3. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.

4. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.

   > The name must consist of Latin characters.

5. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.

6. Click **Save**.

7. If internet access is not configured for the server on which you are creating the virtual machine, the *No internet access* error message is displayed in the **Templates** window. To complete the virtual machine creation process, you must download debug symbols.

The virtual machine with a custom operating system image is created.

Creating a virtual machine in the template view

To create a virtual machine with a preset operating system image in the template view:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.

2. Go to the **Templates** section.

3. Select the relevant template.

4. Click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.

5. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.

6. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.

7. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.

8. Click **Save**.

9. Some operating systems from the distribution kit require accepting the terms of the relevant end user license agreement. Read the text of the end user license agreement and click **Accept**.

The virtual machine with a preset operating system image is created.

To create a virtual machine with a custom operating system image in the template view:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.

2. Go to the **Templates** section.

3. Select the relevant template.

4. Click **Create VM**.

   This opens the virtual machine creation window.

5. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the virtual machine.

   If the list does not contain a suitable template, you can import or create a template in the **Templates** section of the Sandbox web interface window.

6. In the **Name** field, type the name of the virtual machine.

   > The name must consist of Latin characters.

7. In the **Description** field, enter the description of the virtual machine. This field is optional.

8. Click **Save**.

9. If internet access is not configured for the server on which you are creating the virtual machine, the *No internet access* error message is displayed in the **Templates** window. To complete the virtual machine creation process, you must download debug symbols.

The virtual machine with a custom operating system image is created.

Creating and installing a virtual machine using the command line

Creating a virtual machine in the Sandbox web interface may fail due to the restrictions of your browser. If you encounter such restrictions, you can create and install a virtual machine using the command line.

> Internet access is required to create a custom virtual machine.

Virtual machines need to be created one at a time.

To create and install a virtual machine using the command line:

1. Enter the management console of the Sandbox server via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.
2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during Sandbox installation.

   The component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the component administrator menu, select Technical Support Mode.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
5. Confirm that you want to manage the component in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **OK** and press **Enter**.
6. View the list of all ISO images available on the system:

   ```
   sb-vm-iso --list-iso
   ```

   The list is displayed as a JSON array, where the names of the ISO images are listed. Further in the instructions, the `<ISO name>` variable substitutes for the name of an ISO image.
7. Make sure that the ISO image is in working order and ready for deployment:

   ```
   sb-vm-iso --check-install <ISO name>
   ```

   The command should output the '`success`' status.
8. Install the virtual machine:

   ```
   sb-vm-iso --install <ISO name>
   ```

   This command takes some time to complete. The system does not notify about the success or failure of the installation.
9. Save settings:

   ```
   sb-vms --apply-all
   ```

   This command takes some time to complete. The command should output the '`success`' status.

10. Make sure that the virtual machine created at steps 7–9 of these instructions is displayed in the list of virtual machines. For instructions on viewing the list of virtual machines, see the Viewing the table of virtual machines with preset operating systems and Viewing the table of virtual machines with custom operating systems sections.

11. Repeat steps 7–10 of these instructions for each ISO image from which you want to create and install a virtual machine.

The virtual machine will be created and installed. The name of this virtual machine is added to the list of virtual machines.

Viewing the table of preset virtual machines

To view the list of preset virtual machines:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.

2. Select the **Preconfigured** tab.

The table of preset virtual machines is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **Name** is the name of the virtual machine.
- **Status** is the status of the virtual machine, for example, **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- **Actions** are operations available for the virtual machine. The following operations may be available: **Delete**.

The **Not installed virtual machines** section displays virtual machines that are ready for installation but have not yet been installed.

Viewing the table of custom virtual machines

To view the list of custom virtual machines:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.

2. Select the **Custom** tab.

The table of custom virtual machines is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **Created** is the time when the virtual machine was created.
- **Name** is the name of the virtual machine.
- **Status** is the status of the virtual machine, for example, **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

- **Actions** are operations available for the virtual machine. The following operations may be available: **Delete**.
- **Description** is the description specified when creating the virtual machine.

Installing a virtual machine

After creating a virtual machine, it must be installed.

To install a virtual machine with a preset operating system image:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. Select the **Preconfigured** tab.
3. In the **Not installed virtual machines** section, click **Install ready VMs**.

   All virtual machines pending installation are installed.

To install a virtual machine with a custom operating system image:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. Select the **Custom** tab.
3. Next to the relevant virtual machine in the **Actions** column, click the **Install** link.
4. When the virtual machine is installed, in the **Actions** column, click the **Enable** link.

   The virtual machine is installed and ready to use.

Deleting a virtual machine

To delete an installed virtual machine:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. Select the **Preconfigured** or **Custom** tab.
3. In the **Actions** column next to the relevant virtual machine, click **Delete**.

   The virtual machine is deleted.

To delete a non-installed virtual machine with a preset operating system image:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. In the **Not installed virtual machines** section, click **Delete all pending VMs**.

   All virtual machines with preset operating system images that are pending installation are deleted.

To delete a non-installed virtual machine with a custom operating system image:

1. Select the **Virtual machines** section in the window of the Sandbox web interface.
2. Select the **Custom** tab.
3. Next to the relevant virtual machine in the **Actions** column, click the **Delete** link.

   The virtual machine with a custom operating system image that is pending installation is deleted.

Downloading debug symbols

If internet access is not configured for the server on which the virtual machine with the custom image is installed, you must download the Microsoft debug symbols to correctly complete the virtual machine installation.

You can download debug symbols during virtual machine installation in the **Templates** window or after the virtual machine receives the **Failed** status in the list of virtual machines.

For debug symbols to download correctly, the operating system used for the virtual machine template must have Windows Debug Tools installed and the name of the host connected to the network (hostname) must contain only Latin letters, numerals, and special characters.

*To download debug symbols during virtual machine installation in the **Templates** window:*

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. In the window with the *No internet access* error, click **Download manifesto**.

   The **Download manifesto** is not available until the virtual machine gets the **Failed** status.

   An archive is downloaded to your computer.
5. Unpack the downloaded archive.
6. Run the sbsymtool.ps1 using Windows PowerShell.

   The archive with debug symbols is downloaded to the folder where this file is located.
7. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
8. Go to the **Templates** section.
9. Select the template for which you have downloaded debug symbols.

10. In the **Actions** drop-down list, select **Upload symbols**.
11. This opens a window; in that window, select the archive with the debug symbols and click **Open**.

    Debug symbols are downloaded. The virtual machine is installed and displayed in the list of virtual machines running custom operating systems.

*To download debug symbols after a virtual machine has received the **Failed** status in the list of virtual machines:*

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Templates & Storage** section.
2. Go to the **Templates** section.
3. Select the relevant template.
4. In the **Actions** drop-down list, select **Download manifesto**.

   An archive is downloaded to your computer.
5. Unpack the downloaded archive.
6. Run the sbsymtool.ps1 using Windows PowerShell.

   The archive with debug symbols is downloaded to the folder where this file is located.
7. In the **Templates** window, expand the **Actions** list and select **Upload symbols**.
8. This opens a window; in that window, select the archive with the debug symbols and click **Open**.

Debug symbols are downloaded. The virtual machine is installed and displayed in the list of virtual machines running custom operating systems.

Recommendations for increasing the detection rate

We recommend taking the following steps to increase the likelihood of detecting various threats in user environments:

- Install Microsoft Office.

  Microsoft Office versions later than 2016 are not supported.

- Manage Microsoft Office settings.

  If you do not plan to activate Microsoft Office, you need to renew the grace period.

- Install Adobe Acrobat Reader, disable user notifications and built-in protections, disable automatic updates, enable Java Script execution permission.
- Install Java, disable automatic updates.
- Install Google Chrome or Mozilla Firefox, disable user notifications and built-in protections, and disable automatic updates.

- Manage Windows security settings (disable Windows Firewall, Windows Update, System Protection, User Account Control, Notification Center, spyware and unwanted software protection, Windows Defender).
- Disconnect from your Microsoft account.

Managing Microsoft Office settings

To increase the detection rate, we recommend managing Microsoft Office settings in accordance with the table below.

Recommended Microsoft Office configuration

Parameter	Recommended value
Activation	Activation over the Internet.
Windows Update	Disabled.
Microsoft Trust Center	ActiveX settings: • Enabled usage of all ActiveX controls without limitations and authorization prompts. • Disabled Safe mode. Enabled macros in all Microsoft Office applications. Disabled verification of documents received from dangerous sites or referring to such sites. Enabled options for Microsoft Excel: • Enable all Data Connections. • Enable automatic updates for all Workbook Links.
Microsoft Outlook	Disabled RSS feeds synchronization with Common Feed List.
Macro Security	No security check for macros (not recommended).
Microsoft Trusted Center for Programmatic Access (for Microsoft Office 2007 and later)	Never warn me about suspicious activity (not recommended)
Automatic acceptance of the End User License Agreement (for Microsoft Office 2016 and later)	Enabled. Add parameter AcceptAllEulas (REG_DWORD) = 1 in the registry key: HKCU\Software\Microsoft\Office\16.0\Registration
Opening documents in the Protected View mode (for Microsoft Office 2010 and later)	Disabled. Add the c:\ path with subfolders (Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Access) to Trusted locations.
Additional parameters	Add the following parameters of the REG_DWORD type with value 1 to the Registry Editor: • ExcelBypassEncryptedMacroScan to the key HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Microsoft\Office\<office_version>\Excel\Security • WordBypassEncryptedMacroScan to the key HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Microsoft\Office\<office_version>\Word\Security • PowerPointBypassEncryptedMacroScan to the key HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Microsoft\Office\<office_version>\PowerPoint\Security • AccessBypassEncryptedMacroScan to the key HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Microsoft\Office\<office_version>\Access\Security • PublisherBypassEncryptedMacroScan to the key HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Microsoft\Office\<office_version>\Publisher\Security

Setting the maximum number of simultaneously running virtual machines

Set a limit on the number of simultaneously running virtual machines with operating systems in which the Sandbox component will process objects. We recommend using the values given in the *Calculations for the Sandbox component* section. If you want to use other values, make sure that the server on which Sandbox is installed has sufficient hardware resources.

You can calculate the number of simultaneously running virtual machines with operating system images using the following formula: <logical core count> * 1.5.

By default, the maximum number of simultaneously running virtual machines is set to 100. You can increase it to 200 by following the steps of the *Changing the number of license keys for a virtual machine* procedure before setting a new limit for simultaneously running virtual machines.

The number of simultaneously running virtual machines cannot exceed 200.

To set the maximum number of simultaneously running virtual machines:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **Guest virtual machines** group of settings, in the **Maximum simultaneous VMs** field, enter the number of simultaneously running virtual machines.

   With the default configuration, you can enter a number from 1 to 100. If you have previously changed the number of license keys for a custom virtual machine to 200, you can enter a number from 1 to 200.
3. Click **Save**.

Changing the number of license keys for a custom virtual machine

When creating a custom virtual machine, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform specifies the number of license keys for software that is used inside that virtual machine. By default, the number of license keys is equal to the number of virtual machines running at the same time. Your license must cover this number. If necessary, you can change the number of license keys for the virtual machine.

If the number of license keys configured for a virtual machine is less than the number of simultaneously running virtual machines, the overall performance of the Sandbox server may be degraded.

It is not recommended to change the specified number of simultaneously running virtual machines.

To change the number of license keys for a custom virtual machine:

1. Enter the management console of the Sandbox server via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.
2. Get a list of servers by running the `sb-custom-images list-vm` command.

   The table of virtual machines is displayed, where:

   - `id` is the ID of the virtual machine,
   - `name` is the name of the virtual machine,
   - `licenses` is the number of license keys.
3. Set the number of license keys for the selected virtual machine by running the `sb-custom-images licenses -id <virtual machine ID> -ln <number of licenses>` command.

The number of license keys is changed.

To get help for the script, run the `sb-custom-images --help` command.

Exporting Sandbox settings

To export the settings of a Sandbox system:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **Settings** settings group, click the **Export** button.

   This opens the **Warning** window containing a warning on specifics of exporting the system parameters.

   The Sandbox system parameters are dependent on hardware and software parameters of the server, on which the Sandbox component is installed. The Sandbox system exported parameters are intended to be imported to the same or another server strictly identical in configuration. Any attempt to restore the configuration of the Sandbox system with parameter values saved to another Sandbox system may disrupt the Sandbox system.
3. Click **Save**.

A tar.gz file is downloaded to your computer's hard drive into the folder set as the file download folder in the settings of the browser that you use for working with the application. The file contains all the Sandbox system current parameters.

Archives with backup copies of the system parameters can contain confidential information, such as passwords and privacy keys. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator must independently ensure the security of this data.

Importing Sandbox settings

To import Sandbox settings:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **Settings** settings group, click the **Import** button.

   This open the **Warning** window containing a warning on specifics of importing the system parameters.

   The Sandbox component parameters are dependent on hardware and software parameters of the server, on which the Sandbox is installed. The Sandbox exported parameters are intended to be imported to the same or another server strictly identical in configuration. Any attempt to restore the configuration of one Sandbox system with parameter settings saved to another Sandbox system may disrupt the system.

3. Click **Restore**.

   This opens the file selection window.

4. Select a tar.gz file with the Sandbox parameters that you want to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.

   If the Sandbox parameters have been successfully imported, the Sandbox server will restart. A few minutes later, you need to refresh the browser window and log in again.

Archives with backup copies of the system configuration can contain confidential information, such as passwords and privacy keys. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator must independently ensure the storage security of this data.

Restarting the Sandbox server

To restart the Sandbox server:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **Power** settings group, click the **Restart** button.

   This opens the Sandbox server restart confirmation window.

3. Click **Yes**.

The Sandbox server will restart. In a few minutes, you will be able to log in to the system.

Powering off the Sandbox server

To power off the Sandbox server:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **Power** settings group, click the **Power off** button.

   This opens the Sandbox server shutdown confirmation window.
3. Click **Yes**.

The Sandbox server powers off.

Changing the Sandbox administrator account password

To change the Sandbox administrator account password:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. The **Change password** settings group will show the Sandbox administrator account name that you set during installation of the Sandbox and the fields for changing the password.
3. In the **Current password** field, enter the current password for the Sandbox administrator account.
4. In the **New password** field, enter a new password for the Sandbox administrator account.
5. In the **Confirm password** field, enter the new password for the Sandbox administrator account again.
6. Click **Change password**.

   The Sandbox administrator account password will be changed.

Uploading your own certificate to the Sandbox server

When installing Sandbox, a TLS certificate is automatically generated for the server. You can prepare your own TLS certificate and upload it to the Sandbox server instead of the default certificate. The TLS certificate file uploaded to the server must contain the certificate itself and the private key for the encryption of the connection.

To upload your own TLS certificate to the Sandbox server:

1. Sign in via SSH or through the terminal to the management console of the Sensor server on which you want to replace the certificate.
2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the Sandbox component.

   The component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the component administrator menu, select Technical Support Mode.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.
6. Raise your privileges to superuser by running the following command:

   ```
   sudo -i
   ```
7. Create a backup copy of the original certificate and encryption key:

   ```
   cp -p /etc/nginx/ssl/server.crt /etc/nginx/ssl/server.crt.orig
   cp -p /etc/nginx/ssl/server.key /etc/nginx/ssl/server.key.orig
   ```
8. Replace the certificate and encryption key with your own certificate and key:

   ```
   cat <name of your own certificate>.crt > /etc/nginx/ssl/server.crt
   cat <name of your own key>.key > /etc/nginx/ssl/server.key
   ```
9. Apply the new settings:

   ```
   systemctl restart nginx.service
   ```
10. Make sure that the owner name and access permissions are the same for the certificate and the encryption key:

    ```
    ll /etc/nginx/ssl
    ```

Your TLS certificate is uploaded to the Sandbox server.

For administrators: Getting started with the application web interface

The intended audience of this section are personnel who install and administer Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and manage PCN and SCN servers and tenants in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Interface

The application is managed through the web interface. Sections of the application web interface differ depending on the role of the user: Administrator or Senior security officer (**Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, **Security auditor**).

The window of the application web interface contains the following:

- Sections in the left part and in the lower part of the application web interface window.
- Tabs in the upper part of the application web interface window for certain sections of the application.
- The workspace in the lower part of the application web interface window.

Sections of the application web interface window

The application web interface for the **Administrator** role contains the following sections:

- **Dashboard**. Contains Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Monitoring data.
- **Operating mode**. Contains information about PCN and SCN servers and about tenants in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Assets**. Contains information about computers with the Endpoint Agent component that are connected for scanning files in Sandbox.
- **Logs**: **User activity**, **Application messages**, **Audit**. Contains information about the application performance and audit records for user activity in the web interface.
- **Settings**. Contains the settings of the server with the Central Node component.
- **Sensor servers**. Contains information about connected Sensor components and their settings.
- **Sandbox servers**. Contains information about the connection of the Central Node component to Sandbox components.
- **External systems**. Contains information about application integration with mail sensors.
- **Server configuration**. Contains information about the sizing parameters of the application.

Workspace of the application web interface window

The workspace displays the information you choose to view in the sections and on the tabs of the application web interface window. It also contains control elements that you can use to configure how the information is displayed.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can also view these sections of the application web interface.

Monitoring the performance of the application

You can monitor application operation using the widgets in the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface window. You can add, delete, and move widgets, configure the display scale of widgets, and select the data display period.

About widgets and layouts

You can use widgets to monitor application operation.

A *layout* is the appearance of the workspace of the application web interface window in the **Dashboard** section. You can add, delete, and move widgets in the layout.

The following widgets are available in the application:

- **Administration**:
  - **Sandbox processing time**. Displays how long it took on average for objects to be scanned by Sandbox.
  - **Processed**. Displays the processing state for traffic coming from Sensors and Endpoint Agents to the Central Node.
  - **Queues**. Displays information on the number and volume of objects waiting to be scanned by application modules and components.

  If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the section displays information about the tenant and server that you chose.
- **NDR**:
  - **Custom widget**. Widget with arbitrary static content. For example, you can use custom widgets to logically separate groups of widgets in the **Dashboard** section.
  - **Traffic**. Rate of incoming traffic. The widget can display information for all monitoring points of all nodes with installed application components, for monitoring points of a selected node, or for an individual monitoring point.
  - **CPU usage**. CPU load on the selected node that has an application component installed.

- **RAM usage**. Amount of physical RAM being used on the selected node that has an application component installed.

- **NDR health**. Information about the current state of application performance. This widget can display the following values:

  - **OK**—No messages regarding performance issues, or all performance issues have been resolved.

  - **Non-critical malfunction**—Non-critical malfunctions reported. This value is displayed until the performance problem is resolved.

  - **Operation disrupted**—Disruptions of the application reported. This value is displayed until the performance problem is resolved.

  - **Maintenance mode**—The application is running in maintenance mode.

- **Storage**—Information about the drive in the local file system on the selected node with the application component installed. In this widget, you can select the following information to be displayed:

  - **Disk usage**—Percentage of time taken to process data read/write operations.

  - **Occupied on disk**—Filled disk space.

  - **Read from disk**—Rate of reading data from the disk.

  - **Write to disk**—Rate of writing data to the disk.

- **Traffic processing latency**. The current latency while processing traffic, counting from the moment it arrives at the monitoring point of the node. The maximum latency from among all enabled monitoring points is displayed. The widget can display information for all monitoring points of all nodes with installed application components, for monitoring points of a selected node.

- **Status of protection functions**. General information about the current state of protection functions in the application. This widget can display the following values:

  - **All are enabled**—All technologies and methods intended for continuous use are enabled, and all created monitoring points are enabled.

  - **Not all are enabled**—Some protection functions are disabled or are enabled in learning mode, or not all monitoring points are enabled.

- **Uptime**. Uptime of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. In this widget, you can select the following information to be displayed:

  - Effective uptime—Duration of normal operation of the application (without malfunctions) since the most recent launch up to the current moment.

  - Total uptime—Time from the first launch of the application up to the current moment. Includes periods of normal operation of the application and periods of malfunctioning.

  - Since first start of application—The total time elapsed from the first launch of the application up to the current moment. Includes periods of normal operation, periods of malfunctioning, and periods of inoperability.

Widgets employ various means of drawing attention, depending on the incoming information. For example, widgets with information about the application and hardware resources can automatically change color if the information requires attention (in particular, when the load on a hardware resource is close to critical).

Widgets display only basic information that changes dynamically. If you need to view detailed information, you can navigate from the **Dashboard** section to other sections of the application web interface. You can navigate the web interface by clicking widgets.

For correct information to be displayed in NDR widgets, you must configure the synchronization of date and time between Central Node and Sensor components.

Selecting a tenant and a server to manage in the Dashboard section

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, before using the **Dashboard** section, you must select the tenant and server whose data you want to view. Widgets of the NDR functionality will display information for the current node or for the node that is selected in widget settings.

*To select a tenant and server for which you want to display data in widgets of the **Dashboard** section:*

1. In the upper right part of the application web interface window, click the arrow next to the server name.
2. In the drop-down list, select the tenant and server from the list.

Data for the selected server is displayed. If you want to select a different tenant and server, repeat the steps to select a tenant and server.

Adding a widget to the current layout

To add a widget to the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Click **Widgets**.
5. In the **Manage widgets** window that opens:
   - If you want to add the **Sandbox processing time** widget, turn on the toggle switch next to the name of this widget.
   - If you want to add a different widget, click + next to the name of that widget.
6. Close the **Manage widgets** window and click **Apply**.

The selected widget is added to the current layout.

Moving a widget in the current layout

To move a widget in the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Select the widget that you want to move within the layout.
5. Click and hold the upper part of the widget to drag and drop the widget to a different place in the layout.
6. Click **Apply**.

   The current layout is saved.

Changing the display of information in NDR widgets

After an NDR widget is added, it displays information in accordance with the default settings. If necessary, you can edit the display settings.

To edit NDR widget display settings:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. In the upper-right corner of the NDR widget that you want to configure, click the ⚙ button.

   This opens the display settings window.
5. Manage the display settings of the NDR widget.

   Depending on the selected NDR widget, the window may contain the following settings:

   - **Change name** – if the **Change name** check box is selected, you can define any name for the widget (different from the default name) in the **Widget name** field. The **Change name** setting is absent from custom widgets.
   - **Widget name** – field for entering a widget name different from the default name.
   - **Edit description** – if the **Edit description** check box is selected, you can provide any description for the widget (different from the default description) in the **Widget description** field. The **Edit description** setting is absent from custom widgets.
   - **Widget description** – field for entering a widget name different from the default name.

- **Refresh period** – the time in seconds after which the displayed information is updated.
- **Display** – defines the type of displayed data (for widgets that let you select which data to display).
- **Data source** – the host with installed application components whose information the widget displays. If **Entire application** is selected, the widget displays data from all nodes.
- **Change color based on status** – if this check box is selected, the background color of the widget automatically changes depending on the severity of the incoming data. Critical (maximum) importance level is represented by a red background. If this check box is cleared, background color is disabled.
- **Defined background** – defines the color of the background on the custom widget. You can choose a background color that corresponds to one of the severity levels (**Info**, **Warning**, or **Critical**) or select **Neutral** to disable background coloring.

6. Click **Apply**.

Removing a widget from the current layout

To remove a widget from the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Click the × icon in the upper right corner of the widget that you want to remove from the layout.
   The widget is removed from the workspace of the application web interface window.
5. Click **Apply**.

The widget is removed from the current layout.

Saving a layout to PDF

NDR widgets in the layout are not saved to PDF.

To save a layout to PDF:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Save as PDF**.
   This opens the **Saving as PDF** window.

4. In the lower part of the window, in the **Layout** drop-down list, select the page orientation.
5. Click **Download**.

   The layout in PDF format is saved to the hard drive of your computer in the downloads folder of the browser.
6. Click **Close**.

Configuring the data display period in widgets

You can configure the display of data in widgets for the following periods:

- **Day**.
- **Week**.
- **Month**.

For NDR widgets, you can use the following periods:

- **1h**
- **12h**
- **24h**
- **7d**

You can configure a data display period for each individual NDR widget.

Changing the display of information in widgets

To configure the display of data in widgets for a day (from 00:00 a.m. to 11:59 p.m.):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Day**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Day** period name, select the date for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

To configure the display of data on widgets for a week (Monday through Sunday):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Week**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Week** period name, select the week for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

To display data display in widgets for a month (calendar month):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Month**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Month** period name, select the month for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

Changing the display of information in widgets

To configure the display of information in an NDR widget:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the NDR widget that you want to configure, click the button that stands for the time interval that you need.

The NDR widget displays information for the selected period.

Monitoring the receipt and processing of incoming data

In the **Processed** widget, you can assess the processing status of data coming from Sensors, and track data processing errors.

In the drop-down list to the right of the **Processed** widget name, you can select the source whose data stream you want to evaluate.

You can select the type of data display in the drop-down list to the right of the data source name:

- **Current load**—The last 5 minutes.
- **Selected period**. In this case, you can also configure the period for which data is displayed in widgets.

The left part of each widget displays the legend for colors used in the widget itself.

If the **Current load** data display type is selected, the average data processing rate over the past 5 minutes is displayed to the right of the key.

Example:
The **Processed** widget that has a SPAN or ICAP data source and **Current load** data display type selected displays the data processing rate for SPAN and ICAP traffic coming from the Sensor to the Central Node at a certain time.
The following information is displayed:

- **Traffic**—Rate of incoming traffic to the Central Node server, indicated in green (Mbps).

  If the traffic rate is less than 1 Mbps, the information about it is not displayed on the widget.

- **Files**—Rate of file processing indicated in gray (objects per second).
- **URLs**—Rate of URL processing indicated in blue (objects per second).
- **Unprocessed**—Number of unprocessed objects indicated by vertical red lines.
  When you move the mouse cursor over a widget, you see a pop-up window that displays the data processing rate for a specific time period.
  The **Processed** widget with SMTP data source and **Current load** data display type selected displays the SPAN and ICAP traffic data processing rate for mail traffic coming from the mail sensor to the Central Node server at a certain time.
  The following data is displayed:
- **Traffic**—Rate of incoming traffic to the server with the Sensor component, indicated in green (messages per second).
- **Files**—Rate of file processing indicated in gray (objects per second).
- **URLs**—Rate of URL processing indicated in blue (objects per second).
- **Unprocessed**—Number of unprocessed objects indicated by vertical red lines.
  When you move the mouse cursor over a widget, you see a pop-up window that displays the data processing rate for a specific time period.

If the **Selected period** data display type is selected, to the right of the legend, you can see the average rate of incoming traffic to the Central Node and the number of objects processed during the selected period.

Example:
The **Processed** widget with a SPAN or ICAP data source and **Selected period** data display type, and **Month** data display period selected displays the rate of SPAN and ICAP traffic coming to the Central Node server, as well as the number of files and URLs extracted from mail traffic during the selected month.
The following information is displayed:

- **Average traffic**—Rate of incoming traffic to the server with the Central Node component, indicated in green (objects per second).
- **Files**—Number of extracted files indicated in gray.
- **URLs**—Number of extracted URLs indicated in blue.
- **Unprocessed**—Number of unprocessed objects indicated by vertical red lines.
  When you hover over a widget, a pop-up window is displayed with the rate of incoming traffic to the Central Node and the number of objects processed at a certain time.
  The **Processed** widget with an SMTP data source type, **Selected period** data display type, and **Month** data display period selected displays the data processing rate of mail traffic coming from the mail server to the Central Node, as well as the number of files and URLs extracted from mail traffic during the selected month.
  The following information is displayed:
- **Average traffic**—Rate of incoming traffic to the Central Node server, indicated in green (objects/s).
- **Files**—Number of extracted files indicated in gray.
- **URLs**—Number of extracted URLs indicated in blue.
- **Unprocessed**—Number of unprocessed objects indicated by vertical red lines.
  When you hover over a widget, a pop-up window is displayed with the rate of incoming traffic to the Central Node and the number of objects processed at a certain time.

Monitoring the queues for data processing by application modules and components

You can use the **Queues** widget to assess the status of data processing by the YARA and AM Engine application modules and the Sandbox component and monitor the amount of unprocessed data.

Data transfer in the queue is measured in messages.

You can select the type of data display in the drop-down list to the right of the **Queues** widget name:

- **Current load**—The last 5 minutes.
- **Selected period**. In this case, you can also configure the period of data display on widgets.

The left part of the widget displays the legend for colors used in the widget.

The **Queues** widget displays the following data:

- **Number of messages** and **Data volume** processed by application modules and components:
  - **YARA**—blue.
  - **Sandbox**—violet.
  - **AM Engine**—green.
- **Unprocessed** – amount of unprocessed data indicated by vertical red lines.

When you hover the mouse cursor over a widget, you see a pop-up window that displays the status of data processing by the **YARA** and **AM Engine** application modules and the **Sandbox component**, as well as the amount of unprocessed data during a specific time period.

Monitoring the processing of data by the Sandbox component

The **Sandbox processing time** widget displays the average time elapsed from the moment data is sent to one or multiple Sandbox component servers (including the time spent in the queue before getting sent) to the moment when the Sandbox processing results are displayed in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform for the selected period.

Example:
If **Month** is configured as the period of data display in widgets, the **Sandbox processing time** widget displays orange-colored bars for each day of the month.
When you move the mouse cursor over each column, you will see a pop-up window that displays the average time that elapses from the moment data is sent to one or several servers with the Sandbox component until the results from data processing by the Sandbox component are displayed in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform during the selected day.

You can increase the rate at which data is processed by the Sandbox component and the throughput of the Sandbox component by increasing the number of servers with the Sandbox component and by distributing the data to be processed among those servers.

Viewing the working condition of modules and components of the application

If modules or components of the application encounter errors that the administrator is advised to look at, a yellow warning box is displayed in the upper part of the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface.

Users with the **Administrator** or **Security auditor** role can gain access to information about the working condition of the Central Node, PCN, or SCN server that the user is currently managing.

Users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, or **Security auditor** role can gain access to the following information about the working condition:

- If you are using a standalone Central Node server, the user can access information about the working condition of the Central Node server which the user is currently managing.
- If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, and the user is managing an SCN server, the user can gain access to information about the working condition of that SCN server for tenants to whose data the user has access.
- If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, and the user is managing the PCN server, the user can gain access to information about the working condition of the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to that server, for tenants to whose data the user has access.

For details about the working condition of application modules and components,

click **View details** to open the **System health** window.

In the **System health** window, one of the following icons is displayed depending on the working condition of the application modules and components:

- OK if the modules and components of the application are working normally.
- An icon with the number of problems (for example, 1) if problems are found that the administrator is recommended to pay attention to. In this case, detailed problem information is displayed in the right part of the **System health** window.

The **System health** window contains the following sections:

- **Component health** contains information on the operational status of application modules and components, quarantine, and database update on all servers where the application is running.

  Example:
  If the databases of one or more application components have not been updated in 24 hours, the ! icon is displayed next to the name of the server on which the application modules and components are installed.
  To resolve the problem, make sure that update servers are accessible. If you are using a proxy server to connect to update servers, make sure the proxy server has no errors pertaining to the connection to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform servers.

- **Processed**—Status of receiving and processing incoming data. The status is generated based on the following criteria:
  - State of receiving data from servers with the Sensor component, from the server or virtual machine with the mail sensor, from hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.
  - Information about exceeding the maximum allowed time that objects wait in the queue to be scanned by application modules and components.
- **Connection with servers**—Status of the connection between the PCN server and connected SCN servers (displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode).

If problems are detected with the performance of application modules or components and you cannot resolve those problems on your own, please contact Kaspersky Technical Support.

Managing Central Node or Sensor server information

Information about servers with the Central Node or Sensor components is displayed in the **Sensor servers** of the application web interface window.

This section displays cards of components (on the left) and cards of network interfaces detected on these components (to the right of each component).

Above the card of the Sensor component is the card of the Central Node component to which the Sensor is connected. If the Central Node component is deployed with Embedded Sensor, the name of that Sensor component is displayed the card as Embedded Sensor.

You can view component cards and network interface cards.

Viewing information about Central Node or Sensor servers

To view information about a Central Node or Sensor component:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.

The **Settings** tab for the Central Node and Sensor components displays the following information:

- **Status** is the current status of the component indicated by an icon and text description.
- **Node type** indicates the application component: **Server** (Central Node component) or **Sensor** (Sensor component).
- **Disk space currently used by the application** is the disk space occupied by application files. Includes installed files and files created by the application in the course of its operation.

- **Maximum disk space that can be used by the application** is the disk space that can be occupied by application files. Includes installed files and the sum total of all space limits configured in data storage rules. This value may not exceed the amount of available disk space.

- **Occupied on disk** is the disk space used by all files. Includes application files, operating system files, and files of other applications. The space is calculated on the disk that contains the /var directory in the file system of the component.

- **Free disk space** is the disk space that is not used by files. The space is calculated on the disk that contains the /var directory in the file system of the component.

- **Total disk space** is the total volume of disk space on the drive that contains the /var directory in the file system of the component.

- **BPF filtering** indicates whether filtering using the Berkeley Packet Filter (BPF) technology based on address parameters in network packets is enabled or disabled.

- **External storage for traffic dump files** indicates the connection status of the external storage. The following statuses may be displayed: **Connected**, **Not connected**.

- **Retention rules** indicate current and maximum values of size, number of items, and storage duration of application data.

For the Sensor component, in addition to the **Settings** tab, the **External storage**, **Other**, **ICAP integration**, **POP3 integration**, and **SMTP integration** tabs are also displayed.

- The **External storage** tab displays information about the configuration of the external storage for mirrored SPAN traffic.

- On the **Other** tab, the following information is displayed:

  - Maximum size of scanned file is the current limit on the size of files that can be scanned by the component.

  - Dump HTTP body indicates whether HTTP body content dumping is enabled or disabled.

- The **ICAP Integration** tab displays the settings of integration with a proxy server via ICAP.

  The **Host** field displays the URLs of the Response Modification (RESPMOD) and Request Modification (REQMOD) services in icap://<IP address of Central Node server to which Sensor is connected>:1344/av/<respmod or reqmod>. format.

  To configure integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, copy the relevant URL, replace the IP address of the Central Node server with the IP address of the Sensor server for which you want to configure ICAP integration, and specify the resulting URL in the settings of your organization's proxy server.

- The **POP3 Integration** tab displays the POP3 mail server integration settings.

- The **SMTP Integration** tab displays the SMTP mail server integration settings.

Viewing network interface information

The network interface card in the **Sensor servers** section of the application web interface displays the following information:

- Network interface name
- MAC address of the network interface
- IP address of the network interface
- Network interface bandwidth
- Blink. This link lets you identify the Ethernet port associated with a network interface

If a monitoring point has been added to the network interface, the following information about the monitoring point is displayed in the card of the network interface:

- Monitoring point name.
- **Technology mode** is the state of the technology inheritance functionality. It can be **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

You can view network interface details.

To view network interface details:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant network interface.

   This opens a window with information about the network interface.

The network interface card displays the following information:

- **Network interface** is the name of the network interface in the operating system.
- **Connection** is the icon indicating that a network cable is connected to the Ethernet port of the network interface:
  - – the network cable is connected.
  - – the network cable is disconnected.

    The icon blinks when the Ethernet port indication mode is enabled.
  - **MAC address** is the MAC address of the network interface.
  - **IP address** is the IP address of the network interface.

    If multiple IP addresses are found on the network interface, a maximum of 16 IP addresses are displayed in the details area.

If a monitoring point has been added to the network interface, the following information is displayed in the card of the network interface:

- **Status** is the current status of the monitoring point indicated by an icon and a text description:
  - *OK*. The monitoring point is available.
  - *Switchover*. The operating mode of the monitoring point is being changed.
  - *Error*. An error was detected when switching over the operating mode of the monitoring point.
- **Connection** is the icon indicating that a network cable is connected to the Ethernet port of the network interface:
  - – the network cable is connected.
  - – the network cable is disconnected.

  The icon blinks when the Ethernet port indication mode is enabled.
- **Network interface** is the name of the network interface in the operating system.
- **Mode** is the current mode of the monitoring point:
  - *Enabled*.
  - *Disabled*.
- On the **Settings** tab:
  - The **Inheritance of technologies** indicates whether inheritance of technologies is enabled or disabled for the server.
  - **MAC address** is the MAC address of the network interface.
  - **IP address** is the IP address of the network interface.

Identifying the Ethernet port associated with a network interface

The server on which application components are installed can have multiple Ethernet ports for connecting to the local network. You can use the application to enable blink mode for a network interface and find out which Ethernet port is associated with this interface. In blink mode, the LED next to the Ethernet port blinks for 15 seconds.

If the network interface does not support LED indication (for example, if the Ethernet port is not equipped with a LED, or the network interface is a logical bonded interface), an error is displayed when attempting to enable blinking mode.

To identify the Ethernet port associated with a network interface:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. In the card of the relevant network interface, click the **Blink** button.

   If the network interface supports LED indication, the network cable connection icon starts blinking in the card of the network interface. At the same time, the LED next to the Ethernet port starts blinking on the corresponding network adapter of the computer.

When a network interface is in blinking mode, you cannot turn on blinking mode for any other network interface on the same server.

Managing Central Node, PCN, or SCN servers using the application web interface

You can use the application web interface to perform the following actions with the server on which the Central Node component is installed:

- Change the FQDN of the server
- Configure the date and time on the server.
- Power off and restart the server.
- Manage the certificate of the server
- Manage the settings for saving traffic
- Manage the settings for saving traffic dump files
- Manage the network settings of the server

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

Configuring the date and time on the server

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the date and time on the server.

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Date and time** subsection.
2. In the **Time zone** drop-down list, select the time zone of the physical location of the Central Node server.

3. Under **NTP servers**, specify the value of the **Maximum packet transmission time** setting, which limits the maximum possible time it takes to deliver a packet from the Central Node server to the NTP server.

   The default setting is 5 seconds.

   > You can enable or disable synchronization with NTP servers in the administrator menu of Central Node.

4. In the **NTP servers** section:

   - If you want to add a new NTP server:

     a. Click **Add**.

     b. In the field that opens, enter the IP address or domain name of the NTP server.

     c. Click the ✓ button to the right of the field.

   - If you want to edit the IP address or domain name of the NTP server, click the ✎ button in the line containing the server.

   - If you want to delete an NTP server, click the 🗑 button in the line containing the server.

5. Click **Apply**.

The date and time of the server will be configured.

Generating or uploading a TLS certificate of the server

> If you are already using a server TLS certificate, generating or uploading a new certificate causes the currently used certificate to be removed and replaced with the new certificate.

> You must enter the data of the new certificate everywhere the old certificate was used.

If you replace the TLS certificate, you will need to:

- Reauthorize mail sensors (KSMG, KLMS) on Central Node.
- Reconfigure the connection of Central Node, PCN, and SCN to Sandbox.
- Reconfigure traffic forwarding from Endpoint Agent to Sensor and trusted connection with Endpoint Agent.

> Make sure to delete all Endpoint Agent host isolation rules. Connection with isolated hosts will be lost and you will not be able to manage them.

You can generate a new certificate in the web interface: of the Central Node server or upload a certificate that you have created independently.

To comply with security regulations and standards, you must replace the TLS certificate installed in the application by default with your own TLS certificate.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To generate a TLS certificate for a Central Node server:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Generate**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform generates a new TLS certificate. The page is automatically refreshed.

Communication with the mail sensors, the Sandbox component, and the Endpoint Agent component is interrupted until reauthorization.

You can choose to prepare the TLS certificate on your own and upload it using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

The TLS certificate file prepared for upload must satisfy the following requirements:

- The file must contain the certificate itself and a private encryption key for the connection.
- The file must be in PEM format.

  The application does not support other formats of certificates.

  If you have prepared a certificate in a different format, you must convert it to the PEM format.
- The private key length must be 2048 bits or longer.

For more details on preparing TLS certificates for import, please refer to the documentation on Open SSL.

Upload the TLS certificate in the web interface of the PCN or SCN server to which you want to upload the certificate.

To upload an independently prepared TLS certificate using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Upload**.

   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select a TLS certificate file to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.

The TLS certificate is added to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Communication with the mail sensors, the Sandbox component, and the Endpoint Agent component is interrupted until reauthorization.

Downloading the TLS certificate of the server

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To download the TLS certificate of the server:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
2. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Download**.

The server certificate file will be saved in the downloads folder of the browser.

Setting the FQDN of the server

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To set the FQDN of the server:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Network settings** subsection.
2. Enter the full domain name of the server into the **Server name (FQDN)** field.

   Specify the server name in FQDN format (for example: `host.domain.com` or `host.domain.subdomain.com`).
3. Click **Apply**.

The server name will be assigned.

Configuring DNS settings

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure DNS:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Network settings** subsection.
2. In the **DNS settings** group, enter the IP addresses of the DNS servers in the **DNS servers** field.
3. Click **Apply**.

The DNS settings will be configured.

Configuring settings of the network interface

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the network interface:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Network settings** subsection.
2. Select the network interface whose settings you want to configure.

   This opens the **Edit network interface** window.
3. In the **State** settings group, select one of the following options:
   - **Disabled**.
   - **Enabled, using DHCP server** if you want the settings received from the DHCP server to be used for the network interface.
   - **Enabled, manual configuration** if you want the manually configured network interface to be used.
4. If you selected **Enabled, manual configuration**, specify values for the following parameters:
   a. In the **IP** field, specify the IP address of the network interface.
   b. In the **Subnet mask** field, specify the subnet mask of the network interface.
   c. In the **Gateway** text box, enter the IP address of the gateway.
5. Click **Save**.

The settings of the network interface will be configured.

Configuring the default network route

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the default network route:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Network settings** subsection.
2. In the **Network route** settings group, in the **Network interface** drop-down list, select the network interface for which you want to configure the network route.
3. In the **Gateway** text box, enter the IP address of the gateway.
4. Click **Apply**.

The default network route will be configured.

Configuring proxy server connection settings

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the proxy server connection:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Network settings** subsection.
2. In the **Proxy server** settings group, set the toggle switch to **Enabled**.
3. In the **Host** field, specify the URL or IP address of the proxy server.
4. In the **Port** field, specify the port for connecting to the proxy server.
5. In the **User name** field, specify the user name for authentication on the proxy server.
6. In the **Password** field, specify the password for authentication on the proxy server.
7. If you do not want to use a proxy server when connecting to local addresses, select the **Bypass proxy server for local addresses** check box.
8. Click **Apply**.

The proxy server connection settings will be configured.

If an error occurs while saving settings, set the **Use proxy server** toggle switch to **Disabled**, then set it back to **Enabled** and click the **Apply** button.

Configuring the mail server connection

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

The application can send notifications about alerts and system performance. To do so, you must configure the settings of the server used for sending notifications.

To configure the server for sending notifications:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Mail server configuration** tab.
3. In the **Host** field, specify the IP address of the mail server.
4. In the **Port** field, specify the port for connecting to the mail server.
5. In the **Email from** field, specify the email address from which the notifications will be sent.
6. If you want to enable authentication on the mail server, select the **Use SMTP authentication of message recipients** check box.
7. In the **User name** field, specify the user name for authentication on the server used for sending notifications.
8. In the **Password** field, specify the password for authentication on the server used for sending notifications.
9. If you want to use TLS encryption when sending notifications, select the **Use TLS encryption** check box.
10. If you want to validate the certificate of the mail server, select the **Validate TLS encryption** check box.

    The **Certificate fingerprint** field displays the fingerprint of the mail server certificate.

    If the **Validate TLS encryption** check box is not selected, the application will consider any certificate of the mail server as trusted.

11. Click **Apply**.

The settings of the server used for sending notifications will be configured.

Managing traffic saving settings

The application can save traffic received at the time when an event was registered. Traffic is saved in the database of the Central Node server when registering events for which traffic saving is enabled. The application can also directly save traffic in the server database upon a traffic download request, using temporary traffic dump files.

The application stores traffic data in blocks. If a block of traffic is associated with multiple events (for events recorded within a short period of time), such a block of traffic is not duplicated in the database.

To manage the settings for saving traffic in the server database:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant Central Node component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Go to the **General** tab.
5. Under **Traffic for events**, specify the maximum volume of traffic to be saved in the **Max volume** field.

   You can select the unit of measure for the size limit: **MB** or **GB**.

   When editing the value, you also need to take into account that the sum total of all size limits may not exceed the specified maximum storage capacity for the server.
6. Click the **Save** button.

Traffic saving settings are modified.

Managing the settings for saving traffic dump files

The application saves traffic received through monitoring points as traffic dump files. The application uses these files for analysis of incoming traffic. You can also use these files to perform the following actions in the application:

- Downloading traffic when managing the network interaction map
- Downloading network session traffic
- Downloading traffic for events (traffic dump files allow you to load traffic for events, even if traffic saving is disabled for the relevant event type)

Traffic dump files are saved in internal storage on servers with the Sensor component. If you use the Central Node component with Embedded Sensor, traffic dump files are saved in the internal storage of the Central Node server.

The application stores traffic dump files on a temporary basis. As traffic arrives, the application automatically deletes the oldest traffic dump files from storages if the total size of files approaches the limit set for the storage. You can configure the settings for storing traffic in the internal storage.

To configure the saving of traffic dump files to the internal storage:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant Central Node component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Go to the **General** tab.

5. If necessary, in the **Filtering stored traffic** section, enable filtering and enter a filtering expression using the Berkeley Packet Filter (BPF) technology based on the address settings of the network packets.

   Filtering can reduce the size of stored traffic by discarding network packets that do not match the filter. However, if you rely on filtering, consider that filtered traffic may not provide all data that the application needs for high-quality traffic analysis. You need to configure filtering in such a way that all network packets that the application needs to analyze traffic are saved in the traffic dump files.

6. Under **Traffic dump files**, use the **Max volume** setting to set the size limit for stored traffic dump files.

   You can select the unit of measure for the size limit: **MB** or **GB**.

   When editing the value, you also need to take into account the amount of received traffic, the rate at which it is received, and the fact that the sum total of all size limits may not exceed the specified maximum storage capacity for the node.

7. Click **Save**.

Traffic dump saving in internal storage is configured.

Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox

You can select a set of operating systems that will be used to generate tasks for scanning objects using the Sandbox component. On the Sandbox server, you must install virtual machines with operating systems that match the configured set.

To select the set of operating systems:

1. Select the **Sandbox servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Go to the **Settings** tab.
3. Under **OS set**, select one of the following options:
   - **Windows 7, Windows 10**.
   - **CentOS 7.8, Windows 7, Windows 10**.
   - **Astra Linux 1.7, Windows 7, Windows 10**.
   - **Custom**.

4. If you selected **Custom**, under **Set composition**, select the check boxes next to the operating systems that you want to include in the set.

   Custom operating systems are displayed in the list if virtual machines with these operating systems are installed on the Sandbox server. Preset operating systems are always displayed in the list, but if virtual machines running these operating systems are not deployed, the **Unknown** status is displayed next to the name of the operating system.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will create tasks for scanning objects in Sandbox in accordance with the selected set.

If the set of operating systems installed on the Sandbox server does not match the set selected on the Central Node server, objects are not sent to be scanned by that Sandbox server. If multiple Sandbox servers are connected to the Central Node server, the application sends objects to those Sandbox servers whose installed operating systems match the set selected on Central Node.

You can change the set of operating systems in the course of using the application. In this case, you need to make sure that the configuration of the Sandbox server satisfies hardware requirements.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the settings of the operating system set configured on the PCN server are not applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN server. You can select the set of operating systems for each PCN and SCN server individually.

Managing the Sensor component

The Sensor component receives data from network traffic and mail traffic.

You can install the Sensor and Central Node components on the same server or on separate servers. The Sensor component installed on a standalone server must be connected to the server with the Central Node component. If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, follow the steps to connect the Sensor component on the PCN or SCN server to which you want to connect the component.

Centralized management of Sensor components with the PCN in distributed solution and multitenancy mode is not supported. The Sensor component can be configured only from the specific Central Node server to which the component is connected.

Connecting the Sensor component to the Central Node

When the Sensor component is added, a configuration package is generated on the Central Node, containing the certificate and configuration data for the Sensor component. The added component is connected using the web interface of the Sensor component. The web interface of the component lets you upload a configuration package and connect the component in the following ways:

- Using a communication data package.

  In this case, the configuration package is saved as a file in which the certificate is password-protected. This file is called a *communication data package*. The communication data package must be uploaded to the web interface of the Sensor component. After uploading the communication data package, the Sensor component automatically connects to the Central Node on which the communication data package was created.

- Automatically over the network.

  In this case, the configuration package is sent over the network to the specified IP address of the server with the Sensor component. The Sensor processes the configuration package, generates a certificate signing request (CSR) based on it, and sends this request to the Central Node component. After receiving the CSR, the fingerprint of the CSR is displayed in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform as a sequence of characters. The same fingerprint is displayed at the same time in the web interface of the Sensor component. You must make sure that the fingerprints are identical before terminating the connection.

If the connection between the Central Node and Sensor components is established outside of a trusted medium, to protect the connection from traffic interception, you need to use external cryptographic information protection facilities that support encryption algorithms approved in your country. If the components are connected by a trusted medium, for example, a patch cord within a server rack that precludes third-party access, using external cryptographic information protection facilities is not necessary.

Connecting the Sensor component using a communication data package

To connect the Sensor component using a communication data package:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click **Add sensor**.

   This opens the **Adding a new sensor** window.
3. In the **Sensor name** field, enter a name for the Sensor component that you want to connect.

   After the connection to the Central Node is established, the title of the browser tab with the web interface page of the component displays the name that you configure at this step.
4. In the **Server address** field, enter the IP address of the Central Node server to which you want to connect the Sensor component.

   If the Central Node is deployed as a cluster, you need to enter the IP address of the processing server in the cluster that is **configured to receive mirrored traffic from SPAN ports**.

   You can enable the receipt of mirrored traffic when installing the component. If you disabled the receipt of traffic at the installation stage:

   To turn on receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

   1. If Central Node is installed on the server, enter the management console of the relevant server using SSH or a terminal.
   2. If Central Node is deployed as a cluster, log in to the management console of any worker server in the cluster using SSH or a terminal.
   3. Run the following command:

      ```
      kata-enable-span
      ```

   The receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports is enabled.
5. In the **Sensor IP address** field, enter the IP address of the server with the Sensor component that you want to connect to the Central Node component.

6. In the **Encryption of certificate in communication data package** section, set the certificate protection password that you want to use.

   The password must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Contains 8 to 256 ASCII characters.
   - Contains one or more uppercase letters of the Latin alphabet.
   - Contains one or more lowercase letters of the Latin alphabet.
   - Contains one or more numerals.
   - Does not contain four or more identical characters in a row.

7. Click **Create communication data package**. Your browser saves the downloaded file. Depending on your browser's settings, a window may be displayed on your screen in which you can specify the path and name of the downloaded file.

8. Place the saved communication data package file on any computer for which access to the Sensor server is allowed.

9. On the computer on which you placed the communication data package file, start the command line interpreter.

10. Run the following command:

    ```
    ssh -4 -L 9444:localhost:9444 admin@<IP address of the server with the Sensor component>
    ```

    If after running the command, you get the *Corrupted MAC on input. ssh_dispatch_run_fatal: Connection to <IP address of the Sensor server> port 22: message authentication code incorrect* error, run the following command:

    ```
    ssh -4 -L 9444:localhost:9444 admin@<IP address of the server with the Sensor component> -o "MACs hmac-sha2-256"
    ```

11. In the address bar of the browser, enter: https://localhost:9444.

12. On the Sensor web interface page, click **Select file**.

    This opens the standard browser window for selecting a file.

13. Specify the path to the communication data package.

14. Click the open file button.

15. After the file finishes uploading, enter the password for the certificate that you set at step 6 of these instructions.

    The Sensor component is connected to the Central Node component, after which the connection information in the web interfaces of the Sensor and Central Node components.

Adding and connecting the Sensor component automatically over the network

To connect the Sensor component automatically over the network:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click **Add sensor**.

   This opens the **Adding a new sensor** window.
3. Go to the **Automatically over the network** tab.
4. In the **Sensor name** field, enter a name for the Sensor component that you want to connect.

   After the connection to the Central Node is established, the title of the browser tab with the web interface page of the component displays the name that you configure at this step.
5. In the **Server address** field, enter the IP address of the Central Node server to which you want to connect the Sensor component.

   If the Central Node is deployed as a cluster, you need to enter the IP address of the processing server in the cluster that is **configured to receive mirrored traffic from SPAN ports**.

   You can enable the receipt of mirrored traffic when installing the component. If you disabled the receipt of traffic at the installation stage:

   To turn on receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

   1. If Central Node is installed on the server, enter the management console of the relevant server using SSH or a terminal.
   2. If Central Node is deployed as a cluster, log in to the management console of any worker server in the cluster using SSH or a terminal.
   3. Run the following command:

      ```
      kata-enable-span
      ```

      The receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports is enabled.
6. In the **Sensor IP address** field, enter the IP address of the server with the Sensor component that you want to connect to the Central Node component.

   The application establishes a connection with the server on which the Sensor component is installed, and a prompt is displayed in the web interface of the application asking you to confirm the fingerprint of the received certificate signing request.
7. On any computer on which access to the Sensor server is allowed, start the command line interpreter.
8. Run the following command:

   ```
   ssh -4 -L 9444:localhost:9444 admin@<IP address of the server with the Sensor component>
   ```

   If after running the command, you get the *Corrupted MAC on input. ssh_dispatch_run_fatal: Connection to <IP address of the Sensor server> port 22: message authentication code incorrect* error, run the following command:

```
ssh -4 -L 9444:localhost:9444 admin@<IP address of the server with the Sensor
component> -o "MACs hmac-sha2-256"
```

9. In the address bar of the browser, enter: https://localhost:9444.

   The web interface of the Sensor component is displayed in the browser. The web interface displays a message with information about the fingerprint of the certificate signing request that was sent to the Central Node component.

10. Make sure that the character sequences representing the fingerprint of the certificate request are identical in the web interfaces of the Sensor and Central Node components.

11. In the application web interface, click the button to confirm the received fingerprint of the certificate signing request.

The Sensor component is connected to the Central Node component, after which the connection information in the web interfaces of the Sensor and Central Node components.

Removing the Sensor component

You can remove the component from the application. Deleting a component also deletes the settings of any integrations configured for it and stops the reception and processing of data, we recommend first doing the following:

- Schedule a downtime window.
- Disable all integrations with Sensor on the side of external systems.
- Preserve the settings of integrations with external systems on the Sensor side in any convenient way.
- Preserve the settings of Sensor integrations on the external systems side in any convenient way.

If necessary, you can reconnect the removed component to the Central Node.

To remove the component:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.

3. Click **Delete**.

The component is removed.

Editing the settings of a Sensor installed separately from Central Node

If you have selected network protocols to get mirrored traffic from SPAN ports, configured the size of file storage or the traffic capture bandwidth on the standalone Sensor **before** connecting it to the Central Node and want to change these settings **after** connecting, we recommend adhering to the following scenario when changing these settings:

1. Disconnecting the Sensor from the Central Node.

   You disconnect Sensor by removing it.

2. Preparing Sensor for changing the settings.

3. Following the instructions to change the settings.

4. Connecting Sensor to the Central Node.

If you change one or more of the settings listed above without appropriate preparation, a Sensor installed separately from the Central Node may become unstable. In this case, the status of the component in its card starts changing frequently. You can fix this issue by disconnecting the Sensor from the Central Node and then re-connecting it.

Preparing to edit the settings of a Sensor installed separately from Central Node

If you selected network protocols to get mirrored traffic from SPAN ports, configured the size of file storage or the traffic capture bandwidth on the standalone Sensor **before** connecting it to the Central Node and want to change these settings **after** connecting, you need to follow the steps below.

All steps described below must be performed on servers in Technical Support Mode after elevating user privileges using the `sudo -i` command.

To prepare the Sensor for changing the settings:

1. Log in to the console of the Sensor server and run the following command:

   ```
   kata-sensor-tool stop-sensor
   ```

2. Log in to the management console of the Central Node server to which the Sensor is connected and run the following command:

   ```
   kata-sensor-tool clear-core-cookies
   ```

3. Go back to the management console of the Sensor server and run the following command:

   ```
   kata-sensor-tool start-sensor
   ```

   The Sensor is prepared for changing the settings. You can now follow the steps of the instructions to change the settings as necessary.

Managing the certificate of the Sensor server

This section describes how to manage the TLS certificate of the server with the Sensor component.

The certificate can be managed in the application administrator menu.

Generating a TLS certificate for the Sensor server in the administrator menu of the Sensor server

To create a TLS certificate for the server with the Sensor component, do the following in the administrator menu of the Sensor server:

1. In the main window of the administrator menu, select **Program settings**.
2. Press **ENTER**.
   This opens the next window of the administrator menu.
3. Select **Manage server certificate**.
4. Press **ENTER**.
   This opens the **Certificate management** window.
5. In the lower part of the window, select **Generate new**.
6. Press **ENTER**.
   This opens a window containing information about the new certificate.
7. Click **Generate**.
   Creation of the certificate starts. Wait until this process finishes.

The certificate will be created. The data of previously installed certificates will be overwritten.

Uploading your own TLS certificate in the administrator menu of the Sensor server

You can prepare your own TLS certificate and upload it to the Sensor server using SCP. For more details on the methods for uploading files via the SCP protocol, see the documentation for the operating system installed on the computer from which you want to upload the TLS certificate.

The TLS certificate file prepared for upload to the server must satisfy the following requirements:

- The file must contain the certificate itself and a private encryption key for the connection.
- The file must be in PEM format.

- The file name must be kata.pem.
- The private key length must be 2048 bits or longer.

For more details on preparing TLS certificates for import, please refer to the OpenSSL documentation.

To upload your own TLS certificate to the Sensor server using SCP, do the following in your computer's SCP interface (Linux is used in the example):

1. Run the following command: `scp kata.pem admin@<IP address of the server with the Sensor component>:`
2. At the password prompt, enter the administrator password for managing the administrator menu of the Sensor server that was set during installation.

The TLS certificate is uploaded to the server with the Sensor.

To apply the uploaded TLS certificate on the Sensor server, do the following in the administrator menu of the Sensor server:

1. In the main window of the administrator menu, select **Program settings**.
2. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the next window of the administrator menu.
3. Select **Manage server certificate**.
4. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the **Certificate management** window.
5. In the lower part of the window, select **Install from file**.
6. Press **ENTER**.

The certificate will be applied. The data of previously installed certificates will be overwritten.

Downloading the TLS certificate of the Sensor server to your computer

You can download a TLS certificate from the Sensor server to any computer that can connect to the Sensor server over the SCP protocol. For more details on the methods for uploading files via the SCP protocol, see the documentation for the operating system installed on the computer to which you want to download the TLS certificate.

To download the TSL certificate from the server with the Sensor component over the SCP protocol, do the following in your computer's interface used for working over the SCP protocol (using the Linux operating system as an example):

1. Run the following command: `scp admin@<IP address of the server with the Sensor component>:ssl/kata.crt.`
2. At the password prompt, enter the administrator password for working in the administrator menu of the server with the Sensor component that was set during installation.

The TLS certificate is downloaded from the server with the Sensor component to the current directory.

Changing the server name

To rename the Central Node server:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Go to the **General** tab.
5. In the **Sensor name** field, enter a new name.

   The name must be unique (may not be the same as the name of another component) and may contain up to 100 characters. You can use letters of the English alphabet, numerals, a space, and the special characters: _ and - (for example, Server_1). The name must begin and end with any valid character other than a space.
6. Click the **Save** button.

The server is renamed.

Managing monitoring points

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform uses monitoring points to receive and process mirrored SPAN traffic. Monitoring points can be added and removed for the Central Node and Sensor components.

Each monitoring point must be associated with a network interface that receives a copy of traffic from a certain network segment. To add monitoring points, you can use network interfaces that satisfy the following conditions:

- Network interface type: Ethernet.
- MAC address: not 00:00:00:00:00:00.
- The network interface is designated for receiving a copy of network traffic and is not used for other purposes (for example, for connecting servers with installed application components).

Monitoring points can be enabled or disabled. You can disable a monitoring point to temporarily stop monitoring a network segment from which a copy of the traffic is received on the network interface. When you need to resume monitoring, you can re-enable the monitoring point.

After disabling or removing a monitoring point, the application may log events involving this monitoring point for some time. This is due to a possible lag in processing incoming traffic when the Central Node component is under high load.

Monitoring point details are displayed in the card of the network interface to which this monitoring point is linked. If necessary, you can rename the monitoring point.

Adding a monitoring point

To receive and process traffic from the network on a network interface of a node, you need to add a monitoring point to that network interface.

To add a monitoring point to a network interface:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. In the card of the relevant network interface, click the **Add monitoring point** link.

   This opens the window for adding a monitoring point.
3. In the **Monitoring point name** field, enter a name for the monitoring point.

   You can use uppercase and lowercase letters of the Latin alphabet, numbers, and _ and - characters.

   The name of the monitoring point must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Is unique (not assigned to any other monitoring point).
   - Contains 1 to 100 characters.
4. Click **Add monitoring point**.

The monitoring point is added.

Renaming a monitoring point

You can rename the monitoring point associated with a network interface.

The new name of the monitoring point is reflected in the events logged after the renaming. Previously logged events keep the old name of the monitoring point.

To rename a monitoring point:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant network interface.

3. This opens a window with information about the network interface.

4. Click **Edit**.

5. In the **Monitoring point name** field, enter a new name.

   You can use uppercase and lowercase letters of the Latin alphabet, numbers, and _ and - characters.

   The name of the monitoring point must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Is unique (not assigned to any other monitoring point).
   - Contains 1 to 100 characters.

6. Click **Save**.

The monitoring point is renamed.

Enabling monitoring points

If a monitoring point is disabled, the application does not receive or process traffic arriving at its network interface. If you want to resume receiving and processing traffic, you must enable the monitoring point.

You can enable monitoring points individually or all at once, for one component or for all components.

Only users with the Administrator role can enable monitoring points.

To enable monitoring points:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

2. Do one of the following:

   - If you want to enable an individual monitoring point, in the card of the relevant component, click the **Enable** button. The button is available if the monitoring point is disabled.
   - If you want to enable all monitoring points, in the card of the relevant component, click the **Enable all** button. The button is available if the component has network interfaces with disabled monitoring points.
   - If you want to enable all monitoring points for all components, click the **Enable on all nodes** link in the toolbar.

3. Wait for the changes to be applied.

The selected monitoring points are enabled.

Disabling monitoring points

You can disable a monitoring point if you want to temporarily stop receiving and processing traffic on the network interface of that monitoring point.

You can disable monitoring points individually or all at the same time, for all components.

To disable monitoring points:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Do one of the following:
   - If you want to disable an individual monitoring point, in the card of the relevant component, click the **Disable** button. The button is available if the monitoring point is enabled.
   - If you want to disable all monitoring points, in the card of the relevant component, click the **Disable all** button. The button is available if the component has network interfaces with enabled monitoring points.
   - If you want to disable all monitoring points for all components, click the **Disable on all nodes** link in the toolbar.
3. Wait for the changes to be applied.

The selected monitoring points are disabled.

Deleting a monitoring point

You can delete the monitoring point associated with a network interface. Deleting a monitoring point may be necessary if the network interface will no longer be used to receive traffic.

If you need to temporarily stop receiving traffic on the network interface of the monitoring point (for example, during maintenance and commissioning), you can disable the monitoring point without deleting it.

Traffic received from the monitoring point before it was deleted is not deleted from the database. Also, information about this monitoring point is kept in the table of logged events.

To delete a monitoring point:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant network interface.
3. This opens a window with information about the network interface.
4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window. If the monitoring point is enabled, the application prompts you to disable the monitoring point.
5. In the prompt window, confirm the deletion of the monitoring point.

The monitoring point is deleted.

Configuring the maximum size of a scanned file

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure the maximum size of a scanned file:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Go to the **Other** tab.
5. Set the **Set size limit** toggle switch to **Enabled**.
6. In the **Unit of measure** field, select a unit of measure.
7. In the **Space** field, enter the maximum allowed size of a file.
8. Click **Save**.

The maximum size of a scanned file will be configured.

Configuring the maximum size of a scanned file on a server with the Sensor component installed separately from the Central Node

If you selected network protocols to get mirrored traffic from SPAN ports on a standalone Sensor before connecting it to the Central Node and want to change these settings after connecting, you need to follow the preparatory steps before you change the settings and then follow the instructions above.

Configuring HTTP packet body dumping

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure HTTP packet body dumping:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Go to the **Other** tab.
5. In the **Dump HTTP body** section:
   - If you want to enable HTTP packet body dumping, set the **Enable http-body** toggle switch to **Enabled**.

     By default, the toggle switch is in the **Disabled** position.
   - If you want to disable HTTP packet body dumping, set the **Enable http-body** toggle switch to **Disabled**.
6. Click **Save**.

HTTP packet body dumping is enabled or disabled.

Configuring integration with a mail server via SMTP

SMTP traffic can be fed into Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in two ways: as part of mirrored SPAN traffic or as part of an integration with a mail server via SMTP. If SMTP traffic comes in as part of SPAN traffic, the application extracts and scans only attached files. In this case, the content of the email message, including the body of the message and URLs, is not available for analysis.

To scan all parts of the message, you need to configure integration with the mail server via SMTP.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure integration with a mail server over SMTP:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Go to the **SMTP integration** tab.
5. If you want to enable integration with a mail server via SMTP, set the **Enable SMTP integration** toggle switch to **Enabled**.
6. In the **Destination domains** field, specify the name of the mail domain or subdomain. The application will scan email messages sent to mailboxes of the specified domains.

   To disable a domain or subdomain, enclose it in the `!domain.tld` form.

If you leave the mail domain name blank, the application will receive messages sent to any email address.

7. In the **Clients** field, specify the IP addresses of hosts and/or masks of subnets (in CIDR notation) with which the application is allowed to interact over the SMTP protocol.

   To disable a host or subnet, enclose the address in the `!host` form.

   If you leave this field blank, the application will receive the following messages:

   - From any email addresses if you specified email domains in the **Destination domains** field.
   - From any host if no domain is specified in the **Destination domains** field.

   If you want to leave the **Destination domains** and **Clients** fields empty, you need to use any method to limit the list of hosts that will be able to send messages to the application.

8. If you want to set the maximum allowed size of incoming messages, set the **Set message size** toggle switch to **Enabled**.
9. In the **Unit of measure** field, select a unit of measure.
10. In the **Space** field, enter the maximum allowed size of a file.
11. If you want to configure TLS encryption of SMTP connections to the mail server, under **Client TLS security level**, select one of the following options:

    - **No TLS encryption**.

      The application will not employ TLS encryption of connections with a mail server.

    - **Allow TLS encryption for incoming messages**.

      The application will support TLS encryption of the connection, but encryption will not be mandatory.

    - **Require TLS encryption for incoming messages**.

      The application will receive messages only over encrypted channels.

12. Click the **Download TLS certificate** button to save the TLS certificate of the server with the Sensor component on the computer in the browser's downloads folder.

    This certificate is required for authentication on the mail server.

13. In the **Requesting client TLS certificate** settings group, select one of the following options:

    - **Do not request**.

      The application will not verify the TLS certificate of the mail server.

    - **Request**.

      The application will request a TLS certificate from the mail server, if one is available.

    - **Require**.

      The application will receive messages only from those mail servers that have a TLS certificate.

14. Click **Save**.

Integration with a mail server via SMTP will be configured. The application will scan email messages received over

the SMTP protocol according to the defined settings.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, you can configure high availability integration with the mail server.

To configure high availability integration with the mail server:

1. Configure Round Robin on the DNS server for the domain name corresponding to the Central Node cluster.
2. Specify this domain name in the mail server settings.

   Integration with the mail server will be configured based on the domain name. The mail server will communicate with a random server in the cluster. If this server fails, the mail server will communicate with another healthy server in the cluster.

For version 7.0 of the application in a cluster configuration, when integrated with a mail server, an error may occur when sending an email message: "451 4.3.0 Error: queue file write error".

To resolve the error:

1. Enter the management console of any cluster server over SSH or using a terminal.
2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the application administrator menu, select Technical Support Mode.
4. Press ENTER.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select Yes and press ENTER.
6. Run the following command:

   ```
   for addr in <IP addresses of cluster servers (separated by spaces)>; do nc -zv $addr 10025; done
   ```

   The list of servers is displayed on the console.
7. In the web interface of the application, at step 7 of the instructions above, specify the IP address of the server for which the `localhost [127.0.0.1] 10025 (?) open` string is displayed on the console.

The error is resolved.

If you do not get a `localhost [127.0.0.1] 10025 (?) open` string for any of the cluster servers, please contact Technical Support.

When installing the Central Node component of version 7.0.3 on the server, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform may refuse email messages received via SMTP. The sender may get a "Connection refused" error.

To remove the limitation:

1. Log in to the management console of the relevant Central Node server over SSH or through a terminal.
2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the application administrator menu, select Technical Support Mode.
4. Press ENTER.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select Yes and press ENTER.
6. Run the following command:

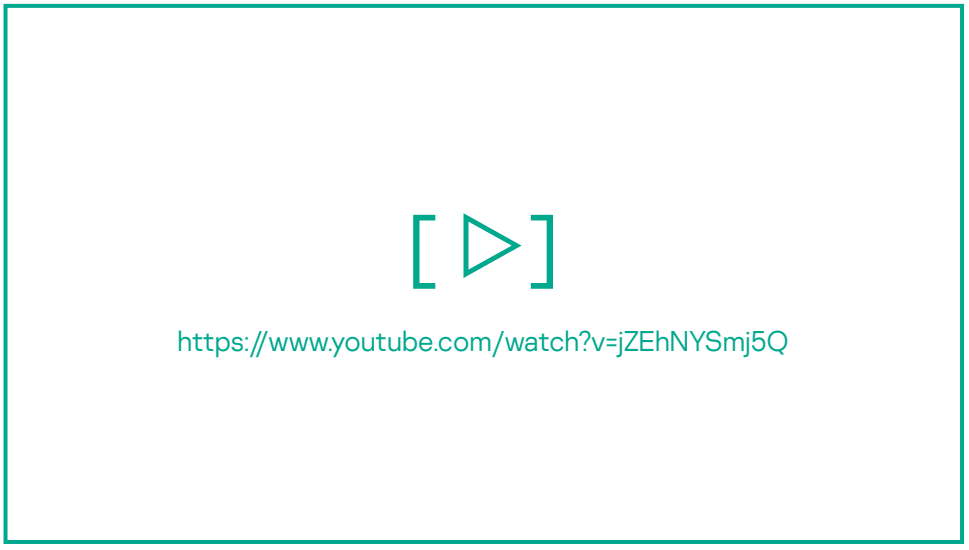
   ```
   sudo -i
   ```
7. Run the following commands:

   a. `docker exec $(docker ps -q -f name=preprocessor_span) supervisorctl restart preprocessor`

   b. `docker exec $(docker ps -q -f name=preprocessor_smtp) supervisorctl restart preprocessor`

The limitation is removed.

Watch a video tutorial on how to configure Central Node to work with mail traffic and integrate with Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway. You can play the video on the Help page (see below) or follow the link https://youtu.be/jZEhNYSmj5Q?si=6OAp9ZHVWklL04Ch.



Configuring Central Node to work with mail traffic, integration with Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway

Configuring integration with a proxy server via ICAP

Integration with a proxy server over ICAP with feedback allows you to prevent malicious objects from entering the corporate LAN and prevent the host user from visiting malicious or phishing websites.

When integrating with a proxy server via ICAP, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform acts as an ICAP server, and your proxy server acts as an ICAP client. They interact as follows:

1. The ICAP client, on request from the user of the host, fetches the requested resource and sends it via ICAP to the ICAP server for scanning.

2. The ICAP server runs the scans and returns the scan result to the ICAP client in an ICAP response (see the table below).

3. The ICAP client sends an HTTP response based on the scan result it received from the ICAP server to the user of the host. If access to an object is blocked, the host user gets a response with a `403 Access Denied` code. Otherwise, the original response code of the HTTP server is returned to the user.

ICAP server response codes (ICAP protocol)

Response code	Description
`100 Continue`	The ICAP server is ready to receive data.
`200 OK` `204 Not changed`	Scan completed. Depending on the parameters and results of the check response may contain the following headers: • `X-Infection-Found: Type=0; Resolution=2` – virus detected, file blocked. • `X-Infection-Found: Type=2` – validation error. Where: • `Type` is the type of the threat. • `Resolution` is the applied action. • `X-ICAP-Data-Trickling` – indicates that Data Trickling mode is enabled.
`400 Bad Request`	Request processing error.
`404 ICAP Service not found`	An ICAP service with this ID does not exist.
`500 Internal Server Error`	Internal server error.
`501 Method not implemented`	A method other than REQMOD / RESPMOD was specified.

When integrating with a proxy server via ICAP, some limitations apply:

If you encounter problems with free disk space when integrating over ICAP, please contact Technical Support.

Enabling and disabling integration with a proxy server via ICAP

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

When a standalone proxy server is used, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not provide encryption of ICAP traffic or authentication of ICAP clients by default. The application administrator must take steps to ensure a secure network connection between your proxy server and Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform by using traffic tunneling or iptables.

To enable or disable integration with a proxy server via ICAP:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Select the **ICAP integration** tab.
5. Do the following:

   - If you want to enable integration with a proxy server via ICAP, move the **Enable ICAP integration** toggle switch to **Enabled**.
   - If you want to disable integration with a proxy server via ICAP, move the **Enable ICAP integration** toggle switch to **Disabled**.

Integration with a proxy server via ICAP is enabled.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, you can configure high availability integration with a proxy server.

To configure the high availability integration with the proxy server:

1. Configure Round Robin on the DNS server for the domain name corresponding to the Central Node cluster.
2. Specify this domain name in the proxy server settings.

   Integration with the proxy server will be configured based on the domain name. The proxy server will communicate with a random server in the cluster. If this server fails, the proxy server will communicate with another healthy server in the cluster.

Enabling or disabling real-time scanning of ICAP traffic

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

You can enable or disable real-time scanning of ICAP traffic if integration with a proxy server via ICAP is enabled.

If real-time scanning of ICAP traffic is enabled, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends information about scanned objects to the ICAP client in real time. This helps prevent downloading malicious objects and clicking untrusted links.

To enable or disable real-time scanning of ICAP traffic:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Select the **ICAP integration** tab.
5. Under **Real-time scanning**, select one of the following options:

   - **Disabled**

     If you select this option, real-time scanning of ICAP traffic is disabled. This option is selected by default.

   - **Enabled, standard ICAP traffic scanning**.

     When this type of scan is enabled, the reputation of files and URLs is checked against the knowledge base of Kaspersky Security Network, and files are scanned by the Sandbox component and Anti-Malware Engine and YARA modules. The files remain available while they are being scanned by the Sandbox component.

   - **Enabled, advanced ICAP traffic scanning**.

     When this type of scan is enabled, the reputation of files and URLs is checked against the knowledge base of Kaspersky Security Network, and files are scanned by the Sandbox component and Anti-Malware Engine and YARA modules. The files are unavailable while they are being scanned by the Sandbox component.
6. Under **Authenticated user information – Extract user**:

   If you want to get the user name from the ICAP server, set the **Extract user name** toggle switch field to **Enabled**. If you need to use Base64 decoding, select the **Use Base64 decoding** check box.
7. Click **Save**.

Real-time scanning of ICAP traffic is enabled or disabled.

If you disable proxy server integration, ICAP traffic scanning is also disabled, even if it was previously enabled. The scan settings are preserved, and the next time you enable the proxy server integration, ICAP traffic scanning is re-enabled.

To optimize workload, the application may temporarily switch from advanced ICAP traffic scanning mode to standard scanning mode In this case, files obtained from ICAP traffic and sent for scanning to Sandbox can still be downloaded. When a threat is detected in scanned files, the application creates an alert. Scanning files by the Anti-Malware Engine and YARA modules continues to work normally.

Configuring real-time scanning of ICAP traffic

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

Real-time ICAP traffic scanning on standalone servers with the Sensor component can only be configured in Technical Support Mode. To perform actions in Technical Support Mode, we recommend contacting Technical Support.

You can configure real-time ICAP traffic scanning on a server with the Central Node and Sensor components for anti-virus scanning of data. Scan results are displayed to the user of the host on a notification HTML page.

To configure real-time ICAP traffic scanning:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **ICAP traffic scanning** subsection.

   The ICAP traffic scanning settings page is displayed.

   By default, under **Notifications**, pages corresponding to the following events are loaded:

   - The page uploaded in the **Link blocked** field is displayed if a threat is detected at the address requested by the user.
   - The page uploaded in the **File blocked** field is displayed if a threat is detected in a scanned file.

   By default, HTML pages from the distribution kit are loaded in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. You can upload your own notification pages and configure how they must be displayed. The size of a notification page must not exceed 1.5 MB. If the uploaded notification page is larger than 1.5 MB, an error is displayed.

2. Under **File block threshold**, in the **Sandbox alert importance** field, select a value from the drop-down list. These values correspond to the possible impact of the alert on the security of a computer or your corporate network based on the expert opinion of Kaspersky.

   This setting can take one of the following values:

   - **High** for a high importance alert. This option is selected by default.
   - **Medium** for a medium-importance alert.
   - **Low** for a low-importance alert.

3. Under **Scan timeout**, in the **Timeout** field, specify the file scanning time. While the file is being scanned, its download speed is reduced. If the file cannot be scanned within the specified time, the download continues at normal speed.

   The default value is 10 minutes. You can set any value greater than 1 minute.

4. Click **Apply**.

The scan is performed with the specified settings.

Configuring the display of notification pages

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

During real-time ICAP traffic scanning, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can block URL navigation and file download. While these operations are in progress, a HTML notification page is displayed to the user on the host on which a URL access attempt or a file download request was made. If you want to display your own pages instead of the default pages, you can upload your own customized HTML pages.

To upload a notification page:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **ICAP traffic scanning** subsection.
2. In the **Notifications** section, click **Browse** next to one of the fields you need.
3. This opens a window; in that window, select your HTML page.
4. Click **Open**.

   Your page is uploaded.

Configuring recording of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports

With Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you can save mirrored traffic from SPAN ports for investigation and detection of malicious activity within the perimeter of your corporate LAN. With mirrored traffic recording, you can perform retrospective analysis of network events and investigate the actions of hackers. Traffic is saved as dumps in PCAP format.

To save mirrored traffic from SPAN ports, you need to enable the recording of this traffic and configure the recording. You can also select network protocols from which you want Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to extract objects and metadata when processing mirrored traffic.

Watch a video tutorial on how to configure Central Node to work with SPAN traffic through the Sensor component. You can play the video on the Help page (see below) or follow the link https://youtu.be/9whcEY-5MAs?si=lZKy1WxtTM7kXWt5.

Configuring Central Node to work with SPAN traffic via the Sensor component

Selecting network protocols for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, perform the configuration actions in the web interface of the PCN or SCN server to which the Sensor component is connected.

To select network protocols for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

1. If you want to select network protocols for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports on the Embedded Sensor, log in to the management console of the Central Node server with this Sensor via SSH protocol or using a terminal.

2. If you want to select network protocols for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports on a Sensor that is installed separately from the Central Node, log in to the management console of the Sensor server via SSH or using a terminal.

3. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was set during the installation of the application.

   This opens the settings menu for the Sensor component. If the menu does not open, enter the `kata-admin-menu` command and press **ENTER**.

4. Go to the **Program settings** → **Configure traffic capture** → **Setup capture protocols** section using the ↑, ↓, and **ENTER** keys. The selected row is highlighted in red.

   This opens a window where you can enable or disable receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports for the following network protocols:

   - **DNS**
   - **FTP**
   - **HTTP**

- **HTTP2**
- **SMTP**
- **SMB**
- **NFS**

  To analyze NFS traffic, you must mount the NFS partition and specify the version of the protocol.

  Example:

  For NFS v.4:

  ```
  mount -t nfs -o vers=4 -O uid=1000,iocharset=utf-8 <address>:/from/dir /to/dir
  ```

  For NFS v.3:

  ```
  mount -t nfs -o vers=3 -O uid=1000,iocharset=utf-8 <address>:/from/dir /to/dir
  ```

If receipt of mirrored traffic from a SPAN port via a network protocol is enabled, **[x]** is displayed to the right of the network protocol name. If receiving mirrored traffic from a SPAN port is disabled for a particular network protocol, **[ ]** is displayed to the right of the name of that protocol.

By default, receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports is enabled for all network protocols except **HTTP2**.

Disabling HTTP and/or DNS may result in an error when performing a database update.

5. If you want to enable or disable the receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports for a particular network protocol, select that using the ↑, ↓ keys and press **ENTER**.
6. Select the line containing **Apply and finish** and press **ENTER**.

Network protocols for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports are selected.

Selecting network protocols on a server with the Sensor component installed separately from the Central Node

If you selected network protocols to get mirrored traffic from SPAN ports on a standalone Sensor before connecting it to the Central Node and want to change these settings after connecting, you need to follow the preparatory steps before you change the settings and then follow the instructions above.

Configuring the recording of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, perform the configuration actions in the web interface of the PCN or SCN server to which the Sensor component is connected.

To turn on the recording of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

1. Connect and configure external storage.
2. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
3. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
4. Click **Edit**.
5. Go to the **External storage** tab.

   In the **External storage** section, the **Oldest packet** field displays the date and time of the first saved dump in the external storage. The **Newest packet** field displays the date and time of the last dump saved to external storage.
6. If you want to use external storage, set the **Connect external storage for traffic dump files** toggle switch to **Enabled**.

   By default, the toggle switch is in the **Disabled** position.
7. Do the following:

   a. Under **Maximum size**, specify the maximum size of traffic dumps that will be stored in the storage.

   If the size of dumps in the storage exceeds the specified value, the earliest dumps are deleted, the total size of which is equal to the size of the new dumps.

   > If you reduce the maximum dump storage size, the earliest dumps are deleted, the total size of which is equal to the change of the setting.

   b. If you want to limit the capture of data in traffic, under **Filtering using BPF**, set the **Enable filtering** toggle switch to **Enabled**. Traffic filtering can reduce the size of dumps in dump storage and facilitate traffic analysis.

   In the **Filtering expression** field, enter a filtering rule. The BPF filtering rule is written in the libpcap format**.** For more details about the syntax, please refer to the pcap-filter manual page.

   Example of a filtering expression:

   ```
   tcp port 102 or tcp port 502
   ```

   c. If you want to configure the traffic dump storage duration, under **Storage time limit**, set the **Define storage time** toggle switch to **Enabled**. In the **Storage time (days)** field, enter the number of days for which you want to store traffic dumps. When the specified period runs out, the dumps are deleted from the storage.

   d. Click **Save**.

The recording of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports is configured.

Configuring integration with a mail server via POP3

> If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To configure integration with a mail server over POP3:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Go to the **POP3 integration** tab.
5. Set the **Enable POP3 integration** toggle switch to **Enabled**.
6. In the **Mail server** field, specify the IP address of the mail server with which you want to configure integration.
7. In the **Port** field, specify the port for connecting to the mail server.
8. In the **Receive every** field, specify the mail server connection frequency (in seconds).
9. If you want to use TLS encryption of connections with the mail server via POP3, select the **Use TLS encryption** check box.
10. In the **User name** field, specify the account name used for accessing the mail server.
11. In the **Password** field, specify the password for accessing the mail server.

    The mail server must support Basic Authentication.
12. In the **TLS certificate** drop-down list, select one of the following options:

    - **Accept any**.
    - **Accept untrusted self-signed**.
    - **Accept only trusted**.

    When establishing a connection with an external mail server, it is recommended to configure the acceptance of only trusted TLS certificates. If you accept untrusted TLS certificates, protection of the connection against MITM attacks cannot be guaranteed. Even though the acceptance of trusted TLS certificates also cannot guarantee protection of the connection against MITM attacks, it is the most secure of the supported methods for integration with a mail server over the POP3 protocol.
13. If necessary, in the **Cipher suite** field, modify the OpenSSL settings used when establishing a connection with the mail server via POP3.

    You can view reference information on OpenSSL by clicking the **Help** link.
14. Click **Save**.

Integration with the mail server via POP3 will be configured.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, you can configure high availability integration with the mail server.

To configure high availability integration with the mail server:

1. Configure Round Robin on the DNS server for the domain name corresponding to the Central Node cluster.
2. Specify this domain name in the mail server settings.

   Integration with the mail server will be configured based on the domain name. The mail server will communicate with a random server in the cluster. If this server fails, the mail server will communicate with another healthy server in the cluster.

Authentication policies

You can configure authentication policies for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform users. These policies apply to all Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform users with the **KATA user account** account type regardless of their assigned role.

Enforced password change after the first successful authentication

If this functionality is enabled, passwords are changed in accordance with the following scenario:

1. The administrator creates a user account.
2. The user authenticates in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.
3. If the user has not changed their password before this feature was enabled, the application prompts the user to change the account password at the next logon to the web interface. The old password becomes invalid.

The first login of the user to the main web interface of the application is counted as the first authentication. No password change prompt is displayed if the user comes back and logs in to the web interface for sizing management or the administrator menu of the application. Neither is a password change prompt displayed if the user account is used for connecting the SCN to the PCN.

Regular password change

If regular password change is enabled, the application prompts the user to change the password after the period set by the administrator expires. The countdown starts from the moment when the account password is changed and is tracked individually for each user.

Termination of inactive sessions

If the user is not doing anything (the session is idle), we recommend terminating such a session. This reduces the risk of unauthorized access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in cases when the user is actually done working with the application, but did not end the session.

Notifications about failed authentication attempts

Frequent failed attempts to log in to the web interface or the management console may indicate that a cybercriminal is trying to gain access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform by brute-forcing the password. To prevent such unauthorized access, we recommend to enabling notifications about the failed authentication attempt limit being exceeded.

Distributed solution and multitenancy mode

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, authentication policy settings specified on the PCN are applied to the SCNs.

Enforced password change after the first successful authentication

For details on this feature, see the *Authentication policies* section.

To enable enforced password change after the first successful authentication:

1. Select the **Settings** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Authentication policies** tab.
3. In the **Change password after first authentication** section, set the **Request password change** toggle switch to **Enabled**.
4. Click **Apply**.

Enforced password change after the first authentication is enabled.

Enforced regular password change

For details on this feature, see the *Authentication policies* section.

To enable and configure enforced regular password change:

1. Select the **Settings** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Authentication policies** tab.
3. In the **Change password regularly** section, set the **Request password change** toggle switch to **Enabled**.
4. In the **Change password after** field, enter the number of days after which you want to change the password.
5. Click **Apply**.

Enforced password change after the specified period is enabled and configured.

Termination of inactive sessions

If the user is not doing anything (the session is idle), we recommend terminating such a session. This reduces the risk of unauthorized access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in cases when the user is actually done working with the application, but did not end the session.

To enable and configure the termination of inactive sessions:

1. Select the **Settings** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Authentication policies** tab.
3. In the **Terminate inactive sessions** section, specify the time after which you want the user session to be terminated if the user does not perform any actions. Enter the time in minutes in the **Terminate inactive sessions after** field.
4. If you want the **Dashboard** to be made inaccessible if the user is idle, select the **Lock Dashboard when a session is inactive** check box. If this check box is cleared, the **Dashboard** remains available for viewing by the user even if the session is inactive.
5. Click **Apply**.

Inactive user sessions will be terminated after the specified time.

Notifications about failed authentication attempts

Frequent failed attempts to log in to the web interface or the management console may indicate that a cybercriminal is trying to gain access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform by brute-forcing the password. To prevent such unauthorized access, we recommend to enabling notifications about the failed authentication attempt limit being exceeded.

To enable and configure notifications about failed authentication attempts:

1. Select the **Settings** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Authentication policies** tab.
3. In the **Count authentication attempts** section set the **Count attempts** toggle switch to **Enabled**.

4. In the **Counting period** field, enter the time period for which you want to count failed authentication attempts. The time is specified in minutes. If a user attempts to log in to the web interface or the management console and fails more than two times in a row, the following takes place:

   - A record about the user's failed authentication attempts is written to the user activity log.
   - If a rule has been created for sending notifications about too many failed authentication attempts (for information on how to create such a rule, see below), an email message is sent to the addresses specified in the notification rule. The message contains information about the failed user authentication attempts.

   In the **Counting period** field, you may specify `0`, in which case all failed authentication attempts are counted, regardless of the how much time has passed between them.

5. Click **Apply**.

   Failed authentication attempts are counted, and if the specified threshold is exceeded (two failed authentication attempts in a row), information about this is saved and becomes available for review.

To enable and configure notifications about the failed authentication attempt being exceeded:

Follow the steps to create a rule for sending notifications about the operation of application components. While creating the rule, under **Components**, select the **Authorization attempts** check box.

A message is sent to the email addresses specified in the notification rule with information about failed user authentication attempts if more than two such attempts happen in a row within the specified time interval (see the **Counting period** setting above).

Managing the cluster

You can view the table of servers in the cluster, add servers to the cluster, restart servers, decommission servers, enable or disable the cluster. If necessary, you can increase the disk space of the storage server.

Viewing the table of servers of the cluster

The table of cluster servers is displayed in the **Cluster** section of the application web interface.

The table contains the following information:

- **Server type**—server type depending on its role in the cluster.

  The following values can be displayed:

  - **Storage**.
  - **Processing**.

- **Status**—server status.

The following values can be displayed:

- **Connected**.
- **Not connected**.

- **Host name**—server name.
- **IP**—IP address of the server.
- **RAM**—RAM load level of the server.
- **CPU**—CPU load level of the server.
- **Action**—Actions that you can perform with the server.
  The following action is available: **Delete**.

Adding a server to a cluster

To add a server to the cluster, you need to start the installation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on this server and follow the steps to install the components. The added server is displayed in the cluster server list.

Increasing the disk space on the storage server

You can increase the disk space on an operational storage server by installing an additional disk.

> To increase the disk space of the storage server by means of an additional disk, you need to contact Technical Support.

The server is configured in Technical Support Mode.

Restarting servers in a cluster

Before restarting a server of any type, you need to make sure that another server of the that type remains active. We strongly recommend restarting the servers one at a time and proceeding to restarting the next server in the cluster only after you have completed all of the steps of one of the procedures described below.

Restarting a processing server of the cluster

To restart a processing server:

1. Find out which servers in the cluster have the 'manager' role in Docker Swarm. To do this, run the following command on any of the cluster servers:

   ```
   docker node ls
   ```

The command displays a list of cluster servers. The manager role is assigned to those servers that have Leader or Reachable in the MANAGER STATUS column.

2. Save the resulting list of servers in any convenient way.

   You can use these servers to track the migration status of services that the application requires between processing servers of the cluster after a restart.

3. Restart your processing server in administrator menu of the component.

4. Wait at least 5 minutes.

5. On a server with the manager role, check the status of service migration to another processing server:

   ```
   docker service ls | grep -v configurator | grep ' 0/'
   ```

   The output should be empty. This means that all services have started successfully on another processing server.

6. Repeat step 5 as needed until the output is empty.

The processing server is restarted. You can then restart the next processing server.

Restarting storage servers

To restart storage servers:

1. Restart your storage server in administrator menu of the component.

2. Wait at least 5 minutes.

3. On any server in the cluster, check the cluster health status:

   ```
   $ceph -s
   ```

   The command should output the `HEALTH_OK` status.

4. Repeat step 3 as necessary until the `HEALTH_OK` status is displayed.

The storage server is restarted. You can then restart the next storage server.

Decommissioning servers

To decommission an operational server, you need to contact Technical Support.

If a server fails, you can decommission it on your own.

To decommission an inoperable processing server:

1. Add a new processing server to the cluster.
2. Remove the server from the cluster.
3. Configure the sizing of the application for the new configuration.

   The processing server will be decommissioned.

To decommission an inoperable storage server:

1. Add a new storage server to the cluster.
2. Contact Technical Support to remove the inoperable server from the cluster.

   The storage server will be decommissioned.

Removing a server from a cluster

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

A removed server cannot be restored. Make sure that the selected server is not operational.

To remove a server from the cluster:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Cluster** section.
2. In the **Action** column, click the **Delete** link opposite the server that you want to remove.
3. Click **Proceed**.

   The removal process will start. Removal may take about a day. Information about the removed server will not be displayed in the table of servers.

After removing the server, you can reconfigure the servers in the cluster or add a server with the same role to maintain the same level of application performance.

Starting up and shutting down the cluster

To shut down or start the cluster, we recommend contacting Technical Support. Do not shut down or start the cluster if you encounter problems with application health.

If you want to power off the healthy servers in the cluster, you must first shut down the cluster to avoid data loss.

To shut down a cluster:

1. In the application web interface, go to the **Cluster** section.
2. Click the **Shut down** button.

   The main components of the application are stopped. You can now power off the cluster servers.

To start up the cluster servers:

1. Disconnect power to the servers if it has not been previously disconnected.
2. Power on the storage server.
3. Power up the remaining servers.

   The cluster servers will start up.

It takes approximately 90 minutes for all servers in the cluster to start up. The application web interface becomes available before all cluster servers are started. However, for users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, **Security auditor** roles, the application web interface does not display the application menu, and users with the **Administrator** can manage only the **Server configuration** section.

We strongly discourage managing the sizing settings of the application until all the servers in the cluster are up and running.

When all of the servers in the cluster are up and running, the application web interface menu is displayed normally.

Notifications about the maximum allowed CPU and RAM load for the Central Node and Sensor servers

Maintaining a high load on the CPU and RAM of the Central Node and Sensor servers may prevent application components from working.

You can configure the maximum CPU and RAM usage on Central Node and Sensor servers; if these limits are exceeded, in the upper part of the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface for users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, and **Administrator** roles, a yellow warning box is displayed. You can also configure notifications to be sent to one or more email addresses and an SNMP protocol connection for sending information about the CPU and RAM load to external systems that support this protocol.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, warnings are displayed separately for each server in the cluster.

Users with the **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** role can also create rules for sending notifications. In this case, sending notifications correctly requires configuring maximum allowed load values for the CPU and RAM of servers, as well as notification settings on the server.

In existing rules for sending notifications about application components, the CPU load and RAM load notifications are enabled automatically if the **All** check box is selected under **Components** when the rule is created.

Configuring the maximum allowable CPU and RAM load of the Central Node and Sensor servers

In the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you need to set the maximum allowed load values for the CPU and RAM load of each Central Node server from which you want to receive notifications. If you use a Central Node cluster, you can configure these settings on any cluster server.

To configure the maximum allowed load on the CPU and RAM of the Central Node and Sensor servers:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **General settings** subsection.
2. Under **Monitoring**:
   - In the **Warning of CPU usage above N % for M minutes** field, enter the maximum allowed CPU usage and time period for which the maximum load can be maintained.

     By default, the maximum CPU load is 95% for 5 minutes.
   - In the **Warning of RAM usage above N % for M minutes** field, enter the maximum allowed RAM usage and time period for which the maximum usage can be maintained.

     By default, the maximum RAM usage is 95% for 5 minutes.
3. Click **Apply**.

The maximum allowed load of server CPU and RAM will be configured. If one of the values is exceeded on the Central Node and/or Sensor server, in the upper part of the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface for users with **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, and **Administrator** roles, a yellow warning box is displayed.

Configuring an SNMP protocol connection

You can send information about the CPU and RAM load on Central Node and Sensor servers to external systems that support the SNMP protocol. To do so, you must configure the connection for the protocol.

If the Central Node component is deployed as a cluster, data about the CPU and RAM load of each server in the cluster is sent to external systems.

To configure the SNMP protocol connection on the Central Node server:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **General settings** subsection.
2. Under **SNMP**, select the **Use SNMP** check box.
3. In the **Protocol version** field, select a protocol version:
   - **v2c**
   - **v3**
4. If you selected the **v2c** protocol version, in the **Community string** field, enter the password that will be used for connecting to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
5. If you selected **v3**:
   a. In the **Authentication protocol** field, select one of the following options for checking the accuracy and integrity of data sent to the external system:
      - **MD5**.
      - **SHA256**
   b. In the **User name** field, enter the user name.
   c. In the **Password** field, enter the password for authentication.

      User name and password configured in the **User name** and **Password** fields must match the user name and password configured when creating the account in the external system. If the credentials do not match, the connection cannot be established.

   d. In the **Privacy protocol** field, select an encryption type:
      - **DES**.
      - **AES**.
   e. In the **Password** field, enter the encryption password.

      The password configured in this field must match the password configured in the external system.

The SNMP connection on the Central Node server is configured. If the request for data is successfully processed, the server of the external system displays information about CPU and RAM load of the Central Node server.

To configure the SNMP connection on the Sensor server:

1. Enter the management console of the Sensor server via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.
2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was set during the installation of the application.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. Follow steps 2 through 5 of the instructions above.

The SNMP connection on the Sensor server is configured. If the request is successfully processed, the server of the external system displays information about CPU and RAM load of the Sensor server.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the SNMP connection for each PCN, SCN, and Sensor server must be configured separately.

Description of MIB objects of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

The tables below provide information about MIB objects of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Information about hard drive, CPU, and RAM load of Central Node and Sensor servers

Information about hard drive, CPU, and RAM load of Central Node and Sensor servers

Symbolic name	Description	Object identifier (OID)
`dskTotal`	Total size of the disk or partition, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.9.1.6
`dskAvail`	Available space on the disk, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.9.1.7
`dskUsed`	Used space on the disk, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.9.1.8
`dskPercent`	Percentage of space used on disk, %.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.9.1.9
`laLoad`	System load average for 1, 5 and 15 minutes.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.10.1.3
`memTotalReal`	Total RAM size, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.4.5
`memAvailReal`	Total RAM used, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.4.6
`memTotalFree`	Total RAM free, KB.	1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.4.11

Configuring integration with the Sandbox component

You can connect one Sandbox component to multiple Central Node components.

The following procedure is used to configure the Sandbox component connection with the Central Node component:

1. **Creating a request to connect to the Sandbox component**

   You can create a request in the application web interface under an administrator account. If you have several Central Node components installed on the server, you need to create a request for each server with the Central Node component that you want to connect to the Sandbox component. If the Central Node component is deployed as a cluster, you can create a request for connection from any server in the cluster.

2. **Processing a connection request in the Sandbox web interface**

   You can accept or reject each request.

If you want to connect several Sandbox components to a single Central Node component, make sure that the Sandbox components you connect have the same set of operating systems used for scanning objects, and maximum number of simultaneously running virtual machines.

After configuring the connection, the Sandbox server needs 5 to 10 minutes to get ready for operation. During this time, the **System health** window of the application web interface displays a warning: *A problem occurred with the standard configuration*. When the server is ready for operation, the warning disappears.

Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

The table of servers with the Sandbox component is located in the **Sandbox servers** section, on the **Servers** tab of the application web interface window.

The **Certificate fingerprint** field displays the fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.

The **Server list** table contains the following information:

- **IP and name**—IP address or fully qualified domain name of the server with the Sandbox component.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Certificate fingerprint of the server with the Sandbox component.
- **Authorization**—Status of the request to connect to the Sandbox component.
- **Status**—Status of the connection to the Sandbox component.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

Creating a request to connect to the server with the Sandbox component

To create a request to connect to the server with the Sandbox component through the application web interface:

1. Select the **Sandbox servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. In the upper-right corner of the window, click the **Add** button.

   This opens the **Sandbox server connection** window.
3. In the **IP** field, specify the IP address of the server with the Sandbox component to which you want to connect.
4. Click **Get certificate fingerprint**.

   The workspace displays the fingerprint of the certificate of the server with the Sandbox component.
5. Compare the obtained certificate fingerprint with the fingerprint indicated in the Sandbox web interface in the **KATA authorization** section in the **Certificate fingerprint** field.

   If the certificate fingerprints match, perform the next steps of the instructions.

   > If certificate fingerprints do not match, confirming the connection is not recommended. Make sure the IP address in the the **IP** field is correct.
6. In the **Name** field, specify the Sandbox component name that will be displayed in the web interface of the Central Node component.

   This name is not related to the name of the host where the Sandbox is installed and may be arbitrary.
7. If you want to activate a connection with Sandbox immediately after connecting, select the **Enable** check box.
8. Click **Add**.

The connection request is displayed in the web interface of the Sandbox component, where you can accept, reject, or revoke it.

Enabling and disabling a connection with the Sandbox component

To make a connection with the Sandbox component active or to disable it:

1. Select the **Sandbox servers** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The table of servers with Sandbox components is displayed.

2. In the row containing the relevant server in the **Status** column, perform one of the following actions:
   - If you want to activate a connection with the Sandbox component, set the toggle switch to **Enabled**.
   - If you want to disable a connection with the Sandbox component, set the toggle switch to **Disabled**.
3. Click **Apply**.

The connection with the Sandbox component will become active or will be disabled.

Deleting a connection with the Sandbox component

To delete a connection with the Sandbox component:

1. Select the **Sandbox servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
   This displays the table of computers on which the Sandbox component is installed.
2. Select the check box in the line containing the Sandbox component whose connection you want to delete.
3. In the upper-right corner of the window, click the **Delete** button.
4. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

The connection with the Sandbox component will be deleted.

Receiving files from computers with the Endpoint Agent component for scanning in Sandbox

You can configure the reception of files from computers with the Endpoint Agent component to be scanned by the Sandbox component. If the function of receiving files is enabled, the user of a computer with the Endpoint Agent component can send any file that they consider potentially unsafe to be scanned in Sandbox. You can also configure files to be received automatically. In this case, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives files for scanning that the application acting as the Endpoint Agent component automatically sends for scanning.

This function is available if the Endpoint Agent component is represented by Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.11 for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security 12.5.0 for Linux.

Receiving files for scanning involves the following steps:

1. Configuring integration with the Endpoint Agent component for scanning files in Sandbox.
2. Configuring the integration of Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows or Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux with the Sandbox component (KATA Sandbox).
3. Enabling the reception of files for scanning in Sandbox in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
4. Sending files to be scanned by the Sandbox component in Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows and Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

The maximum size of a file that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform accepts for scanning is 200 MB.

Based on the results of the scan, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform may record an alert in the alert database. Details of these alerts are displayed in the **Alerts by attack vector** widget.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you must enable the reception of files to be scanned by the Sandbox component on each Central Node server on which you want to use this function. If the Central Node component is deployed as a cluster, you can enable the functionality on any server in the cluster.

You can view information about connected computers with the Endpoint Agent component, configure the activity indicators of these computers, and remove them from the table of computers with the Endpoint Agent component.

Enabling and disabling the reception of files from the Endpoint Agent for scanning in Sandbox

To enable the reception of files from workstations with the Endpoint Agent component for scanning in Sandbox:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Endpoint Agents** subsection.
2. Under **Receiving files for scanning in Sandbox** section:
   a. Enable the file reception function by setting the **Receive files** toggle switch to **Enabled**.

      Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will accept files manually sent from workstations for scanning in Sandbox.

   b. If you want to enable the reception of files sent from workstations automatically, set the **Receive files sent automatically** toggle switch to **Enabled**.

      Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will accept files automatically sent from workstations for scanning in Sandbox.
3. Click **Apply**.

Reception of files from Endpoint Agent workstations for scanning by the Sandbox component is enabled.

To disable the reception of files from workstations with the Endpoint Agent component for scanning in Sandbox:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Endpoint Agents** subsection.
2. Under **Receiving files for scanning in Sandbox** section:
3. If you want to disable only the reception of files sent from workstations automatically, set the **Receive files sent automatically** toggle switch to **Disabled**.

   Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will not accept files automatically sent from workstations for scanning in Sandbox.
4. If you want to fully disable the reception of files, set the **Receive files** toggle switch to **Disabled**.

   Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will not accept files sent from workstations for scanning in Sandbox.

Configuring integration with the Endpoint Agent component for scanning files in Sandbox

This section describes how to configure the integration with applications acting as the Endpoint Agent component to exchange files with these applications to have these files scanned in Sandbox.

Configuring a trusted connection with Kaspersky Endpoint Security

To configure a trusted connection, you must perform actions both on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side and on the Kaspersky Endpoint Security side.

You can use one of the following options to configure a trusted connection:

- **Configuring the connection with the Central Node server without validating the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Security in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform**.

  Kaspersky Endpoint Security establishes a trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the TLS certificate of the Central Node server. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not validate the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Security when Kaspersky Endpoint Security tries to connect.

  If you are using this alternative configuration for the trusted connection, the procedure is as follows:

  1. Generate or upload an independently prepared TLS certificate of the Central Node server in the web interface of Central Node (if the TLS certificate of the Central Node has not been previously created).
  2. Downloading the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.
  3. Connecting a computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Security to the Central Node server:
     - Connecting Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows.
     - Connecting Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.
     - Connecting Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Mac.

- **Configuring the connection with the Central Node server with validation of the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Security on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform side**.

  Kaspersky Endpoint Security establishes a trusted connection with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the TLS certificate of the Central Node server. Additional security of the connection is configured in Kaspersky Endpoint Security and the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Security is uploaded. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform validates the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Security when Kaspersky Endpoint Security tries to connect.

  If you are using this alternative configuration for the trusted connection, the procedure is as follows:

  1. Generate or upload an independently prepared TLS certificate of the Central Node server in the web interface of Central Node (if the TLS certificate of the Central Node has not been previously created).
  2. Downloading the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.

3. Enabling the validation of the Kaspersky Endpoint Security TLS certificate in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

4. Generating and downloading the crypto container with the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Security or uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Security using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

   If you want to prepare the TLS certificate of Kaspersky Endpoint Security on your own, you must create a PFX crypto container with your certificate. For details on managing TLS certificates, see the OpenSSL documentation.

5. Connecting a computer with Kaspersky Endpoint Security to the Central Node server:

   - Connecting Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows.
   - Connecting Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.
   - Connecting Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Mac.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

Downloading the TLS certificate of the Central Node server

To download the TLS certificate of the server:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
2. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Export**.

The server certificate file will be saved in the downloads folder of the browser.

Generating a TLS certificate for the Central Node server in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

If you are already using a Central Node server TLS certificate, generating a new certificate causes the currently used certificate to be removed and replaced with the newly generated certificate.

You must enter the data of the new certificate everywhere the old certificate was used.

If you replace the TLS certificate, you will need to:

- Reauthorize mail sensors (KSMG, KLMS) on Central Node.
- Reconfigure the connection of Central Node, PCN, and SCN to Sandbox.

- Reconfigure traffic forwarding from Endpoint Agent to Sensor and trusted connection with Endpoint Agent.
- Upload a new certificate to Active Directory (if you are using Active Directory).

Make sure to delete all Endpoint Agent host isolation rules. Connection with isolated hosts will be lost and you will not be able to manage them.

To generate a TLS certificate for a Central Node server:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Generate**.
   This opens the action confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform generates a new TLS certificate. The page is automatically refreshed.

Uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate for the Central Node server using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can choose to prepare the TLS certificate on your own and upload it using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

The TLS certificate file prepared for upload must satisfy the following requirements:

- The file must contain the certificate itself and a private encryption key for the connection.
- The file must be in PEM format.

  The application does not support other formats of certificates.

  If you have prepared a certificate in a different format, you must convert it to the PEM format.
- The private key length must be 2048 bits or longer.

For more details on preparing TLS certificates for import, please refer to the OpenSSL documentation.

If you are already using a Central Node server TLS certificate, uploading a new certificate causes the currently used certificate to be removed and replaced with the uploaded certificate.

You must enter the data of the new certificate everywhere the old certificate was used.

If you replace the TLS certificate, you will need to:

- Reauthorize mail sensors (KSMG, KLMS) on Central Node.
- Reconfigure the connection of Central Node, PCN, and SCN to Sandbox.
- Reconfigure traffic forwarding from Endpoint Agent to Sensor and trusted connection with Endpoint Agent.

Delete all Endpoint Agent host isolation rules. The connection with isolated hosts is severed and you cannot manage them.

To upload an independently prepared TLS certificate using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Server certificate** section, click **Upload**.

   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select a TLS certificate file to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.

   The TLS certificate is added to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

   Reconfigure traffic forwarding from Endpoint Agent to Sensor and trusted connection with Endpoint Agent

Make sure to delete all Endpoint Agent host isolation rules. Connection with isolated hosts will be lost and you will not be able to manage them

Enabling the validation of the TLS certificate of the Endpoint Agent component in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

To turn on trusted connection with the application that is used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Endpoint Agent certificates** section, turn on the **Validate Endpoint Agent TLS certificates** switch.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will check TLS certificate data when the application that is used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component attempts to connect to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Generating a TLS certificate of the Endpoint Agent component in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and downloading a crypto container

To generate and download a TLS certificate for the connection of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with the application that is being used in the Endpoint Agent component role:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Endpoint Agent certificates** section, click **Generate and export**.

   This opens the **Export certificate** window.
4. In the **Protect the file with a password** section, enter the password in the **Password** and **Confirm password** fields. We recommend safekeeping this password for future use because the application does not save this password.

   > The crypto container must be password-protected. It is not possible to add a crypto container with an empty password to Kaspersky Endpoint Security.
5. Click **Export**.

The new TLS certificate is displayed in the TLS certificate table. The crypto container file with the certificate of the application that acts as the Endpoint Agent in the PFX format is downloaded to your browser's downloads folder on your local computer.

For details on managing TLS certificates, see the OpenSSL documentation.

> The crypto container contains only the certificate file, but not the private key file. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not store private keys for the TLS encryption of the connection.

Uploading an independently prepared TLS certificate of the Endpoint Agent component using the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can choose to prepare the TLS certificate on your own and upload it using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

The TLS certificate file prepared for upload must satisfy the following requirements:

- The file must contain the certificate itself and a private encryption key for the connection.
- The file must be in PEM format.
- The private key length must be 2048 bits or longer.

For more details on preparing TLS certificates for import, please refer to the documentation on Open SSL.

If you want to prepare the TLS certificate of Endpoint Agent component on your own, you must create a PFX crypto container with your certificate and upload the crypto container to the application that acts as the Endpoint Agent component.

For details on managing TLS certificates, see the OpenSSL documentation.

> The crypto container must contain only the certificate file, but not the private key file. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not store private keys for the TLS encryption of the connection.

To upload an independently prepared TLS certificate using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. In the **Endpoint Agent certificates** section, click **Import**.

   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select a TLS certificate file to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.

The TLS certificate is added to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Viewing the table of TLS certificates of the Endpoint Agent component in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

To view the list of TLS certificates for connection with applications that are used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.

3. The **Endpoint Agent certificates** section displays a list of TLS certificate with the following details for each certificate:

   - **TLS certificate** – Fingerprint of the certificate.
   - **Serial number** – Serial number of the certificate.
   - **Expires** —Expiration date of the certificate.

Filtering and searching TLS certificates of the Endpoint Agent component in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can filter TLS certificate displayed in the table by one or both columns (**TLS certificate** and **Serial number**) or enter search criteria to search TLS certificates by these columns.

To filter and search TLS certificates in the table:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Certificates** subsection.
3. The **Endpoint Agent certificates** section displays a list of TLS certificate with the following details for each certificate:

   - **TLS certificate** – Fingerprint of the certificate.
   - **Serial number** – Serial number of the certificate.
   - **Expires** – Expiration date of the certificate.

4. If you want to filter or search TLS certificates by certificate fingerprint:

   a. Click the **TLS certificate** link to open the filter configuration window.

   b. In the **TLS certificate** text box, enter a few characters of the certificate fingerprint.

   c. Click **Apply**.

5. If you want to filter or search TLS certificates by serial number:

   a. Click the **Serial number** link to open the filter configuration window.

   b. In the **Serial number** text box, enter a few characters of the serial number.

   c. Click **Apply**.

The table displays only those TLS certificates that match the filter criteria you have set.

To clear the filter for one or more filtering criteria:

Click to the right of the header of the table column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

Deleting TLS certificates of the Endpoint Agent component in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

To delete one or more TLS certificates for connection with applications that are used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface:

1. Sign in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the administrator credentials.
2. In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface window, select the **Settings** section, **Endpoint Agent certificates** subsection.

   The **Endpoint Agent certificates** section displays a list of TLS certificates.
3. Select check boxes next to one or more TLS certificates that you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
5. Click **Yes**.

The selected TLS certificates are deleted.

Configuring traffic redirection from the Endpoint Agent component to the Sensor server

You can use the Sensor server as a proxy server for communication between the Endpoint Agent component and the Central Node to reduce the load on the Central Node. To do this, when connecting the application that acts as the Endpoint Agent component, on the side of that application, you need to specify the IP address of the Sensor server instead of the IP address of the Central Node server. Sensor must be installed on a different server than the Central Node.

When configuring the traffic redirection, keep in mind the following limitations:

- The maximum incoming traffic volume for the Sensor may not exceed 1 Gbps.
- The recommended channel bandwidth between Central Node and Sensor servers must be 15% of the SPAN port traffic.
- The maximum allowed packet loss between Sensor servers and the Central Node is 10% with a packet delay of up to 100 ms.

To use the Sensor as a proxy server, connect the Sensor to the Central Node.

Viewing information about computers with the Endpoint Agent component for scanning files in Sandbox

You can view the table of computers with the Endpoint Agent component connected for scanning files in the Sandbox and detailed information about these computers.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the web interface of the PCN server displays the list of computers with the Endpoint Agent component for the PCN and all connected SCNs.

Selecting a tenant to manage in the Endpoint Agents section

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, prior to using the **Assets** → **Endpoint Agents** section, you must select the tenant whose data you want to view.

*To select a tenant to manage in the **Assets** → **Endpoint Agents** section:*

1. In the upper part of the application web interface menu, click the arrow next to the name of the tenant.
2. In the drop-down list, select a tenant.

   Data for the selected tenant is displayed. If you want to select a different tenant, repeat the steps to select the tenant.

Viewing the table of computers with the Endpoint Agent component on a standalone Central Node server

The table of computers with the Endpoint Agent component is located in the **Assets** → **Endpoint Agents** section of the application web interface window.

The table can display the following data:

- Number of hosts and activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component:
  - **Critical inactivity** is the number of hosts from which latest data was received a very long time ago.
  - **Warning** is the number hosts from which latest data was received a long time ago.
  - **Normal activity** is the number of hosts from which latest data was recently received.
- **Host**—Name of the computer with the Endpoint Agent component.
- **Servers**—Names of servers to which the computer with the Endpoint Agent component is connected.

  This field is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **IP** is the IP address of the computer where the Endpoint Agent component is installed.
- **OS**—Version of the operating system that is installed on the computer with the Endpoint Agent component.

- **License** is the status of the license key of the application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component.
- **Version** is the version of the application that is used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component.
- **Activity**—Activity indicator of the Endpoint Agent component. Possible values:
  - **Normal activity** for computers from which latest data was recently received.
  - **Warning** for computers from which latest data was received a long time ago.
  - **Critical inactivity** for computers from which latest data was received an extremely long time ago.
- **Last connection** for the date and time of the last connection of the Endpoint Agent component to the Central Node server.

Clicking a link in a column of the table opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Add to filter**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Viewing information about a computer

To view information about a host with the Endpoint Agent component:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Endpoint Agents** tab.
3. Select the host for which you want to view information.

   This opens a window containing information about the host.

The window contains the following information:

- In the **Host** section:
  - **Name** is the name of the host with the Endpoint Agent component.
  - **IP** is the IP address of the host where the Endpoint Agent component is installed.
  - **OS** is the version of the operating system on the host with the Endpoint Agent component installed.
  - **Server**—Name of the SCN or PCN server. Only displayed in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

- In the **Endpoint Agent** section:
  - **Version** is the version of the application that is used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component.
  - **Activity** is the activity indicator of the Endpoint Agent component. Possible values:
    - **Normal activity** for hosts from which latest data was recently received.
    - **Warning** for hosts from which latest data was received a long time ago.
    - **Critical inactivity** for hosts from which latest data was received an extremely long time ago.
  - **Connected to server**—Name of the Central Node, SCN, or PCN server to which the host is connected.
  - **Last connection**—time of the last connection to the Central Node, SCN, or PCN server.
  - **License key status** is the status of the license key of the application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component.

The following action is available by clicking the links with the host name and its IP address: **Copy value to clipboard**.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by host name

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by host name:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Endpoint Agents** tab.
   This opens the table of hosts.
3. Click the **Host** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. If you want to display only isolated hosts, select the **Show isolated Endpoint Agents only** check box.
5. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:
   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**
6. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the host name.
7. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
8. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.
9. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that have been isolated from the network

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component that are isolated from the network:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Endpoint Agents** tab.

   This opens the table of hosts.
3. Click the **Host** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Select the **Show isolated Endpoint Agents only** check box.
5. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by PCN and SCN server names

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can filter or find hosts with the Kaspersky Endpoint Agent component based on the names of PCN and SCN servers to which those hosts are connected.

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by the names of PCN and SCN servers:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Endpoint Agents** tab.

   This opens the table of hosts.
3. Click the **Servers** link to open the filter configuration window.

4. Select check boxes next to names of servers by which you want to filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.

5. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by computer IP address

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by IP address of the computer on which the application is installed:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.

2. Go to the **Endpoint Agents** tab.

   This opens the table of hosts.

3. Click the **IP** link to open the filter configuration window.

4. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**

5. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the computer IP address. You can enter the IP address or subnet mask in IPv4 format (for example, `192.0.0.1` or `192.0.0.0/16`).

6. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

7. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.

8. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by operating system version on the computer

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by version of the operating system installed on the computer:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Endpoint Agents** tab.
   This opens the table of hosts.
3. Click the **OS** link to open the filter settings window.
4. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:
   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**
5. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the operating system version.
6. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
7. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.
8. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by component version

You can filter hosts by version of the application that is used in the role of the Endpoint Agent component.

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by component version:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Endpoint Agents** tab.
   This opens the table of hosts.
3. Click the **Version** link to open the filter settings window.

4. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**

5. In the entry field, specify one or more characters of the version of the application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component.

6. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

7. If you want to delete the filter condition, click the button to the right of the field.

8. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by their activity

To filter or search for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component by their activity:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.

2. Go to the **Endpoint Agents** tab.

   This opens the table of hosts.

3. Click the **Activity** link to open the filter configuration window.

   Select check boxes next to one or multiple activity indicators:

   - **Normal activity**, if you want to find hosts from which the last data was recently received.
   - **Warning**, if you want to find hosts from which the last data was received a long time ago.
   - **Critical inactivity**, if you want to find hosts from which the last data was received an extremely long time ago.

4. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Quickly creating a filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

To quickly create a filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Endpoint Agents** tab.

   This opens the table of hosts.
3. Do the following to quickly add filter conditions to the filter being created:

   a. Position the mouse cursor on the link containing the table column value that you want to add as a filter condition.

   b. Left-click it.

   This opens a list of actions to perform on the value.

   c. In the list that opens, select one of the following actions:

   - **Add to filter**, if you want to include this value in the filter condition.
   - **Exclude from filter**, if you want to exclude the value from the filter condition.
4. If you want to add several filter conditions to the filter being created, perform the actions to quickly add each filter condition to the filter being created.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

Resetting the filter for hosts with the Endpoint Agent component

To clear the Endpoint Agent host filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Endpoint Agents** tab.
3. Click to the right of the header of the table column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table displays only those hosts that match the filter criteria you have set.

Configuring activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component

You can define what durations of inactivity of the application that is used as the Endpoint Agent component are to be considered normal, low, or very low activity, and can configure the activity indicators for the application. Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the settings of component activity indicators.

To configure activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Endpoint Agents** subsection.
2. In the fields under the section name, enter the number of days of inactivity of computers with the Endpoint Agent component that you want to display as **Warning** and **Critical inactivity**.

   The default values are 1 and 7.
3. Click **Apply**.

Activity indicators of the Endpoint Agent component are configured.

Removing computers with the Endpoint Agent component

You can remove computers with the Endpoint Agent component from the **Endpoint Agents** table manually or automatically.

Manually removing computers with the Endpoint Agent component

To manually remove one or more computers from the **Endpoint Agents** table:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Endpoint Agents** tab.
3. Select check boxes next to one or more computers that you want to remove. You can select all computers by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
4. Click **Delete**.
5. This opens the action confirmation window; in that window, click **Yes**.

The selected computers are removed from the **Endpoint Agents** table.

Automatic removal of inactive computers with the Endpoint Agent component

You can enable or disable the automatic removal of inactive computers from the **Endpoint Agents** table. Inactive computers are computers that have not connected to the Central Node server for the configured time.

*To enable or disable the automatic removal of computers from the **Endpoint Agents** table:*

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Endpoint Agents** subsection.
2. Under **Remove inactive hosts automatically**, do the following:
   - If you want to enable this functionality, move the **Remove hosts** toggle switch to **Enabled**.
   - If you want to enable this functionality, move the **Remove hosts** toggle switch to **Disabled**.
3. If you have enabled this functionality, in the **Delete after** field, specify the number of days after which computers that have not connected to the Central Node component must be considered inactive.

   The minimum value is 1 and the maximum value is 365.

Automatic removal of inactive computers is enabled or disabled.

If the value specified in the **Delete after** field is less than the values specified in the **Warning** and/or **Critical inactivity** fields under **Activity indicators**, hosts are removed earlier than an inactivity warning is displayed in the **Dashboard** section.

Configuring integration with external systems

You can configure integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with external systems to scan files stored in those systems. Their scan results are displayed in the alert table. A mail sensor can also act as the external system.

If you use the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you need to configure the integration of the external system with the PCN or SCN server on which you want to scan data from this system.

Integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with external systems involves the following procedure:

1. **Enter the integration settings and create an integration request from the external system.**

   For more details about entering integration settings for the mail sensor, please refer to the Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway Help or the Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server Help.

   To integrate other external systems, use the REST API.

2. **Confirm integration for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform**

   External systems must use unique certificates for authorization on the server with the Central Node component. If this is the case, a single integration request will be displayed in the interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. To connect multiple external systems that have the same IP address, you must use a unique certificate for each external system.

   When using one certificate, you can configure integration with only one external system.

3. **Check the connection between the external system and Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform**

Viewing the table of external systems

The table of external systems is in the **External systems** section of the application web interface window. The table contains the following information:

- **Sensor**—IP address or domain name of the external system server.
- **Type**—Type of external system (mail sensor or other system).
- **Name**—Name of the integrated external system that is not a mail sensor.

  A dash is displayed in this column for a mail sensor.
- **ID**—ID of the external system.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the server with the external system used to establish an encrypted connection with the server hosting the Central Node component.

  > The certificate fingerprint of the server with the Central Node component is displayed in the upper part of the window in the **Certificate fingerprint** field.
- **State**—State of the integration request.

In the distributed solution and multi-tenancy mode, the table displays information only about the external systems connected to the Central Node server whose web interface you are managing.

Processing a request from an external system

> If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To process an integration request from an external system:

1. Select the **External systems** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** table displays the already connected external systems, and requests for integration with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from external systems.
2. In the line containing the integration request, perform one of the following actions:
   - If you want to configure integration with the external system, click the **Accept** button.
   - If you do not want to configure integration with the external system, click the **Reject** button.
3. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

The integration request from the external system will be processed.

Removing an external system from the list of those allowed to integrate

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

After you have accepted an integration request from an external system, you can remove it from the list of those allowed to integrate. If this is the case, the connection between Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and the external system will be terminated.

To remove an external system from the list of systems allowed to integrate:

1. Select the **External systems** section in the window of the application web interface.

   The **Server list** displays the already added external systems and the requests to integrate with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from external systems.

2. Click the **Delete** button in the line containing the integration request from the external system that you want to remove.

3. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

The external system will be removed from the list of those allowed to integrate.

Configuring the priority for processing traffic from mail sensors

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

You can enable or disable the maximum priority for processing traffic from mail sensors.

To enable or disable the maximum priority for processing traffic from mail sensors:

1. Select the **External systems** section in the window of the application web interface.

2. Do one of the following:

   - Turn on the toggle switch next to the name of the **Maximum scan priority** parameter if you want to enable the maximum priority for processing traffic from mail sensors.

   - Turn off the toggle switch next to the name of the **Maximum scan priority** parameter if you want to disable the maximum priority for processing traffic from mail sensors.

The priority for processing traffic from mail sensors will be configured.

Configuring integration with Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response

Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response (hereinafter also "MDR") detects and prevents fraud in the client's infrastructure. MDR provides continuous managed protection and allows organizations to automatically discover hard-to-detect threats while freeing up IT security personnel to work on issues requiring their participation.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends detection statistics to MDR using a Kaspersky Security Network stream. Therefore, participation in KSN is necessary for configuring integration with MDR.

Integration with MDR is available only with a current KATA license. Statistics are sent as part of the functionality covered by this license.

Enabling the MDR integration

Make sure that an active license key is added and participation in KSN is configured in the application. Otherwise the MDR integration is unavailable.

Recommended way of enabling the integration

Before enabling integration with MDR, make sure that the following external resources are accessible over the network:

- For the Primary Central Node server:
  - https://uis.kaspersky.com (port 443, HTTPS)
  - https://mdr.kaspersky.com (port 443, HTTPS)
- For the Secondary Central Node server:
  - https://mdr.kaspersky.com (port 443, HTTPS).

To enable integration with MDR:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. Under **MDR integration**, click **UIS service**.
4. In the opened window, enter the Kaspersky Account credentials of a user with the **MDR Administrator role** in the MDR Console.

5. Click **Log in**.

   After successful verification of credentials, the following information is displayed:

   - **Status**.
   - **Source of settings**.
   - **Serial number**.
   - **Expiration date**.
   - **Days remaining**.

   Integration with MDR is enabled.

When you enable MDR integration, special MDR configuration files are installed for access to KSN. If a configuration file for access to Kaspersky Private Security Network has been installed before, it is replaced with the MDR configuration file. Integration settings configured in the configuration file are applied to all connected Sensor components. MDR starts using alert statistics sent via the KSN stream.

Deprecated way of enabling the integration

We do not recommend using this method of configuring MDR integration because it does not allow sending additional data from alerts on request from Kaspersky SOC as part of the Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response solution and requires uploading and manually updating the configuration file every year.

To enable integration with MDR:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. Under **MDR integration**, click **Upload** to upload the configuration file.

   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select the archive you downloaded during registration at the MDR portal and click **Open**.

   The following information about the MDR license is displayed in the window:

   - **Serial number**.
   - **Expiration date**.
   - **Days remaining**.

   Integration with MDR is enabled.

Integration settings configured in the configuration file are applied to all connected Sensor components. MDR starts using alert statistics sent via the KSN stream.

Sending additional data for analysis to MDR

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can automatically send additional information from alerts at the request of the Kaspersky SOC as part of the Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response solution:

> With the deprecated MDR integration method, the option to automatically send additional information is not available.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends additional data to MDR after getting an approval to send this data from a user with the **Administrator** or **Senior security officer** role in the MDR Console:

- PCAP and Payload files associated with the IDS alert.
- Report on the result of scanning files in the Sandbox. Includes screenshots of object execution, activity log, and other scan data.
- Archive with the infected file that caused the alert when scanned.
- JSON file with alert data.

MDR SOC analysts use the copied files to investigate Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack alerts.

For details, see the Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response Help.

Disabling the MDR integration

To disable integration with MDR:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.
3. Under **MDR integration**, click **Log out**.
4. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

   MDR integration is disabled, and the MDR configuration files for access to KSN are deleted. Statistics is still sent to KSN servers, but this information is not used by MDR.

To disable MDR integration configured using the deprecated method:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.

3. Under **MDR integration**, click **Delete file**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

The configuration file is deleted and the MDR integration is disabled. Statistics is still sent to KSN servers, but this information is not used by MDR.

Replacing the MDR configuration file

If you have enabled integration with the Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response solution using the recommended method, you do not need to manually replace the configuration file.

To replace the MDR configuration file:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.

2. Select the **Settings** section, **KSN/KPSN and MDR** subsection.

3. Under **MDR integration**, click **Replace file**.

   This opens the file selection window.

4. Select a new archive containing a configuration file and click **Open**.

   MDR license information is updated in the application web interface.

The configuration file is replaced. New integration settings are applied to all connected Sensor components.

Configuring integration with an SIEM system

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can publish information about user actions in the application web interface as well as alerts to your organization's *SIEM system* using the Syslog protocol.

You can use TLS encryption for data transmission.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, you can configure high availability integration with an external system using one of the following options:

- Using the Round Robin function.
- Configure the settings of the external system so that the external system switches between the IP addresses of the cluster servers if a network error occurs.

To configure high availability integration with an external system using the Round Robin function:

1. Configure Round Robin on the DNS server for the domain name corresponding to the Central Node cluster.

2. Specify this domain name in the mail server settings.

   Integration with the external system is configured based on the domain name. The external system will communicate with a random server in the cluster. If this server fails, the external system will communicate with another healthy server in the cluster.

Watch a video tutorial on how to configure integration with a SIEM system. You can play the video on the Help page (see below) or follow the link https://youtu.be/xONoDN924Lk?si=AZ7pk7j8VE9xBVXf.

Configuring Central Node to export KATA and KEDR Expert events to KUMA

Enabling and disabling information logging to a remote log

You can configure the logging of information about user actions in the web interface and alerts to a remote log. The log file is stored on the server on which the SIEM system is installed. To write to the remote log, you must configure the integration with the SIEM system.

To enable or disable the logging of information about user actions in the web interface and alerts to the remote log:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **SIEM system** subsection.

2. If you want to enable / disable the recording of information about user actions in the web interface to the remote log, do one of the following:

   - If you want to enable recording of information about user actions in the web interface, select the **User activity** check box.

   - If you want to disable the recording of information about user actions in the web interface, clear the **User activity** check box.

3. If you want to enable / disable the recording of information about alerts to the remote log, do one of the following:

   - If you want to enable recording of alert information, select the **Detections** check box.
   - If you want to disable recording of alert information, clear the **Detections** check box.

   You can select both check boxes simultaneously.

4. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

Information logging in the remote log is enabled or disabled.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can only view information about remote logging settings.

Configuring the main settings for SIEM system integration

To configure the main settings for SIEM system integration:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **SIEM system** subsection.
2. Select the **User activity** and/or **Detections** check boxes.

   You can select one check box or both check boxes.

3. In the **Host/IP** field, enter the IP address or host name of the server of your SIEM system.
4. In the **Port** field, enter the port number used for connecting to your SIEM system.
5. In the **Protocol** field, select **TCP** or **UDP**.
6. In the **Host ID** field, enter the host ID. The host with that ID is specified as the alert source in the log of the SIEM system.
7. In the **Heartbeat** field, enter the interval for sending messages to the SIEM system.
8. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

The main settings of integration with the SIEM system will be configured.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can only view information about the SIEM system integration settings.

Uploading a TLS certificate

To upload a TLS certificate for encrypting the connection with the SIEM system:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **SIEM system** subsection.
2. In the **TLS encryption** section, click the **Upload** button.

   This opens the file selection window.
3. Select a TLS certificate file to download and click the **Open** button.

   This closes the file selection window.

   The TLS certificate is added to the application.
4. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

The uploaded TLS certificate will be used to encrypt the connection with the SIEM system.

Enabling and disabling TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system

To enable or disable TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **SIEM system** subsection.
2. Select the **User activity** and/or **Alerts** check boxes.

   You can select one check box or both check boxes.
3. In the **TLS encryption** section, perform one of the following actions:

   - Turn on the toggle switch next to the name of the **TLS encryption** parameter if you want to enable TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system.
   - Turn off the toggle switch next to the name of the **TLS encryption** parameter if you want to disable TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system.

   The toggle switch next to the name of the **TLS encryption** setting can be used only if a TLS certificate is loaded.
4. Click **Apply** in the lower part of the window.

TLS encryption of the connection with the SIEM system will be enabled or disabled.

Content and properties of syslog messages about alerts

Information about each alert is transmitted in a separate syslog category (syslog facility) that is not used by the system to deliver messages from other sources. Information about each alert is transmitted as a separate syslog message in CEF format.

The default maximum size of a syslog message about an alert is 32 KB. Messages that exceed the maximum size are truncated at the end.

The header of each syslog message about an alert contains the following information:

- Format version.

  Current version number: `0`. Current field value: `CEF:0`.

- Vendor.

  Current field value: `AO Kaspersky Lab`.

- Application name.

  Current field value: `Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform`.

- Application version

  Current field value: 8.0.1.1.

- Detection type.

  See the table below.

- Event name.

  See the table below.

- Detection importance.

  Allowed field values: `Low`, `Medium`, `High` or `0` (for `heartbeat` messages).

- Additional information.

  Example:

  ```
  CEF:0|AO Kaspersky Lab| Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform |8.0.1.1|url_web| URL from web detected|Low|
  ```

The body of a syslog message about a detection matches the information about the detection that is displayed in the application web interface. All fields are presented in the `"<key>=<value>"` format. Depending on whether the detection occurred in network traffic or mail traffic, and depending on the technology that generated the detection, various keys may be transmitted in the body of a syslog message. If the value is empty, the key is not transmitted.

The keys, as well as their values contained in a message, are presented in the table below.

Detection type	Detection name and description	Key and description of its value
file_web	File from web detected A file was detected in network traffic.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <detection ID>. • rt = <date and time of detection, UTC>. • dst = <destination IP address>. • dpt = <destination port>. • src = <source IP address>. • spt = <source port>. • shost = <name of the host on which the file was detected>. • suser = <user name>. • fName = <name of the file within the compound object>. • fsize = <size of the file within the compound object (in bytes)>. • fileType = <format of the file within the compound object>. • fileHash = <MD5 hash of the file within the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFilePath = <name of the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFileSize = <total size of the compound object (in bytes)>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFileHash = <MD5 hash of the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAfileSHA256 = <SHA256 hash of the compound object>. • cs2 = <technology that was used to detect the file>. • cs3Label = <name of the virtual machine on which the file was detected> (only for the Sandbox component). • cs1 = <list of types of the detected objects according to the Kaspersky Lab classification>. • cs3 = <version of databases used to scan the file>. • app = <name of the application layer protocol> (HTTP(S) or FTP). • requestMethod = <HTTP request method> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol). • requestClientApplication = <User Agent of the client computer> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol). • request = <URL of the detected object> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol). • requestContext = <HTTP Referer header> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol).
file_mail	File from mail detected A file was detected in mail traffic.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <detection ID>. • rt = <date and time of alert, UTC>. • fName = <name of the file within the compound object>. • fsize = <size of the file within the compound object (in bytes)>. • fileType = <format of the file within the compound object>. • fileHash = <MD5 hash of the file within the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFilePath = <name of the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFileSize = <total size of the compound object (in bytes)>. • KasperskyLabKATAcompositeFileHash = <MD5 hash of the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAfileSHA256 = <SHA256 hash of the compound object>. • KasperskyLabKATAmailEnvelopeFrom = <sender email address> (from the Received header). • KasperskyLabKATAmailFor = <recipient email address> (from the Received header). • KasperskyLabKATAmailRecievedFromIp = <IP address of the first server in the message delivery chain> (from the Received header). • cs2 = <technology that was used to detect the file>. • cs3Label = <name of the virtual machine on which the file was detected> (only for the Sandbox component). • cs1 = <list of types of the detected objects according to the Kaspersky Lab classification>. • cs3 = <version of databases used to scan the file>. • externalId = <Email message ID>. • suser = <email address of sender>. • duser = <email addresses of recipients>. • msg = <message subject>.
ids	IDS event detected A detection was generated by the Intrusion Detection System module.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <detection ID>. • requestMethod = <HTTP request method> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol). • requestClientApplication = <User Agent of the client computer> (only for the HTTP(S) protocol). • rt = <date and time of alert, UTC>. • dst = <destination IP address>. • dpt = <destination port>. • src = <source IP address>. • spt = <source port>. • proto = <name of the transport layer protocol> (TCP or UDP). • cs1 = <type of the detected object according to the Kaspersky Lab classification>.

Detection type	Detection name and description	Key and description of its value
		• cs2Label = <name of the IDS rule>. • cs2 = <number of the IDS rule>. • cs3 = <Intrusion Detection System module database version>. • requestMethod = <HTTP request method> (only for the HTTP protocol). • requestClientApplication = <User Agent of the client computer> (only for the HTTP protocol). • request = <URL of the detected object>.
ids	Intrusion Detection System A detection was generated by the NDR Intrusion Detection System module.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • deviceExternalId=kaspersky_ndr eventId= • proto = <name of the transport layer protocol> (TCP or UDP). • cs1 = <type of the detected object according to the Kaspersky Lab classification>. • src = <source IP address>. • spt = <source port>. • dst = <destination IP address>. • dpt = <destination port>.
url_web	URL from web detected An alert was generated by URL Reputation technology or Sandbox in network traffic.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <detection ID>. • rt = <date and time of detection, UTC>. • dst = <destination IP address>. • dpt = <destination port>. • src = <source IP address>. • spt = <source port>. • shost = <name of the host on which the file was detected>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <list of categories to which the URL of the detected object belongs>. • requestMethod = <HTTP request method>. • requestClientApplication = <User Agent of the client computer>. • request = <URL of the detected object>. • requestContext = <HTTP Referer header>. • reason = <HTTP response code>.
url_mail	URL from mail detected An alert was generated by URL Reputation technology or Sandbox in mail traffic.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <detection ID>. • rt = <date and time of alert, UTC>. • externalId = <Email message ID>. • suser = <email address of sender>. • duser = <email addresses of recipients>. • KasperskyLabKATAmailEnvelopeFrom = <sender email address> (from the Received header). • KasperskyLabKATAmailFor = <recipient address> (from the Received header). • KasperskyLabKATAmailRecievedFromIp = <IP address of the first server in the message delivery chain> (from the Received header). • msg = <message subject>. • request = <URL of the detected object>. • cs2 = <technology that was used to generate the alert> (Sandbox or URL Reputation). • cs3Label = <name of the virtual machine on which the file was detected> (only for Sandbox). • cs1 = <list of types of the detected objects according to the Kaspersky Lab classification> (for the Sandbox component) or <list of categories> (for URL Reputation). • cs3 = <version of databases used to scan the file> (only for Sandbox).
dns	DNS request detected An alert was generated by URL Reputation technology in DNS traffic.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • eventId = <detection ID>. • rt = <date and time of detection, UTC>. • dst = <destination IP address>. • dpt = <destination port>. • src = <source IP address>. • spt = <source port>. • shost = <name of the host on which the file was detected>. • suser = <user name>. • cs2 = <list of URL categories to which the domain names belong>. • requestMethod = <type of DNS message> (request or response). • flexString1 = <type of record from the DNS request>. • dhost = <host name from the DNS request>. • cs1 = <list of domain names from the DNS response>.
heartbeat	Periodic message containing the state of components.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Central Node component>. • rt = <date and time of event, UTC>.

Detection type	Detection name and description	Key and description of its value
		• `KasperskyLabKATAcomponentName` = <name of the component>. • `KasperskyLabKATAcomponentState` = <status of the component> (`0` – OK, `>0` – Error).

Managing connectors

This section contains information about managing connectors in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. *Connectors* are special software modules that handle communication with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and can allow to perform management tasks in the application itself or with the help of the application.

Connectors extend the functionality of the application letting it interact with third-party systems. Depending on their functional purpose, connectors can send data to third-party systems (for example, events, application messages, and audit records to a SIEM system) or fetch data from third-party systems. The application can also use connectors for active polling of devices.

Computers on which the connector software modules are running are called *connector deployment nodes*. You can deploy the connector on any computer that has network access to the Central Node server (including nodes with installed application components, including the Central Node server itself).

The table of connectors and the table of connector types are displayed in the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection in the application web interface. Only users with the Administrator role can manage connectors and connector types. Users with the **Security auditor**, **Security officer**, and **Senior security officer** roles can view connectors and connector types.

The functionality of the connector depends on the selected *connector type*. You can select a connector type when adding the connector to the application. The following types of connectors are built into the application out of the box:

- **Syslog**

  This connector type enables data forwarding to a Syslog server.

  When adding a **Syslog** connector or editing its settings, configure both the general settings of the connector, and the additional settings under **Details**:

  - Syslog server address
  - Syslog server port
  - Data transfer systems

- **SIEM**

  This connector type enables data forwarding to a SIEM system.

  When adding a **SIEM** connector or editing its settings, configure both the general settings of the connector, and the additional settings under **Details**:

  - SIEM system server address
  - SIEM system server port
  - Data transfer protocol

- **Generic**

  This type of connector allows connecting applications that use the NDR API.

- **Email**

  This connector type provides the capabilities for forwarding data by email.

  When adding an **Email** connector or editing its settings, configure both the general settings of the connector, and the additional settings under **Details**:

  - Address to be used as the sender of email messages.
  - Recipient addresses of email messages.
  - Email subject lines for events, application messages, and audit records.
  - Text description templates for events, application messages, audit records, descriptions of network interactions, and the whole notification email message. You can use variables in templates.
  - The subject and body of the email message sent when the maximum number of sent notifications is reached.
  - Maximum number of email messages sent per day.
  - Maximum number of notifications in each message. Specifies the maximum number of registered notifications of the same type (events, application messages, or audit records) that can be put in a single email message. If there more registered notifications exist, an additional email message is generated (within the daily limit).

  For the **Email** connector to work, you must first configure the mail server connection.

- **Active poll**

  This connector type provides the capabilities for active device polling with configuration control and active polling jobs.

  When adding an **Active poll** connector or editing its settings, configure both the general settings of the connector, and the additional settings under **Details**:

  - Active polling methods that will be available to the application user when using the connector.
  - The ranges of allowed and denied IP addresses of the devices for which active polls are allowed or denied. The `0.0.0.0` address matches all possible IP addresses.

    If an address is included among allowed as well as denied IP addresses, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform classifies it as a denied IP address.

  - Names of address spaces whose corresponding devices will be available for active polling. If necessary, select the address spaces for IP addresses in the **L3 address space** field and select the address spaces for MAC addresses in the **L2 address space** field.

    If you select an address space that differs from the **Default** one, add a new rule for this address space (or edit an existing rule). The rule must specify the connector for which this address space is selected. The rules settings are configured when the address space is changed.

- **KUMA**

This connector type provides integration with Kaspersky Unified Monitoring and Analysis Platform (KUMA). Software modules for connectors of this type are distributed separately from Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. A connector of this type lets you send information about devices and risks to KUMA, as well as run commands in KUMA to change device statuses. After adding a connector, you must configure the integration in KUMA (create a connection to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform). The KUMA connector interacts with the Central Node server using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API.

The integration provided by the KUMA connector involves sending information about devices and risks, and applying commands to change device statuses. To send events to KUMA, you can add a **Syslog** or **SIEM** connector to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and specify the settings for connection to the KUMA server for this connector. After adding the connector, you need to configure a collector on the KUMA side.

- **Cisco Switch**

  This connector type provides support for automatic network access control for devices via Cisco network switches.

  When adding a **Cisco Switch** connector or editing its settings, configure both the general settings of the connector, and the additional settings under **Details**:

  - Name of the switch that you want to be specified in events for actions that the application performed using the connector.
  - Addressing information for connecting the connector to the switch: IP address and SSH port.
  - Credentials for connecting to the switch via SSH.
  - Public key to be matched against the public key received from network switch before establishing an SSH connection; this is done to protect against spoofing of this device in the network. If the value is empty, the check is not performed.
  - Method used to restrict network access for devices. The application provides methods for creating deny rules in switch access control lists based on MAC addresses (MAC ACL), IP addresses (IP ACL), and by disabling Ethernet ports to which devices are connected.

    To use the method of disabling Ethernet ports, configure the switch connections to prevent multiple devices from being connected to one port. Otherwise, disabling an Ethernet port to block one device will also block network access for all devices that connect to the network using that port.

  - This setting resets deny rules when changing the network access restriction method. If this setting is enabled, changing the method resets the rules that have been set for blocking devices.
  - This setting excludes network devices from the network access restriction method. If this setting is enabled, the method is not applied to devices of the **Network device**, **Firewall**, **Switch**, **Virtual switch**, **Router**, **Virtual router**, **Wi-Fi**.
  - This setting applies deny rules only to new devices. If this setting is enabled, the method is applied only to those unauthorized devices for which a new device detection event with event type code 4000005003 has been registered.
  - Polling interval for *Authorized* and *Unauthorized* devices in the device table.
  - This setting lets you configure notifications about blocked devices when the connector is restarted. If this setting is enabled, after enabling or restarting the connector, a list of devices for which network access restrictions have been previously applied is sent to the Central Node server.

If necessary, you can add other connector types that will facilitate data exchange or provide the capabilities for performing management tasks when the application interacts with other recipient systems.

Certain ports and protocols are used for the connections of connectors to the Central Node server.

Third-party systems are connected through the connector on behalf one of the application users. We recommend using a separate user account for each connector. This will help you analyze actions performed through the connectors using audit records.

The maximum number of connectors in the application is 20. The maximum number of connector types is 100.

Managed and unmanaged connectors

The application can use managed and unmanaged connectors.

A connector is *managed* if its software modules can automatically register and start after the connector is added, and these modules can be managed when the connector is enabled or disabled, or when it is deleted. Only nodes that have application components installed can serve as deployment nodes for managed connectors.

An *unmanaged connector* does not provide the functionality of a managed connector. You must register such a connector, start, stop, or delete its software modules manually on the node where the connector is deployed. When you enable or disable an unmanaged connector, the application reflects this by allowing or denying the interaction with the connector on the side of the Central Node server.

Connections between connectors and the Central Node server are secured using certificates. Connector certificates are generated when the connectors are added to the application. For software modules of managed connectors, the application automatically sends the generated certificates. When adding an unmanaged connector (or when adding a managed connector in the ignore managed connector mode), you must manually upload the certificate for software modules of the connector using a communication data package. If you need to replace a certificate (issue a new one) for such a connector, you need to create a new communication data package and use it to upload the new certificate. The only way of replacing certificates of managed connectors is by deleting and re-adding the connectors.

Sending events, application messages, and audit records to third-party systems

You can configure the forwarding of events, application messages or audit records (hereinafter also "registered notifications") to a third-party system through connectors. For the connector types named **Syslog**, **SIEM**, and **Email**, the ability to send registered notifications is enabled by default. For the KUMA **connector type**, the capability to forward registered notifications is available if application modules are installed. When using other connector types that were added to the application, whether this capability is available depends on the settings of these specific connector types.

Registered notifications are configured for each connector individually. When configuring event types, you can select which types of events you want to be forwarded through the connectors. When creating a connector or editing its settings, you can enable or disable the forwarding of all application messages and all audit records through this connector.

Connectors of the **Email** type allow limiting the amount of transmitted data. For this connector type, you can set the maximum number of email messages about new registered notifications and the maximum number of registered notifications in each message. If the maximum number of email messages already has been sent, another message is sent to recipients to notify them about the limit being exceeded. After that, no new messages are sent until the end of the current day in the time zone of the Central Node server.

Email messages sent through an **Email** connector are generated separately for each type of registered notifications. That is, different email messages are generated for events, application messages, and audit records.

The contents and order of information about registered notifications that are forwarded through connectors of the **Syslog** and **SIEM** types may differ in these systems from the contents and order of information displayed in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

Automatic network access control for devices via Cisco Switch connectors

You can configure automatic network access control for devices via **Cisco Switch** connectors. Connectors of this type interface with switches to send commands that add or remove network access deny rules (restrictions) for the devices connected to the switches.

Network access control for devices is driven by their status. The connector creates deny rules on the switch for devices with the *Unauthorized* status and removes the rules once the *Authorized* status is assigned to the devices.

Each connector can only interface with one network switch.

A **Cisco Switch** connector is used for restricting network access only for those devices whose details include their MAC addresses. Also, these MAC addresses must be stored in the ARP table of the network switch. That is, devices with these MAC addresses must be connected to the network switch to which the connector is connected.

A connector can use various methods to restrict network access for devices. The application provides methods for creating deny rules in switch access control lists based on MAC addresses (MAC ACL), IP addresses (IP ACL), and by disabling Ethernet ports to which devices are connected.

To use the method of disabling Ethernet ports, configure the switch connections to prevent multiple devices from being connected to one port. Otherwise, disabling an Ethernet port to block one device will also block network access for all devices that connect to the network using that port.

To minimize the risk of the connector impacting network accessibility of devices, you can enable the following settings when configuring the connector:

- This setting excludes network devices from the network access restriction method. If this setting is enabled, the method is not applied to devices of the **Network device**, **Firewall**, **Switch**, **Virtual switch**, **Router**, **Virtual router**, **Wi-Fi**.

- This setting applies deny rules only to new devices. If this setting is enabled, the method is applied only to those unauthorized devices for which a new device detection event with event type code 4000005003 has been registered.

The connector interfaces with the network switch via SSH. SSH connection credentials are specified and stored within the connector configuration. To protect these sensitive credentials, which are essential for identification and authentication, the connector verifies the switch public key it receives against a stored value as a safeguard against switch spoofing. Identification and authentication details are sent to the switch after verifying that the received public key matches the public key saved in the connector.

The connector logs events within the application based on the outcomes of its actions. These event types are logged via External technology. The following event headers are generated:

- `Reset device deny rules for <switch name>`

  This type of event is logged when the connector resets previously defined deny rules for devices due to a change of network access restriction method.

- `Updated information about <device name> with address <device MAC address> according to data from <switch name>`

  This type of event indicates that the connector has received information from a switch that a device connected to a certain port.

- `Added a device deny rule for <device name> on <switch name>`

  This type of event is logged when the connector restricts network access for an unauthorized device.

- `Removed deny rule for <device name> on <switch name>`

  This type of event is logged when the connector has successfully removed network access restrictions for a specific device.

- `<switch name> has previously added deny rules`

  This type of event indicates that upon turning on or restarting, the connector discovered preexisting deny rules on a specific switch.

- `SSH connection made to <switch name> without verifying public key`

  This type of event is logged when the connector successfully establishes an SSH connection to a switch but fails to verify its public key. We recommend verifying that there is no spoofed device on the network, and then saving the new public key in the connector settings.

- `Detected public key mismatch for <switch name>`

  This type of event is logged when the connector detects a mismatch between the stored and received public keys for a switch. This prevents an SSH connection with the switch. We recommend verifying that there is no spoofed device on the network and that the switch public key has indeed changed, and then saving the new public key in the connector settings.

- `Failure to establish SSH connection with switch <switch name>: incorrect credentials`

  This event is logged when the connector failed to establish SSH connection with the switch due to incorrect credentials specified in the connector settings (user name or password).

- `Action for the privileged mode has not been performed on the switch <switch name>: incorrect password`

  This event is logged when the connector does not have privileged mode capabilities to add and remove device deny rules on the switch. In this case, enter the correct privileged mode password in the connector settings.

Adding a connector

You can add a connector based on one of the connector types available in the application. An unmanaged connector should only be created based on custom connector types.

Before adding a connector, we recommend creating a separate user account that the third-party system will use to connect to the application. For the **Email** connector to work, you must first configure the mail server connection.

To add a connector:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
3. On the **Connectors** tab, open the details area by clicking **Add connector**.
4. Configure the connector general settings:
   a. Select the relevant connector type and enter the connector name.
   b. If you want to add an unmanageable connector (or a connector configured to ignore the functions of a manageable connector), enter the password for accessing the connector certificate.

      Using the defined password, the certificate will be encrypted in the communication data package of the connector.
   c. Specify the IP address of the Central Node server.

      The connector uses the specified address to connect to the Central Node.
   d. Specify the node where you want to deploy the connector:
      - If you want to add a managed connector, you can specify one of the nodes with installed application components as the connector deployment node.
      - If you want to add an unmanaged connector, you must enter the IP address of the computer on which you want the software modules of the connector to run.
   e. Select the user that the third-party system will use to connect to the application through the connector. You must specify the name of one of the application users.
5. Under **Details**, specify the advanced settings depending on the type of connector. The **Details** group of settings is not shown in the details area if the connector type does not allow managing advanced settings.
6. If the type of the connector allows forwarding audit records and application messages, enable or disable the forwarding of this data using the corresponding check boxes.
7. If necessary, enter a description for the connector.
8. Click **Save**.

The new connector is added to the table of connectors.

If you added an unmanaged connector, Central Node generates a communication data package for the new connector, after which your browser saves the downloaded file. Depending on your browser's settings, a window may be displayed on your screen in which you can specify the path and name of the downloaded file. You will need to upload the contents of the new communication data package to the application that will use the connector.

Viewing the table of connectors

The table of connectors is displayed in the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection, on the **Connectors** tab.

Connector settings are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name**.

  The name specified for the connector.

- **Connector ID**.

  ID assigned to the connector when it was created.

- **Enabled**.

  Indicates whether the Central Node is ready to interact with the software modules of the connector. If this setting has a value of **No**, the Central Node server does not accept requests from application modules of the connector.

- **Status**.

  Status of software modules of the connector. The following statuses are possible:

  - **Awaiting registration**: after adding an unmanaged connector or creating a new communication data package for the unmanaged connector, no connection has been established through this connector.

  - **Switchover**: the status of application modules of the connector is switched from **Off** to **On**, or vice versa.

  - **Off** means that the Central Node server is not accepting requests from application modules of the connector. If the connector is managed, a stop command is sent to its application modules.

  - **On** means a connection was successfully established through this connector using the certificate created for this connector.

  - **Error** means an error occurred when attempting to perform actions with the application modules of the connector.

- **Type**.

  Icon and name of the connector type.

- **Last connection**.

  Date and time of the last connection through the connector.

- **Manageable**.

  Indicates that the connector is managed. If this is set to **No**, the connector is either unmanaged, or is configured to ignore the managed connector functionality.

- **Changed**.

  Date and time of the last modification of connector settings.

- **Description**.

  The description specified for the connector.

When viewing the table of connectors, you can use the configuration, filtering, searching, and sorting functionality.

Enabling or disabling a connector

If you want to temporarily prevent software modules of a connector from connecting to the Central Node server, you can disable the connector. If you want to restore the connection, enable the connector.

To enable or disable a connector:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
3. On the **Connectors** tab, select the connector that you want to enable or disable.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Enable** or **Disable** as necessary.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
5. In the prompt window, click **OK**.

Editing connector settings

To edit connector settings:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
3. On the **Connectors** tab, select the relevant connector.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Edit**.
5. Edit the settings in the same way as you would when adding a connector.

   Not all settings are editable. For example, you cannot change the type of the connector.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes are displayed in the corresponding columns of the table of connectors. If you changed the name of the connector, the new name is displayed in the column heading in the table of event types.

Editing some settings of an unmanaged connector causes the Central Node server to generate a new communication data package for the connector (for example, if you change the server address for a **Syslog** connector in ignore managed connector mode). Depending on your browser settings, a window may be displayed in which you can change the path and name of the communication data package that you are saving. Upload the contents of the new communication data package to the application that is using the connector. Otherwise, that application will be unable to establish a new connection through that connector.

Creating a new communication data package for a connector

When an unmanaged connector is added, a communication data package is automatically created for that connector. If necessary, you can create a new communication data package for the connector (for example, if the certificate from the old communication data package has been compromised).

After creating a new communication data package, the certificate from the old communication data package becomes invalid. Therefore, for the next connection of a third-party system through this connector, you must use the new communication data package.

To create a new communication data package for an unmanaged connector:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
3. On the **Connectors** tab, select the unmanageable connector for which you want to create a new communication data package.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Get new communication data package**.

   This opens the **Generating a new communication data package** window.
5. Specify the settings for creating the communication data package:

   - The name of the user that the third-party system will use to connect to the application through the connector. You must specify the name of one of the application users.

     We recommended specifying a user name that was specified when adding the connector. If you need to specify a different user name, we recommended selecting an application user that is not used by other connectors and is not used for connecting to the Central Node through the web interface.
   - Address of the node on which the software modules of the connector are running.
   - Password of the connector certificate. The specified password is used to encrypt the certificate in the communication data package of the connector.
6. Click **Create communication data package**.

The server generates a new communication data package for the selected connector, after which your browser saves the downloaded file. Depending on your browser's settings, a window may be displayed on your screen in which you can specify the path and name of the downloaded file. Upload the contents of the downloaded communication data package to the application that is using the connector. Otherwise, a new connection through the connector will be impossible for this application.

Deleting a connector

When a managed connector is deleted, its software modules are automatically stopped and removed on the node where the connector is deployed.

If you are deleting an unmanaged connector or a connector in ignore managed connector mode, you must manually stop and remove the connector's software modules before deleting the connector.

To delete a connector:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
3. On the **Connectors** tab, select the connector that you want to delete.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
5. In the prompt window, confirm the deletion of the selected connector.

Adding and deleting connector types

Connector types define which capabilities are available for connectors and which functionality is implemented within these capabilities. You can use both connector types built into the application, the vendor of which is Kaspersky, or additional types of connectors from any other vendors.

To add a connector type to the application, you must get the following files from the vendor:

- Files for installing software modules of connectors
- Connector type description file

> If the connector type from a third-party vendor allows you to store user credentials for accessing the third-party system in the connectors, we recommend taking steps to protect such credentials from being compromised. To minimize risks in the event of compromised credentials, we recommend granting the minimum necessary rights to such accounts (sufficient only for establishing a connection through the connector).

The table of connector types is displayed in the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection, on the **Connector types** tab.

Viewing the table of connector types

The table of connector types is displayed in the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection, on the **Connector types** tab.

Connector settings are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name**.

  Name of the connector type specified by the vendor.

- **Vendor**.

  Name of the vendor of the connector type.

- **Version**.

  Version number of the connector type.

- **Code**.

  Unique number of the connector type.

- **Capabilities**.

  List of capabilities that connectors of this type must have.

When viewing the table of connector types, you can use the configuration, filtering, searching, and sorting functionality.

Adding a connector type

You can add a connector type to the application using the description file provided by the vendor of the connector type. The connector type description file must be packed into a ZIP archive.

You must manually install software modules of connectors for the connector type that you are adding, using files provided by the vendor of the connector type. Install the software modules on the computers that you want to specify as connector deployment nodes when adding connectors.

To add a connector type:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
3. On the **Connector types** tab, open the details area by clicking **Add connector type**.
4. Click **Browse** to select the connector type description file.
5. Click **Save**.

The new connector type is added to the table of connectors.

Removing a connector type

When you delete a connector type, the application deletes information about that connector type, as well as all connectors that have been added using this type.

To delete a connector type:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
3. On the **Connector types** tab, select the connector type that you want to delete.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
5. In the prompt window, confirm the deletion of the selected connector type.
6. If the application has connectors of this type, confirm the deletion of these connectors as well.

Integration with NGFW solutions

You can configure integration with the CheckPoint NGFW and UserGate NGFW solutions. Integration with these solutions allows you to isolate network devices while an incident is being investigated.

Integration with an NGFW solution involves the following steps:

1. Adding a secret with credentials for the connection to the NGFW solution.
2. Adding a connector for integration with that solution
3. Enabling the connector if it was previously disabled.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, NGFW integration connector settings configured on the PCN server are not applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN server. You can manage connector settings on each selected SCN server separately. Connector settings specified on SCN servers are not displayed in the web interface of the PCN server.

> This functionality is available if a current KATA+NDR license key is present. After the license key expires, all NGFW integration connectors are disabled. Information about connectors is saved in the system.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the table of NGFW integration connectors and the connector settings, but cannot edit the settings.

Adding a connector for integration with an NGFW solution

When creating a connector, you need to select a secret for the connection to the NGFW solution. We recommend adding one beforehand.

To add a connector for integration with an NGFW solution:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
2. Go to the **en: Integrations** tab.
3. Click the **Add connector** button.

   This opens the connector creation window.
4. In the **en: Product** drop-down list, select the solution for which you want to add a connector.
5. In the **en: Name** field, enter a name for the connector.

   The name must be unique.
6. In the **en: NGFW server address** field, enter the address of the server in the following format:
   - For integration with Check Point NGFW: https://<name or IP address of the solution server>:443/web_api
   - For integration with UserGate NGFW: http://<name or IP address of the solution server>:4040/rpc
7. In the **en: Secret** drop-down list, select a secret with credentials for the connection to the NGFW solution.
8. If you want to add a description for the connector, enter the description text in the **en: Description** field.
9. Click **en: Save**.

The connector is added.

When a connector is added, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform initiates a connection to the NGFW solution. If the connection is successfully established, the connector is saved with the **en: Enabled** status. If the connection cannot be established, the connector is saved with the **en: Disabled** status.

Viewing the table of connectors for integration with NGFW solutions

To view the table of connectors:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
2. Go to the **en: Integrations** tab.

   This opens the table of connectors.

The table contains the following information:

- **en: Name** is the name of the connector.
- **en: Type** is the name of the solution with which integration through the connector is configured.
- **en: Ip** is the IP address of the server of the solution with which integration is configured through the connector.
- **en: Status** indicates whether the connector is enabled. Possible values: **en: Enabled**, **en: Disabled**.
- **en: Secret** is name of the secret with credentials for the connection to the NGFW solution.

Enabling and disabling connectors for integration with NGFW solutions

To enable or disable an NGFW integration connector:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
2. Go to the **en: Integrations** tab.
3. Select the connector that you want to enable or disable.
4. In the window that is opened, click the **Enabled** or **Disabled** button.

   The connector is enabled or disabled.

If a connector is disabled, the connection to the NGFW solution established using that connector is terminated. Network isolation rules added for devices through this solution remain in effect.

Managing the settings of a connector for integration with NGFW solutions

All settings are editable, except for **en: Product**.

To edit the settings of a connector for integration with an NGFW solution:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
2. Go to the **en: Integrations** tab.
3. Select the connector whose settings you want to edit.
4. This opens a window; in that window, click **en: Edit**.
5. Enter new values.
6. Click **en: Save**.

   The connector settings are modified.

When saving connector settings, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform initiates a connection to the NGFW solution. If the connection is successfully established, the connector is saved with the **en: Enabled** status. If the connection cannot be established, the connector is saved with the **en: Disabled** status.

Deleting connectors for integration with NGFW solutions

Before deleting a connector, make sure that you have deleted all network isolation rules created for the solution with which Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform establishes a connection through this connector. Otherwise, after removing the connector, you will lose control over the isolated devices: disabling network isolation in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will become impossible.

To delete a connector for integration with an NGFW solution:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
2. Go to the **en: Integrations** tab.
3. Select the connector that you want to delete.

   This opens the connector information window.
4. Click **en: Delete**.
5. This opens the confirmation window; in that window, click **en: Delete**.

The connector is deleted. The connection to the solution established using this connector is terminated.

Managing account credentials secrets for remote connections

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform implements a secret storage. *Secrets* allow securely storing and using identification and authentication information that the application needs for automatic remote connections to devices. Secrets are used in active polling jobs.

The application supports various types of secrets. Depending on the purpose of the secret, you can select a relevant type and enter the appropriate data when adding or editing the secret settings.

Keep in secret the credentials required for remote connections to devices using remote connection protocols. Active polling jobs can use various protocols for remote connections, depending on the selected polling methods.

To ensure that identification and authentication details stored in secrets are used securely, the application implements protection against compromise of secrets when connecting to remote devices. After public keys received from devices are saved in the application, it monitors all subsequent remote connections to these devices and does not send information from secrets if devices on the network are spoofed.

Critical information of the secret (password or private key of the certificate) is accessible to you in plain text only once, when you enter this information while creating the secret. After a secret is saved, its critical information can no longer be viewed. You can only replace the critical information of a secret with new critical information while editing the secret (for example, you can enter a different password).

You can manage secrets in the **Settings** section, **Secrets** subsection. No more than 500 secrets can be added to the application.

Only users with the Administrator role can manage secrets.

Adding a secret

You can add secrets to the application secrets storage.

To add a secret:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Secrets** subsection.
3. Click **Add secret**.

   This opens the details area.
4. Enter a name for the secret.

   The secret name must be unique (must not match the names of other secrets) and must contain up to 256 characters. You can use letters, numerals, spaces, and the following special characters: `! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } / \ : ; , . - _`. The name of the secret must begin and end with any valid character other than a space.
5. Select the type of secret and configure its settings.

   You can select the following types of secrets:

   - **Password only**: this type of secret is used if only the password of a user with the relevant permissions is required for the access to device configuration data.
   - **User name and password**: this type of secret is used if a user name and password are required to receive data from the device.
   - **User name and password, root password**: this type of secret is used if a user name and password are required to receive data from the device, and the root password or the password for an account that processes requests with administrator privileges is additionally required for a connection with administrator (root) privileges.
   - **User name and password, encryption password**: this type of secret is used if a user name and password are required to receive data from the device, and an encryption password is additionally required to establish encrypted connections.
   - The **Mixed** secret type is used for the **Remote connection** method of device polling. You can specify the following settings for this type of secret:

     - User name to be used for remote connections to devices.

       The user name can contain Latin letters, numerals, periods, as well as special characters: `_` and `-`. The name must begin with a letter and end with any supported character other than a period.

- **User password**: if the user password will be used for authentication.

  The password may contain up to 256 ASCII characters.

- **Private key**: if the private key of the certificate will be used for authentication.

  You can manually enter the sequence of characters comprising the key or upload the key from the certificate file by clicking **Copy from file**. You can upload private keys in CRT, PEM, and CER formats. If the private key file is protected by a passphrase, enter the passphrase in the **Passphrase** field before uploading the key.

  > To use the private key of the certificate, you need to copy the public key of this certificate to all devices to which remote connections will be made using the secret. The steps for copying the public key to devices are performed without the involvement of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

- **Root user password**: if an additional password is required for connections to network equipment with administrator (root) privileges. In such cases, access is requested as root or as the user that is configured on network equipment for processing requests with administrator privileges.

6. Click **Save**.

Viewing table of secrets

The table of remote connection secrets is displayed in the **Settings** → **Secrets** section of the application web interface.

Information about secrets is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name of secret**.

  The name that the application uses for the secret.

- **Created**.

  Date and time when the secret was added to the application.

- **Changed**.

  Date and time of the last modification of the secret in the application.

When viewing the table of secrets, you can use the configuration, filtering, searching, and sorting functionality.

Protecting against compromise of secrets when connected to remote devices

Identification and authentication details from secrets should be used only for remote connections to devices that are selected for active polling jobs. To protect this information against possible compromise in cases of device spoofing, the application verifies the public key received from the device before sending the information. The device uses the public key to establish SSH connections. A public key helps the application to verify that the SSH connection is being established with the correct device. Identification and authentication details are sent to the device after verifying that the received public key matches the public key saved in the application.

The saved public key of the device is displayed in the details area of the selected device on the **General** tab.

Receiving and saving public keys of devices in the application

By default, no public keys of devices are configured in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. A device's public key is received and saved when an SSH connection is established with this device for the first time for the purpose of scanning as part of an active polling job that uses a connector of the **Active poll** type. Identification and authentication details from the selected secret are sent to the device without checking the received public key. Therefore, before starting the active polling job for the first time for the selected device and establishing an SSH connection to it, make sure that there is no spoofed device on the network. To do this, you can run `ifconfig` to check that the IP addresses of the device configured in the application match the IP addresses on the network interfaces of the actual device.

Resetting saved device public keys

SSH connection keys on devices may change with time. Device users may generate new keys when their current private keys are at a risk of compromise.

When the private key is changed on the device, the public key is changed as well. After changing the public key, the application stops sending information from the secrets to this device because the new public key no longer matches the one saved in the application. Therefore, any subsequent device scans as part of active polling jobs finish with an error.

After changing the public key on the device, you must reset the currently saved public key for this device stored in the application. This will allow the secrets to be used again when connecting to the device remotely.

After resetting the saved public key, the application saves the newly received public key the next time an SSH connection is established with this device. Check that there is no spoofed device on the network, similarly to when initially receiving and storing a public key.

Only users with the **Senior security officer** role can reset saved public keys of devices.

To reset saved device public keys:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the **Senior security officer** role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Devices** tab, select the devices for which you want to reset saved public keys.
4. Right-click one of the selected devices to open the context menu.
5. In the context menu, select **Reset public key**.
   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
6. In the prompt window, click **OK**.

Editing the settings of a secret

When editing the settings of a secret, you can change its type or set different credentials.

After secret settings, including the secret name, are modified, the new settings are applied in the active polling jobs in which the secret has been specified before. If you change the type of the secret, errors may occur the next time these jobs are started if the new type of the secret does not match connector settings.

To edit the settings of a secret:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Secrets** subsection.
3. Select the secret that you want to edit.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Edit**.
5. Edit the settings as needed. You can edit the settings in the same way as when you adding a secret.

   Critical information of the secret (passwords and the private key of the certificate) is not openly displayed. You can only replace the critical information of the secret with new critical information using the links above the fields with credentials.

Deleting secrets

You can delete secrets from the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform secret storage.

Before deleting a secret, we recommend specifying a different secret or a different polling method in the active polling jobs that use this secret. If the deleted secret is specified in an active polling job, errors will occur the next time the job is run.

To delete secrets:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Secrets** subsection.
3. Select the secrets that you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
5. In the confirmation prompt window, confirm the deletion of the secrets.

Updating application databases

Application databases (hereinafter also referred to as "databases") are files with records used by the application components and modules to detect events occurring in your organization's IT infrastructure.

Virus analysts at Kaspersky detect hundreds of new threats daily (including "zero-day" exploits), create records to identify them, and include them in database updates packages ("update packages"). *Update packages* consist of one or more files containing records to identify threats that were detected since the previous update package was released. We recommend that you regularly receive update packages. When the application is installed, the database release date is the same as the application release date, and therefore you must update the databases immediately after installing the application.

The application automatically looks for new update packages on Kaspersky update servers once every 30 minutes. By default, if for some reason application databases are not updated for 24 hours, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform displays this information in the **Dashboard** section of the window of the application web interface.

If the version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is not supported, the application databases are not updated, and the **Dashboard** section in the **System health** window of the application web interface, displays the *This version of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is no longer supported. Please upgrade the application to a supported version* warning.

You can see which versions of the application are currently supported on the application lifecycle page.

The update functionality (including anti-virus signature updates and code base updates), as well as the KSN functionality may be unavailable in the territory of the USA.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, application databases are updated independently on each PCN and SCN server.

If you have deployed Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in an isolated network or in a network with limited internet bandwidth, you can configure application database updates using the Kaspersky Update Utility.

Selecting a database update source

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

You can select the source from which the application will download database updates. The update source may be the Kaspersky server, or a network folder or local folder on one of the computers of your organization.

To select a database update source:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **General settings** subsection.
2. In the **Database update** section, in the **Update source** drop-down list, select one of the following values:

   - **Kaspersky update server**.

     The application connects to Kaspersky update server over HTTP and downloads up-to-date databases.

   - **Kaspersky update server (secure connection)**.

     The application connects to Kaspersky update server over HTTPS and downloads up-to-date databases. It is recommended to use HTTPS for database updates.

   - **Custom server**.

The application connects to your FTP or HTTP server or a directory with application databases on your computer to download up-to-date databases.

HTTP must be used for communication between your HTTP server and Central Node. HTTPS is not supported in this case.

3. If you have selected **Custom server**, in the field under the name of this setting, enter the URL of the update package on your HTTP server or the full path to the folder on your computer containing the application database update package.

4. Click **Apply**.

The application database update source is applied.

Updating databases manually

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, use the web interface of the PCN or SCN server for which you want to configure parameters.

To start the database update manually:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **General settings** subsection.

2. In the **Database update** section, click the **Start** button.

3. Click **Apply**.

The application database update is started. The progress of the update will be displayed to the right of the button.

Updating application databases using Kaspersky Update Utility

If you have deployed Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in an isolated network or in a network with limited internet bandwidth, you can configure application database updates using the Kaspersky Update Utility. In this case, the utility downloads update packages to a computer outside the organization's local network, from where they are copied to your FTP or HTTP server. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform then gets its update packages from this server.

Configuring application database updates using the utility involves the following steps:

1. Downloading update packages using Kaspersky Update Utility

   First, you need to contact Kaspersky Technical Support and request the distribution package of the utility and a list of servers from which you can download updates.

2. Uploading update packages obtained using the Kaspersky Update Utility to your FTP or HTTP server.

3. Selecting your FTP or HTTP server as the database update source.

Downloading update packages using Kaspersky Update Utility

You need to contact Kaspersky Technical Support and request the distribution package of the utility and a list of servers from which you can download updates.

To install the Kaspersky Update Utility:

1. Download the folder with the utility distribution package to your computer.
2. Run the UpdateUtility-Gui.exe file.
3. In the window that is opened, click the **Applications** button and select the check box to the left of the **8.0** version.
4. Click **OK** and **Apply**.

The utility is installed. You can download service packs by following the steps below.

To download update packages using Kaspersky Update Utility:

1. In the main window of the utility, click the **Settings** button and select **Download**.
2. Under **Updates source**, select **Other** and enter the address of your server for downloading updates.
3. Click **OK** and **Apply**.
4. Click **Start**.

The update packages are downloaded to the computer on which you are running the utility. The files are ready to be uploaded to your FTP or HTTP server.

Renewing the certificate for connecting to the Central Node using the API

To renew the certificate for connecting to the Central Node server using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API, you need to replace the certificate used by the REST API server. You can specify the new certificate of the REST API server in the **Settings** section, **Connection servers** subsection, on the **REST API server** tab.

Creating a list of passwords for archives

The application does not scan password-protected archives. You can create a list of the most frequently encountered passwords for archives that are used when exchanging files within your organization. If you do so, the application will try passwords from the list when scanning an archive. If one of the passwords match, the archive will be unlocked and scanned.

The list of passwords set in application settings is also transmitted to the server with the Sandbox component.

To create a list of archive passwords:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Passwords for archives** subsection.
2. In the **Passwords for archives** field, enter the passwords that the application will use for password-protected archives.

   Enter each password on a new line. You can enter up to 50 passwords.
3. Click **Apply**.

   The list of passwords for archives will be created. When scanning PDF files and files of Microsoft Word, Excel®, and PowerPoint® that are password protected, the application will use the passwords from the defined list.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of passwords for archives, but cannot edit it.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to this section of the web interface.

Integration with tools that unwrap encrypted SSL/TLS traffic

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives decrypted SSL/TLS traffic from third-party decryption tools to standard network interfaces, processes, and analyses it. Configuring the receipt and processing of decrypted traffic in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is similar to configuring the receipt and processing of mirrored SPAN traffic; you need to enable SPAN integration support during application installation and create and enable a monitoring point for the network interface on which traffic is received (if it has not been created and enabled earlier).

The receipt of decrypted traffic in the application increases the traffic processing load by 5 times compared to non-encrypted traffic. For details about the hardware requirements for Central Node servers, see the Sizing calculator.

When receiving decrypted traffic, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform may process and retain sensitive information that is transmitted over encrypted protocols. For example, user names and passwords, bank card numbers.

Configuring the PCAP file storage

After uploading PCAP files for retrospective analysis of traffic to the system, the files are placed in a special storage. You can manage the settings of this storage.

To manage the settings of the PCAP file storage:

1. Log in under an administrator account to the web interface of the Central Node component designated for retrospective traffic analysis.
2. Go to the **Settings** section, **Retrospective traffic analysis** subsection.
3. In the **en: Maximum storage size (GB)** field, specify the maximum storage size.
4. In the **en: Percentage of cleaning when filling (%)** field, specify the percentage that you want to clear when the storage fills up.
5. Click **en: Apply**.

The PCAP file storage is configured.

Configuring storage for observables

You can change the maximum total size limit for stored observables.

To change the observable storage settings:

1. Log in to the web interface using an account with the **Administrator** role.
2. Select the **Sensor servers** section.
3. Select the card of the Central Node server.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Edit**.

   In the details area, tabs are displayed, on which you can manage the settings of the server.
5. On the **General** tab, go to **Observables** tab and use the **Max volume** setting to set the size limit for storing risks.

   You can select the unit of measure for the size limit: **MB** or **GB**.

   When editing the value, you also need to take into account that the sum total of all size limits may not exceed the specified maximum storage capacity for the server.
6. Click the **Save** button.

The storage settings for observables are modified.

For security officers: Getting started with the application web interface

This section is intended for specialists who are in charge of providing data security within an organization. It contains information and instructions on configuring resources for the security of a corporate IT infrastructure and timely detection of threats.

The application allows multiple security officers to work together.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Interface

The application is managed through the web interface. Sections of the application web interface differ depending on the role of the user: Administrator or Senior security officer (**Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, **Security auditor**).

The window of the application web interface contains the following:

- Sections in the left part and in the lower part of the application web interface window.
- Tabs in the upper part of the application web interface window for certain sections of the application.
- The workspace in the lower part of the application web interface window.

Sections of the application web interface window

The application web interface provides the following sections for users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, and **Security auditor** roles:

- **Dashboard**. Contains Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Monitoring data.

  For users with the **Security auditor** role, the **Dashboard** window contains the following sections: **Alerts**, **System health**.
- **Alerts**. Contains information about alerts in the network of the tenant to which you have access.
- **Network traffic events**. Information about events and aggregate events in network traffic.
- **Prevention**. Contains information about policies that you can use to manage preventions of files running on selected hosts.
- **Custom rules**: **Intrusion detection**, **YARA**, **Sandbox**. Contains information for managing user-defined rules.
- **Storage**. Contains information for managing objects in Storage.
- **Assets**. Contains information about devices present in the internal network of the organization.

- **Network map**: **Network interaction map**, **Topology map**, **Network sessions**. Contains information about the interaction of devices at different periods of time, diagrams of physical connections of devices in the network and information about network sessions.
- **Risks and anomalies**. Contains information about the risks to which the resources of the information system are exposed.
- **Reports**: **Generated reports** and **Templates**. Contains a report builder and a list of generated reports about alerts.
- **Logs**: **Application messages**. Contains information about application performance.
- **Settings**: **Connectors**, **Secrets**, **KPSN reputation database**, **Notification rules**, **VIP status**, **Exclusions**, **Allow rules**, **Sandbox servers**, **Passwords for archives**, and **License**. Contains information about connector settings, secrets, and the settings for publishing objects in KPSN and assigning the VIP status to alerts based on information contained in alerts, the list of allowed objects, and IDS, and ICAP rules excluded from scanning, passwords of archives, and added keys.

For users with the **Security auditor** role, the web interface of the application contains the following sections in addition to those listed above:

- **Operating mode**. Contains information about PCN and SCN servers and about tenants in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Sensor servers**. Contains information about Central Node components and Sensor components connected to them.
- **Sandbox servers**. Contains information about the connection of the Central Node component to Sandbox components.
- **External systems**. Contains information about application integration with mail sensors.
- **Server configuration**. Contains information about the sizing parameters of the application.

Workspace of the application web interface window

The workspace displays the information you choose to view in the sections and on the tabs of the application web interface window. It also contains control elements that you can use to configure how the information is displayed.

Selecting a tenant to manage in the web interface of the application

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode with a **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** account, before you begin using the web interface, you must select the tenant that you want to manage in the application web interface.

To select a tenant to manage in the web interface of the application:

1. In the upper part of the application web interface menu, click the arrow next to the name of the tenant.
2. In the **Select tenant** drop-down list, select a tenant.

   You can also start typing the name of the tenant in the search box and select the tenant from the list of search results.

All actions in the application web interface are applied to the selected tenant. If you want to select a different tenant, repeat the steps to select the tenant.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot select a tenant to manage in the web interface.

Monitoring the performance of the application

You can monitor application operation using the widgets in the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface window. You can add, delete, and move widgets, configure the display scale of widgets, and select the data display period.

About widgets and layouts

You can use widgets to monitor application operation.

A *layout* is the appearance of the workspace of the application web interface window in the **Dashboard** section. You can add, delete, and move widgets in the layout, as well as configure the scale of widgets.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, this section displays information for the selected tenant. NDR widgets display information only for the current or selected node.

By default, this section displays information only on alerts that were not processed by users. To also display information on processed alerts, enable the **Show closed alerts** toggle switch in the upper-right corner of the window.

The **Dashboard** section displays the following widgets:

- Alerts:
  - **Alerts by status**. Displays the alert status depending on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user processing the alert and on whether or not this alert has been processed.
  - **Alerts by technology**. Displays the names of the application modules or components that generated the alert.
  - **Alerts by attack vector**. Displays detected objects based on the vector of the attack.

- **VIP alerts by importance**. Displays the importance of alerts with VIP status depending on the impact that these alerts may have on the security of computers or the corporate LAN based on Kaspersky experience.

- **Alerts by importance**. Displays the importance of alerts for users of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform depending on the impact that these alerts may have on the security of computers or the corporate LAN based on Kaspersky experience.

The left part of each widget displays attack vectors, alert importance levels, alert states, and scanning technologies that generated the alerts. The right part of each widget displays the number of times the alerts were triggered during the selected period for data display in widgets.

Clicking the link with the name of the attack vector, alert importance level, alert state, and the scanning technology that generated the alert takes you to the **Alerts** section of the application web interface where you can view related alerts. Alerts are filtered based on the selected element.

- Top 10:

  - **Domains**. 10 domains most frequently seen in alerts.

  - **IP addresses**. 10 IP addresses most frequently seen in alerts.

  - **Senders' email addresses**. 10 email senders most frequently seen in alerts.

  - **Recipients' email addresses**. 10 email recipients most frequently seen in alerts.

  The left side of each widget lists domains, recipient addresses, IP addresses, and mail sender addresses. The right part of each widget displays the number of times the alerts were triggered during the selected period for data display in widgets.

  By clicking the link with the name of each domain, recipient address, IP address, and message sender address, you can go to the **Alerts** section of the application web interface and view related alerts. Alerts and events are filtered based on the selected element.

- NDR:

  - **Network traffic event scores**. Bar graph of the distribution of events by their scores for the selected period. The bars correspond to integer values of scores. You can change the data display mode to a pie chart with the distribution of events by severity levels. Depending on its score, an event may have a *Low* (0.0–3.9), *Medium* (4.0–7.9), or *High* (8.0–10.0) severity.

  - **Network traffic events by technology**. How many events have been registered by which event registration technology during the selected period.

  - **Device security status**. Distribution of devices by their security states.

  - **Frequent application users in network traffic events**. User names most frequently registered in events based on information from EPP applications for the selected period.

  - **Frequent applications in network traffic events**. Third-party applications most frequently registered in events based on information from EPP applications for the selected period.

  - **Frequent devices in network traffic events**. The most frequently registered devices in events for the selected period.

  - **Frequent devices by risk count**. The most frequently registered devices in detected risks for the selected period.

- **Risk scores**. Bar graph of the distribution of risks by their scores for the selected period. The bars correspond to integer values of scores. You can change the data display mode to a pie chart with the distribution of risks by severity levels. Depending on its score, a risk may have a *Low* (0.0–3.9), *Medium* (4.0–7.9), or *High* (8.0–10.0) severity.

- **Custom widget**. You can create widgets with arbitrary content. For example, you can use custom widgets to logically separate groups of widgets in the **Dashboard** section.

- **Devices**. Contains information about devices on the network (arranged by device category).

- **Network traffic events**. Contains information about the NDR events and aggregate events that have the most recent last-seen date and time.

- **Situational awareness**. Notifications about currently identified threats to system security (for example, Detected 10 unauthorized network interactions). The widget displays notifications in order of their importance.

- **Protection by EPP applications**. Ratio of the number of computers protected by EPP applications to the number of computers not protected by EPP applications. The total number of protected and unprotected computers is displayed in the center of the pie chart.

  A computer is considered protected by an EPP application if Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is aware of the following conditions being satisfied:

  - An EPP application is installed on the computer.
  - The Real-Time Protection task is running for the EPP application.
  - The connection of the EPP application to the integration server has the *Active* status.

  A computer is considered unprotected by an EPP application if at least one of the conditions is not satisfied. The check for the lack of EPP application protection is performed for all devices in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform that contain the name of the Windows operating system (any version) as the installed operating system, or if the devices belong to one of the following categories:

  - **Server**
  - **Workstation**

For correct information to be displayed in NDR widgets, you must configure the synchronization of date and time between Central Node and Sensor components.

Widgets display only basic information that changes dynamically. If you need to view detailed information (for example, about devices with issues), you can navigate from the **Dashboard** section to other sections of the application web interface. You can navigate the web interface by clicking widgets.

Adding a widget to the current layout

To add a widget to the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.

3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Click **Widgets**.
5. In the **Manage widgets** window that opens:
   - If you want to add a widget associated with alerts or rules, in the **Alerts** or **Top 10** list, select the toggle switch next to the widget that you want to add.
   - If you want to add a widget related to the NDR functionality, click the + button in the **[NDR]** list next to the name of the widget that you want to add.
6. Close the **Manage widgets** window and click **Apply**.

The widget is added to the current layout.

Moving a widget in the current layout

To move a widget in the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Select the widget that you want to move within the layout.
5. Click and hold the upper part of the widget to drag and drop the widget to a different place in the layout.
6. Click **Apply**.

The current layout is saved.

Changing the display of information in NDR widgets

After an NDR widget is added, it displays information in accordance with the default settings. If necessary, you can edit the display settings.

To edit NDR widget display settings:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. In the upper-right corner of the NDR widget that you want to configure, click the ⚙ button.

   This opens the display settings window.

5. Manage the settings of the widget.

   Depending on the selected NDR widget, the window may contain the following settings:

   - **Change name** – if the **Change name** check box is selected, you can define any name for the widget (different from the default name) in the **Widget name** field. The **Change name** setting is absent from custom widgets.
   - **Widget name** – field for entering a widget name different from the default name.
   - **Edit description** – if the **Edit description** check box is selected, you can provide any description for the widget (different from the default description) in the **Widget description** field. The **Edit description** setting is absent from custom widgets.
   - **Widget description** – field for entering a widget name different from the default name.
   - **Refresh period** – the time in seconds after which the displayed information is updated.
   - **Defined background** – defines the color of the background on the custom widget. You can choose a background color that corresponds to one of the severity levels (**Info**, **Warning**, or **Critical**) or select **Neutral** to disable background coloring.
   - **Display mode** – determines how data is displayed in the widget. You can configure the display of information as a bar chart or a pie chart.
   - **Take into account events with Resolved status** – if **Take into account events with Resolved status** is selected, the widget displays data for all events.
   - **Include remediated and accepted risks** – if **Include remediated and accepted risks** is selected, the widget displays data for all risks.

6. Click **Apply**.

Removing a widget from the current layout

To remove a widget from the current layout:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Click the × icon in the upper right corner of the widget that you want to remove from the layout.

   The widget is removed from the workspace of the application web interface window.
5. Click **Apply**.

The widget is removed from the current layout.

Saving a layout to PDF

NDR widgets in the layout are not saved to PDF.

To save a layout to PDF:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Save as PDF**.
   This opens the **Saving as PDF** window.
4. In the lower part of the window, in the **Layout** drop-down list, select the page orientation.
5. Click **Download**.
   The layout in PDF format is saved to the hard drive of your computer in the downloads folder of the browser.
6. Click **Close**.

Configuring the data display period in widgets

You can configure the display of data in widgets for the following periods:

- **Day**.
- **Week**.
- **Month**.

For NDR widgets, you can use the following periods:

- **1h**
- **12h**
- **24h**
- **7d**

You can configure a data display period for each individual NDR widget.

Changing the display of information in widgets

To configure the display of data in widgets for a day (from 00:00 a.m. to 11:59 p.m.):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Day**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Day** period name, select the date for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

To configure the display of data on widgets for a week (Monday through Sunday):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Week**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Week** period name, select the week for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

To display data display in widgets for a month (calendar month):

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, in the drop-down list of data display periods, select **Month**.
3. In the calendar to the right of the **Month** period name, select the month for which you want to display data in the widget.

All widgets on the **Dashboard** page display data for the period you selected.

Changing the display of information in widgets

To configure the display of information in an NDR widget:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper-right corner of the NDR widget that you want to configure, click the button that stands for the time interval that you need.

The NDR widget displays information for the selected period.

Configuring the widget display scale

You can configure the display scale for "Alerts" type widgets. The ☰ icon in the upper right corner of a widget means you can configure the scale for that widget.

To configure the display scale for widgets:

1. Select the **Dashboard** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the upper part of the window, click the ☰ button.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Customize**.
4. Click ☰ in the upper right corner of the widget.
5. In the drop-down list, select one of the following widget display sizes:
   - **1x1**.
   - **2x1**.
   - **3x1**.

   The display scale of the selected widget is modified.
6. Repeat the steps for all widgets for which you want to set the display scale.
7. Click **Save**.

The display scale of widgets is configured.

Basics of managing "Alerts" type widgets

You can configure the display scale for all "Alerts" type widgets.

The left part of each widget displays the legend for colors used in widgets.

Example:
The **Alerts by importance** widget displays the number of alerts of various importance.
Importance—Alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.
In the **Alerts by importance** widget, the following colors correspond to importance levels:

- Red—Alert has a high level of importance.
- Orange—Alert has a medium level of importance.
- Green—Alert has a low level of importance.

To the right of the legend, the number of alerts of each type for the selected period for displaying data in widgets is displayed.

By clicking the link with the type of each alert, you can go to the **Alerts** section of the application web interface and view all alerts of this type. Alerts are filtered based on the specific type.

Example:
The **Alerts by attack vector** widget displays **Files from email** alerts, which indicate the number of files that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform detected in mail traffic for the selected period.
Clicking the **Files from email** link opens the **Alerts** section and displays all alerts associated with the detection of files in mail traffic for the selected period. Data will be filtered based on the following parameters: **Object type**=FILE and **Object source**=MAIL.

The right part of each widget displays data columns. The vertical axis shows the number of events, and the horizontal axis shows the date and time of the alert creation. You can edit the period of data display in widgets and select the tenant for which information is displayed in the widget.

Position your mouse cursor on each data column to display the number of alerts counted for the period represented by the specific column. The number of unprocessed alerts is displayed by default. You can enable the display of processed alerts by selecting the **Processed** check box in the upper-right corner of the window. In this case, the total number of all alerts will be displayed.

Information in the Devices widget

The **Devices** widget in the **Dashboard** section belongs to the NDR functionality and displays information about devices in the list of devices known to the application.

The widget provides the following information:

- Information about how many devices the application knows for each category. This information is displayed in the upper part of the widgets as category icons. Under each category icon, the number of devices of that category is displayed. If the list of devices known to the application contains devices with issues, the icons of the corresponding categories have a warning badge.
- List of categories with devices with issues. This information is displayed in the middle part of the widget if such devices exist. The space for displaying graphics is limited by the size of the widget.

Devices with issues

The application considers that a device has issues in any of the following cases:

- The device has a status of *Authorized* and a security state other than *OK*.
- The device has a status of *Unauthorized*.

If any devices have issues, the following information is displayed for each category in the list:

- A line with the category icon, a text description, and a link with the number of devices with issues.
- A line with graphical representations of devices. This line is displayed if the widget has sufficient free space. The number of graphics in the line depends on the current size of the web browser window. If there are more devices with issues than represented in the line, the number of hidden devices is displayed on the right, in the `+ <number of devices>` format.

Device graphics

Graphical representations of devices include the following information:

- Device name.
- Device status. This is displayed as an icon if the device has a status of *Unauthorized*.
- Device security status. Displayed as a colored line on the left border of the graphic. The color of the line corresponds to the *OK*, *Warning*, or *Critical* states.

The graphics are displayed in the following order:

1. Devices assigned a status of *Unauthorized*.
2. Devices with a *Critical* security state.
3. Devices with a *Warning* security state.

Navigating to other sections from the widget

You can use elements of the **Devices** widget interface to navigate to the table of devices and display detailed information about devices. The following options are available to achieve this.

Go to the table of devices and filter the table

To navigate to the table of devices and view information about all devices in the selected category:

In the upper part of the **Devices** widget, click the icon of the relevant category.

This opens the **Assets** section containing the table of devices. Filtering by the selected device category is applied to the table.

To navigate to the table of devices and view information about devices with issues that belong to a certain category:

In the list of categories of devices with issues, click the link with the number of devices of the relevant category. The link is displayed at the end of the line with the category icon and the text comment **with issues**.

This opens the **Assets** section containing the table of devices. Filtering is applied in the table by IDs of devices with issues that belong to a certain category.

The table of devices is filtered based on the IDs of those devices that were displayed in the **Devices** widget when you proceeded to the table of devices. After navigating to the table of devices, the filtering conditions are not updated. If you want to view the current number of devices with issues, you can go to the **Dashboard** section again.

To go to the table of devices and view information about a device with issues:

In the **Devices** widget, click the graphical element that represents the relevant device.

This opens the **Assets** section containing the table of devices. Filtering by device ID is applied to the table.

To go to the table of devices without changing the current table filtering conditions:

Click the **Show all devices** in the **Devices** widget.

This opens the **Assets** section containing the table of devices. The table displays devices that match filtering conditions that have been configured for the table of devices.

Go to the table of devices and search the table

To go to the table of devices and find devices in the table:

1. In the **Devices** widget, enter your search query into the **Search devices** field.
2. Click **Search**.

   This opens the **Assets** section containing the table of devices. The table displays devices that match your search criteria.

Information in the Events widget

The **Network traffic events** widget in the **Dashboard** section displays general information about the NDR events and aggregate events that have the most recent last-seen date and time.

The widget displays the following elements:

- A histogram of NDR events and aggregate events for the selected period. This information is displayed in the upper part of the widget. The histogram displays the distribution of NDR events and aggregate events by severity level.
- A list of information about registered NDR events and aggregate events, sorted by their last-seen date and time. This information is displayed in the middle part of the widget.

Statistics of NDR events and aggregate events

On the distribution histogram of NDR and aggregate events, the bars correspond to the total number of events for each time interval. Inside the bars, the colors stand for severity levels of events. The following colors correspond to the severity levels:

- Blue. This color is used for *Low*-severity NDR events and aggregate events.
- Yellow. This color is used for *Medium*-severity NDR events and aggregate events.
- Red. This color is used for *High*-severity NDR events and aggregate events.

You can hover over a bar to view information about it. The pop-up window displays information about the date and time of the interval, as well as the number of NDR events and aggregate events by severity level.

The length of the time intervals depends on the selected display period. You can select a period for the histogram with the following buttons:

- **1h**: one-hour period, subdivided into one-minute intervals.
- **12h**: 12-hour period, subdivided into one-hour intervals.
- **24h**: 24-hour period, subdivided into one-hour intervals.
- **7d**: seven-day period, subdivided into one-day intervals.

List of NDR events and aggregate events

The list of NDR events and aggregate events in the **Network traffic events** widget is updated in on-line mode. NDR events and aggregate events with the most recent last-seen date and time are placed at the top of the list.

The number of displayed items in the list of NDR events and aggregate events is limited by the size of the widget.

For each event in the list, the following information is provided:

- Title of the NDR event or aggregate event.
- Last-seen date and time.
- Icon that stands for the severity of the NDR event or aggregate event:
  - – *Low* severity level
  - – *Medium* severity level
  - – *High* severity level

Aggregate events in the list are marked with .

Navigating to other sections from the widget

You can use the controls of the **Network traffic events** interface to go to the table of events and display detailed information about NDR events and aggregate events. The following options are available to achieve this.

Navigating to the table of network traffic events and filtering the table

You can view detailed information about an NDR event or aggregate event by clicking the event in the list of the **Network traffic events** widget. Doing so opens the **Network traffic events** section in which the table will be filtered based on the ID of the selected NDR event or aggregate event. The filtering criteria also include the period from the date and time of registration of an NDR event or aggregate event to the current moment (without specifying the right bound of the period).

If you want to go to the table of network traffic events without changing the current filtering conditions of the table in the **Network traffic events** section, click the **Show all events** link in the **Network traffic events** widget.

Go to the table of events and search the table

To go to the table of devices and find devices in the table:

1. In the **Network traffic events** widget, enter your search query into the **Search events** field.
2. Click **Search**.

   This opens the **Network traffic events** section. The table of events displays NDR events and aggregate events that match the search criteria.

Viewing the working condition of modules and components of the application

If modules or components of the application encounter errors that the administrator is advised to look at, a yellow warning box is displayed in the upper part of the **Dashboard** section of the application web interface.

Users with the **Administrator** or **Security auditor** role can gain access to information about the working condition of the Central Node, PCN, or SCN server that the user is currently managing.

Users with the **Senior security officer**, **Security officer**, or **Security auditor** role can gain access to the following information about the working condition:

- If you are using a standalone Central Node server, the user can access information about the working condition of the Central Node server which the user is currently managing.
- If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, and the user is managing an SCN server, the user can gain access to information about the working condition of that SCN server for tenants to whose data the user has access.
- If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, and the user is managing the PCN server, the user can gain access to information about the working condition of the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to that server, for tenants to whose data the user has access.

For details about the working condition of application modules and components,

click **View details** to open the **System health** window.

In the **System health** window, one of the following icons is displayed depending on the working condition of the application modules and components:

- OK if the modules and components of the application are working normally.
- An icon with the number of problems (for example, 1) if problems are found that the administrator is recommended to pay attention to. In this case, detailed problem information is displayed in the right part of the **System health** window.

The **System health** window contains the following sections:

- **Component health** contains information on the operational status of application modules and components, quarantine, and database update on all servers where the application is running.

  Example:
  If the databases of one or more application components have not been updated in 24 hours, the ! icon is displayed next to the name of the server on which the application modules and components are installed.
  To resolve the problem, make sure that update servers are accessible. If you are using a proxy server to connect to update servers, make sure the proxy server has no errors pertaining to the connection to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform servers.

- **Processed**—Status of receiving and processing incoming data. The status is generated based on the following criteria:
  - State of receiving data from servers with the Sensor component, from the server or virtual machine with the mail sensor, from hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.
  - Information about exceeding the maximum allowed time that objects wait in the queue to be scanned by application modules and components.
- **Connection with servers**—Status of the connection between the PCN server and connected SCN servers (displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode).

If problems are detected with the performance of application modules or components and you cannot resolve those problems on your own, please contact Kaspersky Technical Support.

Managing technologies

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform uses various technologies to analyze network traffic. You can enable or disable the technologies individually. For the Device Activity Detection (AM) technology, you can select the mode: learning mode or monitoring mode.

We recommend enabling the learning mode for a predetermined time to have the application automatically switch the technology to monitoring mode at the right time. The monitoring mode is the normal mode of the technology (as opposed to the learning mode, in which the application only accumulates data for future use). When setting up the learning mode, you can configure the time when you want the technology to switch to monitoring mode.

You can specify the same technology settings for all components and monitoring points, or you can specify special settings for some components and/or monitoring points. Technology settings can be automatically inherited from parent objects to child objects. If technology inheritance is enabled for a component or monitoring point, the technology settings specified for the parent object (Central Node or Sensor) are applied to that object. If technology inheritance is disabled, you can configure special settings for technologies on that component or monitoring point.

By default, all technologies are enabled after application installation. The learning mode is enabled by default for the technologies supporting mode change.

Enabling or disabling technologies

You can enable or disable technologies for Central Node and Sensor components and monitoring points. However, enabling and disabling technologies for Sensor components and monitoring points is available if technology inheritance is disabled on these objects.

Some technologies include methods that can be enabled or disabled individually. If a technology or method is disabled, the application does not monitor device interactions using the technology or method. However, you can still manage application settings related to disabled technologies or methods (for example, add or edit rules).

The following technologies and methods support enabling and disabling:

- Asset Management, hereinafter also "AM":
  - Device Activity Detection.
  - Device Information Detection.
  - Network Session Detection.
- Intrusion Detection, hereinafter also "IDS":
  - Rule-based Intrusion Detection.
  - ARP Spoofing Detection.
  - IP Protocol Anomaly Detection.
  - TCP Protocol Anomaly Detection.

- Brute-force Attack and Scan Detection.
- Observable Object Control.

To change the state of technologies and methods:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant component or monitoring point.

   This opens a window with information about the component or monitoring point.
3. If you want to change the state of technologies and methods for a Sensor component or a monitoring point, set the **Inherit Server technologies** toggle switch to **Disabled**.
4. Use the toggle switches in the left part of the window to enable or disable technologies and/or methods. You can enable or disable all technologies and methods simultaneously by clicking **Enable all** or **Disable all**.
5. After enabling or disabling a technology or method, wait until the changes are applied. The switch does not become available again until the transition to the other state is completed.

The state of technology and methods is changed.

Configuring Device Activity Detection mode

You can configure the learning mode or enable the monitoring mode for the Device Activity Detection (AM) technology.

To change and configure the mode of the technology:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant component or monitoring point.

   This opens a window with information about the component or monitoring point.
3. If you want to configure the mode of the technology for a Sensor component or a monitoring point, set the **Inherit Server technologies** toggle switch to **Disabled**.
4. In the drop-down list to the right of the technology name, select a mode (**Learning** or **Monitoring**).
5. After selecting the mode, wait for the changes to be applied. Before the mode is applied, the **Changing** status is displayed in the drop-down list.
6. If you want to specify the date and time when the technology must switch from learning mode to monitoring mode, click the **Set until** link and select a date and time. If a date and time has been configured before, the date and time is displayed next to the name of the mode.

The mode of the technology is configured.

Managing technology inheritance

You can enable technology inheritance if you want technology settings configured for the parent object to be automatically applied to a Sensor component or monitoring point. This means the Sensor component gets the technology settings of the Central Node component, and the monitoring point gets the settings of the component on which the monitoring point was added (Central Node or Sensor).

If necessary, you can disable technology inheritance for the Sensor component or the monitoring point. You may need to do this to specify special technology settings.

To enable or disable technology inheritance for a Sensor component or monitoring point:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant component or monitoring point.

   This opens a window with information about the component or monitoring point.
3. Set the **Inherit Server technologies** toggle switch as necessary.

Technology inheritance for a Sensor component or monitoring point is enabled or disabled.

Viewing the alert table

Detected signs of targeted attacks and intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure are displayed as a table of alerts.

The table of alerts does not display information on objects which satisfy at least one of the following conditions:

- The object has reputation *Trusted* in the KSN database.
- The object is digitally signed by a trusted vendor:
  - Kaspersky.
  - Google.
  - Apple.
  - Microsoft.

Information about these alerts is saved to the application log. You can view this information.

Information about alerts in the application log is rotated every night when the maximum allowed number of alerts is reached:

- Alerts generated by the **(IDS) Intrusion Detection System** and **(URL) URL Reputation** components have a maximum of 100,000 alerts for each component.
- All other alerts have a maximum of 20,000 alerts for each module or component.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, rotation is performed on all SCNs and then synchronization with the PCN is performed. After synchronization, all deleted alerts are automatically deleted from the PCN.

NDR alerts are generated if a valid KATA+NDR license key is present. After the license key expires, created alerts remain available for viewing, but new alerts are not created.

The table of alerts is in the **Alerts** section. It displays general KATA alerts and NDR alerts.

> By default, this section displays information only on alerts that were not processed by users. To also display information on processed alerts, enable the **Show closed alerts** toggle switch in the upper-right corner of the window.

You can sort alerts in the table by **Created** or **Updated**, **Importance**, **Source**, **Destination**, **Technologies**, and **State** columns.

The table of alerts contains the following information:

1. **VIP** specifies if the alert has a status with special access rights. For example, alerts with the VIP status cannot be viewed by users with the **Security officer** role.
2. **Created** is the time when the alert was created, and **Updated** is the time when the alert was updated.
3. —Alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.

   Alerts can have one of the following importance levels:

   - **High**, marked with the symbol—the alert has a high level of importance.
   - **Medium**, marked with the symbol—the alert has a medium level of importance.
   - **Low**, marked with the symbol—the alert has a low level of importance.
4. **Detected**—One or multiple categories of detected objects. For example, when the application detects a file infected with the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad virus, the **Detected** field shows the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad category for this alert.
5. **Details**—Brief summary of the alert. For example: the name of a detected file or URL address of a malicious link.
6. **Source**—Address of the source of the detected object. For example, this can be the email address from which a malicious file was sent, or the URL from which a malicious file was downloaded.
7. **Destination**—Destination address of a detected object. For example, this can be the email address of your organization's mail domain to which a malicious file was sent, or the IP address of a computer on your corporate LAN to which a malicious file was downloaded.
8. **Technologies** are names of the application modules or components that generated the alert while scanning.

   The **Technologies** column may indicate the following application modules and components:

   - **(YARA) YARA**.
   - **(SB) Sandbox**.
   - **(URL) URL Reputation**.

- **(IDS) Intrusion Detection System**.
- **(AM) Anti-Malware Engine**.
- **(NDR: IDS) Intrusion Detection System**.
- **(AA) Aggregated Alerts**.
- **(CASB) Cloud Access Security Broker**.

9. **State**—Alert status depending on whether or not this alert has been processed by the user of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

   Alerts can have one of the following states:

   - **New** for new alerts.
   - **In process** for alerts that are already being processed by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user.
   - **Rescan** for alerts resulting from a rescan of an object.
   - **Closed** for closed alerts. Closed alerts are displayed in the table if the **Show closed alerts** toggle switch is enabled.

- **Servers** is the list of names of servers which created the alert. Servers belong to the tenant that you are managing in the application web interface. This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Assigned to** is the name of the user to which the alert is assigned.

If information in the table column is displayed as a link, you can click the link to open the filter menu, in which you can select the settings for filtering by this column.

The **Intrusion Detection System** module consolidates information about processed network events in one alert when the following conditions are simultaneously met:

- The name of the triggered rule, version of application databases, and source all match for network events.
- No more than 24 hours elapsed between the events.

One alert is displayed for all network events that meet these conditions. The alert notification contains information only about the first network event.

Configuring the alert table display

You can show or hide columns and change the order of columns in the alert table.

To configure the alert table display:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. In the heading part of the table, click .

   This opens the **Customize table** window.

3. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

   If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

   > At least one check box must be selected.

4. If you want to change the order of columns in the table, move the mouse cursor to the row with the relevant parameter, click and move the row to its new place.

5. If you want to restore default table display settings, click **Restore defaults**.

6. Click **Apply**.

The alert table display is configured.

Filtering, sorting, and searching alerts

You can filter alerts to be displayed in the table of alerts for one or several columns of the table, or search for alerts in certain table columns according to the search criteria you specify.

You can create, save, and remove filters, and start filtering and searching alerts based on the conditions specified in saved filters.

> If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you cannot save filters on the PCN.

Filters are saved for each user on the server on which they were created.

You can also sort alerts in the table by **Created** or **Updated**, **Importance**, **Source**, **Destination**, **Technologies**, and **State** columns.

> By default, this section displays information only on alerts that were not processed by users. To also display information on processed alerts, enable the **Show closed alerts** toggle switch in the upper-right corner of the window.

Filtering alerts by VIP status

You can filter alerts and search for alerts in the table of alerts based on the ☆ criterion, which indicates whether the alert has a status with special access rights. For example, alerts with the VIP status cannot be viewed by users with the **Security officer** role.

To filter alerts by VIP status:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the heading of the **VIP** column to expand the list of filter settings.

3. Configure alert filtering settings:

   - If you want the table of alerts to display only alerts that have the VIP status, select **VIP**.
   - If you want the table of alerts to display all alerts, select **All**.

   If neither is selected, the table shows all alerts.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by time

You can filter alerts and search for them in the table of alerts based on the **Created** value, that is, the time when the alert was created, and the **Updated** value, that is, the time when the alert was updated.

To filter or search alerts by time:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the **Created** or **Updated** link to open the list of alert display periods.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following alert display periods:

   - **All** if you want the application to display all alerts in the table.
   - **Last hour** if you want the application to display alerts that occurred during the last hour in the table.
   - **Last day** if you want the application to display alerts that occurred during the last day in the table.
   - **Custom range** if you want the application to display alerts that occurred during the period you specify in the table.

4. If you have selected the **Custom range** event display range, do the following:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the alert display period.

   b. Click **Apply**.

   The calendar closes.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering alerts by level of importance

You can filter alerts based on the **Importance** criterion, which indicated the alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.

To filter alerts by importance:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click to expand the filter settings list.

3. Select one or several of the following alert importance levels:

   - **Low** for low-importance alerts.
   - **Medium** for medium-importance alerts.
   - **High** for high-importance alerts.

   If no value is selected, the table shows alerts of all importance levels.

4. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by categories of objects detected

You can filter alerts and search the table of alerts for specific alerts based on the **Detected** criterion, which indicates one or multiple categories of the object detected in the event. For example, if you want the table to display alerts about files infected by a specific virus, you can set a filter based on the name of this virus.

To filter or search alerts by category of the detected object:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the **Detected** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following alert filtering operators:

   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**

4. In the entry field, type the name of a category (for example, Trojan) or several characters from the name of a category.

5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

6. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by obtained information

You can filter alerts and search the table of alerts for specific alerts based on the **Details** criterion, which refers to brief information about the alert. For example: the name of a detected file or URL address of a malicious link.

To filter or search alerts by obtained information:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the **Details** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list on the left, select one of the following search criteria:

   - **Details**. The search will encompass all data on the detected object.
   - **ID**.
   - **File name**.
   - **File type**.
   - **MD5**.
   - **SHA256**.
   - **URL**.
   - **Domain**.
   - **User Agent**.
   - **Subject**.
   - **HTTP status**.
   - **Object source**.
   - **Object type**.
   - **Autosend to Sandbox**.
   - **Event ID (NDR)**.
   - **Asset ID (NDR)**.
   - **Communication IP address** .

- **Network Anomaly Detection rule ID (NDR)**.
- **Network Anomaly Detection rule template ID (NDR)**.
- **Object ID**.
- **Actions on object**.

4. In the drop-down list on the right, select one of the following alert filtering operators:
   - **Contains**.
   - **Does not contain**.
   - **Equal to**
   - **Not equal to**.
5. In the text box, enter one or several characters of alert information.
6. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
7. Click **Apply**.

   The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by source address

You can filter alerts and search the table of alerts for specific alerts based on the **Source** criterion, which indicates the alert source address. For example, this can be the email address from which a malicious file was sent, or the IP address of the computer on your corporate LAN to which a malicious file was downloaded.

To filter or search alerts by source address:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.
2. Click the **Source** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following alert filtering operators:
   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**
   - **Matches the pattern**
   - **Does not match the pattern**
4. In the text box, type one or more characters of the source address of the detected object.

5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
6. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by destination address

You can filter alerts and search the table of alerts for specific alerts based on the **Destination** criterion, which indicates the alert destination address. For example, this can be the email address of your organization's mail domain to which a malicious file was sent, or the IP address of a computer on your corporate LAN to which a malicious file was downloaded.

To filter or search alerts by destination address:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.
2. Click the **Destination** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following alert filtering operators:
   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**
   - **Matches the pattern**
   - **Does not match the pattern**
4. In the text box, type one or more characters of the destination address of the detected objects.
5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
6. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by server name

You can filter alerts and search for alerts in the table of alerts based on the **Servers** criterion, which indicates the name of servers that created the alert.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, servers belong to the tenant that you are managing in the application web interface. Filtering is available only on the PCN.

To filter or search alerts by server name:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click **Servers** to expand the list of servers on which alerts were created.

3. Select check boxes next to one or multiple server names.

4. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by technology name

You can filter alerts and search the table of alerts for specific alerts based on the **Technologies** criterion, which indicates the names of application modules or components that created the alert.

To filter alerts by technology name:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the **Technologies** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following alert filtering operators:

   - **Contains** if you want the application to display alerts generated by the specified application module or component.
   - **Does not contain** if you want the application to hide alerts generated by the specified application module or component.
   - **Equal to** if you want the application to display alerts generated by the specified application module or component.
   - **Not equal to** if you want the application to hide alerts generated by the specified application module or component.
   - In the drop-down list to the right of the alert filtering operator that you have selected, select the name of the technology which you want to filter alerts.

   For example, if you want the application to display alerts generated as a result of scanning by the Sandbox component, select the **Contains** filtering operator and the name of the **(SB) Sandbox** component.

4. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.

5. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by the status of their processing by the user

You can filter alerts and search for them in the table of alerts based on the **State** criterion—alert status depending on whether or not this alert has been processed by the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user.

To filter or search alerts by the status of their processing by the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. To include processed alerts in the filter, turn on the Show closed alerts switch in the upper right corner of the window.

3. Click the **State** link to open a list of possible alert options depending on the status of their processing by the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user.

4. Select one of the following values:

   - **New** if you want the application to display new alerts that are not being processed by any user yet.
   - **In process** if you want the application to display alerts that a user of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is already processing.
   - **Rescan** if you want the application to display alerts that resulted from a rescan.
   - **Closed** if you want the application to display closed alerts. This filter is available if the **Show closed alerts** toggle switch is enabled.

5. Click **Apply**.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering and searching alerts by the name of the user to which they are assigned

You can filter or find alerts in the alert table by the **Assigned to** attribute, that is, the name of the user to which the alert is assigned.

To filter or find alerts by the name of the user to which they are assigned:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the **Assigned to** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. Select the check box next to the name of the user that you need.

If you want to find a user name in the list, start typing the user name in the text box, then select the check box next to the found user name.

You can select multiple user names.

4. Click **Apply**.

Only alerts assigned to the specified user are displayed in the alert table.

Sorting alerts in the table

You can sort alerts in the table by **Created** or **Updated**, **Importance**, **Source**, **Destination**, **Technologies**, and **State** columns.

To sort alerts in the table of alerts:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. If you want to sort the alerts by date, click one of the icons to the right of the **Created** (if the table is displaying alert creation dates) or **Updated** (if the table is displaying alert update dates) column header:

   - ↑ to display newer alerts at the top of the table.
   - ↓ to display older alerts at the top of the table.

3. If you want to sort the alerts by the level of importance, to the right of the ≡ icon, click one of the following icons:

   - ↑ to display high importance alerts at the top of the table.
   - ↓ to display low importance alerts at the top of the table.

4. If you want to sort alerts by the address of the source of the detected object, click one of the icons to the right of the **Source** column header:

   - ↑ to sort in ascending order.
   - ↓ to sort in descending order.

5. If you want to sort alerts by the address of the destination of the detected object, click one of the icons to the right of the **Destination** column header:

   - ↑ to sort in ascending order.
   - ↓ to sort in descending order.

6. If you want to sort alerts by the name of the technology that made the detection, click one of the icons to the right of the **Technologies** column header:

   - ↑ to sort alphabetically, A–Z.
   - ↓ to sort alphabetically, Z–A.

7. If you want to sort alerts by the state of processing by the user, click one of the icons to the right of the **State** column header:

   - ↑ to sort alerts in order of processing **New** - **Rescan** - **In process** - **Closed**.
   - ↓ to sort alerts in order of processing **Closed** - **In process** - **Rescan** - **New**.

Quickly creating an alert filter

To quickly create an alert filter:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Do the following to quickly add filter conditions to the filter being created:

   a. Position the mouse cursor on the link containing the table column value that you want to add as a filter condition.

   b. Left-click it.

   This opens a list of actions to perform on the value.

   c. In the list that opens, select one of the following actions:

   - **Add to filter**, if you want to include this value in the filter condition.
   - **Exclude from filter**, if you want to exclude the value from the filter condition.

3. If you want to add several filter conditions to the filter being created, perform the actions to quickly add each filter condition to the filter being created.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Saving filters

You can save the set of filters to the alert table.

To save applied filters:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Configure filtering settings for one or more columns of the table.

3. Click **Saved filters** and select **Save current filter**.

   The filter is saved with the default name that contains the selected filtering settings.

4. If you want to rename a saved filter:

   a. Click **Saved filters**.

      The list of saved filters is displayed.

   b. Hover over a filter and click .

   c. Rename the filter and click .

The filter is saved.

Resetting the alert filter

To clear the alert filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click to the right of the header of the table of alerts column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table of alerts displays only alerts matching the filter criteria you have set.

Recommendations for processing alerts

Information about alerts produced by AM (Anti-Malware Engine), SB (Sandbox), YARA, IOC, IDS (Intrusion Detection System), NDR: IDS, and AA (Aggregated Alerts) technologies that is displayed in the right part of the window includes recommendations on processing these alerts.

To view alert details:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the line containing the alert whose information you want to view.

This opens a window containing information about the alert.

Recommendations for processing AM alerts

In the right part of the window, the **Recommendations** section displays recommendations that you can follow, as well as the number of alerts that have attributes in common with the alert you are working on.

You can follow the following recommendations:

1. Under **Qualifying**, expand the **Find similar alerts** list.

   A list of attributes is displayed that can be used to find similar alerts, and the number of similar alerts for each attribute.

2. Select one of the following attributes:

   - **By MD5**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the MD5 hash. The MD5 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

   - **By SHA256**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the SHA256 hash. The SHA256 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

   - **By host name**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The host name from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

   - **By URL**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the URL from the alert you are working on.

Recommendations for processing SB alerts

In the right part of the window, the **Recommendations** section displays recommendations that you can follow, as well as the number of alerts or events that have attributes in common with the alert you are working on.

You can follow the following recommendations:

- Under **Qualifying**, expand the **Find similar alerts** list.

  A list of attributes is displayed that can be used to find similar alerts, and the number of similar alerts for each attribute.

  Select one of the following attributes:

  - **By MD5**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the MD5 hash. The MD5 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

  - **By SHA256**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the SHA256 hash. The SHA256 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- **By host name**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The host name from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- **By URL**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the URL from the alert you are working on.

Recommendations for processing YARA alerts

In the right part of the window, the **Recommendations** section displays recommendations that you can follow, as well as the number of alerts or events that have attributes in common with the alert you are working on.

You can follow the following recommendations:

- Under **Qualifying**, expand the **Find similar alerts** list.

  A list of attributes is displayed that can be used to find similar alerts, and the number of similar alerts for each attribute.

  Select one of the following attributes:

  - **By MD5**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the MD5 hash. The MD5 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

  - **By SHA256**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the SHA256 hash. The SHA256 hash of the file from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

  - **By host name**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The host name from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

  - **By URL**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the URL from the alert you are working on.

Recommendations for processing IDS alerts

In the right part of the window, the **Recommendations** section displays recommendations that you can follow, as well as the number of alerts or events that have attributes in common with the alert you are working on.

You can follow the following recommendations:

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar alerts by IP address**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The host name or IP address from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar alerts by URL**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column, the URL. The URL from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Add to exclusions**.

  This opens the **Add IDS rule to exclusions** window. If you want to add an IDS rule that was used to create the alert to exclusions, enter a comment in the **Description** field and click **Add**.

The IDS rule is added to exclusions and is displayed in the exclusion list in the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection on the **IDS** tab in the application web interface.

- Under **Investigation**, select **Find similar events by URL**. Click the link to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. In the search criteria, the search filter is configured to use the **URI** from the alert you are working on.

- Under **Investigation**, select **Find similar events by IP address**. Click the link to display the **Threat Hunting** event table in a new browser tab. In the search criteria, the search filter is configured to use the **RemoteIP** from the alert you are working on.

- In the **Investigation** section, click **Download IDS artifact** to download the file with alert data.

- In the **Investigation** section, click **Download PCAP file** to download the file with intercepted traffic data.

Recommendations for processing NDR:IDS and AA alerts

In the right part of the window, the **Recommendations** section displays recommendations that you can follow, as well as the number of alerts or events that have attributes in common with the alert you are working on.

You can follow the following recommendations:

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar alerts by source IP**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Source** column. The host name or IP address from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar alerts by destination IP**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Destination** column. The host name or IP address from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar events by URL**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column. The URL from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- Under **Qualifying**, select **Find similar alerts by intrusion detection rule**. Click the link to display the **Alerts** alert table in a new browser tab. The alerts are filtered by the **Details** column. The scan result from the alert you are working on is highlighted in yellow.

- In the **Download** section, click **Download PCAP file** to download the file with intercepted traffic data.

Viewing alerts

The web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform displays the following types of alerts that the user should keep track of:

- A file has been downloaded or an attempt was made to download a file to a corporate LAN computer. The application detected this file in mirrored traffic on the organization's local network or in ICAP data of HTTP and FTP traffic, as well as HTTPS traffic if the administrator has configured SSL certificate replacement on the proxy server.
- A file has been sent to the email address of a user on the corporate LAN. The application detected this file in copies of email messages received via the POP3 or SMTP protocol, or received from the virtual machine or server with Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway if it is being used in your organization.
- A website link was opened on a corporate LAN computer. The application detected this website link in mirrored traffic on the organization's local network or in ICAP data of HTTP and FTP traffic, as well as HTTPS traffic if the administrator has configured SSL certificate replacement on the proxy server.
- Network activity has occurred in which the IP address or domain name of a corporate LAN computer was detected. The application detected this network activity in mirrored traffic on the organization's local network.
- Processes have been started on a corporate LAN computer. The application detected the processes using the Endpoint Agent component installed on computers belonging to the corporate IT infrastructure.

If a file was detected, the following information may be displayed in the application web interface depending on which application modules or components generated the alert:

- General information about the alert and the detected file (for example, the IP address of the computer on which the file was detected, and the name of the detected file).
- Results of the virus scan of the file performed by AM Engine.
- Results of scanning the file for signs of intrusion into the corporate IT infrastructure, performed by the YARA module.
- Results of the file behavior analysis performed by the Sandbox component.
- Results of analysis of APK executable files in the cloud infrastructure using machine learning technology.

If a website link was detected, the following information may be displayed in the application web interface depending on which application modules or components generated the alert:

- General information about the alert and the detected website link (for example, the IP address of the computer on which the website link was detected, and the address of the website link).
- Results of the link scan performed by the URL Reputation module for detecting of signs of malware, phishing URL addresses and URL addresses previously used by hackers for targeted attacks on the corporate IT infrastructure.

If the application detects network activity of the IP address or domain name of a computer on a corporate LAN, the application web interface may display the following information:

- Details of the alert and detected network activity.
- Results of web traffic scanning for signs of intrusion into the corporate IT infrastructure according to preset rules, performed by the Intrusion Detection System module (IDS).
- Results of network activity scanning performed using user-defined IDS rules.

Alerts can be managed by users with the following roles: **Security officer** and **Senior security officer**. Users with the **Security auditor** role can view alerts.

Viewing alert details

To view alert details:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the line containing the alert whose information you want to view.

   This opens a window containing information about the alert.

General information about an alert of any type

The title of the alert details window displays the alert ID. The ☆ or ★ icon will be displayed next to the status depending on whether the alert has VIP status.

The upper part of the window containing alert information may display the following general information about the alert:

- **State**—Alert status depending on whether or not this alert has been processed by the user of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- **Importance**—Alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.
- **Server** is the name of the server where the detection was generated. Servers belong to the organization you are managing in the application web interface. This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Host**—Domain name of the computer where the alert occurred.
- **Data source**—Source of the data. For example, SMTP Sensor or SPAN Sensor.
- **Time created** is the time when the alert was created.
- **Time updated** is the time when the alert details were updated.

You can configure email notifications about new alerts.

Information in the Object information section

The **Object information** section can display the following event information about the detected object:

- File name.

  To expand the **Copy value to clipboard** action, click the link with the file name.

- File type. For example, ExecutableWin32.

  The **Find on Kaspersky TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

  Click **Download** to download the file to your computer's hard drive.

  The file is downloaded in the form of a ZIP archive encrypted with the password "infected". The name of the file inside the archive is replaced by the file's MD5 hash. The file extension of file inside the archive is not displayed.

- File size in kilobytes.

- **MD5**—MD5 hash of a file.

  Clicking the link with **MD5** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on Kaspersky TIP**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of a file.

  Clicking the **SHA256** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on Kaspersky TIP**.
  - **Find on virustotal.com**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **Sender's email address**—Email address from which the message containing the file was sent.
- **Recipient's email address**—One or more email addresses to which the message containing the file was sent.
- **Original sender email address**—Source email address from which the message containing the file was sent.

  This field is populated with data from the 'Received' header.

- **Original recipient email address**—Source email address(es) to which the message containing the file was sent.

  This field is populated with data from the 'Received' header.

- **Subject**—Message subject.
- **Sender server IP** —IP address of the first mail server in the message delivery chain.

Clicking the **Sender server IP** link with opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **Headers**—Extended set of email message headers. For example, it can contain information about email addresses of the message sender and recipients, about mail servers that relayed the message, and the type of content in the email message.

Information in the Alert details section

The **Alert details** section can display the following information about an alert:

- , or —Alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.
- **Time** is the time when the alert was created.
- **Detected**—One or multiple categories of detected objects. For example, when the application detects a file infected with the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad virus, the **Detected** field shows the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad category for this alert.
- **Method**—HTTP request method. For example, Get, Post, or Connect.
- **URL**—Detected URL. It may also contain a response code.

  Clicking the link with **URL** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on Kaspersky TIP by URL**.
  - **Find on Kaspersky TIP by domain name**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **Referer**—URL from which the user was redirected to the website link requiring attention. In the HTTP protocol, it is one of the headers in the client's request containing the request source URL.
- **Destination IP**—IP address of the resource requested by the user or the application.

  Clicking the link with **Destination IP** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on Kaspersky TIP**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **User name**—Name of the user account whose actions led to the event.
- **Request/Response**—Length of the request and response.

Information in the Information about scanning using NDR technologies section

The **Information about scanning using NDR technologies** section can display the following results:

- **Monitoring point**: the name of the monitoring point whose traffic was the reason for the registration of a network traffic event and the creation of an alert.
- **Network interface ID**: the ID of the monitoring point whose traffic was the reason for the registration of a network traffic event and the creation of an alert.

Information in the Information about KSMG scan section

The **Object ID** field displays the ID of the email message assigned to it by Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway.

The following results can be displayed under **Actions on object**:

- **Skipped** indicates that the message was delivered to the email addresses listed to the right of this action.
- **Attachment deleted** indicates that the message was delivered without attachments to the email addresses listed to the right of this action.
- **Deleted** indicates that the message was not delivered to the recipients with the email addresses listed to the right of this action. The sender of the message does not get a non-delivery report.
- **Rejected** indicates that the message was not delivered to the recipients with the email addresses listed to the right of this action. The sender of the message gets a non-delivery report.
- **Disinfected** indicates that the message was delivered with a disinfected attachment to the email addresses listed to the right of this action.
- **Placed in KSMG Backup** indicates that the message was placed in the Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway Backup.
- **Sent as an attachment** indicates that the message was delivered as an attachment to the email addresses listed to the right of this action.
- **Sent as a blind carbon copy** indicates that a blind carbon copy of the message was sent to the email addresses specified to the right of this action.

The number of actions applied to the message is determined by the number of rules by which the KSMG application processed the message.

Information in the Scan results section

The **Scan results** section can display the following results:

- The names of the application modules or components that generated the alert.
- One or multiple categories of the detected object. For example, the name of the virus can be shown: Virus.Win32.Chiton.i.
- Versions of databases of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform modules and components that generated the alert.
- Results of alert scanning by application modules and components:
  - **YARA** is the result of streaming scans of files and objects received at the Central Node. The result includes the category of the detected file in YARA rules (for example, category name susp_fake_Microsoft_signer can be displayed).

    The **Find on Kaspersky TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.
  - **SB** (Sandbox)—Results of the file behavior analysis performed by the Sandbox component.

    You can click **Sandbox detection** to open a window with detailed information about the results of file behavior analysis.

    > File behavior analysis results are displayed only if Sandbox has made a detection for this file. If the file is uploaded to the system and then scanned in Sandbox, but the component does not detect a threat, results are not displayed.

    The **Find on Kaspersky TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

    You can download a detailed log of file behavior analysis in all operating systems by clicking **Download debug info**.

    The file is downloaded in the form of a ZIP archive encrypted with the password "infected". The name of the scanned file inside the archive is replaced by the file's MD5 hash. The file extension of file inside the archive is not displayed.

    > By default, the maximum hard drive space for storing file behavior scan logs is 300 GB in all operating systems. Upon reaching this limit, the application deletes the oldest file behavior scan logs and replaces them with new logs.
  - **URL** (URL Reputation) is the category of a malicious, phishing URL or an URL that has been previously used by attackers for targeted attacks on corporate IT infrastructures.
  - **AM** (Anti-Malware Engine)—Category of the detected object based on the anti-virus database. For example, the name of the virus can be shown: Virus.Win32.Chiton.i.

    Click the link to display the category of the object in the Kaspersky Threats database.

    The **Find on Kaspersky TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

    Click **Download** to download the file to your computer's hard drive.

- **AA** (Aggregated Alerts) means the alert was created as a result of processing aggregate and nested NDR events received by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from third-party systems using the NDR API methods. The events are registered using the EXT technology.

- **NDR: IDS** (Intrusion Detection System) means the alert was created as a result of processing an NDR event resulting from a detection of anomalies in traffic that indicate an attack (for example, an NDR event for a detection of ARP spoofing indicators). Corresponds to the name of the network traffic event that caused the alert to be created.

- **CASB** (Cloud Access Security Broker) means the alert was created as a result of detecting an employee's request to a cloud service for which monitoring is enabled.

Information in the IDS rule section

The **IDS rule** section displays information about the alert made by the IDS (Intrusion Detection System) technology as a hex-editor matrix.

The *hex-editor* or hexadecimal editor is an application for editing data where data is represented as a sequence of bytes.

The upper part of the matrix displays the length of the IDS rule.

The left part of the matrix displays the data of the rule in text format.

The **Rule details** subsection of the **IDS rule** section displays the header of the IDS rule and data of the IDS alert in the Suricata format. For example, it can display information about the direction of the traffic (`flow`), the HTTP request method (`http_method`), the HTTP header (`http_header`), the security ID (`sid`).

Information in the URL section

Under **URL**, the URL that triggered the alert is displayed.

Clicking the **URL** link opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find alerts.
- Find on Kaspersky TIP by URL.
- **Find on Kaspersky TIP by domain name**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Information in the IP addresses of detection-related devices section

Under **IP addresses of alert-related devices**, information about devices associated with the alert is displayed:

- **Protocol**.
- **Source IP**.
- **Source MAC**.
- **Destination IP**.
- **Destination MAC**.

Information in the Network event section

The **Network event** section can show the following information about the link to the website followed on the user's computer:

- **Date** and **Time**—Date and time of the network event.
- **Detected**—Name of the service for which an access attempt by an employee was detected.
- **Method**—Type of HTTP request, for example, GET or POST.
- **Source IP**—IP address of the computer on which the website link was opened.
- **Destination IP**—IP address of the computer on which the website link was opened.
- **URL**—Type of the HTTP request, for example, GET or POST, and the URL of the website.

  If the alert is created for a file extracted from traffic, the URL specifies the protocol used to transmit the traffic from which the file was extracted. Possible protocols: HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, SMTP, POP3, SMB, NFS.

  Clicking the link with the URL opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on Kaspersky TIP by URL**.
  - **Find on Kaspersky TIP by domain name**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.
- **User Agent**—Information about the browser that was used to download the file or to attempt to download the file, or to open the website link. It is the text string included in the HTTP request, which normally contains the name and version of the browser as well as the name and version of the operating system installed on the user's computer.

Scan results in Sandbox

File behavior analysis results are displayed only if Sandbox has made a detection for this file. If the file is uploaded to the system and then scanned in Sandbox, but the component does not detect a threat, results are not displayed.

The object scan results window in Sandbox can display the following details:

- **File**—Full name and path of the scanned file.
- **File size**—Size of the file.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of a file.

Clicking the link with **MD5** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find on Kaspersky TIP.**
- **Find alerts.**
- **Copy value to clipboard.**
- **Detected**—One or multiple categories of detected objects. For example, when the application detects a file infected with the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad virus, the **Detected** field shows the Trojan-Downloader.JS.Cryptoload.ad category for this alert.
- **Time processed**—Time when the file was scanned.
- **Database versions**—Versions of the databases of modules and components of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform that created the alert.

Information about the file behavior analysis results is provided for each operating system in which the Sandbox component performed a scan. For the Windows 7 operating system (64-bit), you can view file activity logs for two Sandbox component scan modes: **Quick scan mode** and **Full logging mode**.

The following activity logs may be available for each scan mode:

- **Activity list**—Actions of the file within the operating system.
- Activity tree—Graphical representation of the file analysis process.
- **HTTP activity log**—Log of the file's HTTP activity. It contains the following information:
  - **Destination IP**—IP address to which the file is attempting to go from the operating system.
  - **Method**—HTTP request method, for example, GET or POST.
  - **URL**—URL of the website link that the file is attempting to open from the operating system.

Clicking links in the **Destination IP** column opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find on Kaspersky TIP**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking a link in the **URL** column opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find on Kaspersky TIP by URL**.
- **Find on Kaspersky TIP by domain name**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **IDS activity log**—Log of the file's network activity. It contains the following information:
  - **Source IP**—IP address of the host on which the file is saved.
  - **Destination IP**—IP address to which the file is attempting to go from the operating system.
  - **Method**—HTTP request method, for example, GET or POST.
  - **URL**—URL of the website link that the file is attempting to open from the operating system.

  Clicking links in the **Destination IP** column opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on Kaspersky TIP**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.

  Clicking a link in the **URL** column opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

  - **Find on Kaspersky TIP by URL**.
  - **Find on Kaspersky TIP by domain name**.
  - **Find alerts**.
  - **Copy value to clipboard**.
- **DNS activity log**—Log of the file's DNS activity. It contains the following information:
  - Request type (Request or Response).
  - **DNS name**—Domain name of the server.
  - **Type**—Type of DNS request, for example A or CNAME.
  - **Host**—Host name or IP address that was interacted with.

Clicking a link in the **DNS name** or **Host** columns opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find on Kaspersky TIP**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

- **MITRE ATT&CK matrix**—Classification of activities performed by the file being scanned, according to the MITRE ATT&CK matrix. Contains cards with names of the activities and MITRE ATT&CK techniques.

  By clicking the link with the name of the activity, you can view detailed information about the file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

- **Screenshots**—Screenshots taken during the execution of the file.

  You can view the screenshots in the application web interface or download a Zip archive containing the screenshots.

You can click **Download full log** in the lower part of each scanning mode (**Quick scan mode** and **Full logging mode**) to download the log of file behavior analysis in each operating system to your computer

Viewing the activity tree

The starting point of the activity tree is the launch of the detected file. In the activity tree, this process is indicated by an icon titled *Run sample*. To the right of it, the first spawned process and all the processes that this process has spawned are displayed. Each process displayed to the right of the parent is a child process.

You can view detailed information about a process by clicking the button in its card.

When viewing the process card, you need to take into account the following special considerations involved in information display:

- The card can display information for multiple processes at the same time if their activity type, process ID (the "pid" field in the card), and ID of the parent process (the "Parent_pid" field in the card) are the same. In this case, the card displays an icon with the number of aggregated activities:

.
- For processes that we recommend to pay attention to, the card displays the and icons.

If necessary, you can center the activity tree, expand or collapse all process cards, zoom in and out, and maximize the window using the toolbar in the lower-right corner of the window.

Information in the Change log section

The **Change log** section can display the following detection information:

- Date and time of alert modification.
- Author of modifications.

  For example, **System** or the application user name.

- Modification that occurred with the alert.

  For example, an alert may be assigned to a VIP group, or it may be marked as processed.

Sending alert data

You can provide Kaspersky with data about an alert (except the URL Reputation technology) for further analysis.

To do so, you must copy the alert data to the clipboard and then email it to Kaspersky.

Alert data may contain information about your organization that you consider to be confidential. You must consult with the security department of your organization for approval to send this data to Kaspersky for further analysis.

To copy alert details to the clipboard:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the line containing the alert whose information you want to view.

   This opens a window containing information about the alert.

3. Click the **Provide the alert details to Kaspersky** link in the lower part of the window containing alert information.

   This opens the **Show more** window.

4. View the alert data to be sent to Kaspersky.

5. If you want to copy this data, click the **Copy to clipboard** button.

   The alert data will be copied to the clipboard. You will be able to send it to Kaspersky for further analysis.

Viewing alert relations

From the alert card, you can go to the table of events, assets, or network sessions associated with this alert.

To view the relations of an alert:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Open the alert whose relations you want to view.

3. In the alert card, click the arrow next to the **Show related** button.

4. Select a relation of the alert from the list:

   - **Assets**.
   - **Network sessions**.
   - **Network Anomaly Detection**.
   - **Observable objects by file name**.
   - **Observable objects by MD5**.
   - **Observable objects by domain name**.
   - **Observable objects by IP address**.

   This opens the corresponding section of the web interface with a table of relations.

User actions performed on alerts

When managing the application web interface using a **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** account, you can take the following actions on alerts:

- Assign an alert to yourself or to another user of the application web interface.

  You can view all alerts assigned to a specific user by filtering alerts based on the status of their processing by the user.

- Mark the alert as processed.

  You can view all alerts that have been processed by a specific user by filtering alerts based on the status of their processing by the user.

- Add a comment to an alert.

  You can find commented alerts based on keywords within comments by filtering alerts based on received information.

- Mark the alert as VIP.

  This action is available only to users with the **Senior security officer** role. Users with this role can view all alerts with the VIP status by filtering alerts by VIP status.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view information about alerts but cannot edit this information.

Assigning alerts to a specific user

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can assign an alert or multiple alerts to themselves or to another user of the application web interface with the **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** role.

To assign an alert to yourself or to another user of the application web interface:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Select the check boxes next to the alert or alerts that you want to assign to yourself or to another user.

   You can select all alerts by selecting the check box in the table header.

3. In the pane that is displayed in the lower part of the window, expand the list of users by clicking on the arrow to the right of the **Assign to** button.

4. Select the user to whom you want to assign the alerts.

   This opens the action confirmation window. You can also leave a comment that will be displayed in the alert change history.

5. Click **Proceed**.

The alerts will be assigned to the selected user.

You can view all alerts assigned to a specific user by filtering alerts based on the status of their processing by the user.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot assign alerts to themselves or to other users of the application web interface. Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles also cannot assign alerts to users with the **Security auditor** role.

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles, while managing an alert, can assign this alert to themselves or to another user of the application web interface with the **Senior security officer** or **Security officer** role.

To assign an alert to yourself or another user while managing the alert:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Open the alert that you want to assign to yourself or to another user of the application.

   This opens the card of the alert.

3. If you want to assign the alert to yourself, click **Assign to @Me**.

4. If you want to assign the alert to another user of the application, click the arrow to the right of the **Assign to** button and select the user to which you want to assign the alert.

The alert is assigned to the selected user.

Marking the completion of single alert processing

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot assign and process alerts.

To close an individual alert in the table of alerts:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. In the **State** column of the alert that you want to close, click the status of the alert.

3. In the list of actions, select **Close alert**.

The alert is closed.

To close an alert while managing the alert:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Open the alert that you want to close.

3. In the upper-right corner of the window, click **Close alert**.

The alert is closed. If the alert was assigned to a different user, it is marked as processed by you.

You can view all alerts that have been processed by a specific user by filtering alerts based on the status of their processing by the user or by using the **Show closed alerts** toggle switch.

If an alert based on a scan using the IDS or URL technology that is similar to a processed alert is received within the day (from 00:00 a.m. to 11:59 p.m.), the application either creates a new alert or updates the information in the identical alert with the **New** or **In process** status.

When you close an NDR alert, the aggregate event and nested NDR events associated with the alert are marked as resolved, and other alerts associated with these events are also closed. If a closed NDR alert is reopened, the associated closed NDR event is not reopened.

Marking the completion of alerts processing

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot perform bulk operations on alerts. Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot assign and process alerts.

To close one or more alerts:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Select the check boxes opposite those alerts that you want to close.

   You can select all alerts by selecting the check box in the table header.

3. In the pane that appears in the lower part of the window, click the **Close alert** button.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

You can also leave a comment that will be displayed in the alert change history.

4. Click **Proceed**.

The selected alerts are closed. If the alerts were assigned to other users, they are marked as closed by you.

You can view all closed alerts by filtering alerts based on the status of their processing by the user or by using the **Show closed alerts** toggle switch.

If an alert based on a scan using the IDS or URL technology that is similar to a processed alert is received within the day (from 00:00 a.m. to 11:59 p.m.), the application either creates a new alert or updates the information in the identical alert with the **New** or **In process** status.

When you close an NDR alert, the aggregate event and nested NDR events associated with the alert are marked as resolved, and other alerts associated with these events are also closed. If a closed NDR alert is reopened, the associated closed NDR event is not reopened.

Modifying the status of VIP alerts

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can assign the VIP status to alerts or clear the VIP status of alerts.

To toggle the VIP status for alerts:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Select the check boxes for alerts for which you want to change the VIP status.

   You can select all alerts by selecting the check box in the table header.

3. Do one of the following:

   - If you want to mark alerts as VIP, click the **Mark as VIP** button in the pane that appears in the lower part of the window.
   - If you want to remove the VIP status from alerts, in the pane that is displayed in the lower part of the window, in the **Mark as VIP** drop-down list, select **Mark as non-VIP**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

   You can also leave a comment that will be displayed in the alert change history.

4. Click **Proceed**.

The VIP status of alerts is changed.

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security auditor** roles can view all events with the VIP status by filtering alerts by VIP status.

Adding a comment to an alert

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles can add a comment to an alert.

To add a comment to an alert:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Select an alert for which you want to add a comment.

   This opens a window containing information about the alert.

3. In the comment field under the **Change log** section, enter a comment for the alert.

4. Click **Add**.

   The comment will be added to the alert and will be displayed in the **Change log** section of this alert.

You can find commented alerts based on keywords within comments by filtering alerts based on received information.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view comments for alerts but cannot edit the comments.

Monitoring network traffic events

The application registers events when analyzing network traffic. Network traffic analysis is part of the NDR functionality.

A *network traffic event* (also referred to as an *NDR event*) is a record containing information about the detection of certain changes or conditions in network traffic that require the attention of an information security professional. NDR events are registered and sent to the Central Node. The server processes the received events and stores them in the database.

An *aggregate event* is a special type of event that is registered when a specific sequence of NDR events is received. Aggregate events group NDR events that have some common characteristics or are related to the same process.

The application registers aggregate events in accordance with event correlation rules. An *event correlation rule* describes the conditions for scanning sequences of events. When a sequence of NDR events is detected that matches the conditions of the rule, the application registers an aggregate event that mentions the name of the triggered rule. Aggregate events are registered with system event type code 8000000001.

Event correlation rules are built into the application and are applied independently of the security policy.

After the application is installed, the original event correlation rules are used. To improve the effectiveness of the rules, Kaspersky regularly updates the databases with rule sets. You can update correlation rules by installing updates.

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server registers NDR events in accordance with the settings specified for registering event types. You can configure these settings in the Configure event types section.

To reduce the number of frequently repeated NDR events that do not require user attention, you can create allow rules for events. NDR events that match allow rules are not registered. For example, you can use an allow rule to temporarily disable the registration of all events from a specific monitoring point. You can view allow rules for events in the **Settings** section, **Allow rules** subsection. The EVT type is specified for such rules.

The application stores NDR events and aggregate events in a database on the Central Node. The total amount of stored records cannot exceed the configured limit. If the amount exceeds the limit, the application automatically deletes the oldest records. However, if a minimum storage duration is configured, the corresponding message is logged in the application message log when deleting records whose age is less than the minimum duration. You can configure the event and incident storage settings.

You can view information about NDR events and aggregate events in the **Network traffic events** section. This section displays detailed information about NDR events and aggregate events and allows loading information for any period from the server database.

Actions with network traffic events are available to users with the **Security officer** or **Senior security officer** role. Users with the **Security auditor** role can view events.

NDR events are generated if a valid KATA+NDR license key is present. After the license key expires, created events remain available for viewing, but related alerts are not created.

NDR event scores and severity levels

NDR events in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform are scored on a scale from 0.0 to 10.0.

If an NDR event is associated with a device, the application takes into account the available information about the device when calculating the score. The importance level of the device and the risks associated with this device are taken into account.

The *base score* specified for the NDR event type in the table of event types is used as the baseline for calculating the score.

If an NDR event is not associated with a device, the score of the event is equal to the base score.

The score determines the severity level of the NDR event. Depending on the numerical value of the score, an NDR event can have one of the following severity levels:

- *Low* (scores 0.0–3.9)

  Low-severity NDR events usually do not require immediate response.

- *Medium* (scores 4.0–7.9)

  Medium-severity NDR events contain information that must be looked at. These events may require a response.

- *High* (scores 8.0–10.0)

  High-severity NDR events contain information that can have critical impact. These events require an immediate response.

NDR event registration technologies

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform registers NDR events using one of the following technologies:

- *Intrusion Detection* (IDS)

  This technology registers NDR events related to the detection of anomalies in traffic that are indicators of attacks (for example, an NDR event can be registered indicators of ARP spoofing are detected).

- *External* (EXT)

  This technology registers aggregate and nested NDR events that are received by the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from third-party systems using the NDR API methods.

- *Asset Management* (AM)

  This technology registers NDR events involving the detection of information about devices in traffic or in data received from EPP applications (for example, an NDR event can be registered when a device is found to have a new IP address).

- *Endpoint Protection Platform* (EPP)

  This technology registers NDR events for threats detected by Kaspersky applications that protect workstations and servers (for example, a malware detection event).

NDR event statuses

NDR event statuses allow the application to display the course of processing the received information by security officers.

The following statuses can be assigned to NDR events and aggregate events:

- *New*.

  This status is assigned to all NDR and aggregate events when they are registered in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

- *In process*.

  You can assign this status to NDR events and aggregate events that are being processed (for example, during the investigation of the reasons why these events or incidents were registered).

- *Resolved*.

  You can assign this status to NDR events and aggregate events that already have been processed (for example, the investigation of the reasons of their registration is closed).

  After the *Resolved* status is assigned, the application ignores NDR events and aggregate events with this status when determining the security status of devices displayed in the table of device and on the network interaction map.

Statuses of NDR events and aggregate events must be changed manually. You can assign statuses sequentially in the order from *New* to *Resolved*. However, you can skip the *In process* status. After changing the status of an NDR event or aggregate event, you cannot re-assign one of the previous statuses.

If the *Resolved* status is assigned to an aggregate event, the status of all nested NDR events is automatically changed to *Resolved*, and the associated alerts are also closed.

If the *Resolved* status is assigned to an NDR event, aggregate events under which this NDR event is nested and the associated alerts are not closed.

Table of registered NDR events

You can view the table of registered NDR events and aggregate events in the **Network traffic events** section.

By default, the table of registered NDR events and aggregate events is updated in real time. At the top of the table, events with the most recent last-seen date and time values are displayed.

> The last-seen date and time of an NDR or aggregate event may not be the same as the date and time of its registration. For an NDR event, the last-seen date and time may be updated during the regeneration period of that event type. For an aggregate event, the last-seen date and time is updated to match the last-seen date and time of nested NDR events.

Parameters of NDR events and aggregate events are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Start**.

  For an NDR event, the date and time when the event was registered. For an aggregate event, the date and time when the first nested event was registered. You can view the date together with the time, or just the date or time by itself. To choose the information to display, select the check boxes opposite the **Date** and **Time** settings.

- **Last seen**

  For an NDR event, the last-seen date and time of the NDR event. May contain the date and time of the event registration or the date and time when the event repetition counter was incremented if the event registration conditions recurred during the regeneration period. The value of the regenerate counter is displayed in the **Total appearances** column. For an aggregate event, the latest last-seen date and time among events included in the aggregate event. Just like with the **Start** column, you can view the date together with the time, or just the date or time by itself.

- **Title**.

  The title configured for the NDR event type.

- **Score**.

  The calculated score for the NDR event. This numerical value determines the severity level of the NDR event. Depending on the severity level, the score can be displayed in one of the following colors:

  - Red for a *High*-severity event.
  - Yellow for a *Medium*-severity event.
  - Blue for a *Low*-severity event.

- **Source**.

  Address of the source of network packets. You can enable or disable the display of addresses and ports of address information by using the following settings (their abbreviated names displayed in table columns are indicated in the parentheses): **IP address**, **Port number (P)**, **MAC address**, **VLAN ID (VID)**, and **Application-level address**. If additional address spaces were added to the application, you can enable or disable the display of the names of address spaces by using the **Show address spaces** setting when configuring the table of devices.

- **Destination**.

  Address of the destination of network packets. The display of address information can be configured the same way as the **Source** column.

- **Protocol**.

  Application layer protocol for which the event was registered.

- **Technology**.

  Icon corresponding to the technology used to register the NDR event.

- **Total appearances**.

  For an NDR event, the value of the repetition counter after the registration of the NDR event during the regeneration period. A value greater than 1 means that the conditions for registering an NDR event recurred N – 1 times. For an aggregate event, this column displays a value of 1.

- **ID**.

  Unique identifier of the registered NDR or aggregate event.

- **Application**.

  Information about applications that caused the conditions for registering the NDR event. The NDR event stores information about applications received from EPP applications.

- **Application user**.

  Information about the user account that started the application specified in the **Application** column.

- **Status**.

  Icon corresponding to the status of the NDR event or aggregate event.

- **Description**.

  The description specified for the NDR event type.

- **End**.

  For an NDR event, the date and time when the *Resolved* status was assigned or the regeneration period of the NDR event. For an aggregate event, the latest resolution date and time across nested NDR events. Just like with the **Start** column, you can view the date together with the time, or just the date or time by itself.

- **Triggered rule**.

  For an NDR event, the name of the Process Control rule or Intrusion Detection rule that, when triggered, caused the NDR event to be registered. For an aggregate event, the name of the correlation rule that, when triggered, caused the aggregate event to be registered.

- **Monitoring point**.

  Monitoring point whose traffic invoked registration of the NDR event.

- **Event type**.

  Numeric code assigned to the NDR event type.

- **Marker**.

  A set of icons that you can assign to any NDR or aggregate event to easily find NDR or aggregate events based on a criterion that is not present in the table.

When viewing the table of network traffic events, you can configure, filter, search, and sort records and navigate to related items.

Configuring the table of registered events

You can configure the display of the event table as follows:

- Show or hide the information panel.
- Show or hide events included in incidents.
- Show or hide the columns of the table and reorder the columns.

To configure the event table display:

1. In the **Network traffic events** section, click the ⚙ icon.

   This opens the table display configuration window.

2. If you want to show the information panel displaying the number of events with *New* or *In process* status, select the **Display information panel** check box.

3. Under **Display embedded lists**, select a display mode for NDR events nested in aggregate events:

   - **Flat**. In this mode, the table of events displays all NDR events without regard to event nesting.
   - **Tree**. In this mode, aggregate events are displayed as a tree of nested events and other aggregate events. If you want nested items to be displayed regardless of the current filtering and search settings, select the **Show embedded events when filtering** check box.

4. Under **Displayed columns**, select check boxes next to the parameters that you want to view in the table. You must select at least one parameter.

5. If you want to display the columns in a different order, select the name of the column that you want to move left or right in the table, and click the buttons with the up and down arrows.

   For the **Start**, **Last seen**, and **End** columns, you can also change the order in which the date and time values are displayed, and for the **Source** and **Destination** columns, you can change the order in which the source and destination addresses of network packets are displayed. To do this, select the value that you want to move left or right in the table, and click the buttons with the up and down arrows.

The selected columns are displayed in the new order in the table in the **Network traffic events** section.

Viewing events nested inside an aggregate event

You can use the following modes to view NDR events nested in aggregate events in the table of network traffic events:

- Flat mode. In this mode, the table of NDR events displays all events without regard to event nesting.
- Tree mode. In this mode, aggregate events are displayed as trees that can be collapsed and expanded using the + and − buttons next to the titles of aggregate events.

You can change the display mode when configuring the table of events.

Viewing details of an NDR event

Details of NDR and aggregate events are displayed in the details area in the **Network traffic events** section of the application web interface.

To view the details of an NDR or aggregate event:

In the **Network traffic events** section, select an event.

The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window, displaying detailed information about the selected NDR or aggregate event.

Changing the status of an NDR event

You can change the following statuses of NDR events and aggregate events:

- *New*. This status can be changed to *In process* or *Resolved*.
- *In process*. This status can be changed to *Resolved*.

The *Resolved* status cannot be changed.

If the NDR event is associated with a risk, when assigning the *Resolved* status to this event, you can also change the risk status to *Accepted*.

To change the status of NDR events and aggregate events when managing the table of events:

1. In the **Network traffic events** section in the table of events, select the NDR events or aggregate events whose status you want to change.
2. Open the **Change status** drop-down list in the toolbar.
3. In the drop-down list, select the command for the status that you want to assign.

Some items of the drop-down list are not available in the following cases:

- The **In process** item is unavailable if the selected items do not include NDR events or aggregate events with the *New* status.
- The **Resolved** item is unavailable if the selected items do not include NDR events or aggregate events with the *New* or *In process* status.

If all NDR events or aggregate events that satisfy the current filtering and search conditions are selected, and the number of selected items is greater than 1000, the application does not check their statuses. In this case, the **In process** and **Resolved** items are both available. However, the **In progress** item can be used to assign a status of *In progress* only to events and incidents that have a status of *New*.

This opens a confirmation prompt window.

4. If the selected NDR events are associated with risks, and you want to simultaneously assign a status of *Accepted* to all these risks, select **Assign the Accepted status for all risks related to the event** if one event is selected or **Assign the Accepted status for all risks related to the events** if multiple events are selected.

   Risks may become associated with events when registering certain types of NDR events using the Asset Management technology.

5. In the prompt window, click **OK**.

Adding markers

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can assign markers to NDR events and aggregate events in the **Network traffic events** section of the application web interface.

A *marker* is an icon that helps you find NDR events and aggregate events by criteria that are not present in the table.

To assign a marker to an NDR or aggregate event:

1. In the **Network traffic events** section, in the row with the NDR event or aggregate event, click in the ☆ column.
2. In the menu that is displayed, select the marker that you want to assign to this NDR event or aggregate event.

   You can select one of seven markers provided by the application. The meaning of each marker is up to you to decide.

3. If you need to remove a marker, select **No marker** in the menu.

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security auditor** roles can view NDR events or aggregate events with a marker.

Copying NDR events to a text editor

You can copy information about NDR events and aggregate events from the table of network traffic events to any text editor. Information is copied from the columns currently displayed in the table.

Events can be copied if no more than 200 NDR events and aggregate events are selected.

To copy NDR and aggregate events into a text editor:

1. In the **Network traffic events** section, select the NDR events and aggregate events that you want to copy to a text editor.
2. Right-click to open the context menu of one of the selected events.
3. In the context menu, select one of the following commands:
   - **Copy details of the event** if a single NDR or aggregate event is selected.
   - **Copy details of the selected events** if multiple NDR events or aggregate events are selected.
4. Open any text editor.
5. In the text editor window, paste the events (for example, by pressing **Ctrl**+**v**).

The copied event information can be edited in the text editor. Information about multiple events is delimited by empty lines.

Downloading traffic for events

When viewing the table of events, you can download traffic related to registered NDR events and aggregate events. Traffic is downloaded as a PCAP file (if one event is selected) or as a ZIP archive containing PCAP files (if multiple events are selected).

You can download traffic if no more than 200 events are selected in the table of events (also counting events nested inside aggregate events).

Traffic for events is downloaded from the application database. Traffic can be stored in the database for registered NDR events if traffic saving is enabled for these events. The application can also directly save traffic in the database upon request to download traffic, using traffic dump files. These files are used for temporary storage and are automatically deleted as new traffic arrives (the rotation period depends on the amount of traffic and the application storage configuration). To guarantee the availability of traffic for download, we recommend enabling traffic saving for the relevant event types and configuring traffic storage in the database in accordance with the rate of traffic accumulation the rate of event registration.

To download a traffic file for NDR events or aggregate events:

1. In the **Network traffic events** section, select the NDR events and aggregate events for which you want to download traffic.
2. Click **Download traffic**.
3. If file generation takes a long time (more than 15 seconds), the file generation operation becomes a background operation. In that case, follow these steps to download the file:

   a. Click the button in the application web interface menu.

   This opens the list of background operations.

b. Wait for the file generation operation to complete.

c. Click the **Download file** button.

Your browser saves the downloaded file. Depending on your browser's settings, a window may be displayed on your screen in which you can specify the path and name of the downloaded file.

Creating a directory for exporting events to a network share

You can export events and save a file with exported events on a network share of the Server computer. For the network share, you can use the Network File System (NFS) protocol, which lets you mount a share of another computer (for example, an NFS server export point) in the local file system of the Server computer. The directory is created and the network share is mounted using standard tools of the operating system.

When using the NFS protocol, the rpcbind software package is activated in the operating system. Keep in mind that attackers may try to use this software package to carry out some types of DDoS attacks. To eliminate the threat of intrusion, you must configure the firewall. In CentOS Stream, we recommend using the firewalld utility to configure the firewall.

Manually creating a directory and mounting a network share

To create a directory for saving files to a network share:

1. Open the console of your operating system.
2. Create a local directory in which you will mount the network share. To do so, enter the following command:

   ```
   mkdir <full path to the local directory>
   ```

   For example:

   ```
   mkdir ~/nfsshare
   ```

3. After creating the directory, enter the command to mount the network share:

   ```
   sudo mount -t nfs <name or IP address of the remote computer>:\
   <full path to the network share>\
   <full path to the local directory>
   ```

   For example:

   ```
   sudo mount -t nfs nfs-server.example:/nfsshare ~/nfsshare
   ```

4. Confirm the success of the mounting:

   ```
   mount | grep <full path to the local directory>
   ```

   For example:

   ```
   mount | grep ~/nfsshare
   ```

   If the mount is successful, the displayed information contains the name or IP address of the remote computer, the name of the network share, and the name of the parent directory.

Automatically mounting a network share

To configure automatic mounting of a network share in the CentOS operating system:

Open the /etc/fstab file for editing as root and add the following line to the file:

```
<name or IP address of the remote computer>:<full path to the network share> <full path to the local directory> nfs defaults 0 0
```

For example:

```
nfs-server.example:/nfsshare /home/user1/nfsshare nfs defaults 0 0
```

Monitoring of observables

When analyzing SPAN traffic, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform generates a list of *observables*. Observables are files and URLs to which access attempts from the organization's internal network have been registered.

The application extracts information from the following protocols:

- File information: HTTP, FTP-Data, SMTP, SMB, NFS.
- URL information: HTTP, SMTP, DNS.

Users with the **Administrator** role can manage the observables storage settings.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can view the table of observables, object information, related alerts, and manage exclusion rules for observables.

Users with the **Security officer** role can view the table of observables, object information, related alerts, and exclusion rules for observables.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the table of observables, object information, related alerts, exclusion rules for observables, and observable storage settings.

> This functionality is available if a current KATA+NDR license key is present. After the license key expires, the list of observables in the table is no longer updated, and management of exclusions and storage settings for observables becomes unavailable.

In the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, a list of observables is generated for each PCN and SCN server. If an alert is created on an SCN, when viewing this alert on the PCN, drilling down to observables is not possible. When searching for alerts related to observables on the PCN, the search results include alerts generated on the PCN and SCNs.

Viewing the table of observables

To view the table of observables:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Observables** tab.

   The table of observables is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **ID** is the unique ID of the object.
- **Domain** is the domain part of the URL from which the file was requested.

  The complete URL is displayed in the file information.
- **Name** is the name of the file.
- **MD5** is the MD5 hash of the file.
- **SHA256** is the SHA256 hash of the file.
- **Source** is the IP address of the computer from which the object was sent.
- **Destination** is the IP address of the computer to which the object was delivered.
- **URL reputation** is information about the reputation of the URL in the KSN database. Possible values: **Trusted**, **Untrusted**.
- **Detection** represents the file scan results in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. It can have the following values: **Detected** (identified as malicious), **Not detected** (identified as safe), **Excluded** (added to exclusions from scanning by the user or excluded from scanning by the system based on the following criteria: file size less than 100 KB and/or HTML format).
- **Protocol** is the protocol used to transfer the object.
- **Date and time of detection** is the time when the object was detected in network traffic.

By default, the data in the table is automatically updated. If you want to freeze the data, set the **Update** toggle switch to **Disabled**. If necessary, you can update the data manually by clicking the ↻ button.

Special considerations involved in displaying items in the table of observables

When viewing the table, take into account the following special considerations involved in displaying the items:

- If the application registers multiples access attempts to the same object, for each case, a separate record is created in the table.
- The maximum number of items that can be displayed in the table is 200.

Viewing information about an observable

To view information about an observable:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Observables** tab.
3. In the table, select the object for which you want to view information.
   This opens a window containing information about the object.

The window contains the following information:

- **ID** is the unique ID of the object.
- **Protocol** is the protocol used to transfer the object.
- **File name** is the name of the requested file.
- **URL** is the URL from which the file was requested.
  The maximum displayed number of characters is 256.
- **MD5 hash** is the MD5 hash of the file.
- **SHA256 hash** is the SHA256 hash of the file.
- **Detection** represents the file scan results in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. It can have the following values: **Detected** (identified as malicious), **Not detected** (identified as safe), **Excluded** (added to exclusions from scanning by the user or excluded from scanning by the system based on the following criteria: file size less than 100 KB and/or HTML format).
- **URL reputation** is information about the reputation of the URL in the KSN database. Possible values: **Trusted**, **Untrusted**.
- **Date and time of detection** is the time when the object was detected in network traffic.
- **Source** are the name, IP address, and port of the computer from which the object was sent.
- **Destination** are the name, IP address, and port of the computer to which the object was sent.

Filtering, sorting, and searching observables

You can sort and filter the observables in the table of observables by one or more columns. Filters and search conditions are saved for each user on the server on which they were created.

You can also search for items in the table of observables.

Filtering observables

To filter the table of observables:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Observables** tab.

   The table of observables is displayed.
3. Click the ▼ icon in the column by which you want to filter the observables.
4. If you want to filter the observables by the **Domain**, **Name**, **MD5**, **SHA256** columns, do the following in the opened window:

   a. In the **Including** and/or **Excluding** fields, enter the following values:

   - Domain or IP address to filter by the **Domain** column.
   - Full name of the observable to filter by the **Name** column.
   - MD5 or SHA256 hash of the file to filter by the **MD5** or **SHA256** columns.

   b. If you want to combine multiple values in one filter, click the **Add condition** button. You can add a value of the same type or of a different type.
5. If you want to filter the observables by the **Source** or **Destination** columns, do the following in the opened window:

   a. In the **Including** and/or **Excluding** fields, select a value type from the drop-down list and enter a corresponding value in the field to the right of the drop-down list.

   b. If you want to combine multiple values in one filter, click the **Add condition (OR)** button. You can add a value of the same type or of a different type.
6. If you want to filter the observables by the **URL reputation**, **Detection**, or **Protocol** columns, in the opened window, select the check boxes next to the required values and click the **OK** button.
7. If you want to filter the observables by the **Date and time of detection** column, in the opened window, select the start and end dates of the period for which you want to view observables, and click the **OK** button.

Objects matching the selected filtering conditions are displayed in the table of observables.

Sorting observables

You can sort the table of observables in the following ways:

- In the **Domain**, **Name**, and **Protocol** columns, alphabetically and by case: A–Z, a–z, Z–A, z–a.
- In the **MD5** and **SHA256** columns, in ascending or descending order.
- In the **Date and time of detection** column, from older to newer records and vice versa.
- In the **Source** and **Destination** columns, by IP address or port, in ascending or descending order.

Sorting is not available for the **URL reputation** and **Detection** columns.

To sort the table of observables:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Observables** tab.

   The table of observables is displayed.
3. Click the heading of the column by which you want to sort the objects.

The objects are sorted. A sorting icon appears next to the column name.

Searching for items in the table of observables

When creating a search query, you need to take into account the following special considerations:

- The search string is case-insensitive.
- Text enclosed in quotation marks is treated as an exact phrase and is searched for in its entirety.
- Text without quotation marks is treated as a set of tokens with a delimiter. In this case, the search results can match one or more, but not necessarily all tokens. Any characters other than letters and numbers are treated as delimiters. The search is performed only by tokens.

To find items in the table of observables:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Observables** tab.

   The table of observables is displayed.
3. In the upper-right corner, in the object search field on the control panel, enter the search query.

Records matching the entered search query are highlighted in yellow and displayed at the top of the table.

Search conditions are saved for each user on the server on which they were created.

Searching for alerts related to an observable

You can search and view alerts related to monitored objects.

To find alerts related to a monitored object from the object information window:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Observables** tab.
3. In the table, select the object for which you want to view information.

   This opens a window containing information about the object.
4. In the **Show related** drop-down list, select the criterion by which you want to find alerts related to the object: file name, MD5 hash of the file, domain name, or IP address.

The table of alerts filtered by the selected criterion is displayed.

To find alerts related to monitored objects in the table of monitored objects:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Observables** tab.
3. Select the check boxes next to the names of the monitored objects for which you want to find related objects.

   At least one check box must be selected.
4. In the **Show related** drop-down list, select the criterion by which you want to find alerts related to the object: file name, MD5 hash of the file, domain name, or IP address.

The table of alerts filtered by the selected criterion is displayed.

Monitoring of access to cloud services by employees of the organization

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can configure the monitoring of access to cloud services by the organization's employees. Cloud services include, for example, Microsoft Teams, Salesforce, Microsoft Office 365.

Configuring the monitoring of access to cloud services involves the following steps:

1. Enabling service discovery.

   When service discovery is enabled, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform displays a table of all cloud services and categories available in the application database.

2. Enabling the monitoring of access to services.

   Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform registers attempts of employees of the organization to gain access to services for which monitoring is enabled. When access to the service is detected, the application creates an alert. You can find these alerts by filtering alerts by the name of the CASB technology in the table of alerts or by viewing alert information in the **Alerts by technology** widget.

The functionality of monitoring access to cloud services is available if the application is activated with the KATA + NDR license key.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the settings of service monitoring. Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to this section of the web interface.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, service monitoring settings configured on a PCN are not applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN. You can configure service monitoring on each selected SCN server separately.

Enabling or disabling service discovery

To enable or disable service discovery:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Services** subsection.
2. Do one of the following:

   - If you want to enable cloud service discovery, set the **Discover services** toggle switch to **Enabled**.

     A table of all cloud services available in the application database is displayed.

   - If you want to disable cloud service discovery, set the **Discover services** toggle switch to **Disabled**.

     The table of services is hidden.

   Service discovery is enabled or disabled.

Viewing the table of services

You can find the table of services in the **Settings** section, **Services** subsection. The table of services is displayed if service discovery is enabled.

The table contains the following information:

- **Monitoring** indicates whether access of the organization's employees to the service is being monitored. Possible values: **Enable**, **Disable**.
- **Category** is the category of the service.
- **Services** is the name of the service.

The list of discoverable services, their names and categories may change after an update of the application databases. To update the list of services in the table, you need to disable and re-enable service discovery.

Enabling and disabling the monitoring of access to services

Before enabling the monitoring of access to a service, you need to make sure that its URL is not included in the list of exclusions from scanning. If an exclusion rule is enabled for a URL, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not generate alerts when detecting employees' access to the service, even if monitoring is enabled for it.

To enable or disable the monitoring of access to services:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Services** subsection.
2. If cloud service discovery is disabled, set the **Discover services** toggle switch to **Enabled**.

   A table of all cloud services available in the application database is displayed.
3. Select the check box to the left of the **Monitoring** column in the row with the name of the service.

   You can select one service, multiple services, or all services. To select all rules, select the check box in the header row.

   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
4. Do one of the following:

   - If you want to enable the monitoring of access to services, click the **Enable** button.
   - If you want to disable the monitoring of access to services, click the **Disable** button.

Monitoring of access to services is enabled or disabled.

Managing assets

Assets are all devices present in the local and internal network of the organization. To manage assets, you can view the table of devices in the **Assets** section of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface. You can also view information about interactions of devices and perform various actions on devices when managing the network interaction map and the topology map.

Viewing the table of devices

To manage devices, the application generates a table of devices. The application considers all devices in the table to be known devices.

To view the table of devices:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Devices** tab.

   The table of devices is displayed.

The table displays the following information:

- **Name** is the name that represents the device in the application.
- **Device ID** is the ID of the device assigned in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- **Status** is the device status that determines whether the device is allowed to be active on the corporate LAN. A device can have one of the following statuses:
  - **Authorized**. This status is assigned to a device that is allowed to be active on the network.
  - **Unauthorized**. This status is assigned to a device that is not allowed to be active on the network.
  - **Archived**. This status is assigned to a device if it is no longer in use or must not be used on the network, or if the device has not been active for a long time (30 days or more) and information about this device has not been updated.
- **Address information** lists MAC and/or IP addresses of the device. If a device has multiple network interfaces, each network interface can have a different MAC and/or IP address.
- **Category** is the name of the category that characterizes the functional purpose of the device. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform recognizes the following device categories:
  - **Server** for a computer on which server software is deployed.
  - **Network device** for a piece of network equipment (for example, a router, a switch).
  - **Workstation** for a stationary personal computer or operator workstation.
  - **Mobile device** for a portable electronic device with computing functionality.
  - **Laptop** for a portable personal computer.
  - **Printer** for a printing device.
  - **UPS** for an uninterruptible power supply connected to a computer network.
  - **Network camera** for a device that performs video surveillance and transmits digital imaging data.
  - **Gateway** for a device that connects networks by converting various interfaces (for example, Serial Ethernet) in networks with a heterogeneous data transmission medium and different protocols.
  - **Storage system** for a device that stores information inside memory systems.
  - **Firewall** for a device that act as a firewall to scan and block unwanted traffic.
  - **Switch** for a device that physically connects hosts of the local network.
  - **Virtual switch** for a device that logically combines physical switches or software switches for virtualization systems.
  - **Router** for a device that forwards network packets between segments of a computer network.
  - **Virtual router** for a device that logically combines physical routers or routers that use multiple independent routing and forwarding tables.

- **Wi-Fi** for an access point that provides wireless connection of devices from Wi-Fi networks.
- **Historian server** for a server with archived data.
- **Other** for a device that does not belong to any of the above categories.

- **Group** is the name of the group in which the device is placed in the device group tree (contains the name of the group itself and the names of all its parent groups).
- **Security state** is the security state of the device, which is determined by the existence of events related to the device. A device can have one of the following security states:
  - **Critical**. The device has associated events that have a 8.0–10.0 severity score.
  - **Warning**. The device has associated events that have a 4.0–7.9 severity score.
  - **OK**. The device has associated events that have a 0.0-3.9 severity score, or the device has no associated events.
- **Importance** is the importance of the device. Importance is assigned to the device in accordance with its category. A device can have one of the following importance ratings:
  - **High**. Assigned to devices of the **Server** category.
  - **Medium**. Assigned to devices of the following categories: **Network device**, **Workstation**, **Gateway**, **Storage system**, **Firewall**, **Switch**, **Virtual switch**, **Router**, **Virtual router**, **Wi-Fi**, **Historian server**.
  - **Low**. Assigned to devices of the following categories: **Mobile device**, **Laptop**, **Printer**, **UPS**, **Network camera**, or **Other**.
- **Last seen** is the date and time of the last recorded activity of the device.
- **Risks** lists the categories of risks detected for the device. By default, the device table displays information only for current risks. To display information for all risks, you can select the **Show remediated and accepted risks** check box when configuring the device table.
- **Last modified** is the date and time when the device information was last modified.
- **Created** is date and time when the device was added to the table of devices.
- **OS** is the name of the operating system installed on the device.
- **Hardware vendor** is the name of the vendor of the hardware of the device. In the details area, this setting is referred to as **Vendor** and is displayed on the **General** tab in the **Hardware settings** group.
- **Hardware Model** is the name of the device model. In the details area, this parameter is called **Model** and is displayed on the **General** tab under **Hardware**.
- **Hardware version** is the version number of the device hardware. In the details area, this setting is referred to as **Version** and is displayed on the **General** tab in the **Hardware settings** group.
- **Software vendor** is the vendor name of the device software. In the details area, this parameter is called **Vendor** and is displayed on the **General** tab under **Software**.
- **Software name** is the name of the device software. In the details area, this parameter is called **Name** and is displayed on the **General** tab under **Software**.

- **Software version** is the version number of the device software. In the details area, this parameter is called **Version** and is displayed on the **General** tab under **Software**.
- **Network name** is the name that represents the device on the network.
- **Labels** lists labels assigned to the device.
- **EPP application** is the short name of the EPP application installed on the device (if this application has communicated with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform).
- **EPP connection** is the status of the connection of the Endpoint Agent component installed on the device to the integration server. The following statuses are possible:
  - **Active**. Less than 24 hours have passed since the application last connected to the integration server.
  - **Inactive**. Over 24 hours have passed since the application last connected to the integration server.
  - **N/A**. The connection status is unknown.
- **Last connection to EPP** is the date of the last connection of the Endpoint Agent component to the integration server.

Viewing device information

To view device information:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Devices** tab.
3. Select the device for which you want to view information.

   This opens a window containing information about the device.

This window can contain the following information:

- Device information:
  - **Security status** is the security status of the device, which is determined by the existence of events related to the device. A device can have one of the following security states:
    - **Critical**. The device has associated events that have a 8.0–10.0 severity score.
    - **Warning**. The device has associated events that have a 4.0–7.9 severity score.
    - **OK**. The device has associated events that have a 0.0-3.9 severity score, or the device has no associated events.

- **Importance** is the importance of the device to the organization. Importance is assigned to the device in accordance with its category. A device can have one of the following importance ratings:
  - **High**. Assigned to devices of the **Server** category.
  - **Medium**. Assigned to devices of the following categories: **Network device**, **Workstation**, **Gateway**, **Storage system**, **Firewall**, **Switch**, **Virtual switch**, **Router**, **Virtual router**, **Wi-Fi**, **Historian server**.
  - **Low**. Assigned to devices of the following categories: **Mobile device**, **Laptop**, **Printer**, **UPS**, **Network camera**, or **Other**.
- **Status** is the device status that determines whether the device is allowed to be active on the corporate LAN. A device can have one of the following statuses:
  - **Authorized**. This status is assigned to a device that is allowed to be active on the network.
  - **Unauthorized**. This status is assigned to a device that is not allowed to be active on the network.
  - **Archived**. This status is assigned to a device if it is no longer in use or must not be used on the network, or if the device has not been active for a long time (30 days or more) and information about this device has not been updated.
- **Category** is the name of the category that characterizes the functional purpose of the device.
- **Network name** is the name that represents the device on the network.
- **Group** is the name of the group in which the device is placed in the device group tree (contains the name of the group itself and the names of all its parent groups).

- The **Main** tab:
  - **Created** is date and time when the device was added to the table of devices.
  - **Last modified** is the date and time when the device information was last modified.
  - **Last seen** is the date and time of the last recorded activity of the device.
  - **Address information** lists MAC and/or IP addresses of the device. If a device has multiple network interfaces, each network interface can have a different MAC and/or IP address.
  - **Hardware** contains information about the hardware characteristics of the device.
  - **Software** contains information about the software of the device.
  - **Endpoint Agent** contains information about the Endpoint Agent component. This section is displayed if the Endpoint Agent component is installed on the device.
  - **EPP application** contains information about the application that is being used in the role of an Endpoint Agent component.
  - **Router** is the attribute that marks the device as a routing device.

    If the application cannot determine the routing device attribute automatically, you must set the attribute manually. This attribute allows the application to use additional algorithms for detecting devices that interact with each other through a router.

- **Public key** is a public key for authenticating the device before establishing an SSH connection and scanning the device as part of security audit tasks.
- **Additional information** contains additional information about the device specified by the user of the application (for example, description of the physical location of the device).
- **Custom fields** is a set of non-standard information about the device, specified by the user of the application (for example, categories and protection classes of the device). Up to 16 custom fields can be specified for a device.
- **Dynamic fields** is a set of extended device information that is detected in traffic using the Device Information Detection method. A field is displayed if the application has detected extended information.

- **Addresses** tab:
  - **DHCP server** is the DHCP server attribute.

    This field displays **Yes** if the device has the DHCP server attribute.
  - **DHCP relay** is the DHCP relay attribute.

    This field displays **Yes** if the device has the DHCP relay attribute.
  - **Network interface <number>** contains information about the network interface of the device.
- The **Topology settings** tab contains information about the last active polling of the device, as well as information about the links of the device with other nodes.
- The **Equipment** tab contains information about BIOS programs and CPUs of the device, the amount of free RAM and free local disk space, and USB devices and optical drives being used. Information is displayed if it was obtained using the hardware monitoring functionality.
- The **Configurations** tab contains information about obtained device configurations. Information is displayed if it was obtained by configuration monitoring tasks.

Automatically adding and updating devices

The application can automatically add devices to the table and update device information. To enable automatic adding and updating of devices in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you must enable and configure the Device Activity Detection (AM) technology. If the technology is enabled, the application adds and updates device information using data obtained from network traffic and the integration with the Endpoint Agent component.

When adding a device, the application sets a default device name using the following template: **Device <internal device counter value>**. This internal counter value in the device name may not match the device ID that is displayed in the **Device ID** column.

The application can automatically update vendor information of network equipment based on the MAC addresses of devices. To identify vendors by MAC addresses, the application looks up the MAC addresses of devices in the ranges of addresses registered in the open database of the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). If the vendor of the network equipment is identified by its MAC address, the application keeps the name from the IEEE database.

After installing the application, a copy of the IEEE database is used, which contains information about MAC addresses and vendors at the time when the current version of the application was released. You can keep your local copy of the IEEE database up to date by installing updates.

Manually adding devices

This section provides instructions on how to manually add devices. You can manually add a new device to the table of devices. You must specify the MAC and/or IP address of the device that you want to add.

The MAC and IP addresses of the added device must be unique within the address space to which these addresses belong. If extra address spaces are added to the application, you can add devices with the same address to different address spaces.

Only users with the **Senior security officer** role can manually add devices.

After adding a device, you can add process monitoring settings for the device.

Adding a device while managing the table of devices

To add a device while managing the table of devices:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. In the table of devices on the **Devices** tab, select the device for which you want to view information.

   This opens a window containing information about the device.
3. Click **Add device**.
4. On the **Settings** tab, in the details area, specify your values in the device information fields.
5. On the **Address information** tab, in the details area:

   a. In the **DHCP server** drop-down list, select **Yes** if the device is a DHCP server.

   b. In the **DHCP relay** drop-down list, select **Yes** if the device is a DHCP relay.

   In learning mode, for devices that are DHCP servers and DHCP relays, these attributes are assigned automatically. You can disable automatic update of attributes (see step 6 of these instructions).

   In monitoring mode, only users with the **Senior security officer** role can edit attributes.

   c. In the **Address space** drop-down list, select the address space to which you want the device to belong.

d. In the **MAC address** field, enter the MAC address of the device.

e. In the **IP address** drop-down list select the IP address assignment type (static or dynamic), and enter the IP address of the device.

You can specify multiple IP addresses for the same network interface of a device. To create a list of IP addresses, do one of the following:

- If you want to add an IP address, click **Add IP address**.
- If you want to delete an IP address, click the icon to the right of the field with the IP address.

If the device has multiple network interfaces, create a list of the network interfaces:

- If you want to add a network interface, click **Add interface** below the settings of the last network interface.
- If you want to delete a network interface, click the icon to the right of the name of the network interface (if the device has two or more network interfaces).
- If you want to enter a different name for the network interface, click the icon to the right of the current name, and enter the new name in the displayed field.

6. On the **Settings** and **Address information** tabs, in the details area, enable or disable automatic modification of certain elements of device information. To do so, click the or icons.

> If you disable automatic updating of a device's IP address, automatic updating of the IP address type (static or dynamic) and address space information is also disabled.

7. On the **Custom fields** tab in the details area, create a list of custom fields, if necessary.
8. Click **Save**.

This button is unavailable if not all required information is specified in the device settings or if invalid values have been defined. The tab containing settings requiring corrected values is marked by the icon.

A new device appears in table of devices with the *Authorized* status.

Adding a device while managing the topology map

You can add a new device to the table of devices while managing the topology map.

To add a new device to the table of devices while managing the topology map:

1. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Topology map** tab.
3. Click **Add device**.
4. On the **Settings** tab, in the details area, specify your values in the device information fields.

5. On the **Address information** tab, in the details area:

   a. In the **DHCP server** drop-down list, select **Yes** if the device is a DHCP server.

   b. In the **DHCP relay** drop-down list, select **Yes** if the device is a DHCP relay.

      In learning mode, for devices that are DHCP servers and DHCP relays, these attributes are assigned automatically. You can disable automatic update of attributes (see step 6 of these instructions).

      In monitoring mode, only users with the **Senior security officer** role can edit attributes.

   c. In the **Address space** drop-down list, select the address space to which you want the device to belong.

   d. In the **MAC address** field, enter the MAC address of the device.

   e. In the **IP address** drop-down list select the IP address assignment type (static or dynamic), and enter the IP address of the device.

      You can specify multiple IP addresses for the same network interface of a device. To create a list of IP addresses, do one of the following:

      - If you want to add an IP address, click **Add IP address**.
      - If you want to delete an IP address, click the icon to the right of the field with the IP address.

      If the device has multiple network interfaces, create a list of the network interfaces:

      - If you want to add a network interface, click **Add interface** below the settings of the last network interface.
      - If you want to delete a network interface, click the × icon to the right of the name of the network interface (if the device has two or more network interfaces).
      - If you want to enter a different name for the network interface, click the icon to the right of the current name, and enter the new name in the displayed field.

6. On the **Settings** and **Address information** tabs, in the details area, enable or disable automatic modification of certain elements of device information. To do so, click the or icons.

   If you disable automatic updating of a device's IP address, automatic updating of the IP address type (static or dynamic) and address space information is also disabled.

7. On the **Custom fields** tab in the details area, create a list of custom fields, if necessary.

8. Click **Save**.

   This button is unavailable if not all required information is specified in the device settings or if invalid values have been defined. The tab containing settings requiring corrected values is marked by the . icon.

A new device appears in table of devices with the *Authorized* status.

Adding a device based on an unknown device node on the network interaction map

While managing the network interaction map, you can add a new device to the table of devices based on the node that represents the device that the application does not recognize.

To add an unrecognized device node to the table of devices:

1. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
2. On the **Network interaction map** tab, select the node representing the device that the application does not recognize.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Add to the table of devices**.
4. On the **Settings** tab, in the details area, specify your values in the device information fields.
5. On the **Address information** tab, in the details area:

   a. In the **DHCP server** drop-down list, select **Yes** if the device is a DHCP server.

   b. In the **DHCP relay** drop-down list, select **Yes** if the device is a DHCP relay.

   In learning mode, for devices that are DHCP servers and DHCP relays, these attributes are assigned automatically. You can disable automatic update of attributes (see step 6 of these instructions).

   In monitoring mode, only users with the **Senior security officer** role can edit attributes.

   c. In the **Address space** drop-down list, select the address space to which you want the device to belong.

   d. The **IP address** and **MAC address** fields are filled in automatically; we do not recommend changing these settings.

   You can specify multiple IP addresses for the same network interface of a device. To create a list of IP addresses, do one of the following:

   - If you want to add an IP address, click **Add IP address**.
   - If you want to delete an IP address, click the icon to the right of the field with the IP address.

   If the device has multiple network interfaces, create a list of the network interfaces:

   - If you want to add a network interface, click **Add interface** below the settings of the last network interface.
   - If you want to delete a network interface, click the × icon to the right of the name of the network interface (if the device has two or more network interfaces).
   - If you want to enter a different name for the network interface, click the icon to the right of the current name, and enter the new name in the displayed field.

6. On the **Settings** and **Address information** tabs, in the details area, enable or disable automatic modification of certain elements of device information. To do so, click the or icons.

   If you disable automatic updating of a device's IP address, automatic updating of the IP address type (static or dynamic) and address space information is also disabled.

7. On the **Custom fields** tab in the details area, create a list of custom fields, if necessary.

8. Click **Save**.

   This button is unavailable if not all required information is specified in the device settings or if invalid values have been defined. The tab containing settings requiring corrected values is marked by the . icon.

A new device appears in table of devices with the *Authorized* status. A node on the network interaction map that previously represented a device that the application did not recognize now represents a device that is known to the application.

Adding a device based on an unmanaged switch on the topology map

While managing the topology map, you can add a new device to the table of devices based on the node that represents an unmanaged switch.

To add an unmanaged switch node to the table of devices:

1. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.

2. On the **Network interaction map** tab, select the node representing the unmanaged switch.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.

3. Click **Add to the table of devices**.

4. On the **Settings** tab, in the details area, specify your values in the device information fields.

5. On the **Address information** tab, in the details area:

   a. In the **DHCP server** drop-down list, select **Yes** if the device is a DHCP server.

   b. In the **DHCP relay** drop-down list, select **Yes** if the device is a DHCP relay.

      In learning mode, for devices that are DHCP servers and DHCP relays, these attributes are assigned automatically. You can disable automatic update of attributes (see step 6 of these instructions).

      In monitoring mode, only users with the **Senior security officer** role can edit attributes.

   c. In the **Address space** drop-down list, select the address space to which you want the device to belong.

   d. In the **MAC address** field, enter the MAC address of the device.

   e. In the **IP address** drop-down list select the IP address assignment type (static or dynamic), and enter the IP address of the device.

You can specify multiple IP addresses for the same network interface of a device. To create a list of IP addresses, do one of the following:

- If you want to add an IP address, click **Add IP address**.
- If you want to delete an IP address, click the icon to the right of the field with the IP address.

If the device has multiple network interfaces, create a list of the network interfaces:

- If you want to add a network interface, click **Add interface** below the settings of the last network interface.
- If you want to delete a network interface, click the icon to the right of the name of the network interface (if the device has two or more network interfaces).
- If you want to enter a different name for the network interface, click the icon to the right of the current name, and enter the new name in the displayed field.

6. On the **Settings** and **Address information** tabs, in the details area, enable or disable automatic modification of certain elements of device information. To do so, click the or icons.

   If you disable automatic updating of a device's IP address, automatic updating of the IP address type (static or dynamic) and address space information is also disabled.

7. On the **Custom fields** tab in the details area, create a list of custom fields, if necessary.
8. Click **Save**.

   This button is unavailable if not all required information is specified in the device settings or if invalid values have been defined. The tab containing settings requiring corrected values is marked by the . icon.

A new device appears in the table of devices with the *Authorized* **status.** The node on the topology map that previously represented an unmanaged switch now represents a device that is known to the application.

Automatically assigning device status

When monitoring device activity, the application can automatically assign a status to discovered devices based on the obtained MAC and/or IP addresses of such devices. Status is assigned depending on the current asset management mode.

In learning mode, the application assigns the *Authorized* status to all devices (both new and previously added to the table), except for those devices that have had the *Unauthorized* status assigned previously.

In monitoring mode, the assigned status depends on whether the device that has exhibited activity is a device that the application knows or does not recognize. In this mode, status is assigned according to the following rules:

- If the device is new (it was absent from the device table at the time of discovery), this device is assigned the *Unauthorized* status.
- If the device is present in the table of devices with the *Authorized* or *Unauthorized* status, its status does not change.
- If a device is present in the table of devices with the *Archived* status, the device is assigned the *Unauthorized* status.

By default, if a device with the *Authorized* status has been inactive for more than 30 days and device information has not changed during this period, such a device is automatically assigned the *Archived* status. You can disable the automatic assignment of the *Archived* status when you change the device status manually (for example, to prevent the *Authorized* status from changing to *Unauthorized* for a device that rarely connects to the network).

When using connectors of the **Cisco Switch** type, network access of devices may be automatically restricted after these devices get the *Unauthorized* status. You need to take into account the specified settings of connectors of this type to prevent blocking necessary devices because of a status change.

Automatically grouping devices based on a criterion

This section contains instructions on how to automatically group devices based on a criterion. You can automatically group devices in the device group tree based on one of the following criteria:

- IP addresses belonging to subnets that are known to the application
- Device categories
- Device vendors

Only users with the **Senior security officer** role can automatically group devices.

Automatically grouping devices based on a criterion, starting from the root of the group tree

To automatically group devices based on a criterion, starting from the root of the group tree:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. In the **Network map** section, on the **Network interaction map** tab, click one of the following buttons for selecting a grouping criterion in the toolbar in the left part of the network interaction map display area:
   - to group devices by subnet.
   - to group devices by category.
   - to group devices by vendor.

   This opens a prompt window in which you can select a grouping option.
3. To group devices by category and vendor based on address spaces, in the prompt window, select the **Take into account the address spaces** check box.

4. Click on one of the following buttons, depending on the what you want to do:

   - To group devices by subnets, click **Group**.
   - To group devices by category and vendor based on address spaces in all groups of the device group tree, click **With child groups**.
   - To group devices by category and vendor based on address spaces only at the top level of the device group tree hierarchy, click **Selected only**.

   The application identifies devices that match the selected grouping criterion, creates groups for these devices, and arranges the devices into these groups.

Automatically grouping devices in a selected device group

To automatically group devices in a selected device group:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. In the **Network map** section, on the **Network interaction map** tab, select the group in which you want to automatically group devices.
3. Right-click to open the context menu.
4. In the context menu, select one of the following commands:

   - **Group by subnet**.
   - **Group by category**.
   - **Group by vendor**.

   This opens a prompt window in which you can select a grouping option.
5. To group devices by category and vendor based on address spaces, in the prompt window, select the **Take into account the address spaces** check box.
6. In the prompt window, click on one of the following buttons, depending on the what you want to do:

   - To group devices by subnets, click **Group**.
   - If you want to group devices by category or vendor in all child groups of the selected group, click **With child groups**.
   - If you want to group devices by category or vendor only in the selected group, click **Selected only**.

   The application identifies devices that match the selected grouping criterion, creates groups for these devices and arranges devices into these groups (devices in other groups are not affected).

Manually arranging devices into groups

This section contains instructions on how to manually arrange devices in the group tree. Only users with the Senior security officer role can arrange devices in the group tree.

Adding a device to a group

To add an individual device to a group when managing the table:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the device in the **Assets** section on the **Devices** tab or in the **Network map** section.

   In the **Network map** section, you can select the device to add to a group on the network interaction map as well as the topology map.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. In the details area, go to the **Settings** tab.
5. Click the icon in the right part of the **Group** field.

   The **Select group in tree** window appears.
6. In the device group tree, select the relevant group.

   If the relevant group is not in the tree, you can add it in the currently displayed **Select group in tree** window.
7. Click **Select**.

   The path to the selected group appears in the **Group** field.
8. Click **Save** in the details area.

   This button is unavailable if the device settings do not contain all the required information or if some of the specified settings are invalid. The tab containing settings requiring corrected values is marked by the . icon.

Adding multiple devices to a group

You can add multiple devices to a group while managing the table of devices.

Also, when managing the network interaction map, you can add to a group multiple known devices on the network interaction map. You can select component servers either individually or as part of collapsed groups that include the required devices. When you select a collapsed group, all devices in child groups at all nesting levels also end up in the selection.

To add multiple devices to a group when managing the table:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Devices** tab, select the devices that you want to add to a group.
4. Right-click to open the context menu.
5. In the context menu, select **Group management** → **Move to group**.

   The **Select group in tree** window appears.
6. In the device group tree, select the relevant group.

   If the relevant group is not in the tree, you can add it in the currently displayed **Select group in tree** window.
7. Click **Select**.

   The path to the selected group appears in the **Group** column.

To add multiple devices to a group when managing the network interaction map:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Security officer or Senior security officer role.
2. In the **Network map** section, on the **Network interaction map** tab, select the relevant component servers and/or collapsed groups.

   To select multiple component servers and/or groups, do one of the following:

   - Press and hold the **SHIFT** key, then use the mouse to select a rectangular area with the objects that you want to select.
   - Press and hold the **CTRL** key and click every object that you want to select.
3. Right-click to open the context menu.
4. In the context menu, select **Move to group**.

   The **Select group in tree** window appears.
5. In the device group tree, select the relevant group.

   If the relevant group is not in the tree, you can add it in the currently displayed **Select group in tree** window.
6. Click **Select**.

   The selected component servers are displayed inside the selected group.

Removing a device from a group

To remove an individual device from a group when managing the table:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the device in the **Assets** section on the **Devices** tab or in the **Network map** section.

In the **Network map** section, you can select devices to remove from a group on the network interaction map as well as the topology map.

The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.

3. Click **Edit**.

4. In the details area, go to the **Settings** tab.

5. In the **Group** field, delete the path to the group by clicking the × icon in the field (the icon is displayed if a group is defined).

6. Click **Save**.

   This button is unavailable if not all required information is specified in the device settings or if invalid values have been defined. The tab containing settings requiring corrected values is marked by the . icon.

After saving the changes for the device, its **Group** value is cleared and the device is assigned to the root level of the group tree.

Removing multiple devices from groups

You can remove multiple devices from groups when working with the table of devices. Devices selected for removal from groups can belong to the same group or to different groups.

Also, when managing the network interaction map, you can exclude from groups multiple known devices on the network interaction map. You can select component servers either individually or as part of collapsed groups that include the required devices. When you select a collapsed group, all devices in child groups at all nesting levels also end up in the selection.

To remove multiple devices from groups when managing the table:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.

2. Select the **Assets** section.

3. On the **Devices** tab, select the devices that you want to remove from groups.

4. Right-click to open the context menu.

5. In the context menu, select **Group management** → **Remove from groups**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.

6. In the prompt window, confirm the removal of devices from groups.

For all selected devices, the **Group** value is cleared and these devices are assigned to the root level of the group tree.

To remove multiple devices from groups when managing the network interaction map:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Security officer or Senior security officer role.

2. In the **Network map** section, on the **Network interaction map** tab, select the component servers in expanded groups and/or collapsed groups.

To select multiple component servers and/or groups, do one of the following:

- Press and hold the **SHIFT** key, then use the mouse to select a rectangular area with the objects that you want to select.
- Press and hold the **CTRL** key and click every object that you want to select.

3. Right-click to open the context menu.
4. In the context menu, select **Remove from group**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
5. In the prompt window, confirm the removal of devices from groups.

For all selected devices, the **Group** value is cleared and these devices are displayed outside of groups.

Moving servers with components and groups to other groups on the network interaction map

You can rearrange component servers and groups in the device group tree by dragging and dropping objects on the network interaction map. The location of moved component servers and groups in the device group tree changes in the same way as when you add devices to a group or remove devices from groups.

Only users with the Senior security officer role can move component servers and groups to other groups.

To move component servers and/or groups to other groups:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. In the **Network map** section, on the **Network interaction map** tab, select the relevant component servers and/or collapsed groups.

   To select multiple component servers and/or groups, do one of the following:

   - Press and hold the **SHIFT** key, then use the mouse to select a rectangular area with the objects that you want to select.
   - Press and hold the **CTRL** key and click every object that you want to select.
3. Point to one of the selected objects (a group or a component server).
4. Press and hold the **CTRL** key and drag the selected objects to the group you want (or to any space outside the groups if you want to move the selected objects to the top hierarchy level of the group tree).

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
5. In the prompt window, confirm the movement of the selected objects.

Device group tree

The purpose of the device group tree is to arrange devices in accordance with their function, location, or any other arbitrary attribute. Devices can be arranged into groups manually or automatically (by their IP addresses belonging to subnets, by category, or by vendor).

If a device is not included in any of the groups, such a device belongs to the top level of the group tree. Devices automatically added to the table are not included in any group by default.

You can see which groups devices belong to when viewing the device table. Paths to groups are indicated in the **Group** column. Device groups are also displayed on the network interaction map. However, devices that are in these groups might not be displayed if they do not satisfy the settings for filtering objects on the network interaction map.

Manually editing the device group tree

You can create a device group tree when working with the table of devices, with the network interaction map and the topology map. Tree creation functions are available in the **Create group tree** or **Select group in tree** window.

Only users with the Senior security officer role can create the device group tree.

To use the device tree group editing functionality:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. In the **Assets** section on the **Devices** tab or in the **Network map** section, do one of the following:
   - Open the **Create group tree** window by clicking **Configure groups**.

     The **Configure groups** button in the **Assets** section is available in the **Group management** drop-down list in the toolbar.

     The **Configure groups** button in the **Network map** section is only available on the **Network interaction map** tab.
   - Open the **Select group in tree** window while adding devices to groups. You can also open this window when filtering the table of devices by the **Group** column.

Any changes made to the device group tree in the **Create group tree** or **Select group in tree** window are applied immediately.

This section contains instructions on how to edit the device group tree.

Adding a group

To add a group to the device group tree:

1. In the **Create group tree** or **Select group in tree** window, add a new group in one of the following ways:
   - If the tree is empty and you want to add the first group, click **Add** or press either **INSERT** or **ENTER**.
   - If you want to add a group at the same hierarchy level as an existing group, select that group and press **ENTER**.
   - If you want to add a child group to an existing group, select this group and click **Add** or press **INSERT**.
2. Enter a name for the group in the text box.

   You can use letters, numbers, the space character, and the following special characters: `! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } ' , . - _ /`.

   The group name must satisfy the following requirements:
   - Begins and ends with any character other than a space.
   - Contains up to 255 characters.
   - Is not the same as the name of another group name under the same parent group (case-insensitive).
3. Click the ✓ icon to the right of the text box.

Renaming a group

To rename a group to the device group tree:

1. In the **Create group tree** or **Select group in tree** window, select the group that you want to rename.
2. Click **Rename** or press **F2**.
3. Enter the new name for the group in the text box.

   You can use letters, numbers, the space character, and the following special characters: `! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } ' , . - _ /`.

   The group name must satisfy the following requirements:
   - Begins and ends with any character other than a space.
   - Contains up to 255 characters.
   - Is not the same as the name of another group name under the same parent group (case-insensitive).
4. Click the ✓ icon to the right of the text box.

The new group name is displayed in device information for devices that are added to this group or to its child groups.

Deleting groups

Deleting a group does not delete devices added to the group. Devices from a deleted group are moved to the same hierarchy level in the device tree as the deleted group.

To delete a group from the device group tree:

1. In the **Create group tree** or **Select group in tree** window, select the group that you want to delete.
2. Click the icon.

   This opens a prompt window in which you can select a deletion option.
3. In the prompt window, click on one of the following buttons, depending on the what you want to do:

   - If you want to delete only the selected group and keep its child groups, click **Selected only**.
   - If you want to delete the selected group together with all of its child groups, click **With child groups**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
4. In the prompt window, click **OK**.

Moving a group

To move a group in the device group tree:

1. In the **Create group tree** or **Select group in tree** window, select the group that you want to move.
2. Use the arrow icons or the corresponding shortcuts (**ALT+↓**, **ALT+↑**, **ALT+←**, **ALT+→**) to move the group relative to other elements of the tree. If an operation cannot be performed, the icon of that operation is not available.

Searching for groups

You can find relevant groups in the device group tree by using the **Search groups** field in the **Create group tree** or **Select group in tree** window. The device group tree displays groups that match the search conditions. For child groups, their parent groups are also displayed.

Updating the tree

The makeup of the device group tree may be modified on the Central Node while you are managing the tree (for example, by another user who has connected to the Central Node).

You can manually update the tree by clicking the icon in the **Create group tree** or **Select group in tree** window.

Adding and removing device labels

This section provides instructions on how to add or remove device labels. The labels you add to devices can be arbitrary.

A *device label* contains a text description that allows you to quickly find or filter devices in the table. You can save any text descriptions that you find convenient as labels. A device can have up to 16 labels. Each device can have its own set of labels.

Lists of device labels are displayed in the table of devices in the **Labels** column. Labels in a cell are sorted alphabetically.

Only users with the Senior security officer role can add or remove device labels.

Adding labels for one device

To add a label to one device:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the device in the **Assets** section on the **Devices** tab or in the **Network map** section.

   In the **Network map** section, you can select a device for adding a label on the network interaction map as well as the topology map.

   The details area appears in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Edit**.

   In the details area, go to the **Settings** tab.
4. In the **Labels** field, enter the text descriptions that you want to use as labels. To separate labels, you can use the **ENTER** key or the `;` character.

   You can use uppercase and lowercase letters, numerals, a space, and the following special characters: `! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } ' , . - _`.

   A label name must meet the following requirements:

   - Must begin and end with any permitted character except a space.
   - Unique in the list of device labels (not case-sensitive).
   - Contains from 1 to 255 characters.
5. If necessary, click **Copy labels** to copy the list of labels. The link is displayed if the list of labels is not empty.
6. Click **Save**.

   This button is unavailable if not all required information is specified in the device settings or if invalid values have been defined. The tab containing settings requiring corrected values is marked by the . icon.

Adding labels to multiple devices

You can add labels to multiple devices while managing the table of devices.

Also when managing the network interaction map and the topology map, you can add labels to devices known to the application, represented by nodes on the maps. You can select nodes either individually or as part of collapsed groups that include the required devices. When you select a collapsed group, all devices in child groups at all nesting levels also end up in the selection.

To add labels to multiple devices while managing the table:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Devices** tab, select the devices to which you want to add labels.
4. Right-click one of the selected devices to open the context menu.
5. In the context menu, select **Add labels**.

   This opens the **Add labels** window.
6. In the **Labels** field, enter the text descriptions that you want to use as labels. To separate labels, you can use the **ENTER** key or the `;` character.

   You can use uppercase and lowercase letters, numerals, a space, and the following special characters: `! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } ' , . - _`.

   A label name must meet the following requirements:

   - Must begin and end with any permitted character except a space.
   - Unique in the list of device labels (not case-sensitive).
   - Contains from 1 to 255 characters.
7. If necessary, click **Copy labels** to copy the list of labels. The link is displayed if the list of labels is not empty.
8. If you want to clear the current lists of labels for selected devices and provide only new labels for these devices, select the **Delete existing** check box.

   If the **Delete existing** check box is cleared, the current list of labels will remain on each device. The new tags are appended to the lists of labels on all selected devices. For some of the selected devices, this may cause the total number of labels to exceed the limit (up to 16 labels for each device). The application checks the limit before adding new tags.
9. Click **OK**.

   The button is not available if the names of entered labels do not meet the requirements, or if the list of labels is empty while the **Delete existing** check box is cleared.

To add labels to multiple devices while managing the maps:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Network map** section.
3. On the **Network interaction map** or **Topology map** tab, select the relevant nodes of known devices and/or collapsed groups.

   To select multiple nodes and/or groups, do one of the following:

   - Press and hold the **SHIFT** key, then use the mouse to select a rectangular area with the objects that you want to select.
   - Press and hold the **CTRL** key and click every object that you want to select.
4. Right-click one of the selected objects to open the context menu.
5. In the context menu, select **Add labels**.

   This opens the **Add labels** window.
6. In the **Labels** field, enter the text descriptions that you want to use as labels. To separate labels, you can use the **ENTER** key or the **;** character.

   You can use uppercase and lowercase letters, numerals, a space, and the following special characters: **! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } ' , . - _**.

   A label name must meet the following requirements:

   - Must begin and end with any permitted character except a space.
   - Unique in the list of device labels (not case-sensitive).
   - Contains from 1 to 255 characters.
7. If necessary, click **Copy labels** to copy the list of labels. The link is displayed if the list of labels is not empty.
8. If you want to clear the current lists of labels for selected devices and provide only new labels for these devices, select the **Delete existing** check box.

   If the **Delete existing** check box is cleared, the current list of labels will remain on each device. The new tags are appended to the lists of labels on all selected devices. For some of the selected devices, this may cause the total number of labels to exceed the limit (up to 16 labels for each device). The application checks the limit before adding new tags.
9. Click **OK**.

   The button is not available if the names of entered labels do not meet the requirements, or if the list of labels is empty while the **Delete existing** check box is cleared.

Removing labels from an individual device

To remove a label from one device:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the device in the **Assets** section on the **Devices** tab or in the **Network map** section.

   In the **Network map** section, you can select a device for removing a label on the network interaction map as well as the topology map.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Edit**.

   In the details area, go to the **Settings** tab.
4. In the **Labels** field, delete the labels that you no longer need:

   - Click the × icon next to the label names if you want to remove individual labels.
   - If you want to delete all labels, use the × icon on the right side of the **Labels** field.
5. Click **Save**.

   This button is unavailable if not all required information is specified in the device settings or if invalid values have been defined. The tab containing settings requiring corrected values is marked by the . icon.

Clearing the lists of labels for multiple devices

You can clear the lists of labels for multiple devices while managing the table of devices.

Also when managing the network interaction map and the topology map, you can clear the lists of labels for devices known to the application, represented by nodes on the maps. You can select nodes either individually or as part of collapsed groups that include the required devices. When you select a collapsed group, all devices in child groups at all nesting levels also end up in the selection.

To clear the lists of labels for multiple devices while managing the table:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Devices** tab, select the devices for which you want to clear the lists of labels.
4. Right-click one of the selected devices to open the context menu.
5. In the context menu, select **Add labels**.

   This opens the **Add labels** window.
6. Select the **Delete existing** check box.
7. Click **OK**.

To clear the lists of labels for multiple devices while managing the maps:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Network map** section.
3. On the **Network interaction map** or **Topology map** tab, select the relevant nodes of known devices and/or collapsed groups.

   To select multiple nodes and/or groups, do one of the following:

   - Press and hold the **SHIFT** key, then use the mouse to select a rectangular area with the objects that you want to select.
   - Press and hold the **CTRL** key and click every object that you want to select.
4. Right-click one of the selected objects to open the context menu.
5. In the context menu, select **Add labels**.

   This opens the **Add labels** window.
6. Select the **Delete existing** check box.
7. Click **OK**.

Monitoring users on devices

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can monitor user accounts on devices known to the application. When monitoring users, the application automatically gets information about user accounts registered in the operating systems of the devices. Based on this information, the application generates user tables.

When getting information about user accounts, the application uses this information to monitor all user accounts on devices with the exception of some local system users, which only operating system services can use. For example, the application does not monitor the LocalSystem and NetworkService accounts on Windows devices.

To use the user monitoring functionality, Asset Management methods must be enabled to detect device activity and device information. These methods must be enabled on all servers with application components from which information is received.

User monitoring is based of information received from the following types of sources:

1. **Telemetry (Endpoint Agent)**

   Information about devices and the processes running on these devices is received when the Endpoint Agent component is integrated with the NDR functionality.
2. **External source**

   Information is received from systems that use the NDR API and send information about users to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Sources are listed in order of decreasing priority of information coming in from these sources. The application processes information about users in accordance with the priority of the received information. User information from a higher-priority source may override information from other sources. The application also automatically removes users from tables if information about such a user had been obtained from an **External source**, but the users are missing in new information received from these sources.

You can view information about users in the **Assets** section on the **Users** tab.

When viewing the table of users, you can configure, filter, search, and sort users, as well as navigate to related items. The table of all users can contain up to 200,000 users.

The application displays the following information about device users in the table and in the details area of the selected user:

- **User ID** is the user ID assigned in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- **User name** is the name of the user account without the domain name or host name of the device.
- **Full name** is the name of the user account with the domain name or host name of the device.
- **Groups** lists names of user groups of which the user is a member.
- **Device** is the name and address of the device.
- **Origin** is the source of information about the user.
- **SID** is the user's security ID.
- **Account status** is the status corresponding to the received value for enabling or disabling the account.
- **Lock** is the status corresponding to the received value of the account blocking setting.
- **Change password at next logon** is an attribute that reflects whether the user must change the password at next logon.
- **Block password change by user** is an attribute that reflects whether the user is prohibited from changing the user's own password.
- **Password validity period** is the status corresponding to the received value of the setting that enables or disables the validity period limit for the user's password.
- **Data received** is the date and time when the information about the user account was last received.
- **Description** is the description specified for the user account.

When monitoring users, the application registers events using the **Asset Management** technology. Events are registered with system event type code 4000005600. Events are registered when user accounts are automatically added, modified, or deleted on devices.

You can edit the available settings of event types.

Monitoring file execution on devices

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can monitor file execution on devices known to the application. File execution is monitored based on information received from EPP applications. Based on this information, the application generates a table of executable files.

To automatically get information about file execution from EPP applications, the following conditions must be satisfied:

- Endpoint Agent must be installed on the devices.
- Asset Management methods must be enabled to detect device activity and device information.

For the table of executable files, the following restrictions on the number of items and storage durations apply:

- The total number of executable files may not exceed 100,000.

  If the maximum number of executable files is reached, the application automatically removes 10% of the oldest entries.

- The maximum storage duration of an executable file before information about its execution is received again is 90 days.

  If new information about file execution is not received before the maximum storage duration expires, the application automatically removes the entry of this file.

If necessary, users with the Administrator role can delete executable files manually.

To view the table of executable files:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Executable files** tab.

The table of executable files is displayed.

When viewing the table of executable files, you can configure, filter, search, and sort the files, as well as navigate to related items.

The table displays the following information:

- **File ID** is the file ID assigned in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- **Device** is the name and address of the device.
- **Name** is the name and version of the application, or the file name.
- **Data received** is the date and time when the information about the file was last received.
- **Product** is the name of the software product saved in the operating system of the device.
- **Product version** is the version of the software product saved in the operating system of the device.
- **Vendor** is the name of the vendor of the application.
- **Path** is the full path to the file.
- **File size** is the amount of disk space occupied by the file.
- **MD5 hash** is the checksum of the file calculated using the MD5 hashing algorithm.
- **SHA256 hash** is the checksum of the file calculated using the SHA256 hashing algorithm.

- **Signature** is the result of verifying the digital signature of the file: **Valid** (if the digital signature was verified successfully) or **Invalid** (for example, if the certificate has expired).
- **Created** is the date and time when the file was created.
- **Changed** is the date and time the file was last modified.
- **Origin** is the source of information about the file.
- **Attributes** is the list of file attributes.
- **Description** is the description set for the file.

Active device polling jobs

Using the active polling jobs, you can conduct a security audit of monitored devices in terms of receiving accurate and complete information about devices and their configurations directly from the devices themselves. Active polling is achieved using connectors. To actively poll devices, you need to add one or more **Active poll** connectors to the application.

Connectors provide different active polling methods. *Active polling methods* stipulate the protocols as well as commands and functions of these protocols. The built-in **Active poll** connector type contains a set of methods that support active polling over application-layer protocols as well as general-purpose protocols. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform supports the following methods for active polling of devices:

- Polling via ARP (only for computers with the kernel version 4.3 or later)
- Polling via SMB
- Polling via SNMP
- Polling via SSH
- Polling via WinRM HTTP
- Polling via WinRM HTTPS
- Polling via WMI

The methods let you get different sets of device information. You can select the information that you need and the methods to be used when configuring active polling.

Some methods use secrets to connect to devices. Device connections are made using credentials from secrets added to the application.

Using appropriate methods, the application can automatically update the following device information based on active polling results:

- Name that represents the device in the application
- Name that represents the device on the network (network name)
- Vendor name of the device hardware

- Model name of the device
- Version number of the device hardware
- Vendor name of the device software
- Name of the device software
- Version number of the device software
- Address information for network interfaces of the device
- Name of the operating system installed on the device (only for devices running Windows and Linux operating systems)

For a list of operating systems supported by the application for actively polling devices, see the Appendix.

The application does not update data for which the automatic update function was disabled using the **Autoupdate** toggle button when the device was added or when device information was edited. The application also evaluates the accuracy of received device information and in some case may not update previously received information.

Some active polling methods support detecting risks and modifying the topology map with the obtained device information.

You can manually run security audit jobs or configure a schedule to automatically run each job. Only users with the Senior security officer role can run active polling jobs.

When using the active polling functionality, you must keep in mind the following special considerations and limitations:

- The functionality becomes available after adding a license key.
- Application modules of connectors that are used for actively polling of devices need network access to the devices to send requests to and receive data from the devices. If the application modules are running on the host with installed application components, to ensure network access to devices, this computer must have a network interface with a connection to the network of the devices to be polled. Network interfaces of monitoring points cannot be used for this purpose if these network interfaces receive mirrored corporate LAN traffic (for example, from SPAN ports of network switches).
- Unexpected problems may arise when active polling devices if these devices misinterpret the commands of the active poll. The problems may be caused by misconfiguration or highly specialized configuration of devices. Also, problems can arise due to hidden errors in the network configuration, which do not manifest during normal communication of devices. Therefore, the risks of the following potential consequences are involved in active polling of a device:
  - The device powering off
  - Connectivity being lost with the device
  - Complete or partial device malfunction
  - Slower-than-normal operation
  - Other potential faults of the network and equipment

Adding active polling job

For devices known to the application, you can add active polling jobs.

Only users with the Senior security officer role can add active polling jobs. Adding active polling jobs is available after adding a license key.

The active polling job is configured using the Wizard. The wizard lets you configure the job step by step. After completing the configuration, you can wait until the scanning begins on schedule or start the job manually.

When adding an active polling job, you can invoke the Configuration Wizard in the following ways:

- Adding a job with blank settings. To do this:

  1. Select the **Assets** section.
  2. On the **Active polling** tab, click **Add job**.

  The settings of the configuration wizard do not have default values.

- Adding a job for selected devices. To do this:

  1. Select the **Assets** section.
  2. On the **Devices** tab, select the devices for which you want to add an active polling job. You can select no more than 100 devices.
  3. In the toolbar above the table of devices, open the **Create job** drop-down list and select **Active polling**.

  By default, a list of devices made up of the selected devices is created in the settings of the configuration wizard.

To configure the job in the window of the configuration wizard:

1. Read the active polling considerations in the warning window, and confirm that you accept the risks associated with using the active polling module.
2. In the **Select devices** section of the Wizard, create a list of devices for which you want to perform active polling. Select up to 100 devices.

   You can create a list of devices using the **Add to job** and **Delete from job** buttons. To add a device, the application opens a window with the device selection table. You can filter and sort the table to display the devices that you need.
3. In the **Select parameters** section of the wizard, select the check boxes for the specific device information that you want to update using active polling. You can also enable risk detection (the **Risks** check box) and discovery of topology settings for devices (the **Topology settings** check box).

4. In the **Select methods** section of the wizard, do the following:

   a. Select an active polling module.

   b. Select the check boxes for the specific methods that you want to use for getting device information, risk detection, and/or reading topology settings.

      Methods that can be used are grouped by connectors that provide the ability of actively polling devices. The list contains only methods that support getting the selected information. If a connector cannot be used to actively poll the selected devices, the available methods are not displayed for this connector (for example, if the connector is disabled or an address space that does not contain the addresses of the selected devices is selected for the connector).

   c. Configure the methods for each connector as needed. For example, for **Polling via SSH**, specify a port and a credentials secret.

      If a secret with the required credentials has not been added to the application, you can open a new tab in the browser without closing the Configuration Wizard window, connect to the Server and add the secret, and then use the button in the Configuration Wizard window to refresh the list of secrets.

      We do not recommend using the same secret for active polling of devices on the network because this negatively affects the level of information security.

      Methods that require configuring settings are highlighted in red. To update the settings, click the ⚙ button to the right of the desired method.

5. In the **Job configuration** section of the wizard, configure the rest of the job settings:

   a. Enter a name and description for the job.

      You can use letters, numerals, spaces, and the following special characters: `! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } / \ : ; , . - _`. The name of the job must begin and end with any valid character other than a space.

      The job name must contain no more than 256 characters. The job description must contain no more than 4096 characters.

   b. To run the job according to a schedule, enable the **Run job according to schedule** option and configure the schedule settings:

      - In the **Frequency** drop-down list, select how often to run the job: **Hourly**, **Daily**, **Weekly**, or **Monthly**.
      - Depending on the selected option, specify the values for the settings to define the precise job start time.

      The application runs the job according to the schedule, provided that the previous run of this job has been completed. If by the time a scheduled job is started its previous launch has the *Running* status, the application skips the run of the scheduled job.

6. Click **Create job** or **Create and run** to close the wizard.

The specified settings are displayed in the job details.

Editing an active polling job

Only users with the Senior security officer role can edit active polling jobs.

To edit an active polling job:

1. Select the **Assets** section.
2. On the **Active polling** tab, select the job for which you want to change the settings.
3. Click **Edit**.

   The Configuration Wizard starts. the settings of the selected job are specified as default values in the settings of the configuration wizard.
4. In the **Job configuration** section of the wizard, configure the rest of the job settings:

   a. Enter a name and description for the job.

   You can use letters, numerals, spaces, and the following special characters: `! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } / \ : ; , . - _`. The name of the job must begin and end with any valid character other than a space.

   The job name must contain no more than 256 characters. The job description must contain no more than 4096 characters.

   b. To run the job according to a schedule, enable the **Run job according to schedule** option and configure the schedule settings:

   - In the **Frequency** drop-down list, select how often to run the job: **Hourly**, **Daily**, **Weekly**, or **Monthly**.
   - Depending on the selected option, specify the values for the settings to define the precise job start time.

   The application runs the job according to the schedule, provided that the previous run of this job has been completed. If by the time a scheduled job is started its previous launch has the *Running* status, the application skips the run of the scheduled job.
5. Click **Edit job** to close the wizard.

The specified settings are displayed in the job details.

Viewing the table of active polling jobs

The table of active polling jobs is displayed in the **Assets** section on the tab **Active polling**.

Job settings are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Job ID**.

  Job ID assigned in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

- **Name**.

  Name that represents the job in the application.

- **Description**.

  Job description

- **Created**.

  Date and time when the job was added to the application.

- **Changed**.

  Date and time of the last modification in the application.

- **Devices selected**.

  Number of devices selected for the job.

- **Schedule**.

  Information about the schedule that the application uses to run the job.

- **Status of last run**.

  The resulting status of all device scans when the job was last run.

- **Last run**.

  Date and time when the job was last run.

- **Next run**.

  Date and time of the next scheduled run of the job.

When viewing the table of active polling jobs, you can use the configuration, filter, search, and sorting functions.

Starting and stopping active polling jobs

You can manually start and stop active polling jobs. When you start or stop a job, the application starts or stops all scans on the devices that are selected for that job.

You can stop or run the job depending on the status of the last job run. For example, a job cannot be started if the status of its last run is *Running*.

Only users with the Senior security officer role can manually start and stop active polling jobs.

To start an active polling job:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Active polling** tab, select the job you want to start.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Start**. The button is disabled if the job cannot be started.

   Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform starts the job. You can view information about the device scans in progress on the **Runs** tab in the job details.

To stop an active polling job:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Active polling** tab, select the job you want to stop.
   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Stop**. The button is disabled if the job cannot be stopped.

Viewing general information about the active polling job runs

You can view general information on the runs of active polling jobs in the jobs table. The table displays information about the most recent runs not including the information about device scans. To view general information on all job runs, including information about the device scans, select the job and in the details area, open the **Runs** tab.

General information about active polling job runs includes the following:

- The status of the job or device scan.
  The following statuses are possible:
  - **Pending** – a command to start the scan has not been sent yet.
  - **In progress** – the job is starting, or the scan is in progress.
  - **Canceling** – the start of the job or scanning is being stopped.
  - **Canceled** – the start of the job or scanning is stopped.
  - **Completed** – the scan completed successfully or all scans within the job run completed successfully.
  - **Error** – an error occurred during a scan or errors occurred in all scans within the job run.
  - **Partially successful** – the job completed with a partially successful result: some scans have the **Completed** status while some scans have a status of **Canceled** or **Error**.
- Start date and time.
- End date and time.
- Run time

Viewing a report on the active polling job execution

You can view reports containing the device scan results when viewing the details of an active polling job run. The application generates reports for the jobs completed with the following statuses: **Completed**, **Partially successful**, **Canceled**, and **Error**.

In the report, the following details are displayed:

- Name of the device that was scanned.
- Device settings update status.
- List of device settings grouped by their update status.
- List of methods grouped by their execution status. If an error occurs when a method is being employed, the application displays its reason.

To view a report on the active polling job execution:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Active polling** tab, select the job for which you want to view the run report.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. In the details area, go to the **Runs** tab and select the desired job run.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window. The details area displays detailed information about the selected job run.

Deleting active polling jobs

You can delete active polling jobs. However, you cannot delete the jobs with a last run status of **Running** or **Pending**.

Only users with the Senior security officer role can delete active polling jobs.

To delete active polling jobs:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Active polling** tab, select the jobs you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
5. In the prompt window, confirm deletion of the jobs.

   You can delete only the jobs whose last run status is not **Running** or **Pending**. If there are jobs with a status of **Running** or **Pending** among the selected jobs, the corresponding message is displayed. To delete such jobs, you must first stop the jobs.

Network isolation of devices

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can isolate a network device by blocking its IP address. Network isolation of devices is available if integration with the Check Point NGFW or UserGate NGFW solutions is configured.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, network isolation rules configured on the PCN server are not applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN server. Information about rules created on SCN servers is not displayed in the web interface of the PCN server.

> The network isolation functionality is available if a current KATA+NDR license key is present. After the license key expires, creating new network isolation rules and disabling network isolation becomes unavailable. Previously added rules remain in effect.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can create , view , delete network isolation rules, view the table of network isolation rules, and disable network isolation.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles can view the table of network isolation rules and information about the rules.

Viewing the table of network isolation rules

To view the table of network isolation rules:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Select the **Response actions** tab.

   The table of network isolation rules is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **ID** is the unique ID of the rule.
- **Start** is the date and time when the network isolation request was sent to the NGFW solution. Corresponds to the start of processing the operation.
- **End** is the date and time when the NGFW solution finished processing the request and applied the rule. Corresponds to the completion of the operation.
- **Action type** is the type of response action for which the rule was created.
- **Status** is the status of the rule. Possible values: **Pending**, **Running**, **Success**, **Failure**.
- **Device** is the name of the isolated device.
- **Event description** is the title of the NDR event that the rule was based on.
- **Object** is the IP address of the isolated device.

Creating network isolation rules

You can create a network isolation rule in the **Response actions** section or while viewing the information about an NDR event.

A network devices can be isolated by blocking its IP address. If the IP assigned to a device changes, the isolation is no longer in effect.

Creating a network isolation rule in the Threat response section

To create a network isolation rule in the Response actions section:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Select the **Response actions** tab.
3. Click **Add action**.
4. Select **Isolate device from the network**.

   This opens the **New rule** window.
5. In the **Connector name** drop-down list, select the name of the solution that you want to use to isolate the device.

   For this solution, a connector must have been created for integration with NGFW solutions. Users need the **Administrator** role to be able to create a connector.
6. In the **Device IP** field, enter the IP address of the device that you want to isolate.
7. Click **Run**.
8. In the confirmation window, select **Yes**.

The network isolation rule is created.

After creating the rule, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends a request to enact the network isolation of the device to the NGFW solution that you selected when creating this rule.

Creating a network isolation rule while viewing information about a network event

To create a network isolation rule while viewing information about a network event

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Select the event for which you want to view information.

3. Click the **Response actions** button.
4. Select **Device network isolation**.

   This opens the **New rule** window.
5. In the **Connector name** drop-down list, select the name of the solution that you want to use to isolate the device.

   For this solution, a connector must have been created for integration with NGFW solutions. Users need the **Administrator** role to be able to create a connector.
6. In the **Device IP** drop-down list, select the IP address of the device that you want to isolate.
7. Click **Run**.
8. In the confirmation window, select **Yes**.

The network isolation rule is created.

After creating the rule, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends a request to enact the network isolation of the device to the NGFW solution that you selected when creating this rule.

Viewing network isolation rule details

To view network isolation rule details:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Select the **Response actions** tab.

   The table of network rules is displayed.
3. Select the rule for which you want to view information.

   This opens a window containing information about the rule.

The window contains the following information:

- **Start** is the date and time when the network isolation request was sent to the NGFW solution. Corresponds to the start of processing the operation.
- **End** is the date and time when the NGFW solution finished processing the request and applied the rule. Corresponds to the completion of the operation.
- **Status** is the status of the rule. Possible values: **Pending**, **Running**, **Success**, **Failure**.
- **ID** is the unique ID of the rule.
- **Object type** is the type of the isolated object.
- **Event title** is the title of the NDR event that the rule was based on.
- **Alerts** lists alerts related to the NDR event that the rule was based on.

- **Event score** is the severity score of the event.
- **Device** is the name of the isolated device.
- Section **Details**:
  - **Device IP** is the IP address of the isolated device.
  - **Connector name** is the name of the connector that is used to connect to the NGFW solution.

Disabling network isolation

To disable network isolation of a device:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Select the **Response actions** tab.
3. Select the network isolation rule that you want to disable.
   This opens the rule information window.
4. Click **en: Отменить блокировку**.

Network isolation is disabled. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends a request to disable network isolation of the device to the NGFW solution that was selected when creating the network isolation rule.

Deleting network isolation rules

To delete a network isolation rule in the rule information window:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Select the **Response actions** tab.
3. Select the network isolation rule that you want to delete.
   This opens the rule information window.
4. Click **Delete action**.

The network isolation rule is deleted.

To delete a network isolation rule in the table of network isolation rules:

1. Select the **Network traffic events** section in the application web interface window.
2. Select the **Response actions** tab.
3. Select the check boxes next to the rules that you want to delete.
   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

At least one check box must be selected.

4. Click **Delete action**.

The network isolation rules are removed.

Configuring address spaces

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform monitors devices and their interactions, taking into account address spaces (hereinafter also referred to as "AS"). *Address spaces* are used to classify device addresses into sets by some attribute (for example, by the network segments that the devices belong to).

To describe address spaces, the application uses lists of rules and subnets.

An *address space rule* is a set of parameters that determine whether an address belongs to the address space. To be associated with an address space, a MAC or IP address must match at least one address space rule. If an address matches multiple rules, the application picks the address space whose rule defines the conditions of association in the least general way (for example, if the address is explicitly specified in the rule).

Address space subnets are used to check IP addresses discovered by the application. Depending on the type of subnet the discovered IP address belongs to, the application may perform different Asset Monitoring actions and Interaction Control actions.

You can configure address spaces in the **Assets** section of the **Address spaces** tab. Each address space is represented by a section with information about the address space. The section comprises a title and subsections with tables of rules and subnets. When viewing information about address spaces, you can expand and collapse the sections.

Default address space

By default, the application has one address space configured, the **Default** address space. This address space contains a single rule that associates all MAC and IP addresses with this address space. By default, the list of subnets of the **Default** address space contains the standard set of subnets most frequently used in enterprise networking.

You cannot edit the rule of the **Default** address space or add other rules to this address space. However, users with the Senior security officer role can edit the list of subnets in this address space to configure a set of subnets that take into account the way IP addressing of devices is set up in your corporate network. If Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives data from EPP applications, the application can use this data to automatically add subnets to the list of subnets.

Additional address spaces

If necessary, you can configure multiple address spaces in the application in addition to the **Default** address space. You can create arbitrary rules and sets of subnets for the added address spaces. Addresses matching the conditions of the added address spaces become associated with these address spaces. The rest of the addresses remain associated with the **Default** address space.

You may need to add address spaces, for example, if you are using devices with the same address in different network segments. In this case, after address spaces are added and configured, the application can disambiguate address information by additional attributes that the application adds to addresses, that is, by address space names.

For address space usage examples, see the Appendix.

Relations of addresses and address spaces

When using multiple address spaces, the application adds address space name attributes to all addresses that are specified in objects of the application: devices, risks, rules, events, and other objects. Address space name attributes are no longer displayed for addresses if you remove all non-default address spaces (address space attributes remain only for addresses in events and in some device-related risks).

Address space name attributes indicate the relations between addresses and address spaces. Relations with address spaces make addresses dependent on these address spaces.

Relations between addresses and address spaces lead to the following special consideration when deleting an address space: the application automatically deletes all addresses associated with the deleted address space. Such addresses are deleted from all application objects except for events. When an address is removed from an object, the application checks if other addresses remain in that object, and if no other addresses remain, the application also deletes the object itself (for example, a device).

About address space rules

The rules of address spaces are displayed in the **Rules** blocks within address space descriptions. Information about rules is displayed in the title bar of the address space and in the table of rules.

Address space rule settings are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Source**.

The type of the source of data about address information and the list of selected data sources. The following data source types are possible:

- **Monitoring points** – monitoring points selected for the rule.
- **Integration servers** – integration servers selected for the rule (the data on address information received from the selected integration servers will satisfy the address space rule).
- **Active polling modules** – active polling module connectors selected for the rule (the data on address information received from the selected active polling modules will satisfy the address space rule).

The data sources must be specified in the address space rules after adding the objects to be used as sources to the application. For example, connectors for the **Active poll modules** data source must be specified after adding connectors of the **Active poll** type.

- **OSI model layers**

  Selected layers of the OSI (Open Systems Interconnection) network protocol stack for the address space rule. You can configure the rule for addresses of the following layers of the OSI model:

  - **Data Link (L2)** – MAC addresses.
  - **Network (L3)** – IP addresses.
  - **Data Link and Network (L2 and L3)** – MAC addresses and IP addresses.

- **VLAN ID**.

  VLAN IDs used for the VLAN technology in accordance with the IEEE 802.1q standard. When used for an address space rule, the **VLAN ID** may take the following values:

  - **Any** – VLAN technology is used for network interactions between devices, and any VLAN IDs can be used.
  - **Unallowed** – VLAN technology is not used for network interactions between devices.
  - **Any or not used** – VLAN technology is either not used for network interactions between devices, or it is used with any VLAN IDs.
  - **Fixed values with a list of VLAN IDs** – VLAN technology is used for network interactions between devices, and an address space can include only address information that has one of the listed VLAN IDs.

- **IP addresses**

  IP addresses included in the address space. You can specify addresses individually, as ranges, or as a CIDR subnet address.

When viewing the rule table, you can use the configuration functionality (by clicking the ⚙ icon) as well as the search functionality.

About address space subnets

The subnets of address spaces are displayed in the **Subnets** blocks within address space descriptions.

The application matches the discovered IP addresses against the lists of subnets of address spaces and, depending on whether the IP addresses are found to belong to certain types of subnets, can perform the following actions:

- Add a device with the discovered IP address to the table of devices and monitor the activity of this device.
- Display a device with its detected IP address on the network interaction map and the topology map as its corresponding type of node (known device, unknown device, or WAN node).
- Display the connection on a network interaction map, in which one of the interaction parties is the device with the discovered IP address.
- Scan the interactions of the device with the discovered IP address according to the configured rules (Interaction Control rules, Intrusion Detection rules, and correlation rules).
- Ignore the activity of the device with the discovered IP address.

Subnet settings of the address space are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Subnet**.

  Subnet address in Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) format: `<base address of the subnet>/<number of bits in the mask>`. Subnet addresses are displayed as a tree that represents the subnet nesting hierarchy.

- **Type**.

  Type of the subnet that stipulates its purpose. The following types are possible:

  - **Private, IT** – subnet for devices that serve as information technology (IT) resources, such as file servers.
  - **Private, DMZ** – subnet for devices that reside within a network segment of a demilitarized zone (DMZ), such as servers that handle requests from external networks.
  - **Public** – subnet that is considered to be an external (global) network for devices in other types of subnets. IP addresses from this subnet are represented by a WAN node on the network interaction map.
  - **Link-local** – subnet for network interactions within one segment of the local area network (not routed).

- **Range**

  The range of IP addresses included in the subnet.

- **Automatically add subnets**

  Indicates whether the automatic adding of nested subnets based on information received from EPP applications is enabled or disabled. If this mode is enabled, the application adds nested subnets based on information received from EPP applications.

When viewing the table of subnets, you can use the configuration functionality (by clicking the ⚙ icon) as well as the filtering, search, and sorting functionality.

Adding an address space

You can add address spaces to the application if you need to classify device addresses into sets according to some criterion (for example, based on devices belonging to network segments).

The maximum number of address spaces in the application is 100.

Only users with the Senior security officer role can add address spaces.

To add an address space:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Address spaces** tab, open the details area by clicking **Add AS**.
4. Enter the name of the address space.

   You can use letters, numbers, the space character, and the following special characters: `! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } ' , . - _`.

   The address space name must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Begins and ends with any character other than a space.
   - Contains up to 255 characters.
   - Does not reuse the name of another address space (case-insensitive).

   > We recommend using address spaces 6–8 characters long or less. If the name contains more characters, the address information may not be fully displayed in the cells of some data tables (for example, in the table of devices).

5. If necessary, enter a text description of the address space.
6. Configure the settings of the first address space rule.
7. If necessary, add and configure additional address space rules by clicking **Add rule**.

   The total number of rules in an address space cannot exceed 10.

8. Click the **Save** button.

   This button is unavailable if not all required settings are specified, or if some settings are invalid.

The lower part of the **Address spaces** tab will show a separate block containing information about the added address space.

Creating a subnet list for Asset Management

This section contains information about the features available for generating a list of subnets for asset management.

For address spaces, you can create lists of subnets that take into account the way device addressing works in your corporate network. This section provides instructions on using the features for generating a list of subnets.

If Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives data from EPP applications, the application can use this data to automatically add subnets in the corresponding address spaces. The application automatically adds discovered subnets if they are nested inside subnets for which the automatic subnet addition mode is enabled.

Only users with the Senior security officer role can manage the list of subnets.

Adding a subnet

To add a subnet:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Address spaces** tab, expand the block containing information about the address space in which you want to add a subnet.
4. In the header of the **Subnets** block, click the + icon.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
5. In the **Subnet** field, enter the subnet address in CIDR format: `<base address of subnet>/<number of bits in mask>`.
6. In the **Type** drop-down list, select the type of subnet according to its purpose.
7. Enable or disable the **Automatically add subnets** toggle switch, to enable or disable automatic addition of nested subnets according to data received from EPP applications.

   If this mode is enabled, the application adds nested subnets under this subnet based on information received from EPP applications. For these nested subnets, the default type is the type selected for the current subnet.
8. Click the **Save** button.

A subnet is added to the list of subnets at the corresponding level of the tree.

Editing subnet settings

To edit subnet settings:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Address spaces** tab, expand the block containing information about the address space in which you want to edit the subnet settings.
4. Expand the **Subnets** block and select the relevant subnet.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
5. Click **Edit**.
6. Depending on what you want, do the following:

   - In the **Subnet** field, enter the subnet address in CIDR format: `<base address of subnet>/<number of bits in mask>`.

     The address of the root subnet is not editable.

- In the **Type** drop-down list, select the type of subnet according to its purpose.

  When changing the type of a subnet, keep in mind that the new subnet type may affect the actions that the application performs with IP addresses from the subnet. For example, if you select the **Public** type, the network interaction map will no longer display links to devices that were assigned IP addresses from this subnet.

- Enable or disable the **Automatically add subnets** toggle switch, to enable or disable automatic addition of nested subnets according to data received from EPP applications.

  If this mode is enabled, the application adds nested subnets under this subnet based on information received from EPP applications. For these nested subnets, the default type is the type selected for the current subnet.

7. Click the **Save** button.

If the **Subnet** value is changed, the tree hierarchy level may be changed for a subnet.

Deleting subnets

In the list of subnets of the address space, you can delete any subnet except the root subnet in the tree (subnet 0.0.0.0/0).

To delete subnets:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Address spaces** tab, expand the block containing information about the address space from which you want to delete subnets.
4. Expand the **Subnets** block and select the subnets to delete.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
5. Click **Delete**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
6. In the prompt window, confirm deletion of the subnets.

The deleted subnets are removed from the list of subnets. If the deleted subnet contained nested subnets, these subnets remain in the list (however, the level of these subnets in the hierarchy tree is changed).

Viewing information about devices with IP addresses from the selected subnets

You can view information about devices that have IP addresses from selected subnets in the address space. Information about devices is displayed in the table of devices. The table of devices automatically applies a filter based on the addresses of subnets.

To view information about devices in the table of devices:

1. Select the **Assets** section.
2. On the **Address spaces** tab, expand the block containing information about the address space containing the relevant subnets.
3. Expand the **Subnets** block and select the subnets for which you want to view information about devices.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Show devices**.

This opens the **Devices** tab in the **Assets** section. The table of devices is filtered by IP addresses in the address information of devices.

Changing an address space

For the added address spaces, you can edit the names, text descriptions, and rule settings. You cannot edit any of these for the **Default** address space, however.

You can also create lists of subnets for any address spaces (including the list of subnets of the **Default** address space).

When managing the rule settings of an address space, you must take into account the relations this address space has with addresses that are specified in application objects: devices, risks, rules, events, and other objects. If editing rule settings of an address space severs the relations of this address space with addresses, the application automatically deletes such addresses. This can lead to the deletion of the objects themselves (for example, devices) if these objects do not have any other addresses.

Only users with the Senior security officer role can edit the names, text descriptions, and rule settings of address spaces.

To edit the name, text description, or rule settings of an address space:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Address spaces** tab, click the icon in the block containing information about the relevant address space.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Depending on what you want, do the following:

   - Enter the name of the address space.

     You can use letters, numbers, the space character, and the following special characters: `! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } ' , . - _`.

The address space name must satisfy the following requirements:

- Begins and ends with any character other than a space.
- Contains up to 255 characters.
- Does not reuse the name of another address space (case-insensitive).

> We recommend using address spaces 6–8 characters long or less. If the name contains more characters, the address information may not be fully displayed in the cells of some data tables (for example, in the table of devices).

- Enter a description for the address space.
- Manage the settings of address space rules.
- If necessary, add and configure additional address space rules by clicking **Add rule** or delete any unnecessary rules by using the × icons.

  The total number of rules in an address space cannot exceed 10.

5. Click the **Save** button.

   This button is unavailable if not all required settings are specified, or if some settings are invalid.

6. In the prompt window, confirm the changes of address space settings.

Deleting an address space

You can delete added address spaces. The **Default** address space cannot be deleted.

> When deleting an address space, you must take into account the relations this address space has with addresses that are specified in application objects: devices, risks, rules, events, and other objects. If deleting an address space severs the relations of this address space with addresses, the application automatically deletes such addresses. This can lead to the deletion of the objects themselves (for example, devices) if these objects do not have any other addresses.

Only users with the Senior security officer role can delete address spaces.

To delete an address space:

1. Use the web interface to connect to the Central Node with the Senior security officer role.
2. Select the **Assets** section.
3. On the **Address spaces** tab, click the 🗑 icon in the block containing information about the address space that you want to delete.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.

4. In the prompt window, confirm the deletion of the address space.

Managing the network interaction map

The network interaction map is a visual display of discovered interactions between devices. You can use the network interaction map to view information about device interactions at various time periods.

To view the network interaction map:

1. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Network interaction map** tab.

   The network interaction map is displayed.

The following objects can be displayed:

- Nodes. These objects represent the senders and recipients of network packets.
- Device groups. These objects correspond to groups in the device group tree. Groups contain nodes representing devices included in these groups as well as child groups.
- Links. These objects represent interactions between nodes.

Nodes and links appear on the network interaction map based on the data obtained from traffic or from Endpoint Agent over a certain period of time. Device groups are displayed continuously.

You can filter nodes and links. By default, the network interaction map displays objects in real time with a defined filtering period of one hour.

The network interaction map can display up to 1000 connections.

Objects with issues are highlighted on the network interaction map. The application considers the following objects to have issues:

- A node if it has unprocessed events with a score of 4.0 or higher, or if it represents a device with the *Unauthorized* status.
- A link if it has to do with events with a score of 4.0 or higher. Only events registered during the given object filtering period are taken into account. The current status of events is not taken into account.
- A group, if it contains devices with issues, or if nodes in this group have links with issues. Objects taken into account can belong to the group itself or to any of its child groups at any nesting level.

Nodes on the network interaction map

Nodes on the network interaction map can have the following types:

- A device known to the application. A node of this type represents a device that is listed in table of devices.
- A device unknown to the application. A node of this type represents a device with a unique IP or MAC address that is not listed in the device table. Such a node may appear on the network interaction map, for example, if you use the `ping` command to send network packets to a non-existent device. Nodes of devices that the application does not recognize are displayed individually if their total number (in accordance with the current filtering settings on the network interaction map) does not exceed 100. If more such devices exist, unknown devices are jointly represented by a single node.

Information displayed on nodes that represent devices known to the application

For nodes that represent devices known to the application, the following information is displayed on the network interaction map at maximum zoom:

- The specified device name.
- The icon of the device category.
- The IP address of the device (if it has no IP address, the MAC address is displayed).
- Various icons depending on the following conditions:
  - Whether the Router attribute is set for the device
  - Whether the Endpoint Agent is installed on the device (the color of the icon depends on its connection status)
  - Whether the device has the *Archived* status
- A thick line on the left border of the node in one of the following colors, depending on the security state of the device:
  - Green for the *OK* security state
  - Yellow for the *Warning* security state
  - Red for the *Critical* security state

If the device has the *Unauthorized* status or the security state of the device is not *OK*, the node has a red background.

Information displayed on nodes that represent devices unknown to the application

For nodes that represent devices unknown to the application, the following information is displayed on the network interaction map at maximum zoom:

- If the node represents a single unknown device, the IP or MAC address of the device is displayed. If the node represents multiple unknown devices (a node that includes more than 100 devices unknown to the application), **Unknown devices** is displayed.
- Icon for an unknown device and its status .

Nodes representing devices unknown to the application have a gray background.

Device groups on the network interaction map

Groups belonging to the device group tree may be collapsed or expanded on the network interaction map. Collapsed groups are displayed as icons similar to nodes. Expanded groups are displayed as boxes with nodes and other groups included in them.

Information displayed on collapsed groups

If a group is collapsed, the following information is displayed when the network interaction map is maximized:

- The name of the group.
- Number of devices that satisfy the current filter settings on the network interaction map. Devices in this group and in all its child groups at all nesting levels are taken into account.
- Number of child groups at all nesting levels.

If a group contains devices or links with issues (including child groups at any nesting level), the border of the group is colored red. Information displayed on expanded groups

The expanded group's box contains a title bar with the name of the group and an area for displaying objects. The group box displays devices included in this group, as well as child groups at the nesting level immediately below it. Of the devices included in the group, only the devices that meet the current filter settings are displayed on the network interaction map.

If a group contains devices or links with issues (including child groups at any nesting level), the box has a red background.

Collapsing and expanding groups

You can expand a collapsed group by double-clicking the group icon. You can collapse an expanded group by double-clicking the title bar of that group's box or by clicking in the title bar.

To expand multiple collapsed groups at the same time:

1. On the network interaction map, select multiple collapsed groups by performing one of the following actions:
   - Press and hold the **SHIFT** key, then use the mouse to select a rectangular area with the groups that you want to select.
   - Press and hold the **CTRL** key and click every collapsed group that you want to select.
2. Click in the toolbar located in the left part of the network interaction map display area (the button is available if at least one collapsed group is selected).

To collapse all expanded groups at the same time:

Click in the toolbar located in the left part of the network interaction map display area (the button is available if at least one group is expanded).

Links on the network interaction map

Links on the network interaction map are identified based on detected network packets for which the source and destination addresses can be mapped to the addresses of nodes.

Each links represents two sides of an interaction. A communication side in a link may be one of the following objects on the network interaction map:

- Node of one of the following types:
  - A device known to the application.
  - A device unknown to the application.
  - The common node of unknown devices (if the link shows interaction with one or more unknown devices inside this node).
- A collapsed group if the link shows interaction with one or more devices in this group.

Depending on the scores of events registered while detecting interactions, the link can be displayed a colored line:

- Gray for an interaction that caused no events to be registered or only events with scores of 0.0–3.9.
- Red for an interaction has caused events to be registered with a score of 4.0–10.0.

Only events registered during the given object filtering period are taken into account for links. The current status of the events is not taken into account.

The application stores link information in a database on the Central Node. The total amount of stored records cannot exceed the configured limit. If the amount exceeds the limit, the application automatically deletes 10% of the oldest records. You can set a maximum volume limit for the network interaction map when configuring data storage settings on the Central Node.

Viewing object details

Detailed information about objects on the network interaction map are displayed in the details area. To display detailed information, you can select an object with the mouse (if you want to view the details of a group, you must first collapse the group).

For nodes, the following information is displayed:

- If the node represents a device known to the application, the details area displays the same information that appears in the device table.
- If the node represents a single device unknown to the application, the details area displays the MAC and/or IP addresses of the device (with the names of address spaces if extra address spaces have been added to the application).
- If the common node of unknown devices is selected, the following information is displayed:
  - The number of nodes that this node contains, taking into account the current filtering settings.
  - **IP addresses** displays the number of IP addresses of unknown devices and the first 100 IP addresses (with the address space names, if extra address spaces have been added to the application). This section is displayed if some unknown device nodes have IP addresses.
  - **MAC addresses** displays the number of MAC addresses of unknown devices and the first 100 MAC addresses (with the address space names, if extra address spaces have been added to the application). This section is displayed if some unknown device nodes have MAC addresses.

For groups, the following information is displayed:

- **Parent group** displays the path to the group in the device group tree. If the group is at the top level of the hierarchy, **N/A (this is a top-level group)** is displayed.
- The number of devices in this group and in all its child groups at all nesting levels.
- Information about the number of objects with issues in the selected group and in its child groups at all nesting levels. If there no such objects exist, the security state is displayed as *OK*.

For links, the following information is displayed:

- **Severity** is the icon corresponding to the maximum severity level of the events associated with the link. If no events are associated with the link, **No events** is displayed. Only events registered during the given object filtering period are taken into account. The current status of events is not taken into account.
- Sections with basic information about the first and second parties of the interaction:
  - If an unknown device node is a party of the interaction, this section displays the name or address of the device, category, and address information (whereas for a device known to the application, the address information is displayed only for those network interfaces that were involved in the interaction). For a known device, the device status is also displayed.
  - If a collapsed group is a party of the interaction, this section displays the name of the group and the number of devices and child groups it contains.
  - If the common node of unknown devices is a party of the interaction, this section displays the name of the node, **Unknown devices**, and the number of nodes represented by this node.
- **Protocols** is a section with a list of protocols involved in the interaction. For each protocol, the amount of transmitted data is indicated, calculated from the detected network packets. The section is not displayed if one of the parties to the interaction is the common node of unknown devices.

Zooming the network interaction map

The network interaction map can be displayed in a scale of 1–100%. The current scale is displayed in the toolbar located in the left part of the network interaction map display area.

To change the scale of the network interaction map:

Use the mouse wheel or the **+** and **–** buttons located in the toolbar next to the current scale value.

Reducing the scale of the network interaction map reduces the amount of information that is displayed for the nodes and collapsed groups.

At zoom levels below 25%, icons and text information are hidden in nodes and collapsed groups. The display of nodes and collapsed groups changes as follows:

- On a node representing a device known to the application, the device status is displayed in the upper right corner as a colored triangle:
  - Green means the device has the *Authorized* status.
  - Red means the device has the *Unauthorized* status.
  - Gray means the device has the *Archived* status.
- On a collapsed group, a triangle in the upper right corner indicates the presence of objects with issues. This triangle is filled with one of the following colors:
  - Green if the group does not contain objects requiring attention.
  - Red if the group contains objects with issues.

Positioning the network map

If necessary, you can change the positioning of the network interaction map manually or automatically. Automatic positioning lets you move the network interaction map and change its scale to display all nodes that satisfy the defined filter settings, as well as all expanded groups.

To manually position the network interaction map:

1. Position the mouse pointer over any part of the network interaction map that is not occupied by objects.
2. Click and hold the left mouse button to drag the network interaction map.

To automatically position the network interaction map:

Click the button in the toolbar located in the left part of the network interaction map display area.

The positioning and the scale of the network interaction map will change to display all nodes and expanded groups.

Pinning and unpinning nodes and groups

By default, nodes and collapsed groups are not pinned on the network interaction map. Unpinned nodes and collapsed groups can be automatically moved around to optimize the display of other objects.

Nodes and groups are pinned when their location is changed manually or in the process of automatic distribution. You can also pin displayed objects without moving them.

To pin or unpin objects without moving them, you can use the following controls:

- The buttons in the toolbar located in the left part of the network interaction map display area. You can use the and buttons to pin and unpin all nodes and groups displayed on the network interaction map (including nodes in expanded groups).
- Buttons in the title bar of the expanded group box. You can click or to pin or unpin nodes and groups in the expanded group box only (but not in boxes of nested groups).

The buttons are available if the network interaction map contains the objects to which the corresponding actions can be applied.

After the location of a node or collapsed group is pinned, the icon appears in the upper-right corner of this element (if the scale of the network interaction map is not less than 25%). You can also use this icon to unpin the object.

The pinned node or group stays in place. If a pinned node disappears from the network interaction map (for example, as a result of filtering), this node will be displayed in the same location the next time it appears.

Manually rearranging nodes and groups

You can manually change location of nodes and groups on the network interaction map by arranging them in the most convenient way for you.

Nodes and groups that have been moved become pinned to their new location. You can unpin them if necessary.

Objects included in a group can be moved only within the confines of that group's box.

To rearrange nodes and/or collapsed groups:

1. On the network interaction map, select one or multiple objects corresponding to nodes and/or collapsed groups.

   To select multiple nodes and/or collapsed groups, do one of the following:

   - Press and hold the **SHIFT** key, then use the mouse to select a rectangular area with the objects that you want to select.
   - Press and hold the **CTRL** key and click every object that you want to select.

2. Drag the selected objects to where you want to place them.

   Nodes and collapsed groups remain pinned after moving. The icon is added to these objects.

To reposition an expanded group:

Click and drag the expanded group box by its title bar to a new location.

Automatically arranging nodes and groups

For optimal arrangement of objects on the network interaction map, you can use algorithms to automatically change the location (arrangement) of nodes and groups. The following algorithms are provided:

- Radial arrangement
- Alignment to grid

You can apply automatic arrangement algorithms to the following objects:

- All displayed nodes and groups at the top level of the hierarchy in the group tree. Automatic arrangement is performed using the (radial arrangement) button and the (grid-aligned arrangement) button in the toolbar located in the left part of the network interaction map display area.

- All displayed nodes and groups within the expanded group. To perform automatic arrangement, you can click the (to arrange radially) and (to align to grid) buttons in the title bar of the expanded group's box.

- Only selected nodes and collapsed groups. Before automatic arrangement, you must select at least three nodes and/or collapsed groups within an expanded group or at the top level of the hierarchy. To select multiple objects, you can press and hold the **SHIFT** key and draw a selection box around the necessary objects, or you can select multiple objects by **CTRL**+clicking them. Automatic arrangement is performed using the (radial arrangement) button and the (grid-aligned arrangement) button in the toolbar located in the left part of the network interaction map display area.

Nodes and groups that have been automatically arranged become pinned to their new location. The icon is added to these objects. You can unpin them if necessary.

Searching for nodes on the network interaction map

You can search nodes on the network interaction map based on information about these nodes. All nodes that satisfy the current filtering conditions, including nodes inside collapsed groups and nodes beyond the displayed region of the network interaction map.

For nodes that represent devices known to the application, the search is performed by all columns of the table of devices except **Status**, **Security state**, **Last seen**, **Last modified**, and **Created**. The search is also performed by the values of custom fields for devices.

If nodes matching the search query are found, the outlines of these nodes are highlighted in yellow. The outlines of collapsed groups in which the nodes are found are highlighted in the same way. At the same time, the following elements appear in the right part of the **Search nodes** field:

- The ordinal number of the currently selected object (a found node or a collapsed group with found nodes) among the search results.

- The total number of found objects (nodes and/or collapsed groups with found nodes).

  > The total number of found objects does not take into account the number of nodes in collapsed groups. If you want nodes in groups to be counted towards the total in search results, expand the collapsed groups.

- Arrows for moving between found objects. You move between found objects in alphabetical order of their names. When moving to the next object, the network interaction map is automatically positioned to display this object.

To find nodes on the network interaction map:

Filtering objects on the network interaction map

This section provides instructions on filtering objects on the network interaction map to limit the number of nodes and links displayed.

Comprehensive filtering of nodes and links

This section contains instructions on comprehensive filtering of nodes and links.

Filtering using a period on the timeline

To filter nodes and links, you can select a time period on the timeline. The timeline is displayed in the lower part of the network interaction map window.

The timeline contains the following elements:

- The starting date and time of the timeline.
- Periods when events with scores of 4.0 and higher were recorded. These periods are displayed as red bars in the lower part of the scale. Periods are not displayed if the configured length of the timeline is more than seven days.
- Filtering period. This period is displayed as a yellow bar with dragging handles at both ends.
- Graph of traffic volume processed by the application. The graph is not displayed if the configured length of the timeline is more than seven days.
- The end of the timeline. Depending on the filtering period, the end of the timeline is displayed as a date and time (if a date and time is specified) or as a **Now** link.

The following types of filtering periods are possible:

- Period with reference to the current moment. The right end of such a period coincides with the right end of the timeline corresponding to the current moment.
- Period without reference to the current moment. A period of this type can be placed anywhere in the timeline.

To configure filtering of objects by period with reference to the current moment:

1. Click the **Now** button to the right of the timeline. This button is not displayed if the period is already defined with reference to the current moment.

2. If you want to specify a different length of the period, do one of the following:

   - Drag the left end of the yellow period bar to the required position (the maximum length of period is 7 days).

   - Open the settings window by clicking the button above the yellow period bar, select the **Anchor to boundary** check box, then select a duration (**Hour**, **Day**, **7 days**) and click **OK**.

The network interaction map shows only the nodes and links for which communications were detected since the beginning of the specified period up to the current moment.

To configure filtering by period without reference to the current moment:

1. If the period you want to set is out of bounds of the timeline, change the start and/or end date and time of the timeline:

   a. To change the start date and time of the timeline, click the link in the left part of the timeline to open a window and in that window, select one of the following options:

      - **Day**.

      - **7 days**.

      - **30 days**.

      - **Set the date**. For this option, specify a date and time in the opened field.

   b. To change the end date and time of the timeline, click the link in the right part of the timeline to open a window and in that window, select one of the following options:

      - **Now**.

      - **Specify a date**. For this option, specify a date and time in the opened field.

2. Set the period you want. To do so, do one of the following:

   - Drag the period on the timeline to where you want it to be.

   - Move one or both edges of the yellow period bar on the timeline to where you want the period to be (the maximum length of a period is 7 days).

   - Open the settings window by clicking the button above the yellow period bar, then select a duration (**Hour**, **Day**, **7 days**) and click **OK**.

3. If the period is automatically anchored to the current moment (when you move the period to the extreme right position, the **Now** button to the right of the timeline is no longer displayed) and you don't want this, disable the automatic anchoring. To do so, open the settings window by clicking the button above the yellow period bar, clear the **Anchor to boundary** check box and click **OK**.

Filtering by registered events

You can configure the network interaction map to show the nodes and links whose information is saved in the events associated with the selected nodes.

The capability to filter by events is available if no more than 200 nodes are selected on the network interaction map. You can select nodes either individually or as part of collapsed groups that include the required devices. When you select a collapsed group, all devices in child groups at all nesting levels also end up in the selection.

You can use the following ways of filtering by events:

- Initial filtering by events. Use this method to filter objects by events associated only with the selected nodes.
- Additional filtering by events. This method is applied if initial filtering by events is already performed (for example, when switching to the network interaction map from the events table) and you need also to filter events associated with additionally selected nodes from the list of nodes displayed on the network interaction map.

To display nodes and links based on initial event filtering:

1. On the network interaction map, select one or more nodes and/or collapsed groups.

   To select multiple nodes and/or groups, do one of the following:

   - Press and hold the **SHIFT** key, then use the mouse to select a rectangular area with the objects that you want to select.
   - Press and hold the **CTRL** key and click every object that you want to select.

2. In the toolbar above the network interaction map, open the **Event filter** drop-down list.
3. In the drop-down list, select **Filter**.

   The network interaction map displays only the nodes and links whose information is contained in the events associated with the selected nodes. In the toolbar above the network interaction map, a list is displayed with event IDs (the IDs are listed in the chronological order of detection of the associated events).

To add nodes and links to the displayed objects using additional filtering by events:

1. Make sure the initial filtering by events already has been performed. To do so, check for the availability of a list containing event IDs in the toolbar located above the network interaction map.
2. Among the nodes displayed on the network interaction map, select the nodes for which you want to add associated events to the filter.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.

3. In the toolbar above the network interaction map, open the **Event filter** drop-down list.
4. In the drop-down list, select **Add to filter**.

   The network interaction map also displays the nodes and links whose information is contained in the events associated with the selected nodes. IDs of detected events are added to the list of IDs in the toolbar.

Filtering of nodes

This section provides instructions on filtering nodes.

Filtering nodes by device status

To filter nodes by device status:

1. In the toolbar above the network interaction map, open the **Device statuses** drop-down list.

   A list is displayed with status names for devices known to the application (*Unauthorized*, *Authorized*, *Archived*), as well as the *Unknown device* status for devices that application does not recognize.

2. In the drop-down list, select check boxes for statuses that you want to use as a filtering condition for nodes displayed on the network interaction map.

3. Click **OK**.

The network interaction map displays only the nodes corresponding to devices with the selected statuses.

Filtering nodes by device security state

To filter nodes by device security state:

1. In the toolbar above the network interaction map, open the **Device states** drop-down list.

   A list is displayed containing the security state names of the devices (*OK*, *Warning*, *Critical*).

2. In the drop-down list, select the check boxes for the security states of nodes that need to be displayed on the network interaction map.

3. Click **OK**.

The network interaction map displays only the nodes corresponding to devices with the selected security states.

Filtering nodes by device category

To filter nodes by device category:

1. In the toolbar above the network interaction map, open the **Device categories** drop-down list.

   A list is displayed containing the names of categories of devices known to the application as well as special categories for unknown devices.

2. In the drop-down list, select the check boxes for the categories of devices that need to be displayed on the network interaction map.

3. Click **OK**.

The network interaction map displays only the nodes corresponding to devices with the selected categories.

Showing and hiding nodes linked to filtered nodes

After filtering nodes, the network interaction map displays only the nodes that satisfy the defined filter settings. In addition, for a node to be displayed on the network interaction map, it must have a connection (link) with another displayed node. If, according to the specified filtering parameters, the network interaction map does not display any node with which a node has interacted, this node is also not displayed on the network interaction map. Filtering is applied in the same way to nodes rolled up into the common node of unknown devices: if not all nodes that have interactions with an unknown devices node, this node is excluded from the list of nodes of the common node of unknown devices.

If necessary, you can enable the network interaction map to display all nodes associated with filtered nodes. All nodes that have been interacted with will be displayed together with the filtered nodes (regardless of the current filtering conditions).

To show or hide nodes associated with filtered nodes:

Use the **Linked devices** toggle switch in the toolbar above the network interaction map.

Filtering links

This section provides instructions on filtering links.

Filtering links by criticality score

To filter links on the network interaction map by criticality score:

1. In the toolbar above the network interaction map, open the **Scores of links** drop-down list.

   A list of event severity levels and ranges is displayed: Low (0.0–3.9), Medium (4.0–7.9), High (8.0–10.0); as well as the **No events** item, which lets you filter links that have no registered events.

2. In the drop-down list, select the check boxes for the severity levels by which you want to filter.

3. Click **OK**.

The network interaction map displays only the links associated with events that have the selected severity levels.

Filtering links by communication protocol

To filter links on the network interaction map by communication protocol:

1. In the toolbar above the network interaction map, open the **Protocols** drop-down list.

   This opens a window with a table of protocols displayed as a protocol stack tree. You can control the display of tree nodes using the **+** and **-** buttons next to the names of protocols that encompass protocols of the next tiers.

The table columns contain the following information:

- **Protocol** is the name of the protocol in the protocol stack tree.
- **EtherType** is the number of the next-layer protocol encapsulated by the Ethernet protocol (if the protocol has a specified number). Displayed in decimal format.
- **IP number** is the number of the next-layer protocol encapsulated by the IP protocol (if the protocol has a specified number). Specified only for protocols that are part of the IP protocol structure. Displayed in decimal format.

2. If necessary, use the search bar above the table to find the protocols that you need.
3. In the list of protocols, select check boxes for protocols that you want to use in search conditions.

   If you select or clear the check box for a protocol that contains nested protocols, check boxes are also automatically selected or cleared for all nested protocols.
4. Click **OK**.

The network interaction map displays only the links for which the selected protocols are used.

Filtering links by OSI model layer

You can filter links by interaction layers that correspond to the layers of the Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) network protocol stack.

To filter links on the network interaction map based on the layers of the OSI network model:

1. In the toolbar above the network interaction map, open the **OSI model layers** drop-down list.

   A list of OSI model layer names is displayed:

   - **Data Link**. This layer includes connections that used MAC addresses to communicate with devices.
   - **Network**. This layer includes connections that used IP addresses to communicate with devices.
2. In the drop-down list, select the check boxes for the OSI model layers whose links need to be displayed on the network interaction map.
3. Click **OK**.

Only links that belong to the selected OSI model layer are displayed on the network interaction map.

Resetting filtering criteria

You can reset specified node and link filtering criteria to their default condition.

To reset the defined filter settings on the network interaction map:

In the toolbar above the network interaction map, click **Default filter** (the button is displayed if non-default filtering criteria are specified).

The network interaction map will display all nodes and links for which communications within the specified period were detected.

Saving and loading the display settings of the network interaction map

This section contains information about managing display settings of the network interaction map.

The application allows you to save the current display settings of the network interaction map. A set of display settings that can be saved is called a *view*. You can use views to apply the saved display settings of the network interaction map (for example, to quickly restore the display settings after making some changes, or to work with the network interaction map on a different computer).

When a network interaction map view is saved, the following display settings are saved:

- Zoom level
- network interaction map positioning
- Position of pinned nodes and groups
- Filtering of nodes and links

You can save and use up to 10 views.

Only users with the Administrator role can manage the list of views (including saving the current display settings as a view). However, all users with the Administrator, Security auditor, Senior security officer, and Security officer roles can see the list of views and apply views to the network interaction map.

Adding a new view and saving the current display settings of the network interaction map

To add a new view and save the current display settings of the network interaction map

1. Log in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the **Administrator** credentials.
2. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
3. Go to the **Network interaction map** tab.
4. Open the **Configure network map views** window by clicking the **Manage views** button.
5. Click **Add**.
6. Enter a name for the view in the text box.

   You can use letters, numbers, the space character, and the following special characters: `! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } ' , . - _`.

The view name must satisfy the following requirements:

- Begins and ends with any character other than a space.
- Contains up to 100 characters.
- Does not reuse the name of another view (case-insensitive).

7. Click the ✓ icon to the right of the text box.

Refreshing a view and saving the current display settings of the network interaction map

To update a view and save the current display settings of the network interaction map

1. Log in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the **Administrator** credentials.
2. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
   Go to the **Network interaction map** tab.
3. Open the **Configure network map views** window by clicking the **Manage views** button.
4. Select the view in which you want to save the current network interaction map display settings.
5. Click **Overwrite**.
   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
6. In the prompt window, confirm the saving of the current settings in the selected view.

Renaming a network interaction map view

To rename a view:

1. Log in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the **Administrator** credentials.
2. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
3. Go to the **Network interaction map** tab.
4. Open the **Configure network map views** window by clicking the **Manage views** button.
5. Select the view you want to rename.
6. Click the ✎ icon to the right of the current view name.
7. Enter the new name for the view in the text box.
   You can use letters, numbers, the space character, and the following special characters: `! @ # № $ % ^ & ( ) [ ] { } ' , . - _`.

The view name must satisfy the following requirements:

- Begins and ends with any character other than a space.
- Contains up to 100 characters.
- Does not reuse the name of another view (case-insensitive).

8. Click the ✓ icon to the right of the text box.

Deleting a network interaction map view

To delete a view:

1. Log in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the **Administrator** credentials.
2. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
3. Go to the **Network interaction map** tab.
4. Open the **Configure network map views** window by clicking the **Manage views** button.
5. Select the view you want to delete.
6. Click **Delete**.
   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
7. In the prompt window, confirm the deletion of the selected view.

Applying settings saved in the view to the network interaction map

To apply settings saved in a view to the network interaction map:

1. Log in to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface with the **Administrator** credentials.
2. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
3. Go to the **Network interaction map** tab.
4. Open the **Configure network map views** window by clicking the **Manage views** button.
5. In the list, select the view that you want to apply.
6. Click **Apply**.
   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
7. In the prompt window, confirm to apply the selected view.

Monitoring network sessions

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can scan traffic to detect network sessions that devices create to connect to other devices. The application registers detected network sessions and saves information that can help you analyze network activity of devices and download data about transmitted network packets from traffic dump files. Unlike links on the network interaction map, registered network sessions allow you to obtain more fine-grained information about device interactions, due in part to independent registration of sessions for different ports and protocols that are used for the interactions.

The application detects network sessions if the Network Session Detection method is enabled for the Asset Management technology. Network Session Detection can be performed when analyzing traffic arriving at monitoring points, as well as when receiving information from the Endpoint Agent component.

Each registered network session contains information about the connection between two devices that are parties to the interaction. A network session is characterized by the address information of the parties to the interaction (MAC and/or IP addresses), port numbers, and the application protocol that is used for the connection. The first device in a network session is usually the device that initiated the sending of network packets to the other device.

You can view the full list of protocols detected by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in the *Protocols detected by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform* section.

A network session is considered closed if no network packets have been sent for one minute or if the Network Session Detection technology becomes disabled on the relevant node or monitoring point.

When an exceedingly large number of network sessions is detected, the application applies the following session registration restrictions:

- The number of registered sessions between two interacting parties using the same application protocol may not exceed 1000 per minute.
- The total number of registered sessions between the two parties may not exceed 5000 per minute.

The application stores information about network sessions in a database on the Central Node server. The total amount of stored records cannot exceed the configured limit. If the amount exceeds the limit, the application automatically deletes 10% of the oldest records.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, information about network sessions of SCN servers is not displayed on the PCN.

Network sessions table

To view the list of network sessions:

1. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Network sessions** tab.

   The network sessions table is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **Status** is the status of the network session. A registered network session can have one of the following statuses:
  - **Active**. This status is assigned when a network session is registered and is retained as long as the devices keep sending network packets within this session.
  - **Closed**. This status is assigned to a network session if no network packets have been sent for one minute or if the Network Session Detection technology becomes disabled on the relevant node or monitoring point.
- **Side 1** is the MAC and/or IP addresses of one of the sides of the network interaction. The display of MAC and IP addresses can be turned on and off.
- **Side 1 port** is the port number of the first side of the interaction.
- **Side 2** is the MAC and/or IP addresses of the other side of the network interaction. The display of MAC and IP addresses can be turned on and off.
- **Side 2 port** is the port number of the second side of the interaction.
- **Device 1** is the name of the device known to the application, which corresponds to the address information of the first side of the interaction.
- **Device 2** is the name of the device known to the application, which corresponds to the address information of the second side of the interaction.
- **Transfer protocol** is the name of the transport protocol used in the network session.
- **Application protocol** is the name of the application layer protocol used in the network session.
- **Current speed** is the current data transfer rate for the network session.
- **Average speed** is the average data transfer rate for the network session.
- **Total transmitted** is the number of bytes transmitted during the network session.
- **Monitoring points** lists the names of monitoring points that have received traffic for the network session.
- **Start** is the date and time of the first network packet in the network session or the date and time of the beginning of the time period defined by data from an EPP application.
- **Last interaction** is the date and time of the last network packet in the network session or the date and time of the end of the time period defined by data from an EPP application (if only one packet was received in the network session, this value is the same as the **Start**).
- **Number of packets** is the number of network packets transmitted during the network session.

When viewing the table of network sessions, you can configure, filter, and sort the network sessions, as well as navigate to related items and export data.

Viewing network session details

Detailed information about a network session includes information from the Network sessions table, as well as the name of the application that was active when the network session was initiated (if Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform was able to determine the name of the application).

To view the details of a network session:

1. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Network sessions** tab.
3. Click the line with the relevant session.

   This opens a window with information about the network session.

Downloading network session traffic

When viewing the table of network sessions, you can download traffic related to the selected network sessions. Traffic is downloaded as a PCAP file. To download only the data you need, you can configure network packet filtering.

The application downloads traffic of network sessions from traffic dump file storages. Traffic can be downloaded from the internal storage that was automatically created as part of the Sensor installation process, as well as an external storage if one is connected.

When downloading network session traffic, consider the following:

- Traffic can be downloaded only for those network sessions that were registered when analyzing traffic that arrived at the monitoring points. If a network session was registered based on information received from the Endpoint Agent component, you cannot download the traffic of such a session.
- Traffic dump files are stored in storages temporarily and are automatically deleted as new traffic arrives (the rotation period depends on the amount of traffic and the application storage configuration). You cannot downloading traffic for a network session if the corresponding traffic dump files have already been deleted from storages.

To download network session traffic:

1. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Network sessions** tab.
3. Select check boxes next to network sessions whose traffic you want to download.

   You can select a maximum of 100 network sessions.
4. Click **Download traffic**.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.

5. Do the following:

   - If you want to download traffic for a certain period of time, set the bounds using the **Period of traffic to download** setting.

     By default, the maximum possible period is chosen, starting from the date and time when the earliest network session was established and ending with the date and time when the latest session in the selection ended. If necessary, you can move the bounds within this period or set an empty value for one of the bounds (for example, for the right bound to download new traffic of sessions that have not ended yet).

   - Under **Download volume limit**, set the maximum amount of traffic to download.

     If the amount of downloaded traffic exceeds the specified limit, the newest traffic is dropped.

   - If necessary, enable filtering under **Filtering by monitoring points** and specify the monitoring points that got the traffic that you need.

     By default, the monitoring points that got the traffic of selected network sessions are specified.

   - If necessary, enable filtering in the **Filtering by address spaces** section and specify the address spaces to which the addresses in the network packets of the selected network sessions belong (this section is displayed if additional address spaces are added to the application).

     By default, all address spaces created in the application are specified.

   - If necessary, enable filtering under **Filtering using BPF** and enter an expression for filtering using the BPF (Berkeley Packet Filter) technology by address parameters in network packets of the selected network sessions.

     Example of a filter expression:
     `tcp port 102 or tcp port 502`

   - If necessary, enable filtering under **Filtering using regular expressions** and enter a regular expression for filtering by the payload data of network packets of the selected network sessions.

     Filtering expression example:
     `^test.+xABxCD`

6. Click **Download**.

Your browser saves the downloaded file. Depending on your browser's settings, a window may be displayed on your screen in which you can specify the path and name of the downloaded file.

Downloading network session details

You can download the network session details displayed in the table of network sessions.

To download the network session details displayed in the table of network sessions:

1. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Network sessions** tab.

   The network sessions table is displayed.
3. Select the network session for which you want to download the details.
4. Click **Export**.

5. Select one of the following options:

   - **Export to CSV file**
   - **Export to JSON file**

   The JSON or CSV file is saved to your local computer in your browser's downloads folder. By default, the file is named *session_<file download date>_<file download time>.<json or csv>*.

Searching network packets

You can find and view the traffic related to the selected network packets. If necessary, you can download dumps of the found traffic.

To find traffic related to the selected network packets:

1. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Network sessions** tab.
3. Click **Search in packets**.

   This opens the window with network packet search settings.
4. Do the following:

   - In the **Period of traffic to download** field, set the bounds within which you want to search network packets.
   - If necessary, enable filtering under **Filtering using BPF** and enter an expression for filtering using the BPF (Berkeley Packet Filter) technology by address parameters in network packets of the selected network sessions. The BPF filtering expression is written in the libpcap format. For more details about the syntax, please refer to the pcap-filter manual page.

     Example of a filter expression:
     ```
     tcp port 102 or tcp port 502
     ```
   - If necessary, enable filtering in the **Filtering using regular expressions** section and enter an expression for filtering based on payload data in network packets.

     Example of a filtering expression:
     ```
     ^test.+xABxCD
     ```
   - If necessary, enable filtering under **Filtering by monitoring points** and specify the monitoring points from which you want to get traffic.
   - If necessary, enable filtering under **Filtering by address spaces** and specify the address spaces to which the addresses in network packets belong.
5. Click **Search**.

   The table displays data that match the filtering criteria.
6. If you want to download the dumps of the found network packets, click **Download**.

Raw network traffic dumps are downloaded in PCAP format.

Preconfigured network packet search rules

You can search in traffic using preconfigured rules that use BPF and regular expressions.

To search network packets using a preconfigured rule:

1. Select the **Network map** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Network sessions** tab.
3. Click **Search in packets**.

   This opens the window with network packet search settings.
4. In the **Period of traffic to download** field, set the bounds within which you want to search network packets.
5. In the table below, copy a filtering expression from the **Filtering using BPF** or **Filtering using regular expressions** column and paste it into the corresponding section of the web interface for searching in network packets.
6. Click **Search**.

   The table displays data that match the filtering criteria.

The preconfigured rules are listed in the table below.

Preconfigured network packet search rules

Purpose of the rule	Filtering using BPF	Filtering using regular expressions
Searching for traffic by IP address	`host <address>`	
Searching for traffic between two hosts	`host <address1> and host <address2>`	
Searching for traffic of an individual TCP session	`tcp <port1> and host <address1> and tcp <port2> and host <address2>`	
Searching for traffic by multiple IP addresses	`host <address1> or host <address2> or host <addressN>`	

Purpose of the rule	Filtering using BPF	Filtering using regular expressions
Finding all DNS queries from a group of hosts	`udp and dst port 53 and ( src host <address1> or src host <address2> or src host <addressN> )`	
Searching for HTTP traffic		`" HTTP/"`
Searching for DNS traffic	`udp dst port 53 or tcp dst port 53`	
Searching for HTTP traffic with a GET request to a certain domain	`tcp port 80 or tcp port 8000 or tcp port 8080 or tcp port 8888`	`GET.{1,1000}<domain>`
Searching for ICMP traffic of a specific host	`icmp and host <address>`	
Searching for authentication data transmitted as plain text	`tcp port 80 or tcp port 8000 or tcp port 8080 or tcp port 8888 or port ftp or port smtp or port imap or port pop3 or port telnet`	`"pass=|pwd=|log=|login=|user=|username=|pw=|passw=|passwd=|password=|pass:|user:|user|user|VXNlcm5hbWU6|UGFzc3dvcmQ6|LOGIN |USER|PASS "`
Searching for TCP sessions in which the host acts as a client	`tcp[tcpflags] = tcp-syn and host <address>`	
Searching for HTTP traffic in a given subnet	`net xx.xx.xx.xx/yy and (port 8080 or port 80)`	
Searching for local interaction traffic	`ip and src net (10 or 172.16/12 or 192.168/16) and dst net (10 or 172.16/12 or 192.168/16)`	

Purpose of the rule	Filtering using BPF	Filtering using regular expressions
Searching for traffic of interaction with objects on the internet	`ip and not (src net (10 or 172.16/12 or 192.168/16) and dst net (10 or 172.16/12 or 192.168/16)) and not multicast and not broadcast and not net 169.254/16`	
Searching for traffic by the UserAgent field in HTTP traffic	`User-Agent:`	

Protocols detected by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Protocols detected by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform are listed in the table below.

Protocols detected by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Category	Protocol
Link layer protocols	ARP
	RARP
	Ethernet I
	Ethernet II
	MPLS
	MPLS multi
	STP
	LLDP
Network layer protocols	IPv4
	IPv6
	IPv6 encapsulated
	IPX
	IS-IS over IP
	IS-IS over Ethernet I
	IS-IS over Ethernet II
	Loopback
	DHCP
	VRRP

Category	Protocol
Transport layer protocols	TCP
	UDP
	SCTP
	GRE
	ICMP
	IGMP
	PIM
	PRP
	QTP over UDP
Remote access and administration	RDP
	SSH
	Telnet
	RLOGIN over TCP
	RSH over TCP
	VNC
	AeroAdmin
	AmmyyAdmin
	AnyDesk
	TeamViewer over TCP
	TeamViewer over UDP
	Remote Utilities
	Srv Tcp DameWare Mini Remote Control
	Radmin over TCP
Data transmission	AFP over TCP
	FTP over TCP
	Tftp over TCP
	Tftp over UDP
	SFTP over TCP
	SMB over UDP
	Smb2 over TCP
	Smb2 over UDP
	Smb3 over TCP
	Smb3 over UDP
	BitTorrent
	NFS
Resolution of names and network services	DNS
	DNS LLMNR over TCP
	DNS LLMNR over UDP
	mDNS over UDP

Category	Protocol
Mail protocols	IMAP
	POP3
	SMTP
Time synchronization	NTP
	PTP
Authentication and directories	Kerberos
	LDAP
	LDP over UDP
	RADIUS
Web protocols and security	HTTP over TCP
	HTTPS
	WebSocket
	Secure Sockets Layer
Communication protocols	VoIP: SIP
	IRC
	MSNP over TCP
	MSNP over UDP
Multimedia and streaming	Flash Media Server over TCP
	Voice IP: SIP
	MQTT
Cloud and file sharing services	DropBox sync over UDP
	Napster over TCP
Service and diagnostic protocols	ICMP
	Syslog
	Ident over TCP
	SNMP
Routing and high availability	HSRP over UDP
	GLBP over UDP
	RIP
	EIGRP
Tunneling and VPN	L2TP
	PPTP over TCP
	Tor over TCP
	Tor over UDP
Applications and databases	Microsoft SQL
	MySQL
	Oracle
	DB2
	Tns over TCP
	Tns over UDP
Detection	SSDP over UDP

Category	Protocol
Session layer protocols	NetBIOS over TCP
	NetBIOS over UDP
Auxiliary protocols	Finger over TCP
Specialized protocols	Bitcoin over TCP

Monitoring risks

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can detect risks to which the information system resources are exposed. The application identifies the risks based on traffic analysis results and the received device information.

Detected risks can belong to the following categories:

- Vulnerability. Detected device vulnerabilities belong to this category.
- Configuration problems. This category includes security risks caused by incorrect configuration and risks of compromising data when writing and reading device configurations.
- Insecure network architecture. This category includes risks associated with detected insecure network interactions, devices, protocols, and software; risks due to authorized devices becoming inactive; and risks due to the EPP applications being absent from devices or not fully functional.

Each risk is scored from 0.0 to 10.0. When calculating the risk score, the application takes into account the available information about the device with which the detected risk is associated. When calculating the score, the application takes into account the importance level of the device, as well as other risks associated with that device. The *base score* is used as the initial value for the calculation. The base scores of risks in the Vulnerability category follow the Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS). For the rest of the risk categories, the base scores are taken from the table of risk types.

Risk information is uploaded to the database of detected risks on the Central Node. The total amount of stored records in the database cannot exceed the specified limit. If the amount exceeds the limit, the application automatically deletes 10% of the oldest records. You can set the maximum size of detected risk information when configuring the storage settings.

The contents of the detected risk database is displayed in the **Risks** section of the application web interface. You can also view an overview of device risks in the **Assets** section on the **Devices** tab.

About risks of the Vulnerability category

Vulnerability risks are registered when the application detects vulnerabilities in monitored devices on the corporate LAN. A *vulnerability* is a flaw in the software or hardware of a device, which an attacker can exploit to compromise the information system or gain unauthorized access to information.

The application detects vulnerabilities by analyzing the available device information. Information that can help identify a known vulnerability for a device is compared against certain fields in the *database of known vulnerabilities*. The database of known vulnerabilities is built into the application. This database, maintained by Kaspersky experts, contains information about the most relevant or the most frequently encountered device vulnerabilities.

The database of known vulnerabilities contains descriptions of vulnerabilities and of devices that are affected by these vulnerabilities. In addition, the database contains recommendations for protecting the system in the form of texts or links to public resources. The database of known vulnerabilities contains descriptions and recommendations from various sources, which may include vendors of devices and software, as well as various security organizations. The descriptions and recommendations in the database are in English.

After the application is installed, the original database of known vulnerabilities is used. You can keep your database up to date by installing updates.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform compares the available information about devices with fields in the database of known vulnerabilities that describe the devices that are affected by the vulnerabilities. The application uses the following device information to detect vulnerabilities:

- **Hardware vendor**.
- **Hardware model**.
- **Hardware version**.
- **Software vendor**. If no software vendor information can be found in the device information, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform reuses the **Hardware vendor** value.
- **Software name**. If the software name cannot be found in the device information, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform reuses the **Hardware model** value.
- **Software version**.

In the database of known vulnerabilities, device descriptions are stored in the CPE (Common Platform Enumeration) format. The application compares the available device information with these descriptions, automatically converting the information to the CPE format. For each vulnerability, the content of the matching descriptions is listed in the risk details area in the **Matched CPE** section.

The main parameter that identifies a vulnerability is its ID in the Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVE) list. This identification number is known as a *CVE ID*. If a vulnerability does not yet have a CVE ID, an ID obtained from other public resources with descriptions of vulnerabilities is specified.

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform supports getting IDs and links to descriptions of vulnerabilities provided by the Federal Service for Technical and Export Control (FSTEC) of Russia in the Information Security Threats Databank (hereinafter also referred to as the "BDU"). If the downloaded vulnerability information contains such information from FSTEC's BDU, the application displays this information in the form of corresponding IDs in the "BDU:<year>-<number>" format.

Implementation scenario for a continuous risk management process

The risk detection functionality allows implementing continuous (cyclical) risk management in your information system. To help you manage risks, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides information about detected risks, which you can use to take the necessary remediation or mitigation measures.

The implementation scenario for the continuous risk management process involves the following steps:

1. **Taking a device inventory**

   This step is performed using the Device Activity Detection and Device Information Detection methods (the methods must be enabled). At this step, the application automatically detects new devices and updates the device information. If some devices on the network were not detected automatically, you need to add them manually or import them from external projects.

   You must enable automatic update in the device settings for all information that determines the classification and operational characteristics of devices (for example, model and software version). If automatic update of such information is for some reason impossible, this information must be kept up to date manually.

2. **Risk detection while scanning passively or actively**

   The application passively scans devices for risks using the available information about the devices. The application also analyzes network interactions in corporate LAN traffic to detect risks. Risk detection is implemented by the Risk Detection method (the method must be enabled).

   You can also actively poll devices to quickly get their information. When performing active polling of devices, you also can detect specific types of risks if the corresponding risk analysis methods are selected. To actively poll devices, you need to add one or more **Active poll** connectors to the application.

   Risks of the Vulnerability category are automatically detected after updating the database of known vulnerabilities in the application or after adding or updating the device information that is used for matching (for example, after saving software model and version information).

3. **Scoring and classifying detected risks**

   For each detected risk, the application calculates a score. The score reflects the severity of the risk. Depending on the score, the severity of the risk can be *Low* (score 0.0–3.9), *Medium* (score 4.0–7.9), or *High* (score 8.0–10.0).

   Based on the severity levels and scores, and factoring in the special ways in which devices are used in your information system, you can classify detected risks in accordance with their importance. If you assess the risk as insignificant, you can manually change its status from the *Active* status (assigned by default after detection) to the *Accepted* status, for example, if the prerequisites for exploiting the vulnerability cannot be reproduced. When changing the status of a risk, we recommend adding or editing a comment.

   All risks that need something to be done about them should be left with the *Active* status.

4. **Remediation**

   At this step, you must undertake remediation or mitigation of the detected risks. To do this, check all *Active* detected risks, starting with the risks with the highest scores. Do what is necessary in your information system (for example, to remedy the vulnerability of a device, install the software update that fixes it, and if this is not possible, isolate this device from external networks). For some risks (for example, vulnerabilities), information on recommended actions is provided.

   > Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is not involved in the remediation of detected risks.

5. **Verifying remediation**

   This step is similar to risk detection while scanning. As a result of this step, no *Active* risks should remain in the risk table.

   For most risks that the application detects during passive scanning (for example, vulnerabilities), the application automatically assigns the *Remediated* status if the conditions for detecting these risks are no longer satisfied. For example, after the software version is changed for a device, the application assigns the *Remediated* status to the Vulnerability risk that was registered because of a vulnerable software version that had been specified previously. The *Remediated* status is also assigned to risks that no longer have a description in the database of known vulnerabilities (if the description is removed from the database after downloading updates).

   When devices are removed, the application also removes the risks associated with these devices.

If, after remediation, the conditions for detecting the risk have not changed (for example, the vulnerable device is isolated from external networks, but the information about this device has not changed), you can manually assign the *Accepted* status to this risk. When changing the status of a risk, we recommend adding or editing a comment.

Some risks cannot be automatically assigned a status of *Remediated* (for example, *Remediated* cannot be automatically assigned to risks that are detected during active polling of devices). For such risks, you must also manually assign the *Accepted* status after the risk remediation is complete.

If a risk is associated with an event, you can assign the *Accepted* status to this risk at the same time when you change the event status to *Resolved*.

Viewing the risk table

The risk table is displayed in the **Risks and anomalies** section of the application web interface window.

Risk settings are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Category**.

  The name of the risk category.

- **Name**.

  Risk name. For a risk of the Vulnerability category, the CVE ID of the detected vulnerability is used (if there is no CVE ID, an ID obtained from other public resources with vulnerability descriptions is displayed).

- **CVE**.

  For risks of the Vulnerability category: CVE ID of the detected vulnerability.

- **BDU**.

  For risks of the Vulnerability category: ID of the vulnerability in the BDU database. If multiple vulnerabilities with different BDU IDs correspond to one vulnerability with a CVE ID, the column lists all such IDs.

- **Risk ID**.

  Unique ID of the risk.

- **Score**.

  The calculated risk score. This numerical value determines the severity level of the risk. Depending on the severity level, the score can be displayed in one of the following colors:

  - Red for a *High* severity risk.
  - Yellow for a *Medium* severity risk.
  - Blue for a *Low* severity risk.

  For *Active* risks, the color of the score is bright. For *Remediated* or *Accepted* risks, the color of the score is faint.

  In the details area, this setting is called **Base score**.

- **Side 1**.

  Address information of one of the sides of the network interaction (indicated for some types of risks). The display of MAC and IP addresses can be turned on and off separately. If extra address spaces are added in the application, when configuring the risk table, you can enable or disable the display of address space names using the **Show address spaces** setting.

- **Side 2**.

  Address information of the other side of the network interaction (indicated for some types of risks). The display of address information can be configured the same way as the **Side 1** column.

- **Device group**.

  Name of the group in which the device with the detected risk is placed (contains the name of the group itself and the names of all its parent groups).

- **Device**.

  Name and address of the device.

- **Source**.

  For risks of the Vulnerability category: the name of the source from which the information was uploaded into the database of known vulnerabilities. In the details area, this setting is called **Source of vulnerability**.

- **Status**.

  Current risk status. The following statuses are possible:

  - The *Active* status is assigned by default when the risk is first detected (as well as upon repeated detection if the risk had been assigned the *Remediated* status). You can also manually assign the *Active* status to a risk if its current status is *Accepted*.

  - The *Remediated* status is automatically assigned if the conditions for detecting the risk are no longer satisfied.

  - The *Accepted* status is assigned to a risk manually if the risk is assessed as insignificant or if the undertaken remediation actions did not result in the automatic assignment of the *Remediated* status.

- **Detected at**.

  Date and time when the risk was detected.

- **Last status change**.

  Date and time of the last risk status change.

- **Matched CPE**.

  For risks of the Vulnerability category: device descriptions stored in the database of known vulnerabilities. These are descriptions that match device information in the table of devices.

When viewing the risk table, you can configure, filter, search, and sort the files, as well as navigate to related items.

Viewing risk information

Risk information includes information from the risk table and the following fields:

- **Risk type** is the code of the risk type.
- **Description** is the description specified for the risk type or for the vulnerability.
- **Base score** is the initial value for calculating the risk score.

For risks of the Vulnerability category, additional information is displayed in the following fields and field groups:

- **CVSS vector** is a record of metrics for calculating the CVSS vulnerability score.
- **Attack conditions** is a description of the conditions that must be satisfied for the vulnerability to be exploited.
- **Impact** is a description of the possible consequences of exploiting the vulnerability.
- **Mitigations** lists recommendations for the remediation of the vulnerability (for example, information about which software version is recommended to be installed on the device).
- **Links** lists links to public resources that can provide additional information about the vulnerability.
- **CVE history** lists dates when the vulnerability was identified, confirmed, and published in public sources.

To view risk information:

1. Select the **Assets** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Devices** tab.
3. Click the name of the vulnerability (as a CVE ID or other vulnerability ID) in the **Risks** column.

   This opens a window containing information about the vulnerability.

Manually changing risk status

When managing the **Risks and anomalies** section, you can manually change the statuses of any risks from *Active* to *Accepted* and vice versa. When managing the **Assets** section, you can only change the status of Vulnerability category risks, and only from *Active* to *Accepted*.

You can also assign the *Accepted* status to a risk when assigning the *Resolved* status to events that are associated with this risk.

To manually change the risk status:

1. Open the risk details area or the risk details window.
2. Open the **Change status** drop-down list.

3. Depending on the status you want to assign to the risk, select one of the following from the drop-down list:

   - **Accepted** if you want to change the status of the risk from *Active* to *Accepted*.
   - **Active** if you want to reassign the *Active* status to the risk.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.

4. If the selected risk has related events and you want to assign the *Resolved* status to all these events at the same time, select the **Assign the Resolved status to all related events** check box.

   Risks may become associated with events when registering certain types of events using the Asset Management technology.

5. In the prompt window, click **OK**.

Viewing risk information while managing the table of devices

When working with the table of devices you can view information about the risks that were detected on devices. For each device that has risks of the Vulnerability category, the names of the detected vulnerabilities are displayed (as CVE IDs or other vulnerability IDs). If risks of other categories are detected on the device, names of those risk categories are displayed for that device. Vulnerability names and risk categories are displayed in the **Risks** column and in the details area when a device is selected.

By default, the table of devices displays information only about *Active* risks. If necessary, you can enable the display of information for all risks by selecting the **Show remediated and accepted risks** check box when configuring the device table.

To indicate the severity levels of risks, the names of vulnerabilities and categories are colored as follows:

- Red for *High* severity risks.
- Yellow for *Medium* severity risks.
- Blue for *Low* severity risks.

For *Active* risks, the color of the names is bright. For *Remediated* or *Accepted* risks, the color of the names is faint.

If a device has risks of the same category, the name of this category is displayed in the highest-severity color of all these risks.

If you want to view risk details, you can click the vulnerability and category names. Clicking a vulnerability name (as a CVE ID or other vulnerability ID) opens the vulnerability details window. Clicking a risk category name takes you to the risk table filtered to display the risks of the selected category for the device.

When viewing th table of devices, you can filter devices by their risks. You can also search for devices by vulnerability names (as CVE IDs or other vulnerability IDs).

Configuring NDR event types

Event types determine the parameters used when registering events: titles, descriptions, base scores, and registration settings. In Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you can view the settings of event types, edit some settings of event types, and configure automatic saving of traffic and forwarding of registered events through connectors.

Viewing the table of event types

The event types provided in the application are displayed in the **Settings** section, **Event types** subsection of the application web interface.

The table of event types contains *system event types*. These event types are created by the application during installation and cannot be removed from the list. Event registration technologies implemented in the application use different sets of system event types.

On the basis of some system event types, you can configure *user-defined event settings* to be used when registering events in certain cases. User-defined settings can be defined for the event type of the External systems technology, code 4000005400, to be used for registering events using the NDR API.

User-defined settings take precedence when registering events. The settings defined in system event types are used if there are no user-defined settings.

The following settings are provided for event types:

- **Code** – unique number (identifier) of the event type. In the table of event types, the number is displayed together with the event title in the **Code and title** column. In the table of registered events, the event type ID is displayed in the **Event type** column.
- **Title** – contents of the event title presented as text and/or variables. System event types can use variables specific only to these types of events, or general variables, which can also be used in user-defined settings. In the table of event types, the content of the title is displayed together with the event type number in the **Code and title** column. In the table of registered events, the text of the title and/or received values of variables are displayed in the **Title** column.
- **Base score** – initial value for calculating the score of the registered event. If an event type can have different base scores, the maximum value is displayed. This setting is displayed in the table of event types.
- **Technology** – technology used for event registration. This setting is displayed in the table of event types.
- **Description** – additional text that describes the event type. Similarly to the title, can contain variables. This setting is not displayed in the table of event types. You can view the description in the details area of the selected event type. In the table of registered events, the text of the description and/or the resulting values of variables are displayed in the **Description** column.
- **<Recipient connector name>** – name of the connector that the application uses to send events to the third-party system. The application sends to third-party systems only events of types that are configured for sending through the connector. Each connector, through which forwarding of events to third-party systems is configured, is displayed in a separate column of the table of risk types. This setting is not displayed in the details area of the selected event type.

- **Event regeneration period** – maximum time after which an event can be registered again. If the conditions for event enrollment are repeated before the specified time period elapses, a new event is not registered but the counter for the number of repeats of the previously registered event is increased and the date and time of the last occurrence of the event is updated. After the end of this period, when the conditions for registering an event recur, the application register a new event of this type. The regeneration period starts counting from the moment of the last registration of an event of this type. For example, if the regeneration period is set to 8 hours, and conditions for registering this event recur two hours after the previous event, a new event is not registered. A new event is registered if the conditions are detected after 8 hours or later. This setting is not displayed in the table of event types. You can view and configure this setting in the details area of the selected event type.

  For registered events, the regeneration period may expire earlier than configured. Repeated registration of an event is allowed earlier than the configured time if the *Resolved* status is assigned to the event, or if the Central Node computer performing is restarted.

- **Save traffic** – this setting enables or disables automatic saving of traffic when an event is registered. This setting is not displayed in the table of event types. You can view and configure this setting in the details area of the selected event type.

  If automatic saving of traffic is disabled, you can manually download traffic for some time after an event of this type is registered. When the application gets a request to download traffic, it searches for network packets in its temporarily generated traffic dump files. If the necessary network packets are found in the traffic dump files, these packets are downloaded (after being saved in the database first).

When viewing the table of event types, you can use the configuration, filtering, searching, and sorting functionality.

Editing the settings of a system event type

To edit the settings of a system event type:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Event types** subsection.
2. In the table of event types, select the type of event that you want to edit.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Edit the editable settings: the regeneration period and traffic saving settings.
5. Click **Save**.

Configuring automatic saving of traffic for system event types

When editing event types, you can enable or disable automatic saving of traffic for events when they are registered. If traffic saving is enabled, the database stores the network packet that caused the registration of the event, as well as the packets before and after the registration of the event that were detected within the network session in which the event was registered. Traffic saving settings determine how many network packets are saved and time limits.

If automatic traffic saving is disabled for an event type, and user-defined settings enabling traffic saving have been configured for this event type, you can download traffic only within a certain time frame after the registration of an event of this type. In this case, the application uses traffic dump files for downloading traffic. These files are stored temporarily and automatically deleted as new traffic arrives. When traffic is downloaded from these files, as many network packets are saved in the database as configured by default when you enable traffic saving for event types.

The application saves traffic in the database only when an event is registered. If the conditions for registering this event recur during the regeneration period, the traffic for that moment is not saved in the database.

You can enable and configure traffic saving for any event types.

If traffic saving is enabled for aggregate events (that is, for system event type 8000000001), the application saves traffic for all nested events when registering an aggregate event. The settings specified for the aggregate event are applied when saving the traffic of nested events. However, traffic saving settings specified directly for the types of events nested in the aggregate event override the settings specified for the aggregate event. That is, traffic for nested events is saved in accordance with the settings specified for the types of these events, and if such settings are not specified, the settings of the aggregating event are used.

To enable and configure traffic saving for an event type:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Event types** subsection.
2. In the table of event types, select the type of event that you want to edit.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Set the **Save traffic** toggle switch to *Enabled*.
5. Configure the saving of traffic from before the event was registered. To do so, specify relevant values in **Total packets before event** and/or **Time to event, ms**. Zero means the setting is not applied. If values are specified in both of these fields, the application saves the minimum number of packets that match one of the specified values.
6. Configure the saving of traffic from after the event was registered. To do so, specify the relevant values in **Total packets after event** and/or **Time after event, ms**. Zero means the setting is not applied. If values are specified in both of these fields, the application saves the minimum number of packets that match one of the specified values.

   For some technologies (in particular, Deep Packet Inspection), fewer packets from after registration may be saved in events than configured in traffic saving settings. This is due to the peculiarities of the traffic monitoring technology.
7. Click **Save**.

Configuring the forwarding of events through connectors

When configuring system event types, you can specify the connectors through which you want Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to forward registered events to third-party systems. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can send event information through multiple connectors simultaneously.

To configure the forwarding of events through connectors to third-party systems:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Event types** subsection.
2. Make sure that the table of event types displays the columns with the connectors that you need.

   If the column of the relevant connector is missing, check the column display settings. If the connector has not been added to the list of connectors, add it.
3. In the table of event types, select the types of events for which you want to enable or disable forwarding through connectors.

   If you select an individual event type, the details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Do one of the following:

   - If you select one event type, click **Select connectors** in the details area.
   - If you select multiple event types, click **Select connectors** in the upper part of the window.

   This opens the **Event recipient connectors** window.
5. Select the check boxes next to the connectors through which you want to forward events to third-party systems.
6. Click **OK**.

Common substitution variables in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

You can use common variables to substitute current values in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. You can use common variables in the following settings:

- Headers and descriptions of events in user-defined settings for event registration
- Settings of event forwarding, application messages, or audit records using the email connector

To insert a common variable into an input field:

Start typing the name of the variable with the leading $ character and select the common variable from the displayed list.

Common variables can be used for interpolation in different settings, depending on the purpose of the variable (see the table below).

Common variables for value substitution

Variable	Description	Usage
`$communications`	Network interaction description strings (one string per network interaction), specifying the protocol and sender and recipient addresses of the network packet	• User-defined settings for registering events. • Settings for forwarding events through a connector.
`$dst_address`	Network packet recipient address (depending on the information provided by the protocol, this can be an IP address, port number, MAC address and/or other address information)	• User-defined settings for registering events.
`$extra.<paramName>`	Extra variable added using the `AddEventParam` function for an external system or Lua script	• User-defined settings for registering events.
`$monitoring_point`	Name of the monitoring point whose traffic caused the event to be registered	• User-defined settings for registering events. • Settings for forwarding events through a connector.
`$occurred`	Date and time of registration	• User-defined settings for registering events. • Settings for forwarding events through a connector. • Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector. • Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.
`$protocol`	Name of the application layer protocol for which the event was logged	• User-defined settings for registering events.
`$src_address`	Network packet sender address (depending on the information provided by the protocol, this can be an IP address, port number, MAC address and/or other address information)	• User-defined settings for registering events.
`$technology_rule`	Name of the rule in the event.	• User-defined settings for registering events. • Settings for forwarding events through a connector.
`$top_level_protocol`	Name of the top-level protocol.	• User-defined settings for registering events.
`$type_id`	Code of the event type, application message, or audit entry.	• User-defined settings for registering events (the `$event_type_id` variable may also be used). • Settings for forwarding events through a connector. • Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector. • Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.
`$closed`	Date and time when a status of *Resolved* was assigned or the date and time of the event regeneration period (for events that are not aggregate events), or the date and time of registration of the last event included in the incident (for aggregate events).	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector.
`$count`	How many times a nested or aggregate event was triggered	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector.
`$description`	Description	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector. • Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector. • Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.
`$id`	Unique ID of the registered event, application message, or audit entry.	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector. • Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector. • Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.
`$message_category`	Category of transmitted data (event, application message, or audit record).	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector. • Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector.

		• Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.
`$message_count`	Number of transmitted events, application messages or audit records.	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector. • Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector. • Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.
`$messages`	Template that consists of a block containing a list of data.	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector. • Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector. • Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.
`$msg_line_templ`	Email notification string template	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector. • Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector. • Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.
`$node`	Node with the installed application component that sent the data.	• Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector. • Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.
`$result`	Operation result in the audit entry.	• Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.
`$score`	Event score value.	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector.
`$severity`	Event severity level.	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector.
`$status`	Application message status	• Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector.
`$system_process`	Application process that caused the message to be registered	• Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector.
`$technology`	Technology associated with the event.	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector.
`$title`	Event title, message text, or registered action.	• Settings for forwarding events through a connector. • Settings for forwarding application messages through a connector. • Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.
`$user`	Name of the user that performed the registered action.	• Settings for forwarding audit entries through a connector.

NDR event registration technologies

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform registers NDR events using one of the following technologies:

- *Intrusion Detection* (IDS)

  This technology registers NDR events related to the detection of anomalies in traffic that are indicators of attacks (for example, an NDR event can be registered indicators of ARP spoofing are detected).

- *External* (EXT)

  This technology registers aggregate and nested NDR events that are received by the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from third-party systems using the NDR API methods.

- *Asset Management* (AM)

  This technology registers NDR events involving the detection of information about devices in traffic or in data received from EPP applications (for example, an NDR event can be registered when a device is found to have a new IP address).

- *Endpoint Protection Platform* (EPP)

  This technology registers NDR events for threats detected by Kaspersky applications that protect workstations and servers (for example, a malware detection event).

System event types in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

To register events, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform uses system event types that are automatically created during application installation.

Each event type belongs to a certain event registration technology.

System event types of the Intrusion Detection technology

This article describes the system event types of the Intrusion Detection technology (see the table below).

Intrusion Detection (IDS) system event types

Code	Event type title	Conditions for registration
4000003000	Rule from the $fileName set (system rule set) was triggered	An intrusion detection rule from the system rule set is triggered. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $fileName: name of the rule set • $category: category of the rule • $ruleName: name of the rule • $signature_id: ID (sid) of the rule
4000003001	Rule from the $fileName set (user-defined rule set) was triggered	An intrusion detection rule from the user-defined rule set is triggered. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $fileName: name of the rule set • $category: category of the rule • $ruleName: name of the rule • $signature_id: ID (sid) of the rule • $action: type of network packet action defined in the rule (`drop` or `reject` actions are not performed in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform)
4000003002	Signs of a brute-force attack or scan were detected	A rule for detecting brute-force or scanning attack is triggered. In the description of the event type, the $ruleName variable is used for the rule name.
4000004001	Symptoms of ARP spoofing detected in ARP replies	Indicators of address spoofing in ARP packets detected: multiple ARP responses that are not associated with ARP requests. The following variables are used in the description of the event type: • $senderIp: IP address being spoofed • $targetIp: IP address of the destination host • $attackStartTimestamp: time when the first ARP response was detected
4000004002	Symptoms of ARP spoofing detected in ARP requests	Indicators of address spoofing in ARP packets detected: multiple ARP requests from the same MAC address to different destinations. The following variables are used in the description of the event type: • $senderIp: IP address being spoofed • $targetIp: IP address of the destination host • $attackStartTimestamp: time when the first ARP response was detected

Code	Event type title	Conditions for registration
4000005100	IP protocol anomaly detected: data conflict when assembling IP packet	IP protocol anomaly detected: data mismatch in overlapping IP packet fragments.
4000005101	IP protocol anomaly detected: fragmented IP packet size exceeded	IP protocol anomaly detected: actual total size of fragmented IP packet after reassembly exceeds the allowed limit.
4000005102	IP protocol anomaly detected: the size of the initial fragment of the IP packet is less than expected	IP protocol anomaly detected: the size of the initial fragment of the IP packet is less than the minimum allowed value.
4000005103	IP protocol anomaly detected: mis-associated fragments	IP protocol anomaly detected: fragments of the IP packet being assembled contain different information about the length of the fragmented packet.
4000002701	TCP protocol anomaly detected: content substitution in overlapping TCP segments	TCP protocol anomaly detected: packets contain overlapping TCP segments with different content.
4000000003	Test event (IDS)	Test network packet detected (with rule-based intrusion detection enabled).

System event types of the Asset Management technology

This article describes the system event types of the Asset Management technology (see the table below).

System event types of the Asset Management (AM) technology

Code	Event type title	Conditions for registration
4000005003	Detected new device with the address $owner_ip_or_mac	With Asset Monitoring in monitoring mode, a new device was automatically added by the detected IP or MAC address, which is not specified for other devices in the table. When registering the event, the application may simultaneously register an **Unauthorized device** risk for this device. In this case, a relation is established the risk and the event. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $owner_ip_or_mac: the IP or MAC address of the device • $asset_name: the assigned name of the device • $assigned_mac: the assigned MAC address (if defined) • $owner_ip: the assigned IP address (if defined) • $asset_id: the ID of the device
4000005004	Received new information about device with the address $owner_ip_or_mac	With Asset Monitoring in monitoring mode, device information was automatically updated based on information received from traffic. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $owner_ip_or_mac: the IP or MAC address of the device • $asset_name: the name of the device • $updated_params: a list of updated information • $asset_id: the ID of the device
4000005005	IP address conflict detected $owner_ip	With Asset Monitoring in monitoring mode, an IP address was detected that was not being used by the device for which the IP address was specified. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $owner_ip: the IP address • $challenger_asset_name: the name of the device that used the IP address • $challenger_mac: the MAC address of the device that used the IP address • $asset_name: the name of the device in whose settings the IP address was specified • $owner_mac: the MAC address of the device in whose settings the IP address was specified • $challenger_ips_list: a list of other IP addresses of the device that used the IP address • $asset_id: the ID of the device in whose settings the IP address was specified • $challenger_id: the ID of the device that used the IP address
4000005006	Detected traffic from address $owner_ip_or_mac, which is assigned to device with the Archived status	With Asset Management in monitoring mode, or based on data received from an EPP application, activity was detected from a device that has the *Archived* status. When registering the event, the application may simultaneously register an **Unauthorized device** risk for this device. In this case, a relation is established the risk and the event. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $owner_ip_or_mac: the IP or MAC address of the device • $asset_name: the name of the device • $last_seen_timestamp: the date and time when the device was last seen in the network • $asset_id: the ID of the device

Code	Event type title	Conditions for registration
4000005007	Detected new IP address $new_ip_addr for device with the MAC address $owner_mac	With Asset Monitoring in monitoring mode, a new IP address used by a device was detected. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $new_ip_addr: the detected IP address • $owner_mac: the MAC address of the device • $asset_name: the name of the device • $owner_ips_list: a list of other IP addresses of the device • $asset_id: the ID of the device
4000005008	New MAC address ($owner_mac) was added to device with IP address $owner_ip	In Asset Management monitoring mode, a MAC address was automatically added for a network interface that had only an IP address specified (the device had the *Unauthorized* or *Archived* status). The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $owner_mac: the detected MAC address of the device • $owner_ip: the IP address of the device • $asset_name: the name of the device • $asset_id: the ID of the device
4000005009	New IP address ($owner_ip) was added to device with the MAC address $owner_mac	In Asset Management monitoring mode, an IP address was automatically added for a network interface that had only a MAC address specified (the device had the *Unauthorized* or *Archived* status). The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $owner_ip: the detected IP address of the device • $owner_mac: the MAC address of the device • $asset_name: the name of the device • $asset_id: the ID of the device
4000005010	Detected new MAC address $new_mac_addr for device with the IP address $owner_ip	With Asset Monitoring in monitoring mode, a new MAC address used by a device was detected (with automatic update of address information disabled for this device). The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $new_mac_addr: the detected MAC address • $owner_ip: the IP address of the device • $asset_name: the name of the device • $asset_id: the ID of the device
4000005011	Detected change of MAC address $owner_mac to $challenger_mac in device data received from EPP application	Based on information received from an EPP application, the MAC address of the device has been updated. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $owner_mac: an old MAC address of the device • $challenger_mac: a new MAC address of the device • $asset_name: the name of the device • $asset_id: the ID of the device
4000005012	New address information for device $asset_name found in data received from EPP application	New address information of a device was found in data received from an EPP application. An event of this type is registered if the change of the address information of the device has not been processed by the application as event 4000005009 or 4000005010. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $asset_name: the name of the device • $detected_epp_addresses: address information • $asset_id: the ID of the device
4000005013	Conflict detected in addresses of devices $conflicted_epp_assets after data was received from EPP application	Based on the information received from the EPP application, a conflict with the addresses of multiple devices in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform was detected. According to the information from the EPP application, the addresses belong to the same device. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $conflicted_epp_assets: devices with conflicting addresses detected • $unaccepted_epp_addresses: addresses that belong to the same device
4000005014	Subnet $subnet_mask was added from EPP application data	After getting information from an EPP application, a new subnet was automatically added to the list of known subnets. The subnet is added to the address space in which the data source can be the integration server getting information from the EPP application. If multiple such address spaces exist, an address space is selected that contains the most suitable subnet for automatically adding a new nested subnet. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $subnet_mask: a subnet address • $subnet_type: a subnet type

Code	Event type title	Conditions for registration
4000005016	Unauthorized DHCP server detected with IP address $owner_ip	The $asset_name device (ID: $asset_id) with the address $owner_ip_or_mac was identified as an unauthorized DHCP server. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $asset_id: the ID of the device • $owner_ip_or_mac: the IP or MAC address of the device
4000005017	Unauthorized DHCP relay detected with IP address $owner_ip	The $asset_name device (ID: $asset_id) with the address $owner_ip_or_mac was identified as an unauthorized DHCP relay. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $asset_name: the name of the device • $owner_ip_or_mac: the IP or MAC address of the device
4000005600	Changes detected in the list of users on the device with the address $owner_ip_or_mac	Changes to user information were detected while controlling users on devices. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $owner_ip_or_mac: the IP or MAC address of the device • $asset_name: a name of the device • $asset_id: the ID of the device • $added_asset_users: a list of added users • $modified_asset_users: a list of modified users • $removed_asset_users: a list of removed users
4000005601	Changes detected in the list of applications on the device with the address $owner_ip_or_mac	Modified information about applications on the device detected while monitoring applications and patches on devices. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $owner_ip_or_mac: the IP or MAC address of the device • $asset_name: a name of the device • $asset_id: the ID of the device • $added_asset_apps: a list of added applications • $removed_asset_apps: a list of removed applications
4000005602	Changes detected in the list of patches on the device with the address $owner_ip_or_mac	Modified device patch information detected while monitoring applications and patches on devices. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $owner_ip_or_mac: the IP or MAC address of the device • $asset_name: a name of the device • $asset_id: the ID of the device • $added_asset_patches: a list of added patches • $removed_asset_patches: a list of removed patches
4000005603	Changes detected in the configuration component $inventory_loc_key on the device	While monitoring device configurations, changes in the configuration component were detected as compared to the previous configuration according to device scan results (for jobs that run in the **Update only** and/or **Archive versions** configuration processing modes). The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $inventory_loc_key: the name of the configuration component • $device_config_inventory_changed_format: the changes detected in the configuration component
4000005604	Discrepancies detected compared with the reference configuration component $inventory_loc_key on the device	When monitoring device configurations, discrepancies were found compared to the reference configuration component according to device scan results (for jobs that run in the **Compare with benchmark** configuration processing mode). The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $inventory_loc_key: the name of the configuration component • $device_config_diverged_format: detected discrepancies compared to the reference configuration component
4000005700	Public key mismatch detected while connecting to the device remotely	When connecting to the device remotely, a mismatch was detected between the received public key of the device and the value stored in the application. Device scan canceled. The following variables are used in the description of the event type: • $asset_name: the name of the device • $new_asset_sshpublickey: received public key • $old_asset_sshpublickey: stored public key
4000005701	Public key mismatch detected during device active polling	While actively polling a device, a mismatch was detected between the received public key of the device and the value stored in the application. Active polling canceled for the device. The following variables are used in the description of the event type: • $asset_name: the name of the device • $new_asset_sshpublickey: received public key • $old_asset_sshpublickey: stored public key
4000000004	Test event (AM)	Test network packet detected (with device activity detection method enabled).

System event types of the External systems technology

This article describes the system event types of the External systems technology (see the table below).

System event types of the External systems (EXT) technology

Code	Event type title	Conditions for registration
8000000001	Aggregate event	A sequence of events was detected that satisfied the conditions of a correlation rule. When registering an aggregate event, the title and description from the correlation rule are used as the title and description of the event.
4000005400	Event from external system	Event received from an external system using the NDR API. When the event is registered, the title and description are determined by the external system.

System event types of the Endpoint Protection Platform technology

This article describes the system event types of the Endpoint Protection Platform (see the table below).

System event type using the Endpoint Protection Platform (EPP) technology

Code	Event type title	Conditions for registration
4000005500	Activity specific for network attacks	The integration server received information about the triggering of the Network Threat Protection component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.
4000005501	Connection of an untrusted external device	The integration server received information about the triggering of the Device Control component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.
4000005502	Attempt to run an unauthorized or untrusted application	The integration server received information about the triggering of the Device Control component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.
4000005503	Prohibited file operation in the specified monitoring scope	The integration server received information about the triggering of the File Integrity Monitor component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.
4000005504	Files in the specified monitoring scope are modified	The integration server received information about the triggering of the Baseline File Integrity Monitor component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.
4000005505	Network connection not allowed by firewall rules	The integration server received information about the triggering of the Firewall Management component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.
4000005506	System registry modifications in the specified monitoring scope	The integration server received information about the triggering of the Registry Access Monitor component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.
4000005507	Log analysis rule was triggered	The integration server received information about the triggering of the Log Inspection component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.

Code	Event type title	Conditions for registration
4000005508	Attempt to exploit a vulnerability in a protected process	The integration server received information about the triggering of the Exploit Protection component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.
4000005509	Attempt to maliciously encrypt network file resources	The integration server received information about the triggering of the Anti-Cryptor component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.
4000005510	Attempt to connect to a Wi-Fi network	The integration server received information about the triggering of the Wi-Fi Control component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.
4000005512	Infected or probably infected object was detected	The integration server received information about the triggering of the Real-Time File Protection component of an EPP application. In the description of the event type, the $epp_event_description variable is used for the information from the EPP application.
4000005513	Sigma rule $sigmaAlertTitle triggered	The integration server received data about an Endpoint Agent component Sigma rule being triggered. The following variables are used in the title and description of the event type: • $sigmaAlertTitle: Sigma rule name • $sigma_detection_type: detection technology • $sigma_object_type: the type of object that triggered the Sigma rule • $sigma_object_name: the name of object that triggered the Sigma rule or the name of the first triggered Sigma rule • $sigma_status: detection status

Configuring risk types

Risk types define the settings that are used when registering risks in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform: names, categories, and base scores for risks. You can view the settings of risk types and, if necessary, change the base scores for some risk types.

After the installation, the application uses the original list of risk types. You can update and add supported risk types by installing updates.

Viewing the table of risk types

The table of risk types is displayed in the **Settings** section, **Risk types** subsection of the application web interface.

Risk type settings are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Code**.

  Unique number of the risk type. In the table of registered risks, the number of the risk type is displayed in the details area of the selected risk.

- **Name**.

  Name of the risk type displayed in the table of risk types. When registering a risk, its name may not completely match the name of the risk type used. The names of some risk types may be completely replaced with other names for registered risks. For instance, risk types with such names include risks of the **Risk from external system** types. If a risk of this type is registered, the application keeps the name of the risk specified in the source of information about the risk (for example, in an external system that uses the NDR API).

- **Category**.

  The name of the risk category.

- **Base score**

  Baseline for calculating the score of the registered risk. The configured base scores are applied when registering all risks, except for risks from external systems. Risk types named **Risk from external system** have base scores of zero. Base scores for such risks must be specified in external systems that register risks using the NDR API.

When viewing the table of risk types, you can use the configuration, filtering, searching, and sorting functionality.

Changing the base score for a risk type

Base scores cannot be changed for risk types named **Risk from external system**. If a risk of this type is registered, the base score of this risk must be provided by the source of information about the risk (for example, an external system that uses the NDR API).

To change the base score for a risk type:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Risk types** subsection.
2. In the table of risk types, select the risk type for which you want to change the base score.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Enter the new base score.
5. Click **Save**.

Managing the settings for storing risks

You can change the maximum total size limit for stored risks.

To change the risk storage settings:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Sensor servers** section.
3. Select the card of the Central Node server.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.

4. Click **Edit**.

   In the details area, tabs are displayed, on which you can manage the settings of the server.

5. On the **General** tab, go to **Risks** tab and use the **Max volume** setting to set the size limit for storing risks.

   You can select the unit of measure for the size limit: **MB** or **GB**.

   When editing the value, you also need to take into account that the sum total of all size limits may not exceed the specified maximum storage capacity for the node.

6. If necessary, use the **Storage time (days)** setting to enable a minimum storage time for risks, and specify the minimum number of days.

7. Click **Save**.

Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can select a set of operating systems used as the basis for creating tasks for scanning objects by the Sandbox component. The Sandbox server must have virtual machines installed that match the selected set.

You can view a list of Sandbox servers and virtual machines deployed on a server.

> Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of Sandbox servers and settings for a set of operating systems. Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view this section.

Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component

> Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

To view the table of servers with the Sandbox component:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Sandbox servers** subsection.

2. Select the **Servers** tab.

   A table is displayed with a list of Sandbox servers.

The table contains the following information:

- **IP and name**—IP address or fully qualified domain name of the server with the Sandbox component.
- **Authorization**—Status of the request to connect to the Sandbox component.

- **Status**—Status of the connection to the Sandbox component.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Certificate fingerprint of the server with the Sandbox component.
- **Virtual machines**—List of virtual machines created on the server.

Selecting operating systems to use when scanning objects in Sandbox

To select the set of operating systems:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Sandbox servers** subsection.
2. Go to the **Settings** tab.
3. Under **OS set**, select one of the following options:
   - **Windows 7, Windows 10**.
   - **CentOS 7.8, Windows 7, Windows 10**.
   - **Astra Linux 1.7, Windows 7, Windows 10**.
   - **Custom**.
4. If you selected **Custom**, under **Set composition**, select the check boxes next to the operating systems that you want to include in the set.

   Custom operating systems are displayed in the list if virtual machines with these operating systems are installed on the Sandbox server. Preset operating systems are always displayed in the list, but if virtual machines running these operating systems are not deployed, the **Unknown** status is displayed next to the name of the operating system.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will create tasks for scanning objects in Sandbox in accordance with the selected set.

If the set of operating systems installed on the Sandbox server does not match the set selected on the Central Node server, objects are not sent to be scanned by that Sandbox server. If multiple Sandbox servers are connected to the Central Node server, the application sends objects to those Sandbox servers whose installed operating systems match the set selected on Central Node.

You can change the set of operating systems in the course of using the application. In this case, you need to make sure that the configuration of the Sandbox server satisfies hardware requirements.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the settings of the operating system set configured on the PCN server are not applied to SCN servers connected to that PCN server. You can select the set of operating systems for each PCN and SCN server individually.

Managing user-defined rules

You can configure additional security for the IT infrastructure of the company using **IDS** and **YARA** rules.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can work with custom **IDS** and **YARA** rules: load and delete rule files, view lists of rules, and edit the selected rules.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the lists of custom **IDS** and **YARA** rules and properties of selected rules without the possibility of editing.

Users with the **Security officer** role can view the lists of custom **YARA** rules and properties of selected rules without the possibility of editing.

Managing user-defined Intrusion Detection rules

To detect intrusions in network traffic, you can use Intrusion Detection rules and additional Intrusion Detection methods that use built-in algorithms. When indicators of attacks are detected in traffic, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform registers *Intrusion Detection* technology events.

A valid KATA or KATA + NDR license key is required to manage user-defined Intrusion Detection rules.

An *Intrusion Detection rule* describes a traffic anomaly that may signify an attack in the network. Rules contain conditions that the Intrusion Detection system uses to analyze traffic.

Intrusion Detection rules are applied if the Rule-based Intrusion Detection method is enabled. You can enable or disable the method.

You can use the following types of rule sets:

- System rule sets. These rule sets are supplied by Kaspersky and are designed to detect indicators of the most common attacks or unwanted network activity. System rule sets are available immediately after installing the application. You can update system rule sets by installing updates. If necessary, you can create scan exclusions for these rules. For more information, see the *Managing Intrusion Detection rule exclusions* and *Managing allow rules for NDR events* sections.

- User-defined rule sets. These are the rule sets that you upload yourself. The files you upload must contain data structures that define Intrusion Detection rules. Files that you want to upload must all be in the same directory, and they must have the .rules extension. The names of the custom rule sets match the names of the files from which the rule sets were uploaded.

  User-defined Intrusion Detection rule sets are displayed in the **Custom rules** → **Intrusion detection** section.

The application supports up to 50,000 rules in total across all uploaded rule sets. You can upload up to 100 rule sets.

Rules loaded from user-defined rule sets may contain traffic analysis conditions that cause the application to register too many rule triggering events. In that case, you must keep in mind that registering too many events can impact the performance of the Intrusion Detection system.

Intrusion Detection rule sets can be enabled or disabled. Rules from an enabled rule set are applied when analyzing traffic if the Rule-based Intrusion Detection method is enabled. If a rule set is disabled, the rules in that rule set are not applied.

When a rule set is uploaded, the application checks the rules it contains. If any errors are found in the rules, the application blocks such rules and they are not applied. If errors are found in all rules of a rule set or the rule set does not contain any rules, the application disables such a rule set.

When conditions specified in a rule from an enabled set are detected in traffic, the application registers a rule triggering event. System event types are used for registration, which have the following codes:

- 4000003000 for an event involving a rule from the system rule set being triggered
- 4000003001 for an event involving a rule from a user-defined rule set being triggered

User-defined rule sets can contain rules obtained from other intrusion detection and prevention systems. When processing such rules, the application does not perform the specified actions that apply to network packets (for example, the `drop` and `reject` actions). When an intrusion detection rule triggers, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform only registers an event.

The values of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform event scores correspond to the priority values in the intrusion detection rules (see the table below).

Correspondence between rule priorities and event scores

Priority values in intrusion detection rules	Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform event scores
4 or more	2.5
3	4.5
2	6.5
1	9

You can configure the settings for registering Intrusion Detection events under **Settings** → **Event types**.

You can view Intrusion Detection events in the table of registered events.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, user-defined intrusion detection rules can have one of the following types:

- Created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan traffic on the PCN server.
- Created on the SCN server. These rules are used to scan traffic on the SCN server.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can upload, enable, or disable user-defined intrusion detection rule sets, as well as add Kaspersky-defined intrusion detection rules to scan exclusions. Users with the **Security auditor** role can view user-defined detection rule sets. Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to user-defined intrusion detection rules.

Viewing the table of Intrusion Detection rules

The table of user-defined Intrusion Detection rules is located in the **Custom rules** section, **Intrusion detection** subsection of the application web interface window.

The table contains the following information:

- **Rule set** is the name of the rule set.
- **Created by** is the name of the user that uploaded the rule file.
- **State** is the current state of the rule. A rule can have one of the following states: **Enabled**, **Disabled**.
- **Rules** is the status of the rules in the set. One of the following statuses can be displayed: *OK*, *Errors in all rules*, *Errors in some rules*.
- **File size** is the size of the uploaded file with rules.
- **Last update** is the date when the file was uploaded.

If necessary, you can customize the display of columns in the table.

Configuring the display of the Intrusion Detection rule table

You can customize the display of columns in the table of Intrusion Detection rules.

To customize the display of the table of Intrusion Detection rules:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Intrusion detection** subsection.
2. In the heading part of the table, click .

   This opens the **Customize table** window.
3. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

   If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

   > At least one check box must be selected.
4. If you want to rearrange the columns, click or to move the row with the parameter to the new place.
5. Close the table settings window.

The Intrusion Detection rule table display is configured.

Additional Intrusion Detection methods

To detect intrusions, you can use the following additional methods:

- Detection of signs of falsified addresses in ARP packets (ARP spoofing).

  If ARP spoofing detection is enabled, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform checks the addresses specified in ARP packets and detects indicators of low-level man-in-the-middle (MITM) attacks. This type of attack in networks that use the ARP protocol is indicated by fake ARP messages being found in the traffic.

When indicators of ARP spoofing are detected, the application registers Intrusion Detection technology events. System event types are used for registration, which have the following codes:

- 4000004001 for an event involving the detection of multiple ARP responses that are not associated with ARP requests.
- 4000004002 for an event involving the detection of multiple ARP requests from the same MAC address to different recipients.

- TCP Protocol Anomaly Detection.

  If TCP Protocol Anomaly Detection is enabled, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform scans TCP segments of the data stream in supported application layer protocols.

  When Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform detects packets containing overlapping TCP segments with different content, it registers an Intrusion Detection technology event. Events are registered with system event type code 4000002701.

- IP Protocol Anomaly Detection.

  If IP protocol anomaly detection is enabled, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform scans fragmented IP packets.

  When IP packet assembly errors are detected, the application registers Intrusion Detection technology events. System event types are used for registration, which have the following codes:

  - 4000005100 for an event involving the detection of a data conflict during IP packet assembly (IP fragment overlapped)
  - 4000005101 for an event involving the detection of an IP packet exceeding the maximum allowed size (IP fragment overrun)
  - 4000005102 for an event involving the detection of an IP packet with the initial fragment smaller than expected (IP fragment too small)
  - 4000005103 for an event involving the detection of mis-association of fragments of an IP packet (mis-associated fragments)

- Brute-force Attack and Scan Detection.

  When Brute-force Attack and Scan Detection is enabled, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform examines network activity statistics to detect indicators of brute force attacks, denial of service attacks, scanning, network service spoofing, and other anomalies.

  This method uses built-in rules. When the rules are triggered, the application registers an Intrusion Detection technology event. The events are registered using the system event type that is assigned the code 4000003002.

You can enable or disable methods. Additional Intrusion Detection methods can be applied regardless of whether Intrusion Detection rules exist or are enabled. Additional detection methods use built-in algorithms.

Enabling and disabling sets of Intrusion Detection rules

Intrusion Detection rule sets can be *Enabled* or *Disabled*. If a rule set is disabled, none of the rules in that rule set are used for intrusion detection.

When you enable or disable selected rule sets, the Intrusion Detection system is restarted on all computers that have application components (Central Node and Sensor) installed. A restart is necessary to apply the changes.

Only users with the **Senior security officer** role can change the status of Intrusion Detection rule sets.

To change the status of Intrusion Detection rule sets:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Intrusion detection** subsection.
2. Select the check boxes next to the rule sets whose status you want to change.
3. Right-click to open the context menu.
4. In the context menu, select one of the following commands:
   - **Enable** if you want to enable all disabled sets of rules from among the selected rule sets.
   - **Disable** if you want to disable all enabled sets of rules from among the selected rule sets.
   - **Change the statuses of selected rule sets** if you want to invert the statuses of all selected rule sets. This option allows you to quickly enable and disable selected rule sets with different statuses on all computers with installed application components: to apply the changes, you only need one restart of the Intrusion Detection system on these computers.
5. In the confirmation window, click **OK**.

The statuses of the intrusion detection rule sets are changed.

Loading and replacing user-defined sets of Intrusion Detection rules

You can upload Intrusion Detection rule sets from files into the application. To be uploaded to the application, files with Intrusion Detection rule descriptions must be located in the same folder and have the .rules extension. File names may not contain the following characters: `\ / : * ? , " < > |`

Intrusion Detection rules uploaded from a file are saved in the application as a user-defined rule set. The name of the rule set is the same as the name of the file from which the rule set was uploaded.

When rule sets are uploaded from files, current user-defined rule sets are deleted from the table and replaced with new rule sets.

Only users with the **Senior security officer** role can upload user-defined Intrusion Detection rule sets.

To upload and replace user-defined Intrusion Detection rule sets:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Intrusion detection** subsection.
2. In the toolbar, click the **Replace all user-defined rules** button.
3. In the confirmation window, click **OK**.

   This opens the file upload window.
4. Select the folder that contains the files that you need and click the button to upload files from this folder.

   The rule set table displays new user-defined rule sets. All rule sets without errors are enabled.

5. Check the uploaded rule sets for errors.

   Information about the detected errors is displayed in the **Rules** column. The *OK* status is displayed if there are no errors. If the rule set contains errors, you can view detailed information about them by clicking **Details**.

6. If necessary, enable or disable the rule sets (including the rule sets that have the *Errors in some rules* status).

User-defined Intrusion Detection rule sets are uploaded.

Removing user-defined sets of Intrusion Detection rules

You can delete all user-defined Intrusion Detection rule sets that were uploaded into the application from files. Selecting which user-defined rule sets to delete is not possible. If you want to use only some of the current rule sets in the application, you can copy the files with these sets to a separate folder and replace all user-defined rule sets with rule sets from this folder.

Only users with the **Senior security officer** role can delete user-defined Intrusion Detection rule sets.

To delete user-defined Intrusion Detection rule sets:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Intrusion detection** subsection.

2. In the toolbar, click the **Delete all user-defined rules** button.

3. In the confirmation window, click **OK**.

   This opens a window for selecting the folder with Intrusion Detection rule files.

All user-defined Intrusion Detection rule sets are deleted from the table.

Managing Network Anomaly Detection rules

Network Anomaly Detection rules help detect traffic anomalies that may be indistinguishable from normal device activity at the network level. To detect such anomalies, the application analyzes the protocol attributes received in registered network sessions. A Network Anomaly Detection rule is triggered if any attributes, their values and/or patterns described in the rule are found. When a rule is triggered, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform registers an event.

Protocol attributes consist of various characteristics of traffic in network sessions. These attributes are saved in a separate database on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Server. The database used to store the attributes of protocols provides high-speed processing of both incoming data and requests for their analysis. To ensure that rule-based analysis has minimal impact on the DBMS and on the overall performance of the application, attribute search queries are executed in SQL. You can generate the necessary SQL queries in the rules yourself or use rule templates with ready-made SQL queries.

Network Anomaly Detection rule-based analysis is supported for attributes of the following protocols:

- DCE/RPC
- DNS.

- Kerberos
- LDAP

The application saves protocol attributes in the database when using the method for getting attributes of protocols. You can enable or disable the method. To use the method for getting attributes of protocols, the Network Session Detection method must also be enabled. Both of these methods must be enabled on all nodes with installed application components from which information is received.

A rule-based search for network anomalies is performed among the protocol attributes received in the database during specific time intervals. The length of the time interval for each rule is set by the **Search depth** setting. The duration is counted from the moment of the end boundary of the interval. Depending on how the rule is started, the time of the end boundary of the interval can be defined as follows:

- When the rule is automatically started according to a configured run schedule, the end boundary of the time interval coincides with the time when the rule is started.
- When the rule is manually started, you can manually define the date and time of the end of the interval.

To quickly configure the settings of the created Network Anomaly Detection rules, you can use the built-in rule templates. These templates are provided by Kaspersky. A list of templates that are built into the application is available immediately after installing the application. You can update the list of built-in templates by installing updates.

If a built-in template is not selected when creating a rule, the rule settings must be configured entirely manually (including writing the SQL query to search for protocol attributes in the database). In this case, the **User-defined** template is displayed as the template used for the rule. This same template is displayed if you have selected a built-in template and then change the settings that ensure the operating logic according to the selected built-in template, specifically the SQL query text or the main event registration settings. If you change other settings of the rule (for example, the automatic scheduled start settings or the threshold values in the variables of the SQL query) and all template values in the rule are not unlocked, the link between the rule and the selected built-in template is preserved.

The maximum number of network anomaly detection rules is 200.

Network Anomaly Detection rules can be enabled or disabled. If a rule is disabled, the application does not start this rule according to the configured schedule, and also blocks the capability to manually start this rule.

You can manage the network anomaly detection rules in the **Intrusion detection** section, **Network Anomaly Detection** subsection. If you need to use dictionary values (for example, lists of IP addresses) for variables in SQL queries, you can create dictionaries with the necessary data in the **Settings**, **Dictionaries** section.

When a Network Anomaly Detection rule is triggered, an event is registered using a system event type, which is assigned the code 4000003003.

Events in traffic and network sessions are not rotated synchronously. Because of this, when drilling down from an event in traffic to the list of network sessions, this list may be empty.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can manage network anomaly detection rules. Users with the **Security auditor** role can view rules and dictionaries.

Creating Network Anomaly Detection rule

You are advised to use the appropriate built-in templates for the Network Anomaly Detection rules that you create. The templates contain configured settings (including ready-made SQL queries) for detecting typical anomalies. In most cases, after selecting a built-in template, you may only need to perform minor fine-tuning of some values for the created rule. For example, fine-tuning of template values may only be required for SQL query variables to change threshold values or specify created dictionaries.

To create a Network Anomaly Detection rule:

1. In the application web interface, go to the **Intrusion detection** section, **Network Anomaly Detection** subsection.
2. Click **Add rule**.
3. In the **Template** drop-down list, select a template for the rule you are creating.

   The values of rule settings will be defined according to the selected template.

   > If you leave the **User-defined** template selected, you will need to configure the rule settings entirely manually (including writing the SQL query text to search for protocol attributes in the database).

4. Enter the rule name and description.
5. Use the **Search depth** setting to specify the duration of the time interval for searching for network anomalies among the protocol attributes received in the database. You can specify the time interval in seconds, minutes, hours, or days.
6. To run the rule according to a schedule, enable the **Run job according to schedule** option and configure the schedule settings:

   a. In the **Frequency** drop-down list, select how often to run the job: **By the second**, **Minutely**, **Hourly**, **Daily**, **Weekly**, **Monthly**.

   b. Depending on the selected option, specify the values for the settings to define the precise job start time.

7. If you need to change the time period after which Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will re-register a rule triggering event, turn on the **Change default value** toggle switch and specify the necessary event regeneration period.
8. Under **Main event registration settings**, check the settings for registering an event when the rule is triggered, and configure the settings if necessary. The settings are locked and cannot be edited if a built-in template is selected for the rule. In this case, to change the values of these settings, you must first click the **Unlock all template values** button above the field containing the selected template.

   > After clicking the **Unlock all template values** button, the link between the created rule and the selected built-in template is severed. The **User-defined** template is specified instead of the previously selected template for the rule.

Under **Main event registration settings**, you can specify values for the following settings of the event that the application will register when the rule is triggered:

- Event title and description.

  When you enter a title or description for an event, tooltips or selectable General variables automatically appear next to the cursor.

- Event score value.

9. Select the **SQL-specific query** tab.

   The contents of the tab depend on the template that was selected at step 3:

   - If a built-in template was selected, the **SQL-specific query** tab contains the text of the SQL query loaded from this template. The variables specified in the SQL query are listed under **Utilized variables**.
   - If the **User-defined** template was selected, the tab contains no data. In this case, manually generate the text of the SQL query (see step 12).

10. If the **SQL-specific query** tab contains the SQL query text, test how this query works with the database. To do so, click the **Perform** button.

    The **Verify completion of SQL query** window is displayed with a table of results of testing the SQL query. To control the display of the window, use the buttons in the upper-right corner.

11. If necessary, fine-tune the SQL query by changing the values of the variables used in it. The variables are displayed under **Utilized variables**. You can define the values of variables explicitly or by using previously added dictionaries. To substitute the value of a variable from the dictionary, click opposite the variable and select the correct directory.

    You can use dictionaries for variables with the following data types: date, time, ip, port, string, weekday. Dictionaries are not supported for variables with the int data type.

12. In the **SQL-specific query** field, review and, if necessary, edit the text of the SQL query. The text of the SQL query is locked and cannot be edited if a built-in template is selected for the rule. In this case, to edit the text, you must first click the **Unlock all template values** button above the field containing the selected template.

    > After clicking the **Unlock all template values** button, the link between the created rule and the selected built-in template is severed. The **User-defined** template is specified instead of the previously selected template for the rule.

    After generating the text of the SQL query, perform steps 10–11 again.

13. Click **Save**.

A network anomaly detection rule is created.

Changing Network Anomaly Detection rule

You can fine-tune created Network Anomaly Detection rules by changing their settings. For example, you can change the threshold values in the SQL query variables or specify other dictionaries for them. If a rule is still linked to a selected built-in template (in other words, a **User-defined** template is not specified), you cannot change the event registration settings and the SQL query text is not available in this rule. If you want to use the rule with other event registration settings or with a different SQL query, you can disable the current rule and create a new rule with the necessary settings.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can manage network anomaly detection rules.

To change the settings of a network anomaly detection rule:

1. In the application web interface, go to the **Intrusion detection** section, **Network Anomaly Detection** subsection.
2. Select the rule that you want to modify.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Enter the rule name and description.
5. Use the **Search depth** setting to specify the duration of the time interval for searching for network anomalies among the protocol attributes received in the database. You can specify the time interval in seconds, minutes, hours, or days.
6. To run the rule according to a schedule, enable the **Run job according to schedule** option and configure the schedule settings:

   a. In the **Frequency** drop-down list, select how often to run the job: **By the second**, **Minutely**, **Hourly**, **Daily**, **Weekly**, **Monthly**.

   b. Depending on the selected option, specify the values for the settings to define the precise job start time.
7. If you need to change the time period after which Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will re-register a rule triggering event, turn on the **Change default value** toggle switch and specify the necessary event regeneration period.
8. In the **Main event registration settings** block, check the settings for registering an event when the rule is triggered, and configure the settings if necessary. The settings are locked and cannot be edited if a built-in template is selected for the rule.

   If the settings can be edited, you can specify values for the following settings of the event that the application will register when the rule is triggered:

   - Event title and description.

     When you enter a title or description for an event, tooltips or selectable General variables automatically appear next to the cursor.

   - Event score value.
9. Select the **SQL-specific query** tab.
10. If necessary, test how the SQL query works with the database. To do so, click the **Perform** button.

    The **Verify completion of SQL query** window is displayed with a table of results of testing the SQL query. To control the display of the window, use the buttons in the upper-right corner.
11. If necessary, fine-tune the SQL query by changing the values of the variables used in it. The variables are displayed under **Utilized variables**. You can define the values of variables explicitly or by using previously added dictionaries. To substitute the value of a variable from the dictionary, click opposite the variable and select the correct directory.

    You can use directories for variables with the "date", "time", "IP", "port", "string", or "weekday" data types. Dictionaries are not supported for variables with the "int" data type.

12. In the **SQL-specific query** field, review and, if necessary, edit the text of the SQL query. The text of the SQL query is locked and cannot be edited if a built-in template is selected for the rule.

    After generating the text of the SQL query, perform steps 10–11 again.

13. Click **Save**.

The settings of the network anomaly detection rule are modified.

Generating SQL query texts for Network Anomaly Detection rules

You can manually generate the texts of SQL queries when creating or modifying Network Anomaly Detection rules. Queries are intended for searching, extracting, and analyzing the attributes of protocols received in registered network sessions. Protocol attributes are saved in a separate database on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform Server. To access this database, you need to generate queries in the Structured Query Language (SQL), which is supported by the ClickHouse DBMS. For information about the supported queries that are used to perform actions for data extraction and analysis, see ClickHouse Help.

You are advised to use one of the built-in rule templates to generate the SQL query text. You can select a template when creating a rule. You can select a template that is most similar in purpose to the task that you want to perform. After selecting a built-in template to generate a different SQL query text, you need to click the **Unlock all template values** button.

When you enter SQL query strings in the window, lists of suitable functions, operators, and settings are automatically displayed. You can select the items that you need from these lists for quick insertion into the text of an SQL query.

Main functions and operators used in SQL queries for Network Anomaly Detection rules

Function	Description
`SELECT`	Contains an enumeration of the fields in the table containing information about network sessions. The listed fields are accessed based on an SQL query. The results of the selection from the query are used in part or in full to create a temporary table containing data for event enrollment. The fields of the temporary table are filled with values via an alias assignment mechanism. Aggregation functions (such as `sum`) and arithmetic operators (such as `+`) are supported. See the lists of table fields below.
`FROM`	Specifies the source of the data. The source can be specified as one of the following views, which are provided for queries to the table containing information about network sessions in the database used to store protocol attributes: • `{{sessions}}` to extract data while filtering based on a certain time interval. • `{{sessions_symmetric}}` is an extended variant of the `{{sessions}}` view, which adds symmetric network sessions (with the opposite direction of Source–Destination).
`WHERE`	Contains conditions for filtering data received from the source. A filter expression can contain comparison operations, logical operators, and the special function `PARAM_EQ`. The `PARAM_EQ` function lets you compare a value from the table with a variable defined in a rule. If a dictionary is selected for substituting variable values, the `PARAM_EQ` function must be specified in the SQL query. The general syntax for using the `PARAM_EQ` function is as follows: `PARAM_EQ(column_value, {{param_name:param_type}})` where: • `column_value` is the field or expression to be compared. • `{{param_name:param_type}}` refers to the variable and its type as defined in the rule for the SQL query.
`GROUP BY`	Switches the query to aggregation mode and specifies the list of fields or aliases by which you need to group the returned data.
`HAVING`	Contains conditions for filtering the results obtained using the `GROUP BY` operator.

Function	Description
`ORDER BY`	Contains a list for sorting the returned data. For list items, you can specify modifiers that determine the sorting direction: • `DESC` sorts in descending order. • `ASC` sorts in ascending order.

Fields of the table containing information about network sessions

In the database for storing the attributes of protocols, the table containing information about network sessions contains rows with data blocks (chunks) that were received during 15-second intervals. Each registered network session is presented in the table as separate data blocks, and calls in SQL queries must be made within these data blocks.

The table containing information about network sessions contains the following fields that can be called in SQL queries:

- `session_id`, type `UInt64`: unique identifier of the network session
- `chunk_start_time`, type `DateTime64(6, 'UTC')`: start time of the data block (chunk) related to the network session, with microsecond precision
- `partition_id`, type `UInt64`: ID of the partition in the data block (chunk)
- `start_time`, type `DateTime64(6, 'UTC')`: time of the first packet in the data block (chunk), with microsecond precision
- `end_time`, type `DateTime64(6, 'UTC')`: time of the last packet in the data block (chunk), with microsecond precision
- `sip`, type `IPv4`: source IP address (Side 1)
- `dip`, type `IPv4`: destination IP address (Side 2)
- `sport`, type `UInt16`: source port (Side 1)
- `dport`, type `UInt16`: destination port (Side 2)
- `smac`, type `FixedString(17)`: source MAC address (Side 1) in XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX format
- `dmac`, type `FixedString(17)`: destination MAC address (Side 2) in XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX format
- `smac_as_id`, type `UInt64`: source MAC address (Side 1) converted to a 64-bit integer
- `dmac_as_id`, type `UInt64`: destination MAC address (Side 2) converted to a 64-bit integer
- `sip_as_id`, type `UInt64`: source IP address (Side 1) converted to a 64-bit integer
- `dip_as_id`, type `UInt64`: destination IP address (Side 2) converted to a 64-bit integer
- `vlanid`, type `UInt16`: VLAN ID
- `ether_type`, type `UInt16`: type of Ethernet frame (for example: 2048 for IPv4)

- `ipv4_type`, type `UInt8`: IPv4 type (8-bit value)
- `protocol`, type `LowCardinality(String)`: name of the application layer protocol in the table (for example: `GenericDceRpc`, `Ssh`)
- `transport_protocol`, type `LowCardinality(String)`: name of the transport layer protocol in the table (for example: `Tcp`, `Udp`)
- `bytes_sent_delta`, type `UInt64`: amount of data sent during the period of the data block (chunk)
- `packets_sent_delta`, type `UInt64`: number of packets sent during the period of the data block (chunk)
- `bytes_received_delta`, type `UInt64`: amount of data received during the period of the data block (chunk)
- `packets_received_delta`, type `UInt64`: number of packets received during the period of the data block (chunk)
- `dpi_dns`, type `Array(Map(String, String))`: structured data on network events in traffic over the DNS protocol
- `dpi_dns_raw`, type `Array(String)`: JSON-formatted data on network events in traffic over the DNS protocol
- `dpi_krb`, type `Array(Map(String, String))`: structured data on traffic over the Kerberos protocol
- `dpi_krb_raw`, type `Array(String)`: JSON-formatted data on traffic over the Kerberos protocol
- `dpi_dcerpc`, type `Array(Map(String, String))`: structured data on traffic over the DCE/RPC protocol
- `dpi_dcerpc_raw`, type `Array(String)`: JSON-formatted data on traffic over the DCE/RPC protocol
- `dpi_ldap`, type `Array(Map(String, String))`: structured data on traffic over the LDAP protocol
- `dpi_ldap_raw`, type `Array(String)`: JSON-formatted data on traffic over the LDAP protocol
- `total_attributes`, type `UInt32 MATERIALIZED`: total number of attributes in the `dpi_dns_raw`, `dpi_krb_raw`, `dpi_dcerpc_raw`, and `dpi_ldap_raw` fields
- `dpi_attributes_raw`, type `Array(String) MATERIALIZED`: combined array of JSON-formatted data on attributes

Fields of the table containing data for event enrollment

The table containing data for event enrollment may contain the following fields, which are filled with values via the alias assignment mechanism in an SQL query:

- Required fields:
  - `aggregation_id`, type `String`: unique aggregation identifier that identifies the event
  - `session_ids`, type `Array(UInt64)`: array of network session IDs associated with the event

- `timestamp`, type `DateTime64(6, 'UTC')`: date and time of the first occurrence of the event
- `protocol`, type `String`: name of the protocol in the table containing information about network sessions (for example: `Ssh`)

- Fields for storing address information and other network interaction data in events (optional fields that can be completed in an SQL query):
  - `sip`, type `IPv4`: source IP address
  - `dip`, type `IPv4`: destination IP address
  - `sport`, type `UInt16`: source port
  - `dport`, type `UInt16`: destination port
  - `smac`, type `FixedString(17)`: source MAC address in XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX format
  - `dmac`, type `FixedString(17)`: destination MAC address in XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX format
  - `smac_as_id`, type `UInt64`: address space identifier for the source MAC address
  - `dmac_as_id`, type `UInt64`: address space identifier for the destination MAC address
  - `sip_as_id`, type `UInt64`: address space identifier for the source IP address
  - `dip_as_id`, type `UInt64`: address space identifier for the destination IP address
  - `vlanid`, type `UInt16`: VLAN ID
  - `ether_type`, type `UInt16`: type of Ethernet frame
  - `ipv4_type`, type `UInt8`: IPv4 type
- Arbitrarily named fields for specifying their values in events using the variable `$extra.<paramName>`.

Protocol names in the table containing information about network sessions

Path in the protocol stack tree	Protocol name in the table
Ethernet I	EthernetI
Ethernet I \ LLC \ Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP)	Cdp
Ethernet I \ LLC \ Emerson Ovation: interactions over LLC	Emerson_Ovation_OverLlc
Ethernet I \ LLC \ Foxboro FCP280/FCP270: device interaction	`FoxboroHps`
Ethernet I \ LLC \ HiDiscovery	`HiDiscovery`
Ethernet I \ LLC \ IS-IS over Ethernet I	`IsIsOverEthernetI`
Ethernet I \ LLC \ ISO 8073 \ Siemens S7comm	`SiemensIndustrialEthernet`
Ethernet I \ LLC \ VNIIA	`Vniia`
Ethernet II	`EthernetII`

Ethernet II \ ARP	ARP
Ethernet II \ IEC 61850: GOOSE	IEC61850_GOOSE
Ethernet II \ IEC 61850: Sampled Values	SAMPLED_VALUES
Ethernet II \ IP	IPv4
Ethernet II \ IP \ 3PC	ip34
Ethernet II \ IP \ Active Networks	ip107
Ethernet II \ IP \ ARIS	ip104
Ethernet II \ IP \ AX.25	ip93
Ethernet II \ IP \ BBN RCC Monitoring	ip10
Ethernet II \ IP \ BNA	ip49
Ethernet II \ IP \ BR-SAT-MON	ip76
Ethernet II \ IP \ CBT	ip7
Ethernet II \ IP \ CFTP	ip62
Ethernet II \ IP \ CHAOS	ip16
Ethernet II \ IP \ Compaq-Peer	ip110
Ethernet II \ IP \ CPHB	ip73
Ethernet II \ IP \ CPNX	ip72
Ethernet II \ IP \ CRTP	ip126
Ethernet II \ IP \ CRUDP	ip127
Ethernet II \ IP \ DCCP	ip33
Ethernet II \ IP \ DCN-MEAS	ip19
Ethernet II \ IP \ DDP	ip37
Ethernet II \ IP \ DDX	ip116
Ethernet II \ IP \ DGP	ip86
Ethernet II \ IP \ DSR	ip48
Ethernet II \ IP \ EGP	ip8
Ethernet II \ IP \ EIGRP	EIGRP
Ethernet II \ IP \ EMCON	ip14
Ethernet II \ IP \ ETHERIP	ip97
Ethernet II \ IP \ FCIP	ip133
Ethernet II \ IP \ FIRE	ip125
Ethernet II \ IP \ GGP	ip3
Ethernet II \ IP \ GMTP	ip100
Ethernet II \ IP \ GRE	GRE
Ethernet II \ IP \ HMP	ip20
Ethernet II \ IP \ IATP	ip117
Ethernet II \ IP \ ICMP	Icmp
Ethernet II \ IP \ IDPR	ip35
Ethernet II \ IP \ IDPR-CMTP	ip38
Ethernet II \ IP \ IDRP	ip45
Ethernet II \ IP \ IFMP	ip101

Ethernet II \ IP \ IGMP	IGMP
Ethernet II \ IP \ IGP	ip9
Ethernet II \ IP \ I-NLSP	ip52
Ethernet II \ IP \ Internet Link	ip40
Ethernet II \ IP \ IPComp	ip108
Ethernet II \ IP \ IPCV	ip71
Ethernet II \ IP \ IPIP	ip94
Ethernet II \ IP \ IPLT	ip129
Ethernet II \ IP \ IPPC	ip67
Ethernet II \ IP \ IPv4 Encapsulated	ip4
Ethernet II \ IP \ IPv6 Encapsulated	IPv6encapsulated
Ethernet II \ IP \ IPX-in-IP	ip111
Ethernet II \ IP \ IRTP	ip28
Ethernet II \ IP \ IS-IS over IPv4	IsIsOverIp
Ethernet II \ IP \ ISO-IP	ip80
Ethernet II \ IP \ ISO-TP4	ip29
Ethernet II \ IP \ Kryptolan	ip65
Ethernet II \ IP \ L2TP	ip115
Ethernet II \ IP \ LARP	ip91
Ethernet II \ IP \ MANET	ip138
Ethernet II \ IP \ MERIT-INP	ip32
Ethernet II \ IP \ MFE-NSP	ip31
Ethernet II \ IP \ MICP	ip95
Ethernet II \ IP \ MOBILE	ip55
Ethernet II \ IP \ MPLS-in-IP	ip137
Ethernet II \ IP \ MTP	ip92
Ethernet II \ IP \ MUX	ip18
Ethernet II \ IP \ NARP	ip54
Ethernet II \ IP \ NETBLT	ip30
Ethernet II \ IP \ NSFNET-IGP	ip85
Ethernet II \ IP \ NVP-II	ip11
Ethernet II \ IP \ Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)	Ospf
Ethernet II \ IP \ Performance Transparency Protocol	ip123
Ethernet II \ IP \ PGM	ip113
Ethernet II \ IP \ PIM	PIM
Ethernet II \ IP \ PIPE	ip131
Ethernet II \ IP \ PNNI	ip102
Ethernet II \ IP \ PRM	ip21
Ethernet II \ IP \ PUP	ip12
Ethernet II \ IP \ PVP	ip75
Ethernet II \ IP \ QNX	ip106

Ethernet II \ IP \ Reliable Data Protocol	RDP
Ethernet II \ IP \ ROHC	ip142
Ethernet II \ IP \ RSVP	ip46
Ethernet II \ IP \ RSVP-E2E-IGNORE	ip134
Ethernet II \ IP \ RVD	ip66
Ethernet II \ IP \ SAT-EXPAK	ip64
Ethernet II \ IP \ SAT-MON	ip69
Ethernet II \ IP \ SCC-SP	ip96
Ethernet II \ IP \ SCPS	ip105
Ethernet II \ IP \ SCTP	SCTP
Ethernet II \ IP \ SDRP	ip42
Ethernet II \ IP \ SECURE-VMTP	ip82
Ethernet II \ IP \ SMP	ip121
Ethernet II \ IP \ SNP	ip109
Ethernet II \ IP \ Sprite-RPC	ip90
Ethernet II \ IP \ SPS	ip130
Ethernet II \ IP \ SRP	ip119
Ethernet II \ IP \ SSCOPMCE	ip128
Ethernet II \ IP \ STP	STP
Ethernet II \ IP \ SUN-ND	ip77
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCF	ip87
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP	Tcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ ABB SPA-Bus	ABB_SpaBus
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ AeroAdmin over TCP	AeroAdmin
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ AFP	SrvTcp_AFP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Allen-Bradley EtherNet/IP	AB_EtherNet_IP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Ammyy Admin over TCP	AmmyyAdmin
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ AnyDesk over TCP	AnyDesk
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ ARMS control protocol	AsrkScada
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ BECKHOFF ADS/AMS	Beckhoff
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Bitcoin over TCP	Bitcoin_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ BitTorrent over TCP	BittorrentOverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ CIMPLICITY-Historian over TCP	CIMPLICITYHistorian
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ CIMPLICITY-HMI/SCADA over TCP	CIMPLICITYNetwork_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ CODESYS V2	CodesysV2
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ CODESYS V3 Gateway	CodesysGatewayV3Tcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ COS	Cos
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Dameware MRC	SrvTcp_DameWare_Mini_Remote_Control
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ DCE/RPC	GenericDceRpc
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ DICOM over TCP	DICOM_over_TCP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ DLMS/COSEM	DlmsCosem

Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ DMS for ABB AC 700F	ABB_AC700F_DMS
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ DNP3	Dnp3
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ DNS	SrvTcp_DNS
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ DNS/LLMNR over TCP	DnsLlmnr_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Dogecoin over TCP	Dogecoin
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Emerson ControlWave Designer	EmersonControlWaveDesigner
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Emerson DeltaV - firmware update	EmersonDeltaVFirmware
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ EtherNet/IP \ OMRON FINS	OmronFinsEthernetIp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Ether-S-IO over TCP	Esio_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Finger	SrvTcp_FINGER_PROTOCOL
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Flash Media Server	SrvTcp_Flash_Media_Server
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ FTP	Ftp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ FTP Data	SrvTcp_FTP_DATA
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ General Electric SRTP	Srtp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ HL7 v2 over TCP	HL7_ver2_over_TCP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ HL7 v3 over TCP	HL7_ver3_over_TCP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Honeywell ControlEDGE 900: device interaction	HoneywellControlEdge
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Honeywell Experion CDA	HoneywellExperionCdaComm
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Honeywell Experion EpicMo	HoneywellExperionEpicMo
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ HTTP	SrvTcp_HTTP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ HTTP/2	HTTP2
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ HTTPS	SrvTcp_HTTPS
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ IBM DB2	SrvTcp_IBM_DB2
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Ident	SrvTcp_Ident
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ IEC 60870-5-101	IEC_60870_5_101
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ IEC 60870-5-104	IEC_60870_5_104
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ IMAP	SrvTcp_IMAP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ IPU-FEU: device interaction	Feu
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ IRC	Irc
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ ISaGRAF IXL	IsagrafIxl
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ ISaGRAF SNCP	IsagrafSncp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ ISO TSAP	SrvTcp_Iso8072
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ ISO TSAP \ ISO 8073 \ IEC 61850: MMS	IEC61850_MMS
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ ISO TSAP \ ISO 8073 \ MMS for ABB AC 800M	ABB_AC800M_MMS
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ ISO TSAP \ ISO 8073 \ Siemens S7comm	SiemensS7Comm
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ ISO TSAP \ ISO 8073 \ Siemens S7comm-plus	SiemensS7CommPlus
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ ISO TSAP \ ISO 8073 \ TASE.2	Tase2
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Jabber XMPP over TCP	Jabber
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Kerberos over TCP	SrvTcp_Kerberos
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ LDAP(S) over TCP	SrvTcp_LDAP_S_
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Litecoin over TCP	Litecoin

Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Mitsubishi MELSEC System Q	MitsubishiMelsecSystemQProtocol
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ MMS (ISO 9506-2)	MmsBase
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Modbus	ModbusTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Modbus TCP for EKRA 200 series	Ekra243Modbus
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Moxa NPort: device configuration	MoxaNportFirmware
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Moxa NPort: device interaction	MoxaNportIa5000aSystem
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ MQTT over TCP	MQTT
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ MSNP	SrvTcp_MSNP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ MS SQL Server	SrvTcp_MS_SQL_Server
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ MySQL	SrvTcp_MySQL
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Napster	SrvTcp_Napster
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ NetBIOS	SrvTcp_NetBIOS
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ NFS	SrvTcp_NFS
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ OMRON FINS	OmronFinsTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ ONVIF over TCP	ONVIF_over_TCP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ OPC DA	OpcDa
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ OPC UA Binary	OpcUaBinary
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Oracle DB	SrvTcp_Oracle
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ POP3	SrvTcp_POP3
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ PPTP	SrvTcp_PPTP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Radmin application protocol over TCP	Radmin_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ RDP	SrvTcp_RDP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Relematika BDUBus	BDUBus
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Remote Utilities over TCP	RemoteUtilities
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Rlogin	SrvTcp_RLOGIN
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ RSH	SrvTcp_RSH
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ RTSP over TCP	RTSP_over_TCP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SAIA S-Bus over TCP	Saia_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Schneider Electric UMAS	Umas
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SFTP	SrvTcp_SFTP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Siemens SICAM SCC: interaction with SICAM PAS	NwChannel
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SMB	SrvTcp_SMB
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SMB v2 over TCP	Smb2_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SMB v3 over TCP	Smb3_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SMTP	SrvTcp_SMTP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SNMP	SrvTcp_SNMP
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SSH	Ssh
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SSL/TLS	SslTls
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SSL v2	SslV2
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SSL v3	SslV3
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ SuiteLink over TCP	SuiteLink

Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Syslog	SrvTcp_Syslog
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ TeamViewer	SrvTcp_TeamViewer
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Telegram MTProto over TCP	Telegram
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Telnet	Telnet
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ TFTP over TCP	Tftp_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ TLS v1.0	TlsV10
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ TLS v1.1	TlsV11
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ TLS v1.2	TlsV12
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ TLS v1.3	TlsV13
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ TNS over TCP	Tns_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ Tor over TCP	Tor_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ VNC	SrvTcp_VNC
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ WebSocket	WebSocket_OverTcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ TCP \ WMI technology: device interaction	Wmi
Ethernet II \ IP \ TLSP	ip56
Ethernet II \ IP \ TP++	ip39
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP	UDP
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ BACnet	Bacnet
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ BECKHOFF ADS/AMS	BeckhoffUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ BitTorrent over UDP	BittorrentOverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ BSAP	Bsap
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ CHINT MAS400: device interaction	ChintMas400
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ CHINT MAS9600: device interaction	ChintMas9600
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ CIMPLICITY-HMI/SCADA over UDP	CIMPLICITYNetwork_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ CODESYS V3 Gateway	CodesysGatewayV3Udp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Data Transfer Systems (DTS)	Dts
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ DHCP	Dhcp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ DirectLOGIC: device interaction	DirectLogicEcom
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ DNS	SrvUdp_DNS
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ DNS/LLMNR over UDP	DnsLlmnr_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Dropbox LAN Sync over UDP	DropBox_sync_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Emerson DeltaV	EmersonDeltaV
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Emerson Ovation: multicast over UDP	Emerson_Ovation_OverUdp_Mcast
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Emerson Ovation: interactions over UDP	Emerson_Ovation_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Ether-S-IO over UDP	Esio_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ General Electric EGD	Egd
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ GLBP over UDP	GLBP_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Honeywell ControlEDGE 900: device detection	HoneywellControlEdgeDiscovery
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Honeywell Experion: device detection	HoneywellExperionDiscovery
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Honeywell Experion: getting device network configurations	HoneywellExperionNameServer
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ HSRP over UDP	HSRP_OverUdp

Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ INA2000	Ina2000
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Kerberos over UDP	SrvUdp_Kerberos
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ KNXnet/IP	Knx
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ LDAP(S) over UDP	SrvUdp_LDAP_S_
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ LDP	SrvUdp_LDP
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ mDNS over UDP	mDNS_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ MikroTik Neighbor Discovery Protocol (MNDP)	Mndp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Moxa NPort: device detection	MoxaNportDiscovery
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ MSNP	SrvUdp_MSNP
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ NBNS over UDP	NBNS_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ NetBIOS	SrvUdp_NetBIOS
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ NFS	SrvUdp_NFS
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ NTP	SrvUdp_NTP
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ OMRON FINS	OmronFins
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ PK4	Pk4
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ PNU20	Pnu20
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ QTP	SrvUdp_QTP
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ RADIUS over UDP	RadiusUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ RDP	SrvUdp_RDP
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ RIP	RIP
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ SAIA S-Bus over UDP	Saia_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ SCIYON default over UDP	Sciyon
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Siemens DIGSI 4	SiemensDigsi4
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ SIP over UDP	Sip
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ SMB over UDP	Smb_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ SMB v2 over UDP	Smb2_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ SMB v3 over UDP	Smb3_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ SNMP	SrvUdp_SNMP
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ SNMP v1 over UDP	Snmpv1_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ SNMP v2 over UDP	Snmpv2_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ SNMP v3 over UDP	Snmpv3_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ SSDP	SrvUdp_SSDP
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Syslog over UDP	Syslog_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ TeamViewer	SrvUdp_TeamViewer
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ TFTP over UDP	Tftp_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ TNS over UDP	Tns_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Tor over UDP	Tor_OverUdp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Valmet DNA: device interaction	Valmet
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ YARD	Yard
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDP \ Yokogawa Vnet/IP	VnetIp
Ethernet II \ IP \ UDPLite	ip136

Ethernet II \ IP \ UTI	`ip120`
Ethernet II \ IP \ VINES	`ip83`
Ethernet II \ IP \ VISA	`ip70`
Ethernet II \ IP \ VMTP	`ip81`
Ethernet II \ IP \ VRRP	`ip112`
Ethernet II \ IP \ VRRP over IPv4	`VRRP_OverIpv4`
Ethernet II \ IP \ WB-EXPAK	`ip79`
Ethernet II \ IP \ WB-MON	`ip78`
Ethernet II \ IP \ WESP	`ip141`
Ethernet II \ IP \ WSN	`ip74`
Ethernet II \ IP \ XNET	`ip15`
Ethernet II \ IP \ XNS-IDP	`ip22`
Ethernet II \ IP \ XTP	`ip36`
Ethernet II \ IPv6	`IPv6`
Ethernet II \ IPX	`IPX`
Ethernet II \ IS-IS over Ethernet II	`IsIsOverEthernetII`
Ethernet II \ Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)	`Lldp`
Ethernet II \ Loopback	`Loopback`
Ethernet II \ MiCOM C264	`MicomC264`
Ethernet II \ MPLS	`MPLS`
Ethernet II \ MPLS multicast	`MPLS_multi`
Ethernet II \ Precision Time Protocol	`PTP`
Ethernet II \ PROFINET IO	`ProfinetIo`
Ethernet II \ Prosoft-Systems: initial setup of devices	`ProsoftSystemsDeviceDiscovery`
Ethernet II \ PRP	`PRP`
Ethernet II \ RARP	`RARP`
Ethernet II \ RPC for PROFINET IO	`ProfinetRpc`

Using variables

You can add the following types of variables to the text of an SQL query:

- `string`: text string
- `date`: date in YYYY-MM-DD format
- `time`: time in hh:mm format
- `weekday`: number of the day of the week (1–7: 1 is Monday)
- `ip`: IPv4 address in XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format

- `port`: port number (0–65535)
- `int`: 64-bit integer

To specify a variable and its type, use an entry in the format `{{param_name:param_type}}`. If the type of the variable is not specified (in an entry in the format `{{param_name}}`), the string type is used by default. The added variables are displayed below the SQL query text under **Utilized variables**. In this block, you can define the value of a variable or select a dictionary containing values for it.

When adding variables to an SQL query, please keep in mind that the maximum number of variables in an SQL query is 30.

Viewing the table of Network Anomaly Detection rules:

The table of network anomaly detection rules is displayed in the **Intrusion detection** section of the **Network Anomaly Detection** tab.

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security auditor** roles can view the table of network anomaly detection rules.

On the **Network Anomaly Detection** tab, the **delay of traffic receipt** counter is displayed below the toolbar. The counter contains the dynamically changing lag time of incoming traffic data received by the database used to store protocol attributes. If the application detects a critical lag time, the green icon is no longer displayed next to the counter. In this case, automatic runs of rules occurring during this period may lead to an incorrect result. Before returning the counter to its normal state, it is recommended to manually run the rules while taking into account the available range for analyzing protocol attributes.

Rule settings are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Rule ID**.

  Rule ID assigned in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

- **Name**.

  Specified user name.

- **Status**

  Current status of the rule (*Enabled* or *Disabled*).

- **Created**

  Rule creation date and time.

- **Changed**

  Date and time when the rule was last modified.

- **Template name**

  The name of the template associated with the rule. If the rule is not associated with a built-in template, the **User-defined** template is specified for the rule.

- **Search depth**

  The duration of the time interval for searching for network anomalies among the protocol attributes.

- **Description**.

  Rule description.

- **Schedule**

  Information about the schedule according to which the application automatically starts the rule.

- **Last run**

  Date and time when the rule was last started.

- **Status of last run**

  Resulting status of the rule when it was last run.

- **Number of events**

  Number of events registered when the rule was run.

- **Event title**

  Header of the event that is logged when the rule is triggered.

- **Event score**

  Score of the event that is logged when the rule is triggered. Events are scored on a scale from 0.0 to 10.0.

- **Event description**

  Description of the event that is logged when the rule is triggered.

When viewing the Network Anomaly Detection rules table, you can use the configuration, filter, and sorting functions.

Enabling and disabling network anomaly detection rules

To enable or disable Network Anomaly Detection rules, you can change their status. Each rule can be assigned the *Enabled* or *Disabled* status. By default, the *Enabled* status is assigned to a rule after the rule is created.

If you assign the *Disabled* status to a rule, the application cancels the last run of the rule and assigns the **Canceled** status to this run. The last run of the rule is canceled if the run had a status of **New**, **Awaiting data**, **Pending**, or **Running** when the rule was disabled.

To change the status of Network Anomaly Detection rules:

1. In the application web interface, go to the **Intrusion detection** section, **Network Anomaly Detection** subsection.

2. Select the rules whose status you want to change.

3. Enable or disable rules by clicking **Enable** or **Disable**. Each of these buttons is displayed the selected rules include rules to which the corresponding operation can be applied.

The status of the network anomaly detection rule is changed.

Manually starting and stopping a Network Anomaly Detection rule

You can start and stop network anomaly detection rules manually. Stopping or starting a rule is available only for enabled rules.

You cannot start a rule with the **New**, **Pending**, **Awaiting data**, or **Running** status.

To trigger the Network Anomaly Detection rule:

1. In the application web interface, go to the **Intrusion detection** section, **Network Anomaly Detection** subsection.
2. Select the rule that you want to start.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Run at interval** (the button is disabled if the rule cannot be triggered).

   The **Configure rule run** pane appears on the right. The upper part of the panel displays information about the available range for analyzing protocol attributes. The range is limited to the earliest and latest arrival of traffic data in the database used to store protocol attributes.
4. Use the **Search depth** parameter to specify the duration of the time interval for searching for network anomalies among the protocol attributes. To manually run a rule, this value may be different from the value that was defined for the rule when it was created or when the settings were changed.
5. In the **Interval end** field, specify the date and time of the end of the time interval.
6. Click **Run**.

The network anomaly detection rule is started.

You can stop rules if they have one of the following statuses: **New**, **Pending**, **Awaiting data**, or **Running**.

To stop the execution of a network anomaly detection rule:

1. In the application web interface, go to the **Intrusion detection** section, **Network Anomaly Detection** subsection.
2. Select the rule that you want to stop.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Stop** (this button is disabled if the rule cannot be stopped at this time).

The network anomaly detection rule is stopped.

Viewing general information about triggers for network anomaly detection rules

You can view an overview of how network anomaly detection rules are triggered when viewing the rule table. The table displays information about the most recent rule runs.

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security auditor** roles can view general information about anomaly detection rule runs.

You can view general information about rule runs under **Rule runs** in the details area. General information about running network anomaly detection rules includes the following:

- Date and time when the rule was last started.
- Date and time of the next rule run.
- Status of last rule run.

  The following statuses are possible:

  - **Never run**: a new rule has been created and no run has been created for this rule.
  - **New**: a new run of the rule was created and an analysis of protocol attributes based on this rule has not yet been performed.
  - **Awaiting data**: Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is waiting for traffic data to arrive in the database used to store protocol attributes (all data has not yet arrived by the end of the defined time interval for searching for network anomalies).
  - **Waiting**: the rule is in the run queue.
  - **No data**: there is no traffic data in the time interval for searching for network anomalies based on the rule.
  - **In progress**: the rule is running.
  - **Canceled**: the rule has been stopped.
  - **Completed**: the rule has been successfully completed.
  - **Error**: an error occurred while running the rule.
  - **Partially successful**: the rule was run with a partially successful result: traffic data was not received in full for the specified time interval.
- The number of times the rule runs.
- The duration of SQL query execution when the rule was last run.
- The time interval to search for network anomalies when the rule was last run.
- The number of events logged when the rule was last run.

Deleting Network Anomaly Detection rules

You can delete network anomaly detection rules. However, you cannot delete rules with a last run status of **New**, **Waiting**, **Waiting for data**, or **In progress**. If there are rules with these statuses among the selected rules, a message to this effect is displayed. To delete such rules, first stop the rules.

To delete the status of a Network Anomaly Detection rule:

1. In the application web interface, go to the **Intrusion detection** section, **Network Anomaly Detection** subsection.
2. Select the rules that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
4. In the prompt window, confirm deletion of the rules.

The rule is deleted.

Managing dictionaries for Network Anomaly Detection rules

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform implements storage of dictionary values for Network Anomaly Detection rules. You can use stored dictionary values in rules as the values of variables in SQL queries. *Dictionaries* are used to store dictionary values.

The application supports various types of dictionaries. Individual types of dictionaries are used to store IP addresses, port numbers, dates, and other data. Depending on the type of variable in the SQL query, you can select dictionaries of the corresponding type when creating or changing the settings of a Network Anomaly Detection rule.

You can manage dictionaries in the **Settings** section, **Dictionaries** subsection. You can add up to 1000 dictionaries to the application. No more than 500 items can be added to each dictionary.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can manage dictionaries. Users with the **Security auditor** role can view dictionaries.

Adding a dictionary

You can add dictionaries and use the elements saved in them as variable values in SQL queries for Network Anomaly Detection rules.

To add a dictionary:

1. Select the **Settings** section, **Dictionaries** subsection in the window of the application web interface.
2. Open the details area by clicking **en: Add integration**.
3. Enter the dictionary name and description.
4. Select the dictionary type and define its items.

   You can select the following types of dictionaries:

   - **Dates**, for storing dates. Corresponds to the "date" data type in the SQL query.
   - **IP addresses**, for storing IP addresses. Corresponds to the "ip" data type in the SQL query.

- **Ports**, for storing port numbers. Corresponds to the "port" data type in the SQL query.
- **Text**, for storing string values. Corresponds to the "string" data type in the SQL query.
- **Time**, for storing time ranges. Corresponds to the "time" data type in the SQL query.
- **Days of the week**, for storing the days of the week. Corresponds to the "weekday" data type in the SQL query.

5. Click the **Save** button.

The dictionary is added.

Viewing a dictionary table

The table of dictionaries for Network Anomaly Detection rules is displayed in the **Settings** → **Dictionaries** section of the application web interface.

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security auditor** roles can view the table of dictionaries.

Information about dictionaries is displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Dictionary ID**.

  Dictionary ID assigned in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

- **Name**.

  Name used to represent the dictionary in the application.

- **Type**.

  Dictionary type.

- **Number of items**.

  The number of items in the dictionary.

- **Created**.

  Date and time when the dictionary was added to the application.

- **Changed**.

  Date and time when the dictionary was last modified in the application.

- **Description**.

  Description of the dictionary.

When viewing the dictionary table, you can use the configuration, filtering, and sorting functions.

Editing dictionary settings

When changing the settings of a dictionary, you can change its name, description and/or values of its items.

If the dictionary is already being used in a Network Anomaly Detection rule, the new values of dictionary elements will be applied only during the next run of the rule.

To change the dictionary settings:

1. Select the **Settings** section, **Dictionaries** subsection in the window of the application web interface.
2. Select the dictionary you want to change.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Edit the settings as needed. For a description of the settings, see the instructions for adding a dictionary.

The dictionary settings are modified.

Deleting dictionaries

You can delete dictionaries that are not used in the Network Anomaly Detection rules.

To delete a dictionary:

1. Select the **Settings** section, **Dictionaries** subsection in the window of the application web interface.
2. Select the dictionary you want to delete.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window.
4. In the prompt window, confirm deletion of the dictionary.

The dictionary is deleted.

Managing user-defined YARA rules

You can use YARA rules as YARA module databases to scan files and objects received at the Central Node and to scan hosts with the Endpoint Agent component.

In distributed solution and multitenancy mode, custom YARA rules can have one of the following types:

- **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to that PCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
- **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the SCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.

When managing the application web interface, users with the **Senior security officer** role can import a YARA rule file into Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the application web interface.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles can only view YARA rules.

Viewing the YARA rule table

The table of user-defined YARA rules contains information about YARA rules that are used to scan files and objects and to create alerts; the table is displayed in the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection of the application web interface window.

The table contains the following information:

- **Created** is the rule creation time.
- —Alert importance for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform user depending on the impact this alert may have on computer or corporate LAN security based on Kaspersky experience.

  By default, alerts generated as a result of scanning by uploaded YARA rules are assigned a high importance.
- **Type** is the type of the rule depending on the operating mode of the application and the role of the server which generated the rule:
  - **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to that PCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
  - **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the SCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
- **Name** – name of the rule.
- **File name** is the name of the file from which the rule was imported.
- **Created by** is the name of the user whose account was used to import the rule.
- **Servers** is the name of the server with the PCN or SCN role to which the rule applies.

  This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Traffic scanning** is the usage status of the rule when stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node:
  - **Enabled** – the rule is being used.
  - **Disabled** – the rule is not being used.

Configuring YARA rule table display

You can show or hide columns and change the order of columns in the table.

To configure the table display:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.

   This opens the YARA rule table.

2. In the heading part of the table, click .

   This opens the **Customize table** window.

3. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

   If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

   > At least one check box must be selected.

4. If you want to change the order of columns in the table, move the mouse cursor to the row with the relevant parameter, click and move the row to its new place.

5. If you want to restore default table display settings, click **Default**.

6. Click **Apply**.

The table display is configured.

Importing YARA rules

To import YARA rules:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.

2. Click **Upload**.

   This opens the file selection window.

3. Select the YARA rule file that you want to upload and click **Open**.

   This closes the file selection window and opens the **Import YARA rules** window.

   > The maximum allowed size of an uploaded file is 20 MB.

   A report is displayed in the lower part of the window. The report contains the following information:

   - The number of rules that can be successfully imported.
   - The number of rules that will not be imported (if any).

     For each rule that cannot be imported, its name is listed.

4. Select the **Traffic scanning** check box if you want to use imported rules for streaming scans of objects and data received at the Central Node.

5. If necessary, enter any additional information in the **Description** field.

   > The **Importance** field cannot be edited. By default, alerts generated by uploaded YARA rules are assigned a high level of importance.

6. Under **Apply to**, select check boxes corresponding to servers on which you want to apply the rules. Servers whose check box is cleared are not scanned using the uploaded rules. If the check box in the row of the tenant (the first row in the list) is cleared, servers of this tenant added in the future will also not be scanned using the uploaded rules.

   The **Apply to** group of settings is displayed only when you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

7. Click **Save**.

Imported rules are displayed in the table of YARA rules.

Viewing YARA rule details

To view YARA rule details:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.

   This opens the YARA rule table.

2. Select the rule for which you want to view information.

This opens a window containing information about the rule.

The window contains the following information:

- The **Alerts** link opens the table of alerts in a new browser tab.
- The **Start YARA scan** link opens the task creation window.
- The **Download** link lets you download a file with YARA rules.
- **Rule name** is the name of the rule specified in the file.
- **Traffic scanning** is the usage status of the rule when stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node:
- **Type** is the type of the rule depending on the role of the server which generated it:
  - **Global**—Created on the PCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the PCN server and all SCN servers connected to that PCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
  - **Local**—Created on the SCN server. These rules are used to scan files and objects received at the SCN server. Scanned files and objects belong to the tenant which the user is managing in the application web interface.
- **Importance** is the importance level assigned to an alert created as a result of scanning by this rule.

  By default, alerts generated as a result of scanning by uploaded YARA rules are assigned a high importance.
- **Description** is any additional information about the rule that you specified.
- **Apply to** – name of servers with the Central Node component on which the rule is applied.

Filtering and searching YARA rules

To filter or search for YARA rules by required criteria:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.

   This opens the YARA rule table.

2. Depending on the filtering criterion, do the following:

   - **By creation time**

     a. Click the **Created** link to open the filter settings window.

     b. Select one of the following options:

     - **Any time** if you want the table to display rules created at any time.
     - **Last hour** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the last hour in the table.
     - **Last day** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the last day in the table.
     - **Custom range** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the period you specify in the table.

     c. If you selected **Custom range**, select the start and end dates for the period and click **Apply**.

   - **By rule name**

     a. Click the **Rule name** link to open the filtering menu.

     b. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

     - **Contains**
     - **Does not contain**

     c. In the text box, type the name of the rule or a sequence of characters from the name of the rule.

     d. Click **Apply**.

   - **By file name**

     a. Click the **File name** link to open the filtering menu.

     b. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

     - **Contains**
     - **Does not contain**

c. In the entry field, type the name of the file or a sequence of characters from the name of the file.

d. Click **Apply**.

- **By the name of the user who uploaded the rules file**

  a. Click the **Created by** link to open the filtering menu.

  b. In the drop-down list, select one of the following filtering operators:

  - **Contains**
  - **Does not contain**

  c. In the text box, type the user name or a sequence of characters from the user name.

  d. Click **Apply**.

- **By rule state**

  a. Click the **Traffic scanning** link to expand the filter settings list.

  b. Select one of the following options:

  - **All**
  - **Enabled**
  - **Disabled**

The table displays only rules that match the specified criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a YARA rule filter

To clear the YARA rule filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.
   This opens the YARA rule table.
2. Click to the right of that column heading of the rule table for which you want to clear filtering criteria.
   If you want to clear multiple filter conditions, take steps to clear each filter condition individually.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table displays only rules that match the specified criteria.

Enabling and disabling YARA rules

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can enable or disable one or several rules, as well as all rules at once.

When working in distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you can enable or disable only those YARA rules that were created on the current server. It means that in the web interface of the PCN, you can enable or disable only the rules that were created on the PCN server. In the web interface of an SCN, you can enable or disable only the rules that were created on the SCN server.

If YARA rules with identical names are enabled on the PCN and SCN servers, the PCN rule takes precedence over the SCN rule when scanning files and objects.

To enable or disable a YARA rule for stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.
   This opens the YARA rule table.
2. In the row with the relevant rule, select or clear the check box in the **Traffic scanning** column.

The rule is enabled or disabled for stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node.

To enable or disable all or multiple YARA rules for stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.
2. Select the check boxes on the left of the rules whose use you want to enable or disable.
   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.
   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
3. Click **Enable** or **Disable** to enable or disable all rules.

Selected rules are enabled or disabled for stream scanning files and objects arriving at the Central Node.

Deleting YARA rules

To delete a YARA rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.
   This opens the YARA rule table.
2. Select the rule that you want to delete.
   This opens a window containing information about the rule.

3. Click **Delete**.
4. This opens the action confirmation window; in that window, click **Yes**.

The rule is deleted.

To delete all or multiple YARA rules:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **YARA** subsection.

   This opens the YARA rule table.
2. Select the check boxes on the left of the rules that you want to delete.

   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. This opens the action confirmation window; in that window, click **Yes**.

The selected rules will be deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot delete YARA rules.

Managing objects in Storage

The Storage stores files that need to be sent for scanning. Storage is located on the Central Node server.

You can manage objects in Storage as follows: delete, download, upload, and send objects to be scanned, and filter lists of objects. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform displays the objects in Storage as a table of objects.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, Storage is located on PCN and SCN servers. The web interface of the PCN server displays information about Storage of all connected SCNs for those tenants to which the user has access.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can place copies of objects into Storage by uploading the object to Storage using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface on the PCN or SCN server that is used for managing tenants to which the user has access.

The maximum capacity of Storage is determined when configuring the sizing of the application. As soon as this threshold value is exceeded, the application starts to remove the oldest copies of objects from Storage. When the amount of occupied space is again below the threshold value, the application stops removing copies of objects from Storage.

The maximum size of an object that can be placed in Storage is 1 GB.

Viewing the table of objects that were placed in Storage

The table of objects placed in Storage is in the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection of the application web interface window.

The table of objects placed in Storage contains the following information:

1. **Type** is the method by which the object was placed in Storage.

   The following methods are possible:

   - — The object was placed in Storage in one of the following ways:
     - The **Get file** task was run.
     - A copy was received of an object that was quarantined on hosts with the Endpoint Agent component (in the **Storage** section, **Quarantine** subsection, **Get file from quarantine** action was selected in the menu for the link with the directory of the object).
   - — The object was placed in Storage in one of the following ways:
     - The **Get forensics** task was run.
     - The **Get process memory dump** task was run.
     - The **Get registry key** task was run.
     - The **Get NTFS metafiles** task was run.
   - — The object was manually downloaded by the user in the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

2. **Object**—Information about the object. For example, the file name or file path.

3. **Scan results**—Object scan result.

   The scan result is displayed as one of the following values:

   - **Not detected**—As a result of a scan, the application did not detect signs of a targeted attack, probably infected objects, or suspicious activity.
   - **Error**—Object scan ended with an error.
   - **In process**—Object scan has not yet completed.
   - **Not scanned**—Object was not sent to be scanned.
   - **Detected**—As a result of a scan, the application detected signs of a targeted attack, a probably infected object, or suspicious activity.

4. **Servers** is the name of the server with the PCN or SCN role. The host from which the object was received is connected to this server.

   This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

5. **Source**—IP address or name of the host from which the object was received, or the name of the user account that uploaded the object.
6. **Time stored**—Date and time when the object was placed in Storage.
7. **Actions**—Actions that can be performed with the object. The following actions are available:
   - — delete an object from Storage.
   - — send the object in Storage for scanning by the Anti-Malware Engine, YARA, and Sandbox technologies.
   - — download the object from Storage to your computer.

Clicking the link with the file name or file path opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Add to filter**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- **Download**.
- **Send file for scanning**.
- **Find events**:
  - **File path**
  - **MD5**
  - **SHA256**
- **Find alerts**:
  - **File path**.
  - **MD5**.
  - **SHA256**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with the host name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Add to filter**.
- **Exclude from filter**.
- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Viewing information about an object manually placed in Storage using the web interface

To view information about an object manually placed in Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. In the table, select the object with the icon for which you want to view information.
   This opens the object details window.

The window contains the following information:

- **File name**—Name of the file.
- **Size**—Size of the file.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of a file.
- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of a file.
- **Time uploaded**—Time of upload for objects that were manually uploaded by a user.
- **User name**—Name of the user account that manually uploaded the object to Storage.
- **Scan results**—Result of object scan by the application.

The **Find on Kaspersky TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

Click **Create prevention rule** to prevent the file from running.

You can click **Download** to download the file to your computer's hard drive.

Clicking the link with the file name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **MD5** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find on Kaspersky TIP**.
- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.

- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **SHA256** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find on Kaspersky TIP
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- **Find events**.
- Find alerts.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Viewing information about an object placed in Storage by a get file task

*To view information about an object placed in Storage by a **Get file** or **Get file from quarantine** task:*

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. In the table, select the object with the icon for which you want to view information.
   This opens the object details window.

The window contains the following information:

- Recommendations group. The following recommendations can be displayed:
  - The **Task** link opens the task that placed the object in Storage.
  - The Alert link opens the alert containing the object that was placed in Storage.
  - The **Quarantined object** link opens the metadata of the quarantined object.
- **Object**—File name or path.
- **Size**—Size of the file.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of a file.
- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of a file.
- **Time stored**—Time when the object was placed in Storage.
- **Tenant** —Name of the tenant to which the Central Node, PCN, or SCN server belongs.

- **Server**—Name of the Central Node, PCN, or SCN server. The host from which the object was received is connected to this server.
- **Host**—Name of the host from which the object was received.
- **Scan results**—Result of object scan by the application.

Clicking **Sandbox detection** displays detailed information about the results of the file behavior analysis.

File behavior analysis results are displayed only if Sandbox has made a detection for this file. If the file is uploaded to the system and then scanned in Sandbox, but the component does not detect a threat, results are not displayed.

The **Find on Kaspersky TIP** button allows to find a file on the Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal.

Click **Create prevention rule** to prevent the file from running.

You can click **Download** to download the file to your computer's hard drive.

Clicking the link with the file name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **MD5** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find on Kaspersky TIP**
- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **SHA256** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find on Kaspersky TIP**
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Viewing information about an object placed in Storage by a get data task

To view information about an object placed in Storage by the following tasks: ***Get forensics***, ***Get process memory dump***, ***Get registry key***, ***Get NTFS metafiles****:*

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. In the table, select the object with the icon for which you want to view information.

   This opens the object details window.

The window contains the following information:

- **Object** is the file name or path.
- **Size**—Size of the file.
- **MD5**—MD5 hash of a file.
- **SHA256**—SHA256 hash of a file.
- **Time stored**—Time when the object was placed in Storage.
- **Host**—Name of the host from which the object was received.

You can click **Download** to download the file to your computer's hard drive.

Clicking the link with the file name opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **MD5** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- **Find on Kaspersky TIP**
- **Find events**.
- **Find alerts**.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Clicking the link with **SHA256** opens a list in which you can select one of the following actions:

- Find on Kaspersky TIP.
- **Find on virustotal.com**.
- **Find events**.
- Find alerts.
- **Create prevention rule**.
- **Copy value to clipboard**.

Downloading objects from Storage

If you consider an object in Storage to be safe, you can download it to a local computer.

Downloading infected objects could pose a threat to the security of your local computer.

To download an object from Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. In the right part of the line with the name of the object that you want to download, click .

   The object will be saved to your local computer in the browser's downloads folder. The file is downloaded as a ZIP archive protected with the password "infected".

Uploading objects to Storage

If you need to scan a specific object, you can upload this object to Storage and send it to be scanned.

To upload an object to Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. In the upper-right corner of the window, click **Upload**.

   This opens the file selection window.

3. Select the object that you want to upload to Storage.

4. If you want to upload a file with the .lnk extension to Storage:

   a. In the **File name** field, enter *.lnk and press **Enter**.

   b. Select the object.

5. Click **Open**.

The object is uploaded to Storage and displayed in the table of objects.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot upload objects to Storage.

Sending objects in Storage for scanning

You can scan Storage objects with the Central Node component using the Anti-Malware Engine and YARA technologies, and with the Sandbox component.

It is recommended to send objects from Storage to be scanned in the following cases:

- Scanning of objects when placed in Storage had been disabled.
- Application databases have been updated.
- An object was manually uploaded to Storage.

To send an object from Storage for scanning:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the object that you want to scan.

   This opens the object details window.

3. Click **Scan**.

   The object scan will start.

   After the object scan is complete, its status will be displayed in the object table.

You can also send an object in Storage for scanning by clicking in the right part of the object information row in the table of objects placed in Storage.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot scan objects in Storage.

Deleting objects from Storage

To delete an object from Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the object that you want to delete.

   This opens the object details window.

3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The object will be deleted from Storage.

You can also delete an object in Storage by clicking in the right part of the object information row in the table of objects placed in Storage.

To delete all or multiple objects from Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Select check boxes next to objects that you want to delete from Storage.

   You can select all objects by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

3. In the pane that appears in the lower part of the window, click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The selected objects are removed from Storage.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot delete objects in Storage.

Filtering objects in Storage by object type

To filter objects in Storage by type:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the **Type** link to open the object filtering menu.

3. Select one or more check boxes:

   - **Uploaded by a Get file task** if you want the table to display objects that were placed in Storage by **Get file** and **Restore file from quarantine** tasks.
   - **Uploaded through the web interface** if you want the table to display objects uploaded by the user using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.
   - **Uploaded by a get data task** if you want the table to display objects placed in Storage by **Get forensics**, **Get NTFS metafiles**, **Get registry key**, **Get process memory dump** tasks.

4. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering objects in Storage by object description

To filter objects in Storage by object description:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click the **Object** link to open the object filtering menu.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following options:

   - **File path**
   - **MD5**
   - **SHA256**

4. In the drop-down list, select one of the following object filtering operators:

   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**.
   - **Equal to**
   - **Not equal to**
   - **Matches the pattern**
   - **Does not match the pattern**

5. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the object description.

6. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
7. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering objects in Storage based on scan results

To filter objects in Storage by scan results for these objects:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. Click the **Scan results** link to open the object filtering menu.
3. Select one or more check boxes:
   - **Not detected**.
   - **Error**.
   - **In process**.
   - **Not scanned**.
   - **Detected**.
4. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering objects in Storage based on the name of Central Node, PCN, or SCN server

To filter objects in Storage by the name of Central Node, PCN, or SCN server:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.
   This opens the object table.
2. Click the **Servers** link to open the object filtering menu.

3. Select one or multiple check boxes opposite those servers by which you want to filter objects in Storage.
4. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering objects in Storage by object source

To filter objects in Storage by the source from which they were received:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.
2. Click the **Source** link to open the object filtering menu.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following object filtering operators:
   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**
4. In the entry field, specify one or several characters of the IP address, host name or name of the user account that manually uploaded the object.
5. To add a filter condition using a different criterion, click + and specify the filter condition.
6. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering objects based on the time they were placed in Storage

To filter objects by the time when they were placed in Storage:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.
2. Click the **Time stored** link to open the object filtering menu.

3. Select one of the following object display periods:

   - **All** if you want the table to display all objects that were placed in Storage.
   - **Last hour** if you want the table to display objects that were placed in Storage during the last hour.
   - **Last day** if you want the table to display objects that were placed in Storage during the last day.
   - **Custom range** if you want the table to display objects that were placed in Storage during the period you specify.

4. If you have selected the **Custom range** object display period:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the object display period.

   b. Click **Apply**.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a Storage objects filter

To clear the Storage objects filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Storage** section, **Files** subsection.

   This opens the object table.

2. Click to the right of the header of the Storage objects table column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The objects table will display only objects matching the filter criteria you have set.

Managing reports

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can use Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to manage reports about application alerts: create report templates, create reports based on a template, view, and delete reports and report templates.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view reports and report templates and create reports from templates.

The following types of reports are available:

- General reports. Templates for these reports are available in the **Reports** section, **Templates** subsection. You can manage the generated reports in the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection.

  You can manage report templates and reports in all modes of the application in accordance with your license. Reports are generated based on a selection of alerts for a specified period. If you are using distributed solution and multitenancy mode, the selection can also be based on the tenant and this tenant's servers.

- NDR functionality reports. Available in the **Reports** section, **Reports (NDR)** subsection.

  You can manage report templates and reports if you add a KATA + NDR license key. Reports are generated based on a selection of alerts for the specified period in accordance with the data of the node on which the report is generated.

Managing common reports

When managing the application web interface, users with the **Senior security officer** role can manage KATA reports about application alerts: create report templates, create reports based on a template, view, and delete reports and report templates.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view KATA reports and report templates and create reports from templates.

To create a KATA report:

1. **Create a report template.**
2. **Create a report based on the template.**

Viewing the table of templates and reports

Templates and reports are displayed in the **Reports** section of the application web interface window.

The **Generated reports** subsection contains a report table. The table contains the following information:

- **Time created**—Date and time of report creation.
- **Report name**—Name of the report created based on the template.
- **Period**—Period for which the report was generated.
- **Servers** is the name of the server with the PCN or SCN role to which the rule applies.

  This column is displayed if you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode.
- **Created by**—Name of the user that created report.
- **State**—Report state (whether the file can be downloaded).

The **Templates** subsection displays the table of templates. The table contains the following information:

- **Time created**—Date and time when the template was created.
- **Time updated**—Date and time of last modification of the template.
- **Report name**—Name of the template.
- **Created by**—Name of the user that created the template.

Creating a template

When creating a report template, you need to specify all the information that you want to display in the report: report name, its description, availability of a table, graph or image. You can also select the data that you want to display in the report and define the position of report elements.

When creating a report in the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection of the interface, you can only select the template for creating the report and the data display period.

A new report template is created for each data sample.

To create a template:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.

   This opens the table of templates.

2. Click **Add**.

   This opens the template creation window. This window contains the body of the report and the report builder in a floating window. You can move the report builder over the workspace of the web interface window.

3. In the **Template name** field in the upper-right corner of the window, type the name that you want to assign to reports that are created from this template. For example, **Alerts by technology**.

   This name is displayed in the table in the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection when creating all reports in this template.

4. In place of the **Report title** text, type the report name that will be displayed in a report after the report is created. If you do not want to add a report name, you can delete the **Report title** text and leave this report section blank.

   You can format text using the buttons in the **Text** section in the template builder.

5. In place of the **Report description** text, type the report description that will be displayed in a report after the report is created. If you do not want to add a report description, you can delete the **Report description** text and leave this report section blank.

   You can format text using the buttons in the **Text** section in the template designer.

6. Using the report builder, add one or more report elements:

   - **Table**.
   - **Pie chart**.
   - **Image**.

7. If you chose to add an image, the **Image** window opens. Do the following:

   a. Click **Upload**.

   b. Upload the image. For example, you can upload your company logo.

   c. In the list on the right of the upload button, select the alignment of the image on the report page: **Left**, **Right** or **Center**.

   d. Click **Apply**.

8. If you chose to add a pie chart, the **Pie chart of alert attributes** window opens. Do the following:

   a. In the **Name** field, type the name of the pie chart. For example, **Top 5 alerts by technology**. You can also leave the field blank.

   b. In the **Data source** list, select the alert property for which you want to create a pie chart. For example, **Technologies**.

   c. In the **Number of slices** field, specify the maximum number of sectors of the pie chart.

      When a report is created, the application selects the most frequently encountered data. For example, if you specified 5 sectors and want to create a pie chart by technology, the application displays a chart for the 5 technologies that generated the greatest number of alerts. Technologies that generated fewer alerts are not included in the chart.

   d. Click **Apply**.

9. If you chose to add a table, the **Alerts table** window opens. Do the following:

   a. In the **Available columns** field, double-click to select the alert properties that you want to add to the report table.

      The selected properties are moved to the **Selected columns** field. You can drag the names of columns between the **Available columns** and **Selected columns** fields, and change the order of columns in the report table.

      For example, if you move the **Technologies, Detected**, and **Time created** properties to the **Selected columns** field, the table of the created report displays technologies that generated alerts, a list of detected objects, and the time when the alerts were generated.

   b. If you want to filter alerts by the **State** property, select the check boxes next to the processing statuses of alerts whose data you want to display in the report.

   c. If you want to filter alerts by the **Technologies** property, select the check boxes next to the names of application modules and components whose data you want to display in the report.

   d. If you want to filter alerts by the **Importance** property, select the check boxes next to the importance levels of alerts whose data you want to display in the report.

e. If you want to filter alerts by the **VIP status**, select **VIP** in the list. Only alerts with the VIP status are displayed in the report.

f. Click **Apply**.

10. Click the **Save** button in the upper-right corner of the window.

A new template will be created.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot create report templates.

Creating a report based on a template

To create a report based on a template:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection.

   This opens the table of reports.

2. Click **Add**.

   This opens the **New report** window.

3. Do the following:

   a. In the **Template** drop-down list, select one of the templates for creating a report.

   b. Under **Period**, select one of the following options:

   - **Last hour** if you want the report to contain information about application operation during the last hour.
   - **Last day** if you want the report to contain information about application operation during the last day.
   - **Last 7 days** if you want the report to contain information about application operation during the last week.
   - **Last 30 days**, if you want the report to contain information about system operation during the last month.
   - **Custom**, if you want the report to contain information about system operation during the period you specify.

4. If you have selected the **Custom** display period for information about application operation:

   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the period for which the report will be generated.

   b. Click **Apply**.

5. If you are using distributed solution and multitenancy mode, in the **Servers** settings group, select the check boxes next to the tenants and servers whose data you want to include in the report.

6. Click **Create**.

The created report is displayed in the table of reports. You can download the report for viewing on your computer.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot create report templates.

Viewing a report

To view a report:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection.

   This opens the table of reports.

2. Select the report that you want to view.

The report opens in a new tab in your browser.

Downloading a report to a local computer

To download a report to your computer:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection.

   This opens the table of reports.

2. In the line containing the report that you want to view, click the icon.

   The report is saved in HTML format to your local computer in the browser's downloads folder.

   To view a report, you can use any application that lets you view HTML files (for example, a browser).

Editing a template

To edit a template:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.

2. This opens the table of templates. Select the template that you want to edit.

   This opens the template editing window.

3. You can edit the following settings:

- **Template name** is the report name that is displayed in the table in the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection when creating all reports based on this template.
- **Report title** is the report name that is displayed in the report after the report is created.

  You can format text using the buttons in the **Text** section in the template builder.
- **Report description** is the report description that is displayed in a report after the report is created.

  You can format text using the buttons in the **Text** section in the template builder.
- **Image**. You can upload or delete an image.
- **Pie chart**. You can change the following pie chart settings:
  - **Name**.
  - **Data source**.
  - **Number of slices**.

  Click **Apply**.
- **Table**. You can change the following table settings:
  - **Selected columns**. You can drag the names of columns between the **Available columns** and **Selected columns** fields, and change the order of columns in the report table.
  - **State**.
  - **Technologies**.
  - **Importance**.
  - **VIP status**.

4. Select one of the following methods to save the template:

- If you want to apply changes to the current template, click the **Save** button.

  The template is modified.
- If you want to create a new template, enter a name for the template and click **Save as**.

  > The name of the new template must not be the same as the name of an already existing template.

  The new template will be saved.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot edit templates.

Filtering templates by name

To filter templates by name:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.
2. This opens the table of templates. Click the **Report name** link to open the template filtering menu.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following template filtering operators:
   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**
4. Enter one or several characters of the template name.
5. If you want to add a filtering criterion to the filter, click the + button under the list of filtering operators and repeat the sequence for specifying filtering criteria.
6. Click **Apply**.

The table of templates will display only templates that match the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering templates based on the name of the user that created the template

To filter templates by the name of the user that created the template:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.
2. This opens the table of templates. Click the **Created by** link to open the menu for filtering templates.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following template filtering operators:
   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**
4. Enter one or several characters of the user name.
5. If you want to add a filtering criterion to the filter, click the + button under the list of filtering operators and repeat the sequence for specifying filtering criteria.
6. Click **Apply**.

The table of templates will display only templates that match the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering templates by creation time

To filter report templates by creation time:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.
2. This opens the table of templates. Click the **Time created** link to open the menu for filtering templates.
3. Select one of the following template display periods:
   - **All** if you want the application to display all created templates in the table.
   - **Last hour** if you want the application to display the templates that were created during the last hour in the table.
   - **Last day** if you want the application to display the templates that were created during the last day in the table.
   - **Custom range** if you want the application to display templates that were created during the period you specify in the table.
4. If you have selected the **Custom range** template display period:
   a. This opens the calendar; in the calendar, specify the start and end dates of the template display period.
   b. Click **Apply**.

The table of templates will display only templates that match the filter criteria you have set.

Clearing a template filter

To clear the template filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.
2. This opens the table of templates. Click to the right of the header of the column of the template table for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table of templates will display only templates that match the filter criteria you have set.

Deleting a template

To delete a template:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Reports** section, **Templates** tab.
2. This opens the table of templates. Select the check box in the line containing the template that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.
4. Click **Yes**.

The template that you selected will be deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot delete templates.

Filtering reports by creation time

To filter reports by creation time:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection.

   This opens the table of reports.
2. Click the **Time created** link to open the report filtering menu.
3. Select one of the following report display periods:
   - **All** if you want the application to display all created reports in the table.
   - **Last hour** if you want the application to display the reports that were created during the last hour in the table.
   - **Last day** if you want the application to display the reports that were created during the last day in the table.
   - **Custom range** if you want the application to display reports that were created during the period you specify in the table.
4. If you have selected the **Custom range** report display period:
   a. In the calendar that opens, specify the start and end dates of the report display period.
   b. Click **Apply**.

The table of reports will display only reports that match the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering reports by name

To filter reports by name:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection.
   This opens the table of reports.
2. Click the **Report name** link to open the report filtering menu.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following report filtering operators:
   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**
4. In the text box, enter one or more characters of the report name.
5. If you want to add a filtering criterion to the filter, click the + button under the list of filtering operators and repeat the sequence for specifying filtering criteria.
6. Click **Apply**.

The table of reports will display only reports that match the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering reports by the name of the server with the Central Node component

To filter reports by the name of the server with the Central Node component:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection.
   This opens the table of reports.
2. Click the **Servers** link to open the report filtering menu.
3. Select the check boxes opposite those servers by which you want to filter reports.
4. Click **Apply**.

The table of reports will display only reports that match the filter criteria you have set.

Filtering reports based on the name of the user that created the report

To filter reports by the name of the user that created the report:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection.
   This opens the table of reports.

2. Click the **Created by** link to open the report filtering menu.
3. In the drop-down list, select one of the following report filtering operators:
   - **Contains**
   - **Does not contain**
4. Enter one or several characters of the user name.
5. If you want to add a filtering criterion to the filter, click the + button under the list of filtering operators and repeat the sequence for specifying filtering criteria.

The table of reports will display only reports that match the filter criteria you have set.

Clearing a report filter

To clear the report filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection.

   This opens the table of reports.
2. Click to the right of the header of the column of the reports table for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table of reports will display only reports that match the filter criteria you have set.

Deleting a report

To delete an application operation report:

1. In the window of the program web interface, select the **Reports** section, **Generated reports** subsection.

   This opens the table of reports.
2. Select the check box in the line containing the report that you want to delete.

3. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

4. Click **Yes**.

The selected report will be deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot delete reports.

Managing NDR reports

You can use Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to get reports with various information saved by the application. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform generates reports as PDF files. The application can send report files to email addresses.

You can view information about generated reports and export them to files in the **Reports** section, **Reports (NDR)** subsection, **Generated reports** tab.

The following types of NDR report templates are possible:

- System templates, created automatically during application installation. In the table of report templates, system templates are displayed with the icon. You cannot delete system templates.

  Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform supports the following system report templates:

  - Inventory report.

    Contains information about devices and system commands, as well as protocols used and detected risks on devices.

  - System security report.

    Contains information about the security status of devices, registered events, detected risks, and interactions with devices on external networks.

  - Executive summary.

    Contains brief information about devices and the security status of the system.

  - Full report.

    Contains complete information about devices and the security status of the system.

- Custom templates, created manually by duplicating templates. You can duplicate system or custom templates. Only users with the Senior security officer role can duplicate report templates.

Information in reports is presented as separate information blocks. Each Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform report includes a fixed set of information blocks, which are arranged in a fixed order. Information blocks used in reports and their descriptions are listed in the table below.

Name of the information block	Inventory report	System security report	Executive summary	Full report
Device categories	✓	—	✓	✓
Device vendors	✓	—	✓	✓
Device operating systems	✓	—	✓	✓
Devices with the greatest number of risks.	✓	✓	—	✓
Situational awareness	—	✓	✓	✓
New devices in the network	✓	—	—	✓
Protocols with the most traffic	✓	—	—	✓
Devices with the most connections to other nodes	✓	—	—	✓
Network traffic volume	✓	—	✓	✓
Common protocols	✓	—	✓	✓
Device security status	—	✓	✓	✓
Distribution of devices by status	—	✓	—	✓
Statistics on events	—	✓	—	✓
Distribution of events by detection technologies	—	✓	—	✓
Devices with the most events	—	✓	—	✓
Most critical events	—	✓	—	✓
Most frequently triggered malicious activity detection rules	—	✓	—	✓
Devices with signs of access to public resources	—	✓	—	✓
Connections via remote control protocols	—	✓	—	✓
Active risks	—	✓	✓	✓

Viewing the table of NDR report templates

You can view the table of report templates in the web interface of the application, in the **Reports** section, **Reports (NDR)** subsection, on the **Report templates** tab.

Report template settings are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Name**.

  Report template name. The icon is displayed next to the names of system report templates.

- **Schedule**.

  Information about the schedule used by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to automatically generate a report based on the template. Schedule information is displayed if a user with the **Senior security officer** role configured a schedule in the report template. If the schedule is not configured, the column displays **Disabled**.

- **Type/use**.

  Name of the user who last modified the report template. **System** is displayed for system templates that have default settings.

- **Last report**.

  Time when the last report was generated based on the report template.

- **Destinations**.

  Icon signifying that email report recipients are configured. The following icons have the following meanings:

  - – report recipients are defined.
  - – report recipients are not defined.

Viewing NDR report template details

To view report template information:

In the **Reports** section, **Reports (NDR)** subsection, on the **Report templates** tab, select the relevant template.

The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window. The details area displays all specified details.

Details of the report template include the following fields:

- **Name** is the name of the report template.
- **Type/user** is the name of the user that last modified the report template. **System** is displayed for system templates that have default settings.
- **Period** is the time period covered by the report that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform generates based on the template.
- **Modified** is the time when the most recent change to the template was made.
- **Last report** is the time when the last report was generated based on the template.
- **Next start (local time)** is the time when the next report generation based on the template will start. This setting is displayed if a schedule is configured for the report template.
- **Schedule** displays information about the schedule used by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to automatically generate a report based on the template. This setting is displayed if a schedule is configured for the report template.

Recipient addresses are email addresses to which Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends the generated reports. This setting is displayed if recipient addresses are configured for the report template.

Viewing the table of NDR reports

You can view the table of reports in the web interface of the application, in the **Reports** section, **Reports (NDR)** subsection, on the **Generated reports** tab.

Report settings are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **ID**.

  Unique ID of the report.

- **Report name**.

  Name of the generated report.

- **Template name**.

  Name of the template used to generate the report.

- **Start**.

  Date and time when the report generation started.

- **Status**.

  Status of the report. A report can have one of the following statuses:

  Pending. The report is queued for generation. A report can have the *Pending* status when multiple reports are generated at the same time.

  In progress. The report is being generated.

  Error. An error occurred while generating the report.

  Done. The report is successfully generated.

  Canceling. Report generation is being canceled.

  Canceled. Report generation has been canceled.

- **User**.

  Name of the user that initiated the generation of the report or configured the schedule for running the report based on a template.

- **Run type**.

  Report generation type: manual or scheduled.

- **Completed**.

  Date and time when the report generation ended.

Manually generating an NDR report based on a template

You can manually start generating a report based on a template.

To start report generation:

1. Select the **Reports** section, then the **Reports (NDR)** subsection.

2. On the **Report templates** tab, select one or more templates that you want to use to generate reports.

   When multiple templates are selected, the application generates reports based on these templates simultaneously. You can select up to 10 templates.

3. In the toolbar above the table of report templates, click **Get reports**.

   Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform starts generating the report.

   You will be taken to the **Generated reports** tab, which displays the status of the reports being generated. After the reports are generated, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends report files in PDF format to the email addresses specified in the report template. If an email address is not defined in the report template, you can individually export generated reports to files manually on the **Generated reports** tab. The maximum size of a report file is 10 MB.

If necessary, you can cancel the generation of the report.

Duplicating an NDR report template

You can create custom templates by duplicating existing report templates. You can duplicate system templates or custom templates. When duplicating a template, you cannot choose which information blocks to include in the report or rearrange them.

The maximum number of templates in the application is 5000.

To duplicate a report template:

1. Select the **Reports** section, then the **Reports (NDR)** subsection.
2. On the **Report templates** tab, select the relevant template.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Create new template**.
4. In the **Name** field, edit the name of the report template.

   You can use Latin and Cyrillic letters, numerals, the space character, as well as -, –, _ characters.

   The name of the report template must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Does not reuse the name of another report template (case-insensitive).
   - Contains up to 100 characters.

   Names of reports generated from the updated template will reflect the new name of the template.
5. In the **Data period** drop-down list, select the time period for which you want to get system information in the report.

   You can generate reports with information received by the application within the last 24 hours, 7 days, 30 days, the last year, or a manually configured time frame.
6. If you need to generate reports on a schedule, turn on the **Generate report by schedule** toggle switch and set up a schedule:

   a. In the **Frequency** drop-down list, select how often you want to generate the report: **Hourly**, **Daily**, **Weekly**, or **Monthly**.

   b. Depending on the selected option, specify the values for the settings to refine the report generation start time.

7. If necessary, use the **Recipient addresses** field to enter the email address to which you want to send the generated reports. If you need to specify additional recipients of the report, click **Add recipient address** and enter the email address.

   The maximum number of report recipients is 20.

8. Click **Save**.

The new report is added to the table of report templates.

Editing an NDR report template

To edit the settings of a report template:

1. Select the **Reports** section, then the **Reports (NDR)** subsection.
2. On the **Report templates** tab, select the relevant template.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.

3. Click **Edit**.
4. In the **Name** field, edit the name of the report template.

   You can use Latin and Cyrillic letters, numerals, the space character, as well as -, –, _ characters.

   The name of the report template must satisfy the following requirements:

   - Does not reuse the name of another report template (case-insensitive).
   - Contains up to 100 characters.

   Names of reports generated from the updated template will reflect the new name of the template.

5. In the **Data period** drop-down list, select the time period for which you want to get system information in the report.

   You can generate reports with information received by the application within the last 24 hours, 7 days, 30 days, the last year, or a manually configured time frame.

6. If you need to generate reports on a schedule, turn on the **Generate report by schedule** toggle switch and set up a schedule:

   a. In the **Frequency** drop-down list, select how often you want to generate the report: **Hourly**, **Daily**, **Weekly**, or **Monthly**.

   b. Depending on the selected option, specify the values for the settings to refine the report generation start time.

7. If necessary, use the **Recipient addresses** field to enter the email address to which you want to send the generated reports. If you need to specify additional recipients of the report, click **Add recipient address** and enter the email address.

   The maximum number of report recipients is 20.

8. Click **Save**.

The changes are displayed in the corresponding columns of the table of report templates.

Exporting an NDR report to a file

You can export the generated report to a PDF file.

To export a report to a file:

1. In the **Reports** section, select the **Reports (NDR)** subsection.
2. On the **Generated reports** tab, select the relevant report.

   The reports are filtered by the IDs of the reports that were started last in the current Server connection session. To display all generated reports, reset the filter settings by clicking **Default filter**. If necessary, you can configure filtering by a time period of your choice.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Export**.

The browser save the report file. By default, the report file has a name in the `<report name>_<date and time when the report was generated>` format. Depending on your browser's settings, a window may be displayed on your screen in which you can specify the path and name of the downloaded file.

Deleting an NDR report template

Only custom report templates can be deleted.

To delete a report template:

1. Select the **Reports** section, then the **Reports (NDR)** subsection.
2. On the **Report templates** tab, select one or more report templates that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.

   System templates cannot be deleted. In the table of report templates, system templates are displayed with the icon.
4. In the displayed prompt window, confirm the deletion of report templates.

Deleting an NDR report

To delete a report:

1. Select the **Reports** section, then the **Reports (NDR)** subsection.
2. On the **Generated reports** tab, select one or more reports that you want to delete.

   The reports in the table of reports are filtered by the IDs of the reports that were started last in the current Server connection session. To display all generated reports, reset the filter settings by clicking **Default filter**. If necessary, you can configure filtering by a time period of your choice.

The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.

3. Click **Delete**.
4. In the displayed prompt window, confirm the deletion of the report.

Canceling NDR report generation

You can cancel report generation only for a report with the **In progress** status.

To cancel report generation:

1. Select the **Reports** section, then the **Reports (NDR)** subsection.
2. On the **Generated reports** tab, select the report with the **In progress** status that you want to cancel.
   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
3. Click **Cancel**.
4. In the displayed prompt window, confirm the cancellation of the report.

After this request is completed, the report status changes to **Canceled**.

Managing the settings for storing report files

You can change the maximum total size limit for stored report files.

To edit report file storage settings:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Sensor servers** section.
3. Select the card of the local host (IP address 0.0.0.0).
   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Edit**.
   In the details area, tabs are displayed, on which you can manage the settings of the server.
5. On the **General** tab, under **Reports**, use the **Max volume** setting to set a size limit for the stored report files.
   You can select the unit of measure for the size limit: **MB** or **GB**.
   When editing the value, you also need to take into account that the sum total of all size limits may not exceed the specified maximum storage capacity for the node.
6. If necessary, use the **Storage time (days)** setting to limit the storage duration of report files, and specify the duration in days.
7. Click **Save**.

Managing rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can create, delete, modify, import and export a list of rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts.

You can create the following types of rules:

- **IP**. The VIP status will be assigned to new alerts associated with this IP address of the computer.
- **Host name**. The VIP status will be assigned to new alerts associated with this host name.
- **Email address**. The VIP status will be assigned to new alerts associated with this email address.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view and export a list of rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the list of rules for assigning VIP status to alerts.

Viewing the table of VIP status assignment rules

The table of rules for assigning the VIP status is located in the **Settings** section, **VIP status** subsection of the web interface of the application.

The table contains the following information:

- **Criterion**—Criterion for adding an entry to the list of rules.
- **Value**—Value of the criterion.
- **Description**—Additional information specified when creating the rule.

Creating a VIP status assignment rule

To add a rule for assigning the VIP status to alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Add**.
   This opens the window for adding a rule.
3. In the **Criterion** drop-down list, select one of the following rule types:
   - **IP**, if you want to add a rule for a computer IP address.
   - **Host**, if you want to add a rule for a host name.
   - **Email address**, if you want to add a rule for an email address.

4. Enter the necessary value in the **Value** field.

   For example, if under **Criterion**, you selected **Email address**, enter the email address that you want to add in the **Value** field.

5. In the **Description** field, enter additional information if necessary.

6. Click **Add**.

The rule is added. The VIP status will be assigned to new alerts associated with the added IP address, host name, or email address.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create VIP status assignment rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the list of rules for assigning VIP status to alerts.

Deleting a VIP status assignment rule

To delete a rule for assigning the VIP status to alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.

2. Select the check box to the left of each rule that you want to remove from the list.

3. If you want to delete all rules, select the check box above the list.

4. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Delete**.

   The action confirmation window is displayed.

5. Click **Yes**.

The selected rules will be deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot delete VIP status assignment rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the list of rules for assigning VIP status to alerts.

Modifying a VIP status assignment rule

To modify a rule for assigning the VIP status to alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. Select the rule that you want to modify.
   This opens the rule editing window.
3. Make the necessary changes to the **Criterion**, **Value** and **Description** fields.
4. Click **Save**.

The rule is modified.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot modify VIP status assignment rules.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the list of rules for assigning VIP status to alerts.

Importing a list of VIP status assignment rules

To import a list of rules for assigning VIP status to alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. Click **Import**.
   You will be prompted for confirmation of the list import.

   The imported list of rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts will replace the current list of VIP status alert assignment rules.
3. Click **Yes**.
   This opens the file selection window.
4. Select a JSON file containing the list of rules that you want to import and click **Open**.
   This closes the file selection window.

The list is imported.

Exporting the list of data excluded from the scan

To export the scan exclusion list:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan** tab.
3. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Export**.

   The JSON file containing the exported list of scan exclusions is saved in the browser's downloads folder on your computer.

Filtering and searching by type of VIP status assignment rule

To filter or search for VIP status assignment rules by rule type:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. Click the **Criterion** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. Select one or several check boxes next to the types of rules:
   - **IP**.
   - **Host**.
   - **Email address**.
4. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table will display only the rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching by value of VIP status assignment rule

To filter or search for VIP status assignment rules by rule value:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. Click the **Value** link to open the filter configuration window.

3. Enter one or several characters of the rule value.
4. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table will display only the rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

> You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching by description of VIP status assignment rule

To filter or search for VIP status assignment rules by description:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. Click the **Description** link to open the filter configuration window.
3. Enter one or several characters of the description.
4. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

   The table will display only the rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

> You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a VIP status assignment rule filter

To clear the VIP status assignment rule filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** tab, **VIP status** section.
2. Click to the right of the header of the table column for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   > If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

   The selected filters are cleared.

   The table will display only the rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

Managing allow rules for NDR events

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can monitor network interactions between devices. *Allow rules* are used to configure authorized and unauthorized network interactions. All network interactions that matches active allow rules is treated as allowed. When allowed interactions are detected, the application does not log NDR events or generate alerts.

You can view, create, copy, modify, delete, enable or disable allow rules.

Viewing the table of allow rules

To view the table of allow rules:

1. Select the **Settings** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Allow rules** tab.

   The table of allow rules is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **Rule ID** is the unique ID of the rule.
- **Status** (◐ icon) is the current status of the rule (*Enabled* or *Disabled*).
- **Rule type**: for rules that disable event registration, the EVT type is specified.
- **Protocols/Commands** defines a set of protocols.
- **Side 1** is the device name / address information of one of the sides of the network interaction. You can enable or disable the display of addresses and ports in address information using the following settings: **MAC address**, **IP address**, and **Port number**. If additional address spaces are added to application, you can enable or disable the display of address space names using the following settings:
  - **AS for MAC addresses**: Address spaces containing the MAC addresses in the rule. This setting can contain the names of only those address spaces that have address space rules with **Data Link (L2)** selected as the OSI layer.
  - **AS for IP addresses**: Address spaces containing the IP addresses in the rule. This setting can contain the names of only those address spaces that have address space rules with **Network (L3)** selected as the OSI layer.
- **Side 1** is the device name / address information of the other side of the network interaction. The display of address information can be configured the same way as the **Side 1** column.
- **Comment** lets you provide additional information about the rule.
- **Created** is the date and time when the rule was created.
- **Changed** is the date and time when the rule was last modified.

- **Monitoring point** is the name of the monitoring point to be specified in events.
- **Event type** is the ID and title of the event type.
- **Origin** provides information about the origin of the rule.
- **SID of the system IDS rule** is the ID of the system IDS rule. If an ID was not specified when creating the allow rule, *All rules* is displayed.

Creating an allow rule with blank settings or settings from a template

To create an allow rule with blank settings or settings from a template:

1. Select the **Settings** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Allow rules** tab.
3. Click **Add rule**.
4. If you want to use settings from a template, in the details area click **Use template**, select the necessary template in the opened window and click **Apply**.
5. In the **Protocol** field, specify the protocol for interaction between devices.

   Selecting the **Protocol** field opens the window with the table of supported protocols displayed as a protocol stack tree. You can control the display of tree nodes using the **+** and **-** buttons next to the names of protocols that encompass protocols of the next tiers.

   If necessary, use the search bar above the table to find the protocols that you need.

   To specify the protocol:

   a. In the table of protocols, select the protocol that you want to specify for the rule. To select a protocol, click the button in the left column of the table of protocols.

   b. Click **OK**.

   If you select a protocol that the application can detect by the contents of network packets, the corresponding warning is displayed under the **Protocol** field.
6. If necessary, enter additional information about the rule in the **Comment** field.
7. Under **Side 1** and **Side 2**, specify the editable address information for the sides of network interaction. Depending on the selected protocol (or set of protocols), the address information may contain the MAC address, IP address, and/or port number. If additional address spaces have been added to the application, you can specify the names of the address spaces for the addresses.

To automatically fill in the address information for the side of the network interaction, you can select devices known to the application. To do so:

a. Open the device selection window by clicking **Specify device addresses**.

b. In the device selection window, select check boxes next to the devices that you want to use.

The device selection window contains a table in which you can configure the layout and order of columns, and also filter, search, and sort similarly to the table of devices in the **Assets** section.

c. Click **OK** in the device selection window.

8. In the **Event type** field, specify the event type whose numerical code is indicated in events.

Selecting the **Event type** field opens a window containing a list of event types that may be specified in allow rules. If necessary, use the search bar above the list to find the event type that you need. To specify the event type, select it in the list and click **Apply**.

9. In the **Monitoring point** field, specify the name of the monitoring point that is indicated in events.

Selecting the **Monitoring point** field opens a window containing a list of all monitoring points on all nodes that have application components installed. If necessary, use the search bar above the list to find the name of the monitoring point that you need. To specify the monitoring point name, select it in the list and click **Apply**.

10. If you do not want the application to use the selected system IDS rule to scan network connections that match the conditions of this allow rule, specify the ID of this rule in the **SID of the system IDS rule** field. You can view the SID of the system IDS rule in the details of the IDS alert.

If a SID is not specified, the application disables scanning by all system IDS rules for network interactions that match the conditions of this allow rule.

11. In the details area, click **Save**.

The rule is added to the table of allow rules.

Creating an allow rule from a registered event

To create an allow rule from a registered event:

1. In the **Network traffic events** section in the table of events, select the event on which you want to base the allow rule for events that you are creating.

2. In the details area, click **Create allow rule**.

This opens the **Allow rules** section in the browser window. In the right part of the web interface window, the details area is displayed in rule settings editing mode. The settings of the new rule are initialized with values from the saved event details.

3. If necessary, edit the settings of the new rule. To do this, follow steps 4–12 of the procedure for creating a rule with initially blank settings. If you do not need to edit the settings of the new rule, save the rule by clicking **Save**.

An allow rule is created based on the registered event.

Copying an allow rule

To create an interaction control rule from an existing one:

1. Select the **Settings** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Allow rules** tab.
3. Select the rule that you want to base the new rule on.
4. Right-click to open the context menu.
5. In the context menu, select **Copy rule**.

   In the right part of the web interface window, the details area is displayed in rule settings editing mode. The settings of the new rule are initialized with values of the saved event settings.
6. Edit the settings as needed. To do this, follow steps 4–12 described in the procedure for creating a rule.

The allow rule is copied.

Editing the settings of an allow rule

You can edit the settings of an enabled allow rule. Disabled rules are not editable.

To edit the settings of an allow rule:

1. Select the **Settings** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Allow rules** tab.
3. Select the rule whose settings you want to edit.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Edit**.
5. Edit the settings as needed. To do this, follow steps 4–12 described in the procedure for creating a rule.
6. Click **Save**.

The rule settings are modified.

Enabling or disabling allow rules

Allow rules can have the *Enabled* or *Disabled* status. By default, rules are enabled after creation.

To change the status of allow rules:

1. Select the **Settings** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Allow rules** tab.
3. In the table of rules, select the rules whose status you want to change.
4. Enable or disable rules by clicking **Enable** or **Disable**. Each of these buttons is displayed the selected rules include rules to which the corresponding operation can be applied.

The status of the selected rules is changed.

Deleting allow rules

You can selectively delete one or more allow rules.

To delete allow rules:

1. Select the **Settings** section in the application web interface window.
2. Go to the **Allow rules** tab.
3. In the rule table, select the allow rules that you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens a confirmation prompt window. Depending on the state of the selected rules, the prompt offer the following options:

   - If all of the selected rules are enabled, the application prompts you to delete the selected rules, disable them, or cancel the operation. This condition is not checked if all rules that match the current filter and search conditions are selected, and the number of selected rules is greater than 1000.
   - If the selected rules include disabled rules or all rules that satisfy the current filter and search conditions are selected, and the number of selected rules is greater than 1000, the application prompts you to delete the selected rules or cancel the operation.
5. In the prompt window, confirm deletion of the rules.

The selected rules will be deleted.

Managing the list of scan exclusions

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can create, import and export the list of *scan exclusions*, that is, the list of data that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform treats as safe and does not display in the table of alerts. You can create scan exclusion rules for the following data:

- **MD5**
- **Format**.

- **URL mask**.
- **Email recipient**.
- **Email sender**.
- **Source IP or subnet**.
- **Destination IP or subnet**.
- **User Agent**.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles can view the list of scan exclusion rules as well as export it.

Viewing the table of data excluded from the scan

To view the table with data excluded from the scan:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan** tab.

   This opens the table with a list of data that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will treat as safe and will not create alerts for. You can filter the rules by clicking links in column headers.

The table contains the following information:

- **Criterion**—Criterion for adding an entry to the list of allowed objects.
- **Value**—Value of the criterion.

Adding a scan exclusion rule

To add to scan exclusions:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan** tab.
3. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Add**.

   This opens the **New rule** window.
4. In the **Criterion** drop-down list, select one of the following criteria for adding a rule to the list of scan exclusions:
   - **MD5**.
   - **Format**.

- **URL mask**.
- **Email recipient**.
- **Email sender**.
- **Source IP or subnet**.
- **Destination IP or subnet**.
- **User Agent**.

5. If you selected **Format**, select the file format that you want to add from the **Value** drop-down list.

   For example, you can select the **MSOfficeDoc** format.

6. If you selected **MD5**, **URL mask**, **Email recipient**, **Email sender**, **Source IP or subnet**, **Destination IP or subnet**, or **User Agent**, in the **Value** field, enter the value of the relevant criterion that you want to add to the list of scan exclusions:

   - If you selected **MD5**, enter the MD5 hash of the file in the **Value** field.
   - If you selected **URL mask**, enter the URL mask in the **Value** field.

     You can use the following special characters in the mask:

     * – any sequence of characters.

     Example:
     If you enter `*abc*` as the mask, the application considers as safe any URL that contains the sequence `abc`. For example, `www.example.com/download_virusabc`

     ? – any single character.

     Example:
     If you enter `example_123?.com` as the mask, the application considers as safe any URL that contains the given character sequence and any character following `3`. For example, `example_1234.com`

     If the `*` or `?` characters are part of the full URL that you want to add to the list of scan exclusions, use the `\` character when entering the URL to escape a single `*`, `?`, or `\` character that follows it.

     Example:
     You need to add the following URL as a trusted address: `www.example.com/download_virus/virus.dll?virus_name=`
     You do not want the application to treat `?` as a special mask character so you put a `\` character before the `?` character.
     The URL added to the list of scan exclusions looks as follows: `www.example.com/download_virus/virus.dll\?virus_name=`

   - If you selected **Email recipient** or **Email sender**, enter the email address in the **Value** field.
   - If you selected **User Agent**, enter the **User agent header of HTTP requests** containing browser information in the **Value** field.
   - If you selected **Source IP or subnet** or **Destination IP or subnet**, enter the address or subnet (for example, 255.255.255.0) in the **Value** field.

   In the **URL mask**, **Email recipient**, and **Email sender** field, you can enter domain names containing Cyrillic characters. In this case, the address is converted to Punycode and processed in accordance with application settings.

7. Click **Add**.

The rule is added to the scan exclusion list.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot add a scan exclusion rule.

Deleting a scan exclusion rule

To remove one or multiple rules from scan exclusions:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan** tab.
3. Select the check box to the left of each rule that you want to remove from the list of scan exclusions.
   If you want to delete all rules, select the check box above the list.
4. In the lower part of the window, click **Delete**.
   The action confirmation window is displayed.
5. Click **Yes**.

The selected rules are removed from the list of scan exclusions.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot remove entries from the list of scan exclusions.

Editing a rule added to scan exclusions

To edit a rule in the scan exclusion list:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan** tab.
3. Select the rule that you want to modify.
   This opens the **Edit rule** window.
4. Make the necessary changes to the **Criterion** and **Value** fields.
5. Click **Save**.

The rule is modified.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot edit rules in the list of scan exclusions.

Exporting the list of data excluded from the scan

To export the scan exclusion list:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan** tab.
3. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Export**.

The JSON file containing the exported list of scan exclusions is saved in the browser's downloads folder on your computer.

Filtering rules in the scan exclusion list by criterion

To filter scan exclusion list entries by rule type:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan** tab.
3. Click the **Criterion** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Select one or more check boxes next to criteria by which you want to filter the rules:
   - **MD5**
   - **Format**.
   - **URL mask**.
   - **Email recipient**.
   - **Email sender**.
   - **Source IP or subnet**.
   - **Destination IP or subnet**.
   - **User Agent**.
5. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The list of scan exclusions displays only those rules that match your criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Searching for rules in the scan exclusion list by value

To search rules in the scan exclusion list by value:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan** tab.
3. Click the **Value** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Enter value characters.
5. Click **Apply**.

The list of scan exclusions displays only those rules that match your criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Resetting the rule filter in the scan exclusion list

To clear an exclusion list record filter by one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **Scan** tab.
3. Click to the right of the header of the column in the table of scan exclusion list entries for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The list of scan exclusions displays only those rules that match your criteria.

Managing Intrusion Detection rule exclusions

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can add Kaspersky Intrusion Detection rules to scan exclusions. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not create alerts when scanning by excluded Intrusion Detection rules. However, the application continues to register NDR events using the *Intrusion Detection* (IDS) technology.

If you want to create a pinpoint exclusion, for example, if you do not want the application to register NDR events or generate alerts for such events for an individual source address, you need to add an allow rule.

> You can exclude only Kaspersky Intrusion Detection rules. If you do not want to apply a user-defined Intrusion Detection rule when scanning, you can disable this rule or delete it.

Users with the Security auditor role can view the list of Intrusion Detection rules added to exclusions, and view the properties of a selected rule.

Users with the Security officer role cannot view the list of Intrusion Detection rules added to exclusions.

Viewing the table of Intrusion Detection rules added to exclusions

To view the table of Intrusion Detection rules added to exclusions:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Go to the **IDS** tab.

   The table of excluded IDS rules is displayed. You can filter the rules by clicking links in column headers.

The table contains the following information:

- **Time created**—Date and time when the Intrusion Detection rule was added to exclusions.
- **Rule name**—Name of the Intrusion Detection rule.
- **Rule ID**—ID of the Intrusion Detection rule (SID or signature ID) in Suricata format.
- **Description**—Description of the Intrusion Detection rule.
- **Created by**—Name of the user whose account was used to add the Intrusion Detection rule to exclusions.

Adding an Intrusion Detection rule to exclusions

You can exclude Kaspersky Intrusion Detection rules with medium or high importance alerts from event scanning.

You can exclude only Kaspersky Intrusion Detection rules. If you do not want to apply a user-defined Intrusion Detection rule when scanning events, you can disable this rule or delete it.

To add an Intrusion Detection rule to exclusions:

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the link in the **Technologies** column to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list on the left, select **Contains**.

4. In the drop-down list on the right, select the **(IDS) Intrusion Detection System** technology.

5. Click **Apply**.

6. If you want to filter detections, click to expand the list of filtering parameters and select the required filter.

7. Select an alert for which the **Detected** column displays the name of the relevant Intrusion Detection rule.

   This opens a window containing information about the alert.

8. In the right part of the window, in the **Recommendations** section, **Qualifying** subsection, click **Add to exclusions**.

   This opens the **Add IDS rule to exclusions** window.

9. In the **Description** field, enter a description for the Intrusion Detection rule.

10. Click **Add**.

The Intrusion Detection rule is added to exclusions and is displayed in the exclusion list in the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection on the **IDS** tab in the application web interface. This rule is no longer used for creating alerts.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot modify entries in the list of allowed objects.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to the list of Intrusion Detection rules added to exclusions.

Editing the description of an Intrusion Detection rule added to exclusions

*To edit the description of an excluded Intrusion Detection rule, in the **Alerts** section:*

1. Select the **Alerts** section in the window of the application web interface.

   This opens the table of alerts.

2. Click the link in the **Technologies** column to open the filter configuration window.

3. In the drop-down list on the left, select **Contains**.

4. In the drop-down list on the right, select the **(IDS) Intrusion Detection System** technology.

5. Click **Apply**.

6. If you want to filter detections, click to expand the list of filtering parameters and select the required filter.

7. Select an alert for which the **Detected** column displays the name of the relevant Intrusion Detection rule.

   This opens a window containing information about the alert.

8. In the right part of the window, in the **Recommendations** section, **Qualifying** subsection, click **Edit IDS exclusion**.

   This opens the **Edit IDS exclusion** window.

   In the **Description** field, edit the description of the rule.

   Click **Save**.

The description of the excluded Intrusion Detection rule is modified. This rule is no longer used for creating alerts.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot edit Intrusion Detection rule descriptions.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to the list of Intrusion Detection rules added to exclusions.

Removing Intrusion Detection rules from exclusions

You can remove from exclusions a single Intrusion Detection rule, multiple rules, or all rules at the same time.

To remove an Intrusion Detection rule from exclusions:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Settings** → **Exclusions** section and go to the **IDS** tab.

2. The list of excluded Intrusion Detection rules is displayed.

3. Select the rule that you want to remove from exclusions.

   This opens a window containing information about the rule.

4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

5. Click **Yes**.

The rule is removed from exclusions. This rule is used for creating alerts.

To remove all or multiple IDS rules from exclusions:

1. In the application web interface window, select the **Settings** → **Exclusions** section and go to the **IDS** tab.
2. The list of excluded Intrusion Detection rules is displayed.
3. Select check boxes next to rules that you want to remove from exclusions.

   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

4. In the pane that appears in the lower part of the window, click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

5. Click **Yes**.

The selected rules are removed from exclusions. These rules are used for creating alerts.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot remove Intrusion Detection rules from exclusions.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to the list of exclusions from Intrusion Detection rules.

Managing ICAP exclusions

Users with the **Senior security officer** can create an ICAP exclusion list, that is, a list of data that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform must not scan. You can create ICAP exclusion rules for the following data:

- **Format**.
- **User Agent**.
- **MD5**
- **URL mask**.
- **Source IP or subnet**.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles can view the list of ICAP exclusion rules.

In distributed solution mode, ICAP exclusions created on an SCN apply to all Sensor components connected to that SCN. ICAP exclusions created on a PCN apply to the SCN installed on the same device as the PCN and to all Sensor components connected to that SCN.

Viewing the ICAP exclusion table

To view the ICAP exclusion table:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Open the **ICAP** tab.

   The table of data that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform must not scan is displayed. You can filter the rules by clicking links in column headers.

The table columns contain the following information:

- **Value**—Value of the criterion.
- **Criterion**—Criterion for adding an entry to the list of allowed objects.
- **State** is the state of the rule.

Adding a rule to ICAP exclusions

ICAP exclusion rules are processed if a rule for the data has not been previously added to the scan exclusion rules.

To add rule to ICAP exclusions:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Open the **ICAP** tab.
3. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Add**.

   This opens the **New rule** window.
4. Move the **State** toggle switch to the position you need.

   By default, the toggle switch is in the **Enabled** position.

5. In the **Criterion** drop-down list, select one of the following criteria for adding a rule to the list of ICAP exclusions:

   - **Format**.
   - **User Agent**.
   - **MD5**
   - **URL mask**.
   - **Source IP or subnet**.

6. Depending on the selected criterion, in the **Value** field, specify the following information:

   - If you selected **Format**, select the file format that you want to add from the drop-down list.

     When you add an ICAP exclusion rule by format, web page content of the corresponding format is loaded without scanning, and the display of web pages is not disrupted.

   - If you selected **User Agent**, enter the `User agent header of HTTP requests` containing browser information.
   - If you selected **MD5**, enter the MD5 hash of the file.
   - If you selected **URL mask**, enter the URL mask.

     You can use the following special characters in the mask:

     * – any sequence of **characters**.

     Example:
     If you enter `*abc*` as the mask, the application does not scan any URL that contains the sequence `abc`. For example, `www.example.com/download_virusabc`

     ? – any single **character**.

     Example:
     If you enter `example_123?.com` as the mask, the application does not scan any URL that contains the given character sequence and any character following `3`. For example, `example_1234.com`

     If the `*` or `?` characters are part of the full URL that you want to add to the list of scan exclusions, use the `\` character when entering the URL to escape a single `*`, `?`, or `\` **character** that follows it.

     Example:
     You need to add the following URL as a trusted address:
     `www.example.com/download_virus/virus.dll?virus_name=`
     You do not want the application to treat `?` as a special mask character so you put a `\` character before the `?` character.
     The URL added to the list of scan exclusions looks as follows:
     `www.example.com/download_virus/virus.dll\?virus_name=`

In the **URL mask** field, you can enter domain names containing Cyrillic characters. In this case, the address is converted to Punycode and processed in accordance with application settings.

- If you selected **Source IP or subnet**, enter an address or subnet (for example, 255.255.255.0).

7. Click **Add**.

The rule is added to the ICAP exclusion list.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot add an ICAP exclusion rule.

Removing rules from ICAP exclusions

To remove one or more rules from ICAP exclusions:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Open the **ICAP** tab.
3. Select the check box to the left of each rule that you want to remove from the list of ICAP exclusions.

   If you want to delete all rules, select the check box above the list.
4. In the lower part of the window, click **Delete**.
5. This opens a window; in that window, click **Yes** to confirm the deletion of rules.

The selected rules are removed from the list of ICAP exclusions. Data that was previously listed in the ICAP exclusion rules are now scanned by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot remove entries from the list of ICAP exclusions.

Editing or disabling a rule in the ICAP exclusion list

To edit a rule in the ICAP exclusion list:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Open the **ICAP** tab.
3. Select the rule that you want to modify.

   This opens the **Edit rule** window.

4. Make the necessary changes to the **State**, **Criterion**, and **Value** fields.
5. Click **Save**.

The rule is modified.

To disable a rule in the ICAP exclusion list:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Open the **ICAP** tab.
3. To the right of the rule that you want to disable in the ICAP exclusion list, in the **State** column, move the toggle switch to the **Disabled** position.
4. This opens a window; in that window, click **Yes** to confirm the disabling of the rule.

The rule is disabled.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot edit or disable rules in the list of ICAP exclusions.

Filtering rules in the ICAP exclusion list by criterion

To filter rules in the ICAP exclusion list by criterion:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Open the **ICAP** tab.
3. Click the **Criterion** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Select one or more check boxes next to criteria by which you want to filter the rules:
   - **Format**.
   - **User Agent**.
   - **MD5**
   - **URL mask**.
   - **Source IP or subnet**.
5. Click **Apply**.

   The filter configuration window closes.

The list of ICAP exclusions displays only rules that match the specified filtering conditions. You can filter by the **Value** and **State** columns at the same time.

Filtering rules in the ICAP exclusion list by value

To filter rules in the ICAP exclusion list by value:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Open the **ICAP** tab.
3. Click the **Value** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Enter a value.
5. Click **Apply**.

The list of ICAP exclusions displays only rules that match the specified search conditions. You can filter by the **Criterion** and **State** columns at the same time.

Filtering rules in the ICAP exclusion list by state

To filter rules in the ICAP exclusion list by state:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Open the **ICAP** tab.
3. Click the **State** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Select the check box next to one of the values:
   - **Enabled**
   - **Disabled**
5. Click **Apply**.

The list of ICAP exclusions displays only rules that match the specified search conditions. You can filter by the **Criterion** and **Value** columns at the same time.

Resetting rule filter conditions in the ICAP exclusion list

To clear the filter conditions for rules in the ICAP exclusion list:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Open the **ICAP** tab.

3. Click to the right of the header of the **Value**, **Criterion**, or **State** column in the table for which you want to reset the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filter conditions are cleared. The list of ICAP exclusions displays only rules that match the specified conditions.

Managing exclusions from observables

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can add observables to exclusions. Excluded objects are not added to the list of observables.

You can create exclusion rules for the following data:

- **MD5**
- **Format**.
- **URL mask**.
- **Source IP or subnet**.
- **Destination IP or subnet**.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles can view the list of exclusion rules as well as export or import it.

Viewing the table of exclusions for observables

To view the table of exclusions for observables:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Select the **Observables** tab.

   A table of exclusions from observables is displayed.

The table contains the following information:

- **Criterion**—Criterion for adding an entry to the list of allowed objects.
- **Value**—Value of the criterion.

Adding an exclusion rule for observables

To add to an exclusion rule for observables:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Select the **Observables** tab.
3. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Add**.

   This opens the **New rule** window.
4. In the **Criterion** drop-down list, select one of the following criteria for adding a rule to the list of scan exclusions:

   - **MD5**.
   - **Format**.
   - **URL mask**.
   - **Source IP or subnet**.
   - **Destination IP or subnet**.
5. If you selected **Format**, select the file format that you want to add from the **Value** drop-down list.

   For example, you can select the **MSOfficeDoc** format.
6. If you selected **MD5**, **URL mask**, **Source IP or subnet**, **Destination IP or subnet**, in the **Value** field, enter the value of the relevant criterion that you want to add to the list of scan exclusions:

   - If you selected **MD5**, enter the MD5 hash of the file in the **Value** field.
   - If you selected **URL mask**, enter the URL mask in the **Value** field.

     You can use the following special characters in the mask:

     * – any sequence of characters.

     > Example:
     > If you enter `*abc*` as the mask, the application considers as safe any URL that contains the sequence `abc`. For example, `www.example.com/download_virusabc`

     ? – any single character.

     > Example:
     > If you enter `example_123?.com` as the mask, the application considers as safe any URL that contains the given character sequence and any character following `3`. For example, `example_1234.com`

     If the `*` or `?` characters are part of the full URL that you want to add to the list of scan exclusions, use the `\` character when entering the URL to escape a single `*`, `?`, or `\` character that follows it.

Example:
You need to add the following URL as a trusted address: `www.example.com/download_virus/virus.dll?virus_name=`
You do not want the application to treat `?` as a special mask character so you put a `\` character before the `?` character.
The URL added to the list of scan exclusions looks as follows: `www.example.com/download_virus/virus.dll\?virus_name=`

- If you selected **Source IP or subnet** or **Destination IP or subnet**, enter the address or subnet (for example, 255.255.255.0) in the **Value** field.

In the **URL mask** field, you can enter domain names containing Cyrillic characters. In this case, the address is converted to Punycode and processed in accordance with application settings.

7. Click **Add**.

The rule is added to the list of exclusions from observables.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot add a scan exclusion rule.

Deleting an exclusion rule for observables

To remove one or multiple rules from exclusions from observables:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Select the **Observables** tab.
3. Select the check box to the left of each rule that you want to remove from the list of scan exclusions.

   If you want to delete all rules, select the check box above the list.
4. In the lower part of the window, click **Delete**.

   The action confirmation window is displayed.
5. Click **Yes**.

The selected rules are removed from the list of scan exclusions.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot remove rules from the list of exclusions from observables.

Editing an exclusion rule for observables

To edit an exclusion rule for observables:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Select the **Observables** tab.

3. Select the rule that you want to modify.

   This opens the **Edit rule** window.

4. Make the necessary changes to the **Criterion** and **Value** fields.

5. Click **Save**.

   The rule is modified.

Users with the **Security auditor** and **Security officer** roles cannot edit rules in the list of exclusions from observables.

Importing a list of exclusions from observables

The imported file must have the following structure:

```
{"type": "observations_whitelist", "data": {"items": [{"type": "<type of data excluded from observables>", "value": "<value of the selected data type>"}]}}
```

As the type of data excluded from observables, you can specify one of the following:

- net_src (source IP address)
- net_dst (destination IP address)
- md5 (MD5 hash of the file)
- fmt (file format)
- URL (URL mask)

Example of a file structure for importing a single rule to exclusions from observables:

```
{"type": "observations_whitelist", "data": {"items": [{"type": "net_src", "value": "00.00.00.00"}]}}
```

Example of a file structure for importing multiple rules to exclusions from observables:

```
{"type": "observations_whitelist", "data": {"items": [{"type": "net_src", "value": "10.88.38.24"}, {"type": "net_dst", "value": "00.00.00.00"}, {"type": "md5", "value": "5d41402abc4b2a76b9719d911017c592"}, {"type": "fmt", "value": "test"}, {"type": "url", "value": "google.com"}]}}
```

To import an exclusion list for observables:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.

2. Go to the **Observables** tab.

3. In the upper-right corner of the web interface window, click **Import**.

4. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

5. This opens a window; in that window, select a JSON file containing the list of exclusions that you want to import and click **Open**.

   This closes the file selection window.

The list is imported. Imported exclusions are displayed in the table of exclusions from observables.

Exporting the list of exclusions from observables

To export the exclusion list for observables:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Select the **Observables** tab.
3. In the upper-right corner of the application web interface window, click **Export**.

The JSON file containing the exported list of exclusions from observables is saved in the browser's downloads folder on your computer.

Filtering rules in the list of exclusions from observables by criterion

To filter rules in the list of exclusions from observables by rule type:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Select the **Observables** tab.
3. Click the **Criterion** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Select one or more check boxes next to criteria by which you want to filter the rules.
5. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The list of exclusions from observables displays only those rules that match your criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering rules in the list of exclusions from observables by value

To filter rules in the list of exclusions from observables by value:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Select the **Observables** tab.
3. Click the **Value** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Enter value characters.
5. Click **Apply**.

The list of exclusions from observables displays only those rules that match your criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Resetting the rule filter in the list of exclusions from observables

To reset the filter in list of exclusions from observables by one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Exclusions** subsection.
2. Select the **Observables** tab.
3. Click to the right of the header of the column in the table of scan exclusion list entries for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The list of exclusions from observables displays only those rules that match your criteria.

Managing mirrored traffic from SPAN ports

When managing the web interface, users with the **Senior security officer** role can download dumps of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports in PCAP format from servers with the Sensor component and conduct investigations to detect suspicious activity.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, follow the steps on the PCN or SCN server to which the server with the Sensor component is connected.

To download mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
3. Click **Download traffic**.

   The download options window is displayed.

   In the **Internal storage** section, the **Oldest packet** field displays the date and time of the first saved dump in the internal storage. In the **Used / maximum** field, the first number indicates the occupied space in the internal storage, and the second number indicates the total size of the internal storage. The **External storage** section displays the storage status: **Connected** or **Not connected**.
4. Do the following:

   - In the **Period of traffic to download**, set the bounds for the period for which you want to download traffic dumps.

     If recorded traffic does not exist for your selected period, when you click **Download traffic**, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform suggests selecting the period from the first recorded network traffic dump to the last. If no recorded dumps exist at all, a warning is displayed indicating the lack of data for the specified period.

   - In the **Download volume limit** field, you can specify the maximum amount of traffic to be downloaded.

     If the amount of downloaded traffic exceeds the specified limit, the newest traffic is dropped.

   - If necessary, enable filtering under **Filtering by monitoring points** and specify the monitoring points from which you want to get traffic.

   - If necessary, enable filtering in the **Filtering using BPF** section and enter a filtering expression using the Berkeley Packet Filter (BPF) technology. The BPF filtering expression is written in the libpcap format. For more details about the syntax, please refer to the pcap-filter manual page.

     Example of a filter expression:

     ```
     tcp port 102 or tcp port 502
     ```

- If necessary, enable filtering in the **Filtering using regular expressions** section and enter an expression for filtering based on payload data in traffic.

  Example of a filtering expression:
  `^test.+xABxCD`

5. Click **Download traffic**.

Dumps of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports are downloaded in PCAP format.

Recommendations for sequential traffic download requests

We recommend taking into account the time it takes to process the previous traffic download request when sending a new one.

If the next traffic download request arrives before the previous one has completed, dump file download may fail without any error messages.

The request processing time depends on various factors: the search range, the volume of traffic to be downloaded, and the speed of the connection between the Sensor, the server and the client computer.

The volume of traffic to be downloaded depends on the client's requirements; small volumes can be downloaded in a matter of seconds. If the user attempts to download all available traffic, the download speed limit of 50 Mbps is applied. This limitation protects the system from overload caused by downloading a large volume of traffic. At 50 Mbps, downloading 1 GB of traffic takes approximately 20 seconds, and 1 TB downloads in approximately 5.5 hours.

Retrospective traffic analysis

Retrospective analysis of traffic allows analyzing previously collected network data, taking into account new signatures, indicators, and rules.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides the results of retrospective analysis of traffic in the following form:

- Alerts.
- NDR events.
- Network sessions.
- Network interaction map.
- Topology map.
- List of devices.
- List of executable files on devices.
- List of users on devices.

When working with the received data, keep in mind the following:

- Traffic analysis results are displayed immediately after replay is started.
- The time when the data was recorded is taken from the network packet.
- When the traffic is replayed, data may be displayed incorrectly (if less than 10 minutes have passed since the first replay) or data duplication (if more than 10 minutes have passed since the first replay). To avoid this, you need to clear the analysis results before replaying again.

For retrospective analysis, you need to deploy a standalone Central Node component in **Retrospective analysis** mode. The hardware requirements for the component are given in the *Calculations for the Central Node component → Hardware requirements for the Central Node server that performs retrospective analysis of traffic* section. This component is used only for retrospective analysis of traffic. You cannot change the role of a server after installation. You can connect Sandbox to this component.

The following limitations apply to a component that is used for retrospective traffic analysis:

- The maximum rate of automatic download of PCAP files must not exceed 200 Mbps.

  You can find the command for automating the download of files at the specified rate in the *Scenarios for running retrospective analysis of traffic* section.
- The maximum traffic replay rate is 200 Mbps.
- If you want to use Sandbox for retrospective analysis of traffic, this component must be connected only to the Central Node that is performing the analysis.
- In automatic analysis mode, files must arrive in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in the order they were recorded and with network segments taken into account, otherwise the analysis results may be distorted.
- Simultaneous replay of traffic from different PCAP files by multiple users is not allowed.
- The following application functionality is not available:
  - Adding a new Sensor component
  - Removing the Embedded Sensor
  - Distributed solution and multitenancy mode
  - Deploying the component as a cluster
  - Configuring integrations:
    - With a mail server via SMTP and POP3
    - With a proxy server via ICAP
    - With the Endpoint Agent component
    - With mail sensors
    - With Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response

Before starting to use this functionality, we recommend learning about the scenarios for running retrospective analysis of traffic.

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can manually upload PCAP files to the system, delete PCAP files, view the table of PCAP files, view information about the selected PCAP file, start traffic replay, clear analysis results, enable or disable automatic analysis of traffic.

Users with the **Administrator** role can manage the PCAP file storage settings.

Users with the **Security officer** and **Security auditor** roles can view the table of PCAP files, information about the selected PCAP file, and the settings for automatic traffic analysis.

This functionality is available if a current KATA+NDR license key is present. After the license key expires, the traffic analysis results remain available for viewing. Traffic replay does not start. Activation is possible only with a key file.

If necessary, you can create a backup copy of the application. The procedure for backing up and restoring is the same as for a Central Node component deployed in standard mode.

Scenarios for running retrospective analysis of traffic

Scenario for running retrospective analysis of traffic manually

The scenario for running retrospective analysis of traffic manually involves the following steps:

1. Installing the Central Node component for retrospective analysis of traffic, if it has not been installed yet.
2. Adding and enabling a monitoring point if it has not been added and enabled yet.

   Only one monitoring point must exist.
3. Uploading a PCAP file to the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
4. Starting traffic replay.
5. Reviewing traffic analysis results.
6. Clearing traffic analysis results.

   If you want to replay multiple PCAP files in a row without clearing the results, you need to upload the PCAP files in the order they were recorded, taking into account the network segments to avoid distorting the analysis results.

Scenario for running retrospective analysis of traffic automatically

The scenario for running retrospective analysis of traffic automatically involves the following steps:

1. Installing the Central Node component for retrospective analysis of traffic, if it has not been installed yet.
2. Adding and enabling a monitoring point if it has not been added and enabled yet.

   Only one monitoring point must exist.
3. Enabling automatic traffic analysis.
4. Adding a connector of the Generic type for uploading PCAP files from an external system to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

   This connector is used for the connection with the external system from which you are transferring the PCAP files.
5. Uploading a PCAP file to the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform using the NDR API.

   The maximum data transfer rate when uploading files is 200 Mbps.

   Example command for automating the upload of files at a certain rate:

   curl -X POST --location <serverURI from the metadata.json file>/v4/retrospective -H "Authorization: Bearer <authentication token>" -F "fileName=<PCAP file name" -F "file=@<full path to PCAP file>" -s --limit-rate 20M --connect-timeout 30 --max-time 600 -k

   For details on how to get a metadata.json file and a token, see the *Getting an authentication token for PCAP file upload automation* section.

   Files uploaded to the system are placed in a special storage. You can manage the settings of this storage.
6. Reviewing traffic analysis results.
7. Clearing traffic analysis results.

> If you want to replay multiple PCAP files in a row without clearing the results, you need to upload the PCAP files in the order they were recorded, taking into account the network segments to avoid distorting the analysis results.

Viewing the table of PCAP files

This table contains information about PCAP files uploaded for retrospective analysis of traffic. You can find this table in the **Retrospective traffic analysis** section of the application web interface window.

The table contains the following information:

- **en: Title** is the name of the uploaded file.
- **en: Size** is the size of the uploaded file.
- **en: Status** is the status of the uploaded file. Can have the following values: **en: Uploaded**, **en: Processing**, **en: Processed**, **en: Error**.

- **en: Upload method** is the method used to upload the file. Possible values: **en: Manual**, **en: Public API**.
- **en: Uploaded** is the file upload date.
- **en: First packet** is the date and time when the first network packet recorded in the file was transmitted.
- **en: Last packet** is the date and time when the last network packet recorded in the file was transmitted.
- **en: Description** is the description of the file. This field is displayed if a description was added when the file was uploaded.

Viewing information about a PCAP file

To view information about an uploaded PCAP file:

1. Select the **Retrospective traffic analysis** section in the application web interface.

   This opens the table of PCAP files.

2. In the table, select the file for which you want to view information.

   This opens a window containing information about the PCAP file.

The window contains the following information:

- **en: Size** is the size of the file.
- **en: Status** is the status of the file. Possible values: **en: Uploaded**, **en: Processing**, **en: Processed**, **en: Error**.
- **en: Upload method** is the method used to upload the file. Possible values: **en: Manual**, **en: Public API**.
- **en: Uploaded** is the file upload date.
- **en: First packet** is the date and time when the first network packet recorded in the file was transmitted.
- **en: Last packet** is the date and time when the last network packet recorded in the file was transmitted.
- **en: Description** is the description of the file. This field is displayed if a description was added when the file was uploaded.

Uploading a PCAP file manually

If automatic traffic analysis is enabled, PCAP files cannot be manually uploaded to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

To upload a PCAP file:

1. Select the **Retrospective traffic analysis** section in the application web interface.

   This opens the table of PCAP files.

2. Click **en: Upload PCAP file**.

   This opens the file selection window.

3. Select the PCAP file that you want to upload and click **Open**.

   You can select multiple files.

The PCAP file is uploaded.

> We strongly recommend not refreshing the page while the file is uploading, otherwise the upload process will not finish.

Deleting PCAP files

To delete one file:

1. Select the **Retrospective traffic analysis** section in the application web interface.

   This opens the table of PCAP files.

2. In the table, select the file that you want to delete.

   This opens a window containing information about the PCAP file.

3. Click **en: Delete**.

The file is deleted.

To delete multiple files:

1. Select the **Retrospective traffic analysis** section in the application web interface.

   This opens the table of PCAP files.

2. Select the check boxes on the left of the files that you want to delete.

   You can select all files by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

   > At least one check box must be selected.

3. Click **en: Delete files**.

The files are deleted.

Enabling or disabling automatic traffic analysis

If automatic analysis of traffic is enabled, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform fetches and PCAP files automatically and replays them as they arrive. You need to make sure that PCAP files arrive in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in the order they were recorded and with network segments taken into account, otherwise the analysis results may be distorted.

When automatic analysis of traffic is enabled, you cannot upload PCAP files to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform or start traffic replay manually.

To enable or disable the automatic analysis of traffic:

1. Select the **Retrospective traffic analysis** section in the application web interface.

   This opens the table of PCAP files.

2. Click **en: Auto mode parameters**.

3. This opens a window; in that window:

   - Set the **en: Auto processing mode** toggle switch to **Enabled** if you want to enable automatic analysis of traffic.
   - Set the **en: Auto processing mode** toggle switch to **Disabled** if you want to disable automatic analysis of traffic.

4. Click **Save**.

Automatic analysis of traffic is enabled or disabled.

Starting traffic replay manually

If automatic analysis of traffic is enabled, you cannot start a replay of traffic manually.

To start traffic replay manually:

1. Select the **Retrospective traffic analysis** section in the application web interface.

   This opens the table of PCAP files.

2. In the table, select the traffic file that you want to replay.

   This opens a window containing information about the PCAP file.

3. Click **en: Play** ▶.

The replay of traffic starts.

Clearing traffic analysis results

During the clearing process, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform deletes all data obtained as a result of traffic analysis. For a complete list of data generated by traffic analysis, see the *Retrospective analysis of traffic* section.

To clear traffic analysis results:

1. Select the **Retrospective traffic analysis** section in the application web interface.

   This opens the table of PCAP files.

2. Click **en: Clear scan results**.

The clearing of traffic analysis results is initiated.

The **en: Clear scan results** button is disabled while the clearing procedure is in progress. After the procedure is completing, the button becomes available again. The clearing can take up to 10 minutes.

Getting an authentication token for PCAP file upload automation

Getting an authentication token involves the following steps:

1. Creating a connector

   Users need the **Administrator** role to be able to create a connector.

2. Getting a token

To create a connector to get an authentication token:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Connectors** subsection.
3. On the **Connectors** tab, open the details area by clicking **Add connector**.
4. Configure the general general settings of the connector:
   a. In the **Connector type** drop-down list, select **Generic**.
   b. In the **Connector name** field, enter a name for the connector.
   c. In the **Connector certificate access password** field, enter the password that will be used to encrypt the certificate in the communication data package of the connector.
   d. In the **Password** field, enter the password you specified at step c.

e. In the **Server address** field, enter the address of the Central Node server that you intend to use for retrospective traffic analysis.

The connector uses the specified address to connect to this Central Node.

f. In the **Connector deployment node** field, enter the IP address of the computer that will host the connector.

You can use any computer that has network connectivity with the Central Node server (including servers on which application components are installed), or the Central Node server itself.

g. Select the user that the third-party system will use to connect to the application through the connector. You must specify the name of one of the application users.

5. Enter a connector description if necessary.

6. Click **Save**.

The connector is created.

After saving the connector, the communication data package is saved in downloads folder of your browser. It contains the public key of the Central Node certificate, the certificate with the private key issued for the connector, and the metadata.json file that contains the configuration data for the connector.

To get an authentication token:

1. Start the command line interpreter.

2. Extract the Central Node certificate key and the private key certificate issued for the connector by running the following commands:

```
openssl pkcs12 -in certificates.pfx -clcerts -nokeys -out certificate.crt
openssl pkcs12 -in certificates.pfx -nocerts -nodes -out private.key
```

3. Make sure to record the value of the serverURI field from the metadata.json file in any convenient way for future use.

4. Create a request to run the following command:

```
curl -k -X POST "<serverURI from the metadata.json file>/auth/v4/token?
grant_type=certificate" --cert <certificate name>.crt --key <key name>.key
```

After the successful execution of the command, the following response is returned:

```
{
"access_token": "access-token1*****",
"token_type": "bearer",
"expires_in": 60,
"refresh_token": "refresh-token2*****"
}
```

The authentication token is contained in the access_token field.

For details, refer to the documentation describing requests for actions with the authentication token.

An authentication token is received.

Creating a list of passwords for archives

The application does not scan password-protected archives. You can create a list of the most frequently encountered passwords for archives that are used when exchanging files within your organization. If you do so, the application will try passwords from the list when scanning an archive. If one of the passwords match, the archive will be unlocked and scanned.

The list of passwords set in application settings is also transmitted to the server with the Sandbox component.

To create a list of archive passwords:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Passwords for archives** subsection.
2. In the **Passwords for archives** field, enter the passwords that the application will use for password-protected archives.

   Enter each password on a new line. You can enter up to 50 passwords.
3. Click **Apply**.

   The list of passwords for archives will be created. When scanning PDF files and files of Microsoft Word, Excel®, and PowerPoint® that are password protected, the application will use the passwords from the defined list.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of passwords for archives, but cannot edit it.

Users with the **Security officer** role do not have access to this section of the web interface.

Managing Central Node or Sensor server information

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view information about servers with the Central Node and Sensor components.

Information about servers with the Central Node or Sensor components is displayed in the **Sensor servers** of the application web interface window.

This section displays cards of components (on the left) and cards of network interfaces detected on these components (to the right of each component).

Above the card of the Sensor component is the card of the Central Node component to which the Sensor is connected.

If the Central Node component is deployed with Embedded Sensor, the name of that Sensor component is displayed the card as Embedded Sensor.

The network interface card displays the following information:

- Network interface name
- MAC address of the network interface
- IP address of the network interface
- Network interface bandwidth

If a monitoring point has been added to the network interface, the following information about the monitoring point is displayed in the card of the network interface:

- Monitoring point name.
- **Technology mode** is the state of the technology inheritance functionality. It can be **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

You can view details of the Central Node and Sensor components and the network interfaces discovered on these components.

To view component or network interface details:

Click its card.

The **Settings** tab for the Central Node and Sensor components displays the following information:

- **Status** is the current status of the component indicated by an icon and text description.
- **Node type** indicates the application component: **Server** (Central Node component) or **Sensor** (Sensor component).
- **Disk space currently used by the application** is the disk space occupied by application files. Includes installed files and files created by the application in the course of its operation.
- **Maximum disk space that can be used by the application** is the disk space that can be occupied by application files. Includes installed files and the sum total of all space limits configured in data storage rules. This value may not exceed the amount of available disk space.
- **Occupied on disk** is the disk space used by all files. Includes application files, operating system files, and files of other applications. The space is calculated on the disk that contains the /var directory in the file system of the component.
- **Free disk space** is the disk space that is not used by files. The space is calculated on the disk that contains the /var directory in the file system of the component.
- **Total disk space** is the total volume of disk space on the drive that contains the /var directory in the file system of the component.
- **BPF filtering** indicates whether filtering using the Berkeley Packet Filter (BPF) technology based on address parameters in network packets is enabled or disabled.

- **External storage for traffic dump files** indicates the connection status of the external storage. The following statuses may be displayed: **Connected**, **Not connected**.
- **Retention rules** indicate current and maximum values of size, number of items, and storage duration of application data.

For the Sensor component, in addition to the **Settings** tab, the **External storage**, **Other**, **ICAP integration**, **POP3 integration**, and **SMTP integration** tabs are also displayed.

- The **External storage** tab displays information about the configuration of the external storage for mirrored SPAN traffic.
- On the **Other** tab, the following information is displayed:
  - Maximum size of scanned file is the current limit on the size of files that can be scanned by the component.
  - Dump HTTP body indicates whether HTTP body content dumping is enabled or disabled.
- The **ICAP Integration** tab displays the settings of integration with a proxy server via ICAP.
- The **POP3 Integration** tab displays the POP3 mail server integration settings.
- The **SMTP Integration** tab displays the SMTP mail server integration settings.

For a network interface that does not have a monitoring point added, the following information is displayed in the details area:

- **Network interface** is the name of the network interface in the operating system.
- **Connection** is the icon indicating that a network cable is connected to the Ethernet port of the network interface:
  - – the network cable is connected.
  - – the network cable is disconnected.

  The icon blinks when the Ethernet port indication mode is enabled.
- **MAC address** is the MAC address of the network interface.
- **IP address** is the IP address of the network interface. If multiple IP addresses are found on the network interface, a maximum of 16 IP addresses are displayed in the details area.

If a monitoring point has been added to the network interface, the following information is displayed in the card of the network interface:

- **Status** is the current status of the monitoring point indicated by an icon and a text description:
  - *OK*. The monitoring point is available.
  - *Switchover*. The operating mode of the monitoring point is being changed.
  - *Error*. An error was detected when switching over the operating mode of the monitoring point.

- **Connection** is the icon indicating that a network cable is connected to the Ethernet port of the network interface:
  - – the network cable is connected.
  - – the network cable is disconnected.

  The icon blinks when the Ethernet port indication mode is enabled.
- **Network interface** is the name of the network interface in the operating system.
- **Mode** is the current mode of the monitoring point:
  - *Enabled*.
  - *Disabled*.
- On the **Settings** tab:
  - The **Inheritance of technologies** indicates whether inheritance of technologies is enabled or disabled for the server.
  - **MAC address** is the MAC address of the network interface.
  - **IP address** is the IP address of the network interface.

Viewing Central Node settings

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view Central Node server and PCN settings in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.

The server settings are located in the **Settings** section of the web interface window. In this section, you can view the following information:

- **Users**:
  - **Users**—List of user accounts
  - **Active Directory integration**—Active Directory integration settings.
  - **Integration with OSMP**—Settings for the integration with the Open Single Management Platform.
- **Retrospective traffic analysis**—PCAP file storage settings for retrospective analysis of traffic. This section is displayed in the menu of the Central Node component deployed for retrospective analysis of traffic.
- **Database update**—Database update.
- **Monitoring**—Maximum allowed hard drive space usage for Central Node and Sensor servers.
- **SNMP**—SNMP connection settings.
- **Authentication policies**—Authentication policy settings.

- **Certificates**—Status of server certificates and computers with the Endpoint Agent component.
- **Endpoint Agents**—Application functionality available when integrating with the Endpoint Agent component for scanning files in Sandbox.
  - **Receiving files for scanning in Sandbox**—Reception of files from Endpoint Agent computers to be scanned in Sandbox.
  - **Activity indicators**—Indicators of activity of the Endpoint Agent component for scanning files in Sandbox.
  - **Remove inactive hosts automatically**—Automatic removal of inactive hosts from the Endpoint Agents table for scanning files in Sandbox.
- **Date and time**—Server date and time settings.
- **ICAP traffic scanning**—Settings of integration with a proxy server via ICAP.
- **Connection servers**—Servers that act as integration servers for the Endpoint Agent component.
- **Connectors**—Connector settings.
- **Secrets**—Settings of secrets.
- **Event types**—Settings of event types.
- **Risk types**—Settings of risk types.
- **KSN/KPSN and MDR**—Settings for participation in Kaspersky Security Network and Kaspersky Private Security Network and enabling the MDR integration.
- **KPSN reputation database**—Settings for using the KPSN reputation database.
- **Notifications**—Settings for sending notifications.
- **SIEM system**—Settings for integration with a SIEM system.
- **VIP status**—List of rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts.
- **Exclusions**—List of allowed objects and list of exclusions from IDS rules.
- **Network settings**—Settings for the network interface parameters.
- **Allow rules**—Rules for controlling the interactions of devices on the network.
- **Services**—Detection of access to cloud services by employees of the organization.
- **Passwords for archives**—List of passwords for archives.
- **License**—State of the license key.

Viewing the table of servers with the Sandbox component

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

The table of servers with the Sandbox component is located in the **Sandbox servers** section, on the **Servers** tab of the application web interface window.

The **Certificate fingerprint** field displays the fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.

The **Server list** table contains the following information:

- **IP and name**—IP address or fully qualified domain name of the server with the Sandbox component.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Certificate fingerprint of the server with the Sandbox component.
- **Authorization**—Status of the request to connect to the Sandbox component.
- **Status**—Status of the connection to the Sandbox component.

Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view the table of servers with the Sandbox component.

Viewing the settings of the set of operating systems used for scanning objects in Sandbox

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the settings of a set of operating systems used as the basis for creating tasks for scanning objects by the Sandbox component. The Sandbox server must have virtual machines installed that match the selected set.

Information about the settings of the set of operating systems for scanning objects in Sandbox is located in the **Sandbox servers** section, on the **Settings** tab of the application web interface window.

Sets of operating systems on which the Sandbox component can scan objects are displayed under **OS set**.

Operating systems that are part of the selected set are displayed under **Set composition**.

Viewing the table of external systems

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the table of external systems.

The table of external systems is in the **External systems** section of the application web interface window.

The **Certificate fingerprint** field displays the fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the Central Node server.

The **Server list** table contains the following information:

- **Sensor**—IP address or domain name of the external system server.
- **Type**—Type of external system (mail sensor or other system).
- **Name**—Name of the integrated external system that is not a mail sensor.

  A dash is displayed in this column for a mail sensor.
- **ID**—ID of the external system.
- **Certificate fingerprint**—Fingerprint of the TLS certificate of the server with the external system used to establish an encrypted connection with the Central Node server.

  The certificate fingerprint of the server with the Central Node component is displayed in the upper part of the window in the **Certificate fingerprint** field.
- **State**—State of the integration request.

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles cannot view the table of external systems.

Managing user-defined Sandbox rules

User-defined Sandbox rules for file and URL scanning allow sending objects to be scanned in custom virtual machines. If no rules are added, objects are not scanned in custom virtual machines. To send objects for scanning in preset virtual machines, you do not need to create any rules. By default, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform sends objects that need to be scanned for scanning.

Rule creation is available only if custom virtual machines exist.

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Administrator** roles can create rules for scanning files and URLs, edit, delete, enable or disable rules. File scanning rules can also be imported and exported.

In distributed solution mode, you must create rules for scanning files in custom virtual machines on each PCN and SCN server from which you want to send files for scanning.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of rules. Users with the **Security officer** role cannot view this section.

Viewing the table of user-defined Sandbox rules

To view the table of user-defined Sandbox rules:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** or **URLs** tab.

   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.

The table of user-defined rules for file scanning contains the following information:

- **Created** is the rule creation time.
- **Virtual machine** is the name of the virtual machine to which files are sent for scanning.
- **Mask** is the mask of files sent for scanning.
- **Mask exclusion** is the mask of files that are excluded from scanning.
- **File category** are categories of files sent for scanning.
- **State** is the state of the rule. It can have the values **Enabled** and **Disabled**.

The table of user-defined URL scanning rules contains the following information:

- **Created** is the rule creation time.
- **Virtual machine** is the name of the virtual machine to which files are sent for scanning.
- **State** is the state of the rule. It can have the values **Enabled** and **Disabled**.

Configuring the Sandbox rule table display

You can show or hide columns and change the order of columns in the table.

To configure the table display:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** or **URLs** tab.

   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. In the heading part of the table, click .

   This opens the **Customize table** window.
4. If you want to show a column in the table, select the check box next to the name of the parameter that you want displayed in the table.

   If you want to hide a parameter in the table, clear the check box.

   > At least one check box must be selected.
5. If you want to change the order of columns in the table, move the mouse cursor to the row with the relevant parameter, click and move the row to its new place.
6. If you want to restore default table display settings, click **Default**.
7. Click **Apply**.

The rule table display is configured.

Filtering and searching Sandbox rules

To filter or search for Sandbox rules by required criteria:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** or **URLs** tab.

3. Depending on the filtering criterion, do the following:

- **By creation time**

  a. Click the **Created** link to open the filter settings window.

  b. Select one of the following options:

  - **Any time** if you want the table to display rules created at any time.
  - **Last hour** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the last hour in the table.
  - **Last day** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the last day in the table.
  - **Custom range** if you want the application to display the rules that were created during the period you specify in the table.

  c. If you selected **Custom range**, select the start and end dates for the period and click **Apply**.

- **By virtual machine name**

  a. Click **Virtual machine** to open the filtering settings window.

  b. Enter one or more characters of the virtual machine name.

  c. Click **Apply**.

The table displays only rules that match the specified criteria.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a Sandbox rule filter

To clear the Sandbox rule filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** or **URLs** tab.
3. Click to the right of that column heading of the rule table for which you want to clear filtering criteria.

   If you want to clear multiple filter conditions, take steps to clear each filter condition individually.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table displays only rules that match the specified criteria.

Viewing the information of a user-defined Sandbox rule

To view the information of a user-defined Sandbox rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** or **URLs** tab.
3. Select the rule for which you want to view information.

   This opens a window containing information about the rule.

The window with information about the user-defined file scanning rule contains the following information:

- **State** is the state of the prevention rule.
- **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which files are scanned in accordance with this rule.
- **Mask** is the mask of files sent for scanning.
- **Mask exclusion** is the mask of files that are excluded from scanning.
- **File category** are categories of files that are sent for scanning.
- **File size** is the size of the files being scanned.

The window with information about the user-defined URL scanning rule contains the following information:

- **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which URLs are scanned.
- **State** is the state of the prevention rule.

Creating a user-defined Sandbox rule for scanning files

To add a user-defined Sandbox rule for file scanning:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** tab.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Select **Create rule**.
   This opens the rule creation window.

5. Configure the following settings:

   a. **State** is the state of the prevention rule. Select the check box if you want to enable the rule.

   b. **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which files will be scanned in accordance with this rule.

      Only virtual machines with custom operating system images can be selected. These virtual machines must belong to the set of operating systems selected on the Central Node.

   c. Specify at least one of the values: mask or file category. If you fill in all the fields, the rule is triggered for files that match the category and size conditions or mask and size conditions, and are not exclusions.

      - **Mask** is the mask of files that you want to send for scanning. You can specify multiple values.

        To specify a mask, you can use the * and ? wildcard characters. Other wildcard characters are not supported.

      - **Mask exclusion** is the mask of files that must be excluded from scanning. You can specify multiple values.

        To specify an exclusion mask, you can use the * and ? wildcard characters. Other wildcard characters are not supported.

      - **File category** are categories of files that you want to send for scanning. You can specify multiple categories.

        You can view the full list of extensions for each category in the List of extensions for file categories section.

      - **File size** is the size of the files being scanned.

      - If you want to set multiple ranges, click **Add file size**.

6. Click **Add**.

The rule is created.

If you want to send an archive for scanning, you must take into account the special considerations involved in scanning archives.

Archives are scanned as follows:

1. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform unpacks the archive.
2. Files from the archive that match the rule are sent for scanning.

Files with the MSI extension are scanned in the same way as archives.

Creating a user-defined Sandbox rule for URL scanning

To add a user-defined Sandbox rule for URL scanning:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **URLs** tab.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Select **Create rule**.

   This opens the rule creation window.
5. Configure the following settings:

   a. **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which URLs will be scanned.

   Only virtual machines with custom operating system images can be selected. These virtual machines must belong to the set of operating systems selected on the Central Node.

   b. **State** is the state of the prevention rule. Select the check box if you want to enable the rule.
6. Click **Add**.

The rule is created.

Copying a user-defined Sandbox rule

To copy a user-defined Sandbox rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** or **URLs** tab.
3. Select the relevant rule.
4. In the rule window, click **Duplicate**.

The rule is copied with all settings. You can change the values of settings if necessary.

Importing user-defined Sandbox rules for file scanning

To import user-defined Sandbox rules for file scanning:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** tab.

3. Click **Add**.
4. Select **Import rules**.
5. This opens the file upload window.
6. Select the file that you want to import.
7. Click **Open**.

The file is imported.

Editing a user-defined Sandbox rule

To edit a user-defined Sandbox rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** or **URLs** tab.

   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. Select a rule.

This opens the rule editing window.

You can edit the following fields:

- In the user-defined Sandbox rules for scanning files:
  - **State** is the state of the prevention rule. Select the check box if you want to enable the rule.
  - **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which files will be scanned in accordance with this rule.

    Only virtual machines with custom operating system images can be selected. These virtual machines must belong to the set of operating systems selected on the Central Node.
  - Specify at least one of the values: mask or file category. If you fill in all the fields, the rule is triggered for files that match the category and size conditions or mask and size conditions, and are not exclusions.
    - **Mask** is the mask of files that you want to send for scanning. You can specify multiple values.

      To specify a mask, you can use the * and ? wildcard characters. Other wildcard characters are not supported.
    - **Mask exclusion** is the mask of files that must be excluded from scanning. You can specify multiple values.

      To specify an exclusion mask, you can use the * and ? wildcard characters. Other wildcard characters are not supported.
    - **File category** are categories of files that you want to send for scanning. You can specify multiple categories.

      You can view the full list of extensions for each category in the List of extensions for file categories section.

- **File size** is the size of the files being scanned.

  If you want to set multiple ranges, click **Add file size**.

- In the user-defined Sandbox rules for scanning URLs:

  - **Virtual machine** is the virtual machine on which URLs will be scanned.

    Only virtual machines with custom operating system images can be selected. These virtual machines must belong to the set of operating systems selected on the Central Node.

  - **State** is the state of the prevention rule. Select the check box if you want to enable the rule.

Enabling or disabling user-disabling Sandbox rules

To enable or disable a Sandbox rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** or **URLs** tab.

   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. In the row with the relevant rule, select or clear the check box in the **State** column.

The rule is enabled or disabled.

To enable or disable the use of all or multiple Sandbox rules:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** or **URLs** tab.

   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. Select the check boxes on the left of the rules whose use you want to enable or disable.

   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.

   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.
4. Click **Enable** or **Disable** to enable or disable selected rules.

Selected rules are enabled or disabled.

Exporting user-defined Sandbox rules for file scanning

To export user-defined Sandbox rules for object scanning:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** tab.
3. Click **Export**.

The rules file is saved to your local computer. The file is downloaded in the JSON format.

Deleting user-defined Sandbox rules

Users with the **Senior security officer** role can delete one or more user-defined Sandbox rules, or all rules at the same time.

To delete a user-defined Sandbox rule:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** or **URLs** tab.
   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. Select the rule that you want to delete.
   This opens a window containing information about the rule.
4. Click **Delete**.
   This opens the action confirmation window.
5. Click **Yes**.

The rule is deleted.

To delete all or multiple user-defined Sandbox rules:

1. In the window of the application web interface, select the **Custom rules** section, **Sandbox** subsection.
2. Open the **Files** or **URLs** tab.
   The table of user-defined Sandbox rules for file or URL scanning is displayed.
3. Select the check boxes on the left of the rules that you want to delete.
   You can select all rules by selecting the check box in the row containing the headers of columns.
   A control panel appears in the lower part of the window.

4. Click **Delete**.

   This opens the action confirmation window.

5. Click **Yes**.

   The selected rules will be deleted.

List of extensions for file categories

Extensions for file categories are listed in the table below.

Extensions for file categories

Category	Extensions
1C	.epf, .ert, .erf, .cf, .dt, .deb, .bsl, .os, .ertx, .xls, .xml, .html, .txt, .cfu, .rptdesign, .xdt, .xslt, .wsdl
Adobe Flash Player	.swf, .fla, .flv, .f4v, .f4p, .f4a, .f4b, .mxml, .as, .asc, .ascs, .asv, .fxp, .fxpl, .xfl, .swc, .cfx, .spl, .dcr, .dir, .dxr, .aam, .swz
Java	.jar, .class, .war, .ear, .jad, .jnlp, .ser, .jsp, .jspx, .properties, .policy
Html	.html, .htm, .shtml, .xhtml, .xml, .svg, .mathml, .rss, .atom, .json, .mht, .mhtml, .webarchive
Network packet	.pcap, .pcapng, .cap, .netcap, .etl, .erf, .pkts, .pkt, .tcpdump, .snoop, .ngc, .dump, .cat, .smb, .vpcap, .dmp, .shb, .npl, .nfcapd, .wcap, .arpd, .pc, .tr1, .tr2, .trace
SAP	.abap, .adt, .bak, .cct, .cdp, .cpf, .dsc, .erd, .glo, .grc, .lis, .log, .lsa, .msg, .olap, .pgm, .prd, .sap, .sd, .se, .so, .spf, .tpz, .trc, .trex, .ttx, .wri, .xlf
XML	.xml, .xsl, .xslt, .rdf, .rss, .opf, .svg, .wsdl, .xhtml, .xjb, .xmi, .xpl, .xsl-fo, .xquery, .xsd, .dtd, .xht, .atom, .mathml, .mml, .plist, .xul, .fodt, .fo, .mxf, .xspf, .gpx, .unity, .ac, .ad, .aw, .ccxml, .csd, .dms, .epub, .fxml, .glb, .glTF, .glTF-Binary, .gml, .iif, .imdi, .jelly, .kml, .mrc, .msh, .mshxml, .mtl, .nib, .nws, .nzb, .osdx, .owl, .pbix, .plistxml, .ptx, .qti, .rdfxml, .rl, .rng, .ros, .rpj, .scml, .scxml, .shex, .sketch, .soap, .srdf, .srx
Archive	.snb, .apk, .mht, .crx, .dd, .r01, .mpkg, .pup, .tbz, .ace, .arj, .bin, .cab, .cbr, .deb, .exe, .gzip, .one, .pak, .pkg, .ppt, .rpm, .sh, .sib, .sis, .sisx, .sit, .sitx, .spl, .tar-gz, .xar, .zipx, .zip, .rar, .7z, .tar, .gz, .bz2, .xz, .tgz, .tbz2, .txz, .z, .jar, .war, .ear, .iso, .img
Audio	.a52, .adt, .dct, .dss, .dvf, .iklax, .ivs, .rm, .rmvb, .8svx, .amb, .avr, .cdda, .cvs, .cvsd, .cvu, .dts, .dvms, .fap, .fssd, .gsrt, .hcom, .htk, .ima, .ircam, .maud, .nist, .paf, .prc, .pvf, .sd2, .smp, .snd, .sndr, .sndt, .sou, .sph, .spx, .tta, .txw, .vms, .voc, .vox, .w64, .wv, .wve, .ac3, .aob, .asf, .aud, .bin, .bwg, .cdr, .gpx, .ics, .m, .m3u, .mod, .mpp, .msc, .msv, .mts, .nkc, .ps, .sdf, .sib, .sln, .spl, .srt, .temp, .vb, .wave, .wm, .wpd, .xsb, .xwb, .mpc, .aac, .flac, .m4a, .mmf, .mp3, .ogg, .wav, .wma, .mid, .amr, .ape, .au, .caf, .gsm, .oma, .qcp, .vqf, .ra, .aif, .mp2, .m4p, .awb, .m4r, .ram, .asx, .mpga, .aiff, .koz, .m4b, .kar, .iff, .midi, .3ga, .opus, .aup, .xspf, .aifc, .rta, .cda, .m3u8, .mpa, .aa, .aax, .oga, .nfa, .adpcm, .cdo, .flp, .aimppl, .4mp, .mui
Video	.drc, .f4a, .f4b, .f4p, .gifv, .mng, .mp2, .mpe, .mpv, .nsv, .roq, .svi, .3gp2, .3gpp2, .asx, .bin, .dat, .drv, .gtp, .moov, .spl, .stl, .vcd, .vid, .wm, .yuv, .hevc, .m2v, .mjpeg, .wtv, .avi, .mpeg, .m4v, .mov, .mp4, .wmv, .mpg, .swf, .3gp, .3g2, .mkv, .ogv, .webm, .asf, .ts, .mxf, .rm, .thp, .mts, .rmvb, .f4v, .mod, .vob, .h264, .flv, .3gpp, .divx, .qt, .amv, .dvsd, .m2ts, .ifo, .mswmm, .srt, .cpi, .wlmp, .vpj, .ced, .vep, .veg, .264, .dav, .pds, .dir, .arf, .mepx, .xesc, .bik, .nfv, .tvs, .imoviemobile, .rcproject, .esp3, .vproj, .aep, .camproj, .camrec, .cmproj, .cmrec, .modd, .mproj, .osp, .trec, .g64, .vro, .braw, .mse, .pz
Document	.sxi, .odg, .svg, .vsd, .eps, .cwk, .wp, .ott, .asp, .cdd, .cpp, .dotm, .gpx, .indd, .kdc, .kml, .mdb, .mdf, .mso, .one, .pkg, .pl, .pot, .potm, .potx, .ppsm, .ps, .sdf, .sgml, .sldm, .xar, .xlt, .xltm, .xltx, .pdf, .txt, .doc, .odt, .xps, .chm, .rtf, .sxw, .docx, .wpd, .wps, .docm, .hwp, .pub, .xml, .log, .oxps, .vnt, .dot, .pages, .m3u, .dotx, .shs, .msg, .odm, .pmd, .vmg, .eml, .tex, .wp5, .csk, .fdxt, .adoc, .afpub, .tcr, .acsm, .opf, .mbp, .apnx, .cbt, .vbk, .kfx, .lrf, .snb, .odp, .ppt, .pptx, .pps, .ppsx, .pptm, .key, .flipchart, .epub, .mobi, .azw, .azw3, .fb2, .djvu, .cbz, .cbr, .ibooks, .lit, .pdb, .prc, .tr2, .tr3, .ods, .xls, .xlsx, .csv, .wks, .xlsm, .xlsb, .xlr, .wk3, .numbers
Image	.dib, .pdf, .mrw, .icns, .wdp, .fig, .epsf, .cur, .erf, .fts, .heif, .jfif, .jpe, .jps, .mng, .pam, .pbm, .pes, .pfm, .picon, .pnm, .ppm, .ras, .rw2, .sgi, .x3f, .xbm, .xpm, .xwd, .art, .arw, .bmp, .cr2, .crw, .dcm, .dds, .djvu, .dng, .exr, .fpx, .gif, .ico, .jpg, .jp2, .jpeg, .nef, .orf, .pcd, .pcx, .pef, .pgm, .pict, .png, .psd, .raf, .sfw, .tga, .tiff, .wbmp, .xcf, .yuv, .kdc, .pct, .sr2, .tif, .hdr, .webp, .nrw, .plist, .ithmb, .thm, .pspimage, .mac, .heic, .rwl, .flif, .avif, .raw, .pictclipping, .jxr, .emf, .eps, .svg, .wpg, .ai, .svgz, .wmf, .odg, .cdr, .vsd, .std, .pd, .emz, .mix, .otg, .cvs, .gvdesign
Android executable file	.apk, .aab, .dex, .so, .jar, .aar, .class, .obb, .odex, .vdex, .vmx, .vmem, .img
Windows executable file	.cgi, .ds, .air, .cpp, .gadget, .hta, .jar, .msu, .paf.exe, .pwz, .thm, .vbs, .exe, .msi, .bat, .cmd, .com, .pif, .scr, .vb, .vbe, .js, .jse, .ws, .wsf, .wsh, .ps1, .psm1, .psd1, .ps1xml, .psc1, .scf, .lnk

Category	Extensions
Executable file	.rc, .p, .d, .asc, .bas, .cbl, .vbp, .iwb, .pb, .yml, .pika, .s19, .xt, .suo, .fsproj, .pbj, .pbxuser, .pyw, .xq, .cd, .sb, .sb2, .ise, .kv, .cod, .nib, .pwn, .b, .hpp, .apa, .bet, .bluej, .erb, .fxc, .m4, .owl, .sma, .trx, .vc, .def, .xap, .o, .pas, .qpr, .resources, .vbproj, .vbx, .xib, .md, .ccc, .wwp, .ss, .asf, .asm, .asp, .cfm, .dot, .dtd, .fla, .ged, .gv, .icl, .jse, .lua, .m, .mb, .mdf, .mod, .msp, .obj, .pkg, .po, .pot, .pub, .rss, .sln, .so, .vbe, .vbs, .vc4, .vcproj, .vcxproj, .wsc, .xcodeproj, .xsd, .c, .class, .cpp, .cs, .css, .go, .h, .htaccess, .html, .java, .json, .kml, .sql, .swift, .vb, .yaml, .sh, .bat, .cmd, .ps1, .py, .pl, .rb, .js, .ts, .php, .jsp, .aspx, .cgi, .jar
Disk image	.img, .cue, .dsk, .vmdk, .vhd, .vhdx, .tc, .crypt, .dmgpart, .sparsebundle, .xva, .cif, .pqi, .udf, .fvd, .arc, .fcd, .gi, .giz, .ima, .udif, .vdi, .vim, .wim, .b5t, .b6t, .bin, .bwi, .bwt, .ccd, .cdi, .cdr, .dmg, .i00, .i01, .i02, .iso, .isz, .md0, .md1, .md2, .mdf, .mds, .nrg, .pdi, .po, .rom, .sub, .tib, .toast, .vc4, .vcd
Windows event log	.evt, .evtx, .log, .txt, .xml
Windows registry file	.reg, .dat, .pol, .hiv, .srd
Font	.bin, .ps, .sfd, .fnt, .afm, .ttf, .otf, .woff, .woff2, .eot, .svg, .dfont, .pfa, .pfb, .pfm, .fon, .suit, .bdf, .pcf, .snf, .ufo, .lib, .cff
Database file	.bup, .csv, .json, .xml, .myi, .sqlplan, .abs, .abx, .ac, .accdb, .accdc, .accde, .accdr, .accdt, .accdw, .accft, .adb, .ade, .adf, .adn, .adp, .alf, .anb, .approj, .aq, .ask, .bacpac, .bak, .btr, .caf, .cat, .cdb, .chck, .ckp, .cma, .cpd, .crypt, .dab, .dacpac, .dad, .daschema, .db, .db-journal, .db-shm, .db-wal, .db2, .db3, .dbc, .dbf, .dbs, .dbt, .dbv, .dbx, .dcb, .dct, .dcx, .ddl, .dlis, .dp1, .dqy, .dsk, .dsn, .dtsx, .dxl, .eco, .ecx, .edb, .epim, .erx, .exb, .fcd, .fdb, .fic, .frm, .ftb, .gdb, .grdb, .gwi, .hdb, .his, .ib, .ibd, .icdb, .idb, .ihx, .ipj, .itdb, .itw, .jet, .jtx, .kdb, .lgc, .lwx, .maf, .maq, .mar, .marshal, .mas, .mav, .maw, .mdb, .mdbhtml, .mdf, .mdn, .mdt, .mfd, .mpd, .mrg, .mud, .mwb, .myd, .ndf, .nnt, .ns2, .ns3, .ns4, .nsf, .nv2, .nwdb, .nyf, .odb, .odl, .oqy, .ora, .orx, .owc, .pan, .pdb, .pdm, .pnz, .pqa, .pvoc, .qry, .qvd, .rbf, .rctd, .realm, .rod, .rsd, .sbf, .scx, .sdb, .sdc, .sdf, .sis, .spq, .sql, .sqlite, .sqlite3, .sqlitedb, .te, .temx, .tmd, .tps, .trc, .trm, .tvdb, .udb, .udl, .vis, .vvv, .wdb, .wmdb, .wrk, .xdb, .xld, .xmlff

Preparing data for GosSOPKA

You can use the kata-alert-export utility to get NDR detection and event data in a format that is valid for import into the GosSOPKA system. The utility is included in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform distribution kit.

For each NDR detection or event, the utility creates a separate XML 1.0 file (UTF-8) with information about this detection or event for the specified period.

Preparing detection data for GosSOPKA

To prepare detection data that you want to send to GosSOPKA, you just need to run the utility.

Preparing NDR event data for GosSOPKA

Preparing NDR event data that you want to send to the GosSOPKA system involves the following steps:

1. Creating a connector in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.

   Create a connector of the Generic type and save the communication data package for it.

   If you are using the distributed solution or multitenancy mode, at step 4c of the instructions for creating a connector, you need to specify the IP address of the PCN or SCN server from which you want to receive data. If you want to receive data from multiple Central Node servers, you must create a connector for each of these servers.

   If the Central Node component is deployed as a cluster, you can enter the IP address of any server in the cluster when creating a connector.

2. Running the utility.

   Run the utility on the Central Node server whose IP address you specified when creating the connector at step 4c of the instructions for creating a connector.

Special considerations involved in recording NDR detection and event data

Aggregated Alerts is specified as the scan technology for alerts that are created based on events registered as a result of an EXT scan.

Running the utility for preparing data for GosSOPKA

To run the utility for preparing data for GosSOPKA:

1. Place the gossopka_alert_exporter.tar.gz archive on the Central Node server from which you want to get data.
2. Log in to the management console of the relevant Central Node server over SSH or through a terminal.
3. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
4. In the application administrator menu, select **Technical Support Mode**.
5. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
6. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **ENTER**.
7. Run the following command:

   ```
   sudo -i
   ```
8. Unpack the archive of the utility:

   ```
   tar -xzvf gossopka_alert_exporter.tar.gz
   ```
9. If you want to get alert information, run the following command:

   ```
   python3 export_main.py -s <yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss> -b <yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss>
   ```
10. If you want to get NDR alert and event information, run the following command:

    ```
    python3 export_main.py -s <yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss> -b <yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss> -c <path to communication data package>
    ```

The utility is run.

You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

Utility command line option description

Required parameter	Parameter	Description
No	`--help`	Help page.
No	`-m <id>`	Vendor ID (module_id). The default value is `50`. Before running the utility, you need to contact the GosSOPKA center to get the up-to-date ID assigned to Kaspersky.
Yes	`-s <yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss>`	Start of the period for which you want to get information.
Yes	`-b <yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss>`	End of the period for which you want to get information.
No	`-o <path to directory>`	Path to the directory in which the files will be saved. The default is `/tmp`.

Required parameter	Parameter	Description
Yes, if you want to get NDR event data	`-c <name of communication data package, including the extension>`	The file name of the communication data package (including the extension) obtained when creating the connector.
Yes, if you want to get NDR event data	`-p <password of the communication data package>`	The password of the communication data package that you specified when creating the connector.
No	`-z <offset from UTC in minutes>`	Offset from the UTC time zone in minutes. The default is 180 (+3 hours).
Example command to run the utility with options: `python3 export_main.py -s 2025-01-01T00:00:00 -b 2025-05-23T00:00:00 -c test.zip -o /home/administrator/export`		

The utility places the following files in the selected directory:

- Alert<detection ID>.xml.
- Event<event ID>.xml.

A separate file is created for each detection or event. If the directory already contains a file with the same name, it is overwritten.

Sending notifications

Users with the **Administrator**, **Senior security officer**, or **Security officer** roles can configure forwarding of notifications to one or multiple email addresses.

You can create notifications about alerts and system health.

Notifications contain a link to the application web interface. Make sure that the name assigned to the Central Node server for use by DNS servers is correct and can be resolved by the DNS server. If the name is incorrect or if the DNS server cannot resolve it, the link to the web interface in the notification will not work.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the list of rules for sending notifications, the properties of a selected rule, and the mail server connection settings, but cannot edit them.

For notifications to be sent to an email address correctly, you must first configure the connection to the mail server. The connection must be configured by the **Administrator**.

Viewing the table of rules for sending notifications

Rules for sending notifications are displayed in the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection of the application web interface window.

The table of rules for sending notifications contains the following information:

- **Type** is the type of rule for sending notifications.

  The following types of rules are possible:

  - **Detections** is a rule for sending a notification about detections.
  - **Component health** is a rule for sending a notification about the operation of application components.
- **Subject**—Subject of the message containing the notification.
- **To**—Email addresses to which the notifications are sent.
- **State**—Status of the rule for sending a notification.

Creating a rule for sending notifications about detections

To create a rule for sending notifications about alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.

3. Click **Add**.

   This opens the **New rule** window.

4. In the **To** field, enter one or multiple email addresses to which you want to send notifications.

   You can enter several email addresses if you separate them with commas.

5. In the **Subject** field, enter the subject of the notification message.

6. If you want the application to insert the alert importance into the message subject, add the `%importance%` macro to the **Subject** field.

7. In the **Notification type** field, select **Detections**.

8. In the **Detection importance** drop-down list, select the minimum alert importance for which you want notifications to be sent.

   For example, you can configure forwarding of notifications for only alerts that have high importance, or for only those that have medium or high importance.

9. In the **Source or destination** field, enter an IP address and network mask if you want to send notifications about alerts associated with a specific source or destination IP address or subnet address.

10. In the **Email** field, enter an email address if you want to send notifications about alerts associated with a specific email sender or recipient address.

11. Under **Components**, select check boxes next to the names of one or multiple technologies if you want to send notifications about alerts generated by specific technologies.

12. Click **Add**.

The rule for sending notifications about alerts will be added to the list of rules. To send notifications to the specified email address, you must enable the notification rule. Notifications are sent once to each of the email addresses configured for this rule.

Users with the **Administrator** and **Security auditor** roles cannot create rules for sending alert notifications.

In distributed solution mode, you must create notifications separately for each subordinate server (*Secondary Central Node*, *SCN*).

Creating a rule for sending notifications about the operation of application components

To create a rule for sending notifications about the operation of application components:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.

2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.

3. Click **Add**.

   This opens the **New rule** window.

4. In the **To** field, enter one or multiple email addresses to which you want to send notifications.

   You can enter several email addresses if you separate them with commas.

5. In the **Subject** field, enter the subject of the notification message.

6. If you want the application to insert the alert importance into the message subject, add the `%importance%` macro to the **Subject** field.

7. In the **Notification type** field, select **Component health**.

8. Under **Components**, select check boxes next to the names of the application's functional areas for which you want to receive notifications.

9. Click **Add**.

The rule for sending notifications about the operation of application components is added to the list of rules. To send notifications to the specified email address, you must enable the notification rule. Notifications are sent once to each of the email addresses configured for this rule.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot create rules for sending notifications about application operation.

In distributed solution mode, notifications are configured separately for each subordinate server (*Secondary Central Node*, *SCN*).

Enabling and disabling a rule for sending notifications

To enable or disable a rule for sending notifications about alerts:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.

2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.

3. In the **State** column, enable or disable the rule for sending notifications using the toggle switch next to the rule.

The state of the rule for sending notifications about alerts will be modified.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot enable or disable notification rules.

Modifying a rule for sending notifications

To edit a rule for sending notifications:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. In the list of rules for sending notifications, select the rule that you want to modify.
   This opens the **Edit rule** window.
4. Make the relevant changes.
5. Click **Save**.

The rule for sending notifications will be modified.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot edit rules for sending notifications.

Deleting a rule for sending notifications

To delete a rule for sending notifications:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Select the check box to the left of the name of each rule that you want to delete.
   If you want to delete all rules, select the check box above the list.
4. Click **Delete** in the lower part of the window.
5. In the confirmation window, click **Yes**.

The selected rules will be deleted.

Users with the **Security auditor** role cannot delete rules for sending notifications.

Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules by rule type

To filter or search notification rules by rule type:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Click the ⬚ icon in the table of rules for sending notifications.
   This opens the filter configuration window.
4. Select one of the following options:
   - **All**.
   - **Alerts**.
   - **Component health**.

The table of notification forwarding rules will display only rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules based on the notification subject

To filter or search for notification rules by notification subject:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Click the **Subject** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Enter one or several characters of the notification subject.
5. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table of notification forwarding rules will display only rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules by email address

To filter or search for notification rules by destination email address:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Click the **To** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Enter one or several characters of the email address.
5. Click **Apply**.

The table of notification forwarding rules will display only rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Filtering and searching notification forwarding rules based on their status

To filter or search for notification rules by status:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Click the **State** link to open the filter configuration window.
4. Select one or several check boxes next to the values of statuses:
   - **Enabled**
   - **Disabled**
5. Click **Apply**.

The filter configuration window closes.

The table of notification forwarding rules will display only rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

You can use multiple filters at the same time.

Clearing a notification forwarding rule filter

To clear the notification rule filter for one or more filtering criteria:

1. In the main window of the application web interface, select the **Settings** section, **Notifications** subsection.
2. Go to the **Notification rules** tab.
3. Click to the right of the header of the column in the notification forwarding rules table for which you want to clear the filter conditions.

   If you want to clear several filter conditions, perform the necessary actions to clear each filter condition.

The selected filters are cleared.

The table of notification forwarding rules will display only rules that match the filter criteria you have set.

Managing logs

This section contains information about managing the logs of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

In the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface, you can manage the following logs:

- User activity log. Users with the **Administrator** role can manage the log. Users with the **Security auditor** role can download the log.
- User activity log for the NDR functionality. Users with the **Administrator** role can manage the log. Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the log.

Managing the application user activity log

Some user actions in the application web interface can cause errors in the operation of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. You can enable logging of user action information in the application web interface and if necessary, view the information by downloading log files.

Information about user actions in the web interface of the Sandbox component and the administrator menu of the Sensor component is recorded in the Sandbox and Sensor logs.

Enabling and disabling the recording of information in the activity log

To enable or disable the logging of information about user actions in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface to the activity log:

1. Select the **Logs** section, **User activity** subsection in the application web interface.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Set the **Event logging** toggle switch to the **Enabled** position if you want to enable the logging of information about user actions in the application web interface.
   - Set the **Event logging** toggle switch to the **Disabled** position if you want to disable the logging of information about user actions in the application web interface.

     This function is enabled by default.

Information about user actions is recorded in the user_actions.log file, which is stored on the Central Node server in the /data/storage/volumes/siem_proxy/log-user-actions/ directory. By default, records in this file are kept for 90 days, after which they are deleted.

To view the activity log records, you need to download the user_actions.log file.

You can configure the logging of information about user activity in the application web interface to a remote log. The remote log is saved on the server on which a SIEM system is installed. The settings of integration with the SIEM system must be configured to write to the remote log.

In distributed solution mode, information about user actions in the application web interface is recorded in the log of the same server for which the users are managing the web interface. Information about the actions of PCN server users that affect the settings of SCN servers is recorded in the PCN server log.

Users with the **Security auditor** role can only view the settings for logging information to the activity log.

Downloading the activity log file

To download the activity log file:

1. Select the **Logs** section, **User activity** subsection in the application web interface.
2. Click **Download**.

The file is saved to your local computer in your browser's downloads folder. The file is downloaded as a ZIP archive.

In distributed solution mode, you can download the log file only for the server which you are managing in its web interface.

Records in the application user activity log

The header of each message contains the following information:

- Format version.

  Current version number: `0`. Current field value: `CEF:0`.

- Vendor.

  Current field value: `AO Kaspersky Lab`.

- Application name.

  Current field value: `Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform`.

- Application version

  Current field value: 8.0.1.1.

- Event type.

  See the table below.

- Event name.

  See the table below.

- Event importance.

  Current field value: `Low`.

  Example:
  `CEF:0|AO Kaspersky Lab|Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform|8.0.1.1|tasks|Managing tasks|Low|`

All fields of the CEF message have the `"<key>=<value>"` format. The keys, as well as their values contained in a message, are presented in the table below.

Event type	Event name and description	Key and description of its value
alerts	User actions performed on alerts Operations with alerts.	• dvchost = <host name of the Central Node>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>. • cs1label = <user that the alert is assigned to>. • externalId = <alert ID>.
ep	Managing hosts with the Endpoint Agent component Operations with hosts on which the Endpoint Agent component is installed.	• dvchost = <host name of the Central Node>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>. • cs1label = <name of the host with the Endpoint Agent component>.
storage	Managing objects in Storage Operations with objects in Storage.	• dvchost = <host name of the Central Node>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>. • cs1label = <name of the file placed in the Storage>.
sensors	Managing the Sensor component Connecting the Sensor component to the Central Node server, modifying component settings.	• dvchost = <host name of the Central Node>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
sb	Configuring integration with the Sandbox component Connecting the Sandbox component to the Central Node server.	• dvchost = <host name of the Central Node>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
ex_integration	Configuring integration with external systems Configuring integration with external systems.	• dvchost = <host name of the Central Node>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
ksn_kpsn_mdr	Participation in KSN, KPSN and MDR Configuring participation in Kaspersky Security Network, enabling or disabling the usage of Kaspersky Private Security Network, and configuring integration with Kaspersky Managed Detection and Response.	• dvchost = <host name of the Central Node>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
yara	Managing YARA rules Operations with YARA rules.	• dvchost = <host name of the Central Node>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
ids	Managing IDS rules	• dvchost = <host name of the

Event type	Event name and description	Key and description of its value
	Operations with IDS rules.	Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`sb_rules`	`Managing Sandbox rules` Operations with Sandbox rules.	• `dvchost` = <host name of the Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`exclusions`	`Managing scan exclusions` Operations with scan exclusion rules.	• `dvchost` = <host name of the Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`network_isolation`	`Network isolation of Endpoint Agent hosts` Network isolation of Endpoint Agent hosts.	• `dvchost` = <host name of the Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`settings`	`Settings` Modifying Central Node server settings	• `dvchost` = <host name of the Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`vip`	`Managing rules for assigning the VIP status` Operations with rules for assigning the VIP status to alerts.	• `dvchost` = <host name of the Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`report`	`Managing reports` Operations with reports.	• `dvchost` = <host name of the Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>. • `cs1label` = <name of report or report template>.
`mt`	`Managing CN, PCN and SCN servers` Modifying the settings of Primary Central Node and Secondary Central Node servers in distributed solution and multitenancy mode.	• `dvchost` = <host name of the Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`user_account`	`Managing user accounts` Actions on user accounts.	• `dvchost` = <host name of the Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.

Event type	Event name and description	Key and description of its value
	`Count of unsuccessful authorization attempts exceeded` Failed authorization attempt limit exceeded.	• `cs1label` = <name of the user whose account was created or edited>. • `cn1` = <number of failed authorization attempts>.
`notifications`	`Sending notifications` Configuring email notifications.	• `dvchost` = <host name of the Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`license`	`License` Managing the license key.	• `dvchost` = <host name of the Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>.
`system_health`	`System health` Checking the health of application components.	• `dvchost` = <host name of the Central Node>. • `eventId` = <ID of the event>. • `rt` = <event date and time>. • `src` = <IP address of the user>. • `suser` = <user name>. • `cs1` = <event type>. • `cs1label` = <component object>. • `msg` = <check result>.

If an operation is performed on over 30 objects simultaneously, only one entry is logged for this operation. The entry includes the information about the operation and the number of objects on which it was performed.

Sensor user activity log.

Information about user actions in the administrator menu of the component is recorded in the Sensor user activity log (admin_menu.log).

You can download the Sensor user activity log file by following the instructions in the *Downloading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform logs* section. As a result of the steps of the instructions, an archive named collect--<archive download date>.tar.gz is placed in the directory of your choice. You can find the Sensor user activity log (admin_menu.log) inside this archive in the /var/log/kaspersky/admin_menu/ directory.

Records of user actions in the administrator menu of the Sensor component

Records in the log of user actions in the administrator menu of the Sensor component (admin_menu.log) are grouped by levels.

Records of the INFO level keep track of information about user actions in the administrator menu of the component.

Example of an event record at the INFO level:

```
June 18 20:45:46 1 admin-menu - INFO Menu item pressed label=[Example ...]
```

Records of the WARNING level keep track of information about events that occur as a result of actions recorded at the INFO level. Information at this level has the format of a CEF message.

The header of each message contains the following information:

- Format version.

  Current version number: `0`. Current field value: `CEF:0`.

- Vendor.

  Current field value: `AO Kaspersky Lab`.

- Application name.

  Current field value: `Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform`.

- Application version

  Current field value: 8.0.1.1.

- Event type.

  See the table below.

- Event name.

  See the table below.

- Event importance.

  Current field value: `Low`.

  Example of a message header:

  ```
  CEF:0|AO Kaspersky Lab|Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform|8.0.1.1|user_account|Managing user accounts|Low|
  ```

All fields of the CEF message have the `"<key>=<value>"` format. The keys, as well as their values contained in a message, are presented in the table below.

Event type	Event name and description	Key and description of its value
sensors	Managing the Sensor component Server management, modifying component settings.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Sensor component>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
settings	Settings Changing server date and time settings, managing logs.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Sensor component>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.
user_account	Managing user accounts Changing the password of the administrator account, starting and ending the user session, entering the Technical Support Mode.	• dvchost = <name of server with the Sensor component>. • eventId = <ID of the event>. • rt = <event date and time>. • src = <IP address of the user>. • suser = <user name>. • cs1 = <event type>.

Sandbox logs

The Sandbox component logs information of two types:

- The system log records detailed information about events in Sandbox.
- The user activity log records information about the actions of Sandbox users in the web interface.

You can download both the system log and the user activity log.

Downloading the Sandbox system log

Information in the Sandbox system log is stored as plain text. The data is stored for the last 7 days.

To download the Sandbox system log:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. In the **System logs** settings group, click the **Download** button.

   The download may start with some delay. Wait for the file to start downloading, do not refresh the page or click the **Download** button again. Downloading the Sandbox system log can take a long time.

   The file is saved to your local computer in your browser's downloads folder.

Downloading the Sandbox user activity log

The user activity log records information about the actions of users in the Sandbox web interface. By default, data in the log is kept for 90 days.

To download the Sandbox user activity log:

1. In the Sandbox web interface window, select the **Administration** section.
2. Under **User activity log**, click the **Download** button.

   The user_actions.log file is saved to your local computer in your browser's downloads folder.

Records in the application user activity log

Records in the Sandbox user activity log have the CEF format (CEF messages). By looking at a log record, you can understand which event occurred as a result of user actions.

Example of a record about installing a virtual machine image:

```
CEF:0|AO Kaspersky Lab|Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform (Sandbox)|8.0.0.1|vm|Managing virtual machines|Low|
dvs=<IP> deviceExternalId=ubuntu-server eventId=1965096788380487496 rt=Apr 25 2025 04:59:16 src=<IP> suser=admin
cs1=installing the default image cs1label=CentOS7_x64-1.0.0.19888
```

The example above contains three groups of fields:

- `CEF:0|AO Kaspersky Lab|Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform (Sandbox)|8.0.0.1|vm|Managing virtual machines|Low|` — header fields.
- `dvs=<IP> deviceExternalId=ubuntu-server eventId=1965096788380487496 rt=Apr 25 2025 04:59:16 src=<IP> suser=admin cs1=installing the default image` — fields of the CEF message body that are common to all records.
- `cs1label=CentOS7_x64-1.0.0.19888` — field specific to actions that have an object. For example, the object of the "installing a virtual machine image" action is a virtual machine image, and the `cs1label` field contains the name of this image.

Header fields

The header of each message contains the following information:

- Format version.

  Current version number: `0`. Current field value: `CEF:0`.
- Vendor.

  Current field value: `AO Kaspersky Lab`.

- Application name.
  Current field value: `Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform`.
- Application version
  Current field value: 8.0.0.1.
- Event type.
  Can contain one of the following values:
  - `user_account`
    Events related to Sandbox user accounts.
  - `settings`
    Events related to Sandbox settings.
  - `kata`
    Events related to the connection between Sandbox and Central Node.
  - `vm`
    Events related to virtual images of operating systems deployed in Sandbox.
- Name of the event specified in the header.
  Can contain one of the following values:
  - `Managing user accounts`
    Actions on user accounts. Belongs to the `user_account` type.
  - `Count of unsuccessful authorization attempts exceeded`
    Failed authorization attempt limit exceeded. Belongs to the `user_account` type.
  - `Settings`
    Editing Sandbox server settings Belongs to the `settings` type.
  - `Configuring integration with KATA Central Node`
    Configuring integration with Central Node. Belongs to the `kata` type.
  - `Managing virtual machines`
    Actions with virtual machines. Belongs to the `vm` type.
- Event importance.
  Current field value: `Low`.

Fields common for all events

Fields of the CEF message have the `"<key>=<value>"` format. Each CEF message contains the following fields:

- `dvs`

  IP address of the Sandbox server.

- `device external ID`

  Name of the Sandbox server.

- `eventId`

  Event ID.

- `rt`

  Event date and time.

- `src`

  IP address of the user that performed the action.

- `suser`

  Name of the user that performed the action.

- `cs1`

  Event (see the table below).

Special fields of events

Events and special fields

Event specified in the cs1 field	Special event fields
Managing user accounts	
`changing the administrator password`	`cs1label` Name of the user whose password was changed.
`log on`	`cs1label` Name of the user that was authorized.
`log off`	`cs1label` Name of the user that ended the session.
Count of unsuccessful authorization attempts exceeded	

`count of unsuccessful authorization attempts`	`cs1label`
	User name involved in the failed authorization attempt.
	`cn1`
	Number of failed authorization attempts.

Event specified in the cs1 field	Special event fields
Settings	
• assigning the server name to be used by DNS servers • configuring DNS settings • configuring settings of the management interface • configuring settings of the network interface for internet access of processed objects • configuring the route settings • configuring proxy server connection settings • configuring the date and time on the server • configuring the time zone on the server • configuring the synchronization with NTP servers	cs1label Name of the server whose settings were changed.
• saving the configuration • restoring the configuration	cs1label Name of the server whose settings were saved or restored.
• restarting the server • powering off the server	cs1label Name of the server that was restarted or powered off.
• downloading the logs • downloading the user actions log	cs1label Name of the server from which the log files were downloaded.
• selecting a database update source • updating database manually	cs1label Name of the server on which the anti-virus databases were updated or the update source was changed.
setting the maximum number of virtual machines	cs1label Number of virtual machines that was specified.
• enabling counting of unsuccessful authorization attempts • disabling counting of unsuccessful authorization attempts	cs1label Name of the server on which the count of unsuccessful authorization attempts was enabled or disabled.
modifying the counting period for unsuccessful authorization attempts	cs1label Name of the server on which the period for counting unsuccessful authorization attempts was changed. cn1 The period in minutes for counting unsuccessful authorization attempts.
changing user session lock time	cs1label Name of the server on which the maximum duration of user inactivity was changed. cn1 Maximum duration in minutes of an inactive user session.
Configuring integration with KATA Central Node	
• accepting connection to KATA Central Node • rejecting connection to KATA Central Node • removing connection to KATA Central Node	cs1label Fingerprint of the Central Node from which the connection request originated.

Event specified in the cs1 field	Special event fields
Managing virtual machines	
• importing the default image • deleting the default image • unpacking the default image	cs1label Name of the virtual machine image file being uploaded or deleted.
• installing the default image • deleting the virtual machine deployed from the default image • cancelling the default images installation	cs1label Name of the virtual machine image that was deployed, removed, or had its installation canceled.
• uploading ISO • removing ISO	cs1label Name of the ISO image that was uploaded or deleted.
• creating custom template • importing custom template • exporting custom template • enabling custom template • disabling custom template • stopping custom template • deleting custom template	cs1label Name of the custom virtual machine template that was created, imported, exported, enabled, disabled, stopped, or deleted.
• downloading manifest file • uploading debug symbols	No special fields.
• mounting ISO to custom template • unmounting ISO from custom template	cs1label Name of the custom virtual machine template to which the ISO image was mounted or from which the ISO image was unmounted. cs2label Name of the mounted or unmounted ISO image.
• creating custom virtual machine from custom template • deleting custom virtual machine • changing the custom virtual machine status to "online" • changing the custom virtual machine status to "enabled"	cs1label Name of the virtual machine that was deployed from a custom image, deleted, or had its status changed.

If an operation is performed on over 30 objects simultaneously, only one entry is logged for this operation. The entry includes the information about the operation and the number of objects on which it was performed.

Managing the NDR user activity log

This section contains information about managing logs of the NDR functionality.

Users with the **Administrator** role can manage the log. Users with the **Security auditor** role can view the log.

Logs are available when using any type of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform license key.

Managing log storage settings

You can edit the settings of log record storage in the Central Node database.

To change the log storage settings:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Sensor servers** section.
3. Select the card of the Central Node server.

   The details area is displayed in the right part of the web interface window.
4. Click **Edit**.

   In the details area, tabs are displayed, on which you can manage the settings of the server.
5. On the **General** tab, configure the following settings in the **Events**, **Audit entries**, and **Application messages** sections:

   a. Use the **Max volume** setting to set a size limit for stored records. You can select the unit of measure for the value: **MB** or **GB**.

   When editing this setting, keep in mind the estimated maximum number of records for the specified volume. You also need to take into account that the sum total of all size limits may not exceed the specified maximum storage capacity for the node.

   b. If necessary, use the **Storage time (days)** setting to limit the storage duration of records, and specify the duration in days.
6. Click **Save**.

Log storage is configured.

Enabling and disabling user activity audit

You can enable or disable user activity audit for the NDR functionality.

User activity audit is enabled by default.

To enable or disable user activity audit:

1. Log in to the application web interface with the administrator account.
2. Go to the **Logs** section, **Audit** subsection.
3. Enable or disable user activity audit using the **User activity audit** switch in the toolbar.
4. Wait for the changes to be applied. The switch does not become available again until the transition to the other state is completed.

User activity audit is enabled or disabled.

Viewing user activity audit records

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform can save information about actions performed by users of the NDR functionality. Information is saved in the audit log if user activity audit is enabled.

You can view audit records when connecting to the Central Node server using the web interface. If necessary, you can also configure audit records to be sent to third-party systems through connectors.

Only users with the Administrator role can view audit records.

To view audit records:

1. Connect to the Central Node server using the web interface.
2. Select the **Logs** section, **Audit** subsection.

   The table displays audit records corresponding to the specified filtering and search conditions.

Audit record settings are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Date and time**.

  Date and time when user activity information was recorded.

- **Action**.

  Registered action performed by the user.

- **Result**.

  Result of the registered action (successful or unsuccessful).

- **User**.

  Name of the user that performed the registered action.

- **User node**.

  IP address of the node where the registered action was performed.

- **Description**.

  Additional information about the registered action.

When viewing the table of audit records, you can use the configuration, filtering, searching, and sorting functionality.

Downloading user activity audit logs

Users with the **Administrator** and **Security auditor** roles can download the user activity audit log.

Users with the **Senior security officer** and **Security officer** roles do not have access to this log.

To download the user activity audit log:

1. Select the **Logs** section, **Audit** subsection in the application web interface.
2. Click **Export to CSV file**.

   The file is saved to your local computer in your browser's downloads folder. The file is downloaded in the CSV format.

In distributed solution mode, you can download the user activity audit log file only for the server which you are managing in its web interface.

Setting the maximum storage space limit for trace logs

Information about the performance of the NDR functionality is recorded in trace logs. You can limit the storage space occupied by these logs. In this case, when the limit is reached, old trace log files are deleted from the `/var/log/kaspersky` directory.

Users with the **Administrator** role can manage log storage. Users with the **Security auditor** role can view these settings.

To limit the amount of space occupied by trace logs:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
3. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.
4. This opens a window with information about the component.
5. Click **Edit**.
6. Go to the **General** tab.
7. In the **Trace data** field, use the **Max volume** setting to configure the maximum space that the logs can occupy. You can select the unit of measure for the value: **MB** or **GB**.

   The space occupied by trace logs is limited.

Setting the maximum storage space limit for trace logs

The statistical logs record metrics of the NDR functionality, such as the number of network packets received. You can limit the storage space occupied by these logs. In this case, when the limit is reached, old statistical log files are deleted from the `/var/log/kaspersky` directory.

Users with the **Administrator** role can manage log storage. Users with the **Security auditor** role can view these settings.

To limit the amount of space occupied by statistical logs:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
3. Click the card of the relevant Sensor component.
4. This opens a window with information about the component.
5. Click **Edit**.
6. Go to the **General** tab.
7. In the **Statistical data** field, use the **Max volume** setting to configure the maximum space that the logs can occupy. You can select the unit of measure for the value: **MB** or **GB**.

The space occupied by statistical logs is limited.

Downloading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform logs

If necessary, you can download the system log files of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. To do so, you must get the information about the application's operation using the kata-collect script.

To get the information about the application's operation using the kata-collect script.

1. Sign in to the management console of the server for which you want to get information over SSH or through a terminal.

   If you are using Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you need to perform these steps on each Central Node server. If your organization's infrastructure has separately installed Sensor components, you must also follow these steps on servers that have this component. If the application is deployed as a cluster, you must perform these steps on one of the servers with the 'manager' role in Docker swarm. To view the role of a server, use the `$ docker node ls` command.

2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and password that were specified while installing the component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **Technical Support Mode** section.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

6. Run the script by executing the command:

```
sudo kata-run.sh kata-collect --output-dir <path>
```

You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

Parameters of the kata-collect utility

Required parameter	Parameter	Description
Yes	`--output-dir <path>`	Create a directory at the specified path, where <path> is an absolute or relative path of the directory where you want to save the archive with the downloaded data. If no path is specified, the data archive is saved in the /tmp/collect directory by default.
No	`--no-prometheus`	Skip preparing and dumping the prometheus database. This parameter significantly speeds up the script.
No	`--no-siem-logs`	Skip downloading the data that is written to the SIEM system.
No	`--siem-logs-range-start <YYYY-MM-DD-HH>`	Download the data written to the SIEM system starting from this date (inclusive).
No	`--siem-logs-range-end <YYYY-MM-DD-HH>`	Download the data written to the SIEM system ending with this date (inclusive).

Example:
Command to get information about the operation of the application with SIEM system data filtered by date and without the prometheus database:

```
sudo kata-run.sh kata-collect --output-dir <path> --no-prometheus --siem-logs-range-start <YYYY-MM-DD-HH> --siem-logs-range-end <YYYY-MM-DD-HH>
```

When the script finishes, a collect--<archive download date>.tar.gz archive is saved to the specified directory. This archive contains system log files of the application.

Viewing application messages

The message log of the application stores information about errors of the NDR functionality and about operations performed by the system processes of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

You can view application messages in the web interface. If necessary, you can also configure application messages to be sent to third-party systems through connectors.

Application messages can be viewed by users with the following roles: **Administrator**, **Security auditor**, **Security officer**, or **Senior security officer**.

To view application messages:

1. Log in to the web interface with the application administrator account.
2. Select the **Settings** section, **Application messages** subsection.

   The table displays application messages corresponding to the specified filtering and search conditions.

Application message settings are displayed in the following columns of the table:

- **Date and time**.

  Date and time when the application message was registered.

- **Status**.

  Name of the message status. A message can have one of the following statuses:

  - *Normal operation* for informational messages.
  - *Unknown*, *Malfunction* for messages about non-critical application errors.
  - *Moderate malfunction, Critical malfunction*, *Fatal malfunction* for messages about application malfunctions.

- **Node**.

  Name or IP address of the node from which the message arrived.

- **System process**.

  Application process that caused the message to be registered.

- **Message**.

  Numerical identifier and text of the message.

When viewing the table of application messages, you can use the filtering, searching, and sorting functions.

Downloading user activity audit logs

All users can download the application message log.

To download the application message log:

1. Select the **Logs** section, **Application messages** subsection in the application web interface.
2. Click **Export to CSV file**.

The file is saved to your local computer in your browser's downloads folder. The file is downloaded in the CSV format.

In distributed solution mode, you can download the application message log file only for the server which you are managing in its web interface.

Configuring the retention period of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform system logs and alerts

You can configure the retention period of some logs and alert data in the database of the Central Node component, as well as the retention period of the Sensor and Sandbox logs. By default, the alert data in the Central Node database is rotated when the number of alerts by a particular technology reaches 1,000,000. The default retention period for logs is 90 days.

You can configure log retention for the Central Node and Sensor components in the administrator menu of the Central Node or Sensor component. You can configure the retention of the Sandbox log using standard tools of the operating system.

You can configure the retention period for the following logs:

- Central Node or Sensor:
  - Syslog.
  - user_actions.log, log of user actions in the web interface.
  - kern.log, kernel event log of the operating system.
  - auth.log, log of user authorization in the web interface and the administrator menu of the component.
- Sandbox:
  - apt-history.log, the update log.
  - apt-audit.log, the system event audit log.
  - user_actions.log, log of user actions in the web interface.
  - auth.log, log of user authorization in the web interface and the administrator menu of the component.

To configure the retention period of the Central Node or Sensor logs, as well as the retention period of alert data in the Central Node database:

1. If you want to configure the retention period for logs and alert data in the Central Node component database, log in to the management console of the Central Node server using SSH or a terminal.
2. If you want to configure the retention period for Sensor logs, log into the management console of the Sensor server using SSH or a terminal.
3. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
4. Select **Program settings**.

5. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the **Select action** window.

6. Select **Configure storage period for detects and logs**.

7. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the **Configure storage period** window.

8. Select **Change storage period**.

   This opens the **Storage period** window.

9. In the **Storage period** field, specify the log retention period in days. The maximum log retention period that you can specify is 10,000 days.

   The default value is 90.

10. Select **Apply Changes**.

    This opens the **Apply storage period** window.

11. In the displayed window, select **OK**.

The retention period for Central Node or Sensor logs and the retention period for alert data (when Central Node settings are changed) is configured.

To change the retention period for Sandbox logs:

1. If you want to change the retention period of the apt-audit.log, apt-history.log, user-actions.log logs, open the /etc/logrotate.d/apt-audit file for editing as root and change the 'rotate' setting of the relevant log.

2. If you want to change the retention period of auth.log, open the /etc/logrotate.d/auth file for editing as root and change the 'rotate' setting.

   The maximum log retention period that you can specify is 10,000 days. By default, the log retention period is 90 days.

The retention period for Sandbox logs is configured.

Viewing information about files that have been sent for scanning to the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

If necessary, you can see if the file has been scanned in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform and what the scan result was. To do so, you must get the information about the application's operation using the kata-collect script.

To get information about application performance using the kata-collect script:

Follow the steps of the instructions given in the *Downloading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform logs* section.

As a result of completing the steps of the instructions, the collect--<archive download date>.tar.gz archive containing the log files of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is placed in the specified directory. Information about files received for scanning is contained in the log, which is located in the /logs/kaspersky/siem/log-history/ directory inside the this archive. If a file was excluded from scanning, information about such a file is also reflected in the log.

You can find any file by its name or MD5 hash.

If the file was obtained by the Sensor component, you can find it by the following fields:

- File source information:
  - The source IP address and destination IP address, if the file was obtained from traffic.
  - The sender email address and recipient email address, if the file was received by email.
  - The IP address and ID of the external system, if the file was received from an external system.
  - The IP address and name of the host if the file was received from an Endpoint Agent host.
  - The user account name if the file was manually uploaded to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- Source type: span, smtp, icap, pop3, external (external system), endpoint (Endpoint Agent host), upload (manually uploaded file).
- For email messages, the Message-ID field is logged.

Special considerations for file information logging

When searching for file information in the log, keep in mind the following special considerations for file information logging:

- File information is logged twice: when the file is obtained from traffic and when the file is scanned. If the Sensor component is installed separately from the Central Node in your infrastructure, the file receipt record goes to the log of the Sensor component, and the file scanning record goes to the log of the Central Node component to which the Sensor is connected. If the Central Node component and the Sensor are installed on the same server, both records are written to the Central Node log.

- For a compound file (for example, an archive or an email message), the hash of the parent file and the name and hash of the child file are logged if the child file was scanned by one of the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform technologies.

Examples of apt-history log records for the MD5 hash of a file

Examples of apt-history log records for the MD5 hash of a file are listed in the table below.

Examples of apt-history log records for the MD5 hash of a file

Log record	Value
2024-06-11 02:37:03.645586 info apt-history: f0429d4845208857cd303df968ef545e enqueued am, priority: normal	The file was received for processing using the Anti-Malware Engine technology.
2024-06-11 02:37:03.647434 info apt-history: external KSMG sensor with ip 10.0.0.0 provide file with name: File_Name 2024/2025, md5: f0429d4845208857cd303df968ef545e, msg_id: <87c13e55e789aa966089b6bf2e8c453b@localhost.localdomain>	String for objects received for processing in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform from Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway and Kaspersky Security for Linux Mail Server. Information worth paying attention to: • external KSMG sensor with ip 10.0.0.0 — IP address of the Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway server • File_Name 2024/2025 — file name • md5 — MD5 hash of the file being scanned • msg_id — message ID

2024-06-11 02:37:03.847696 info apt-history: f0429d4845208857cd303df968ef545e engine am result {verdict: CLEAN, bases_version: 202406071010, detect_time: 2024-06-11 02:37:03.841275, rescan_priority: 3, sb_hash: 77f5b6276dd9b1c534b6c9adcff86845, multitask_details: {priority: background, tasks: {pdf: 1}}, scanEngines: [sb]}	The result of processing the object using the Anti-Malware Engine technology. Includes the status assigned to the object after scanning (CLEAN) and information about the technologies that will be used to additionally scan the object ("scanEngines: [sb]"). Information worth paying attention to: • multitask_details — details about the scan task • priority — priority of the scan Possible values are 'background', 'must' • scanEngines — scanning technology Possible values are [yr] for YARA, [sb] for Sandbox.
2024-06-11 02:37:03.886784 info apt-history: f0429d4845208857cd303df968ef545e enqueued sb: {pdf: 1}, priority: low, sb_priority: background	The task was sent to the Sandbox component for processing. Information worth paying attention to: • {pdf: 1} — number and type of objects sent for scanning • low — processing priority Possible processing priority values are 'low', 'medium', 'high'. • background — the type of queue for processing by the Sandbox component. Possible values are 'background', 'must'
2024-06-11 02:37:04.179597 info apt-history: f0429d4845208857cd303df968ef545e delivered to sb, sb_hash: 77f5b6276dd9b1c534b6c9adcff86845, node: Server_Name, mtask_id: 900	The task was sent to the Sandbox component for processing. Information worth paying attention to: • node:Server_Name — name of the server with the Sandbox component • mtask_id: 900 — task ID
2024-06-11 02:38:44.515070 info apt-history: f0429d4845208857cd303df968ef545e sb result received, sb_hash: 77f5b6276dd9b1c534b6c9adcff86845, node: Server_Name, mtask_id: 900, priority: low	The result of processing the object by the Sandbox component has been received.

2024-06-11 02:38:44.783370 info apt-history: f0429d4845208857cd303df968ef545e engine sb result {bases_version: 202406102122, detect_time: 2024-06-11 02:38:44.776655, verdict: SILENT, hidden: True, details: [{file: //[From WCR <test@mail.com>][Date 11 Jun 2024 03:51:21][Subj Company_Name 2024/2025]/WCR-form.pdf, images: [{verdicts_info: {ScannerVersion: 1.22.3.34, ...}, hidden: True, verdict: SILENT, sb_id: fb15ec106318b0d54babce2379d956f7, image: Win7_x64, task_id: task0, file: //[From WCR <test@mail.com>][Date 11 Jun 2024 03:51:21][Subj Company_Name 2024/2025]/WCR-form.pdf, file_id: 1, filesize: 445856, md5: 0d87eebc9676214f35046a482150e537, tracing_mode: all_events, store_artifacts: False, bases_version: 202406102122, ids_bases_version: 202406101817, version: 1.22.3.34, suspicious_log: [], network_activity: {http: [], dns: []}}], verdict: SILENT, hidden: True, priority: 150}], md5_list: [], file_list: [], sb_hash: 77f5b6276dd9b1c534b6c9adcff86845, sb_names_map: {0: {md5: , name: }, 1: {md5: 0d87eebc9676214f35046a482150e537, name: //[From WCR <test@mail.com>][Date 11 Jun 2024 03:51:21][Subj Company_Name 2024/2025]/WCR-form.pdf}, 2: {md5: 71072dd9a36d7ce560cebc533ecb3cad, name: }}}

The result of processing the objects on all virtual machines of the Sandbox component.

Information worth paying attention to:

- verdict — results of scanning the file. Generated based on the results of scanning the file on all virtual machines. For detections with the SILENT result, no record is created in the detection database.
- hidden: True — an object with this result does not require further scanning by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform modules.
- details — information about scanning the object in virtual machines.
  Includes the following fields:
  - file — name of the file for display (WCR-form.pdf). In this record, the field contains the following information:
  - From — sender email address.
  - Date — date and time of the event.
  - Subj — subject of the message.
  - images — information about scanning the object in virtual machines.
  - verdicts_info — results of scanning the file. May be different for each virtual machine the object was scanned on.
  - hidden: True — an object with this result does not require further scanning by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform modules.
  - verdict — results of scanning the file on the virtual machine. For detections with the SILENT result, no record is created in the detection database.
  - image — the image in which the file was executed.
  - filesize — size of the file.
  - md5 — MD5 hash of the file.
  - tracing mode: all_events — a record of the operations that the file performs after launch.
  - suspicious log [] — a record of malicious actions that the file performed.

	This field does not have values because the file did not perform any malicious actions. • network activity — network activity initiated by the file. • http [] — the file did not make any HTTP requests. • dns [] — the file did not make any DNS requests. The 'suspicious log' and 'network activity' fields only record the fact of malicious activity. If you want to view the details of the alerts, you can do so in the application web interface. • priority — priority of the scan Possible values are 1 for high, 100 for standard, and 150 for background scan. • md5_list — MD5 hashes of files that generated alerts when scanned. • file_list — names of files that generated alerts when scanned. • sb_names_map — file name to be displayed in the alert details in the application web interface.
2024-06-11 02:38:44.841529 info apt-history: New sb_detect for file alert: {id: 2720, victim: default, state: new, md5: f0429d4845208857cd303df968ef545e}	Information about the results of processing by the Sandbox component is saved in the application database. Recorded for internal use. This does not indicate that a detection is present in the detection database of the application.

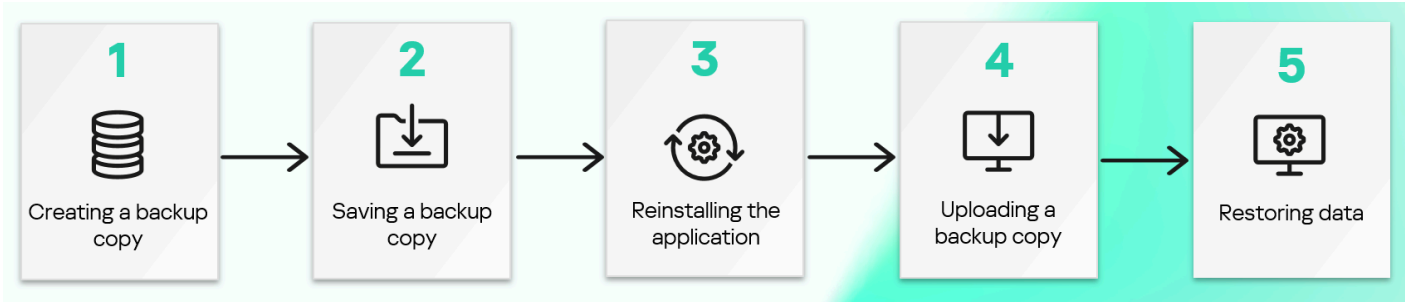
Backing up and restoring data

You can create a backup copy and restore data from it in case of malfunctions or in case you need to reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. You can restore data between Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform installations based on different operating systems. For example, you can restore data of Ubuntu-based Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform in Astra Linux-based Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, and vice versa.

Restoration from one version to another is not supported; the version of the application to which you want to restore data must match the version of the application on the server on which the backup copy was created. If the versions of the application do not match, an error message is displayed when restoration is initiated, and the restoration process is terminated.

To create a backup copy of a Central Node server, you can connect to the server over SSH or in the application administrator menu.

The diagram of the process is shown in the figure below.



Backing up and restoring data

To create a backup copy, you need to use a drive with sufficient free space. If, when creating a backup copy, the drive runs out of free space, the copy may end up incomplete, and the application restored from such a copy may be broken. We recommend using removable media.

When restoring data, you need to take into account the following special considerations:

- If integration with OSMP was configured in the backup copy of the application, then after restoring, you need to enter a new name in the Client name field of the **integration settings** and apply the changes by clicking the **Apply** button.

- The KSMG application can send encrypted archives to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform for scanning. To decrypt these, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform uses a key that is valid for 2 hours. If more than 2 hours have passed since the creation of the backup, the key becomes invalid, and for 2 hours following restoration, the application does not accept encrypted archives from KSMG for scanning. After updating the key, archives are scanned normally. To update the key sooner, you can restart the KSMG server.

The application does not provide mechanisms for automating the following actions:

- Creating a backup copy with specific conditions or on a schedule.

  You can use external automation tools to perform these operations.

- Restoring from a backup copy in the emergency recovery zone.

  In this case, you must start the restoration manually.

Duplicating an installation by restoring from a backup copy is not supported.

Backing up and restoring the data of the Central Node server

This scenario describes the procedure for creating and restoring data from backup on a Central Node server.

Backing up and restoring data on the Central Node server involves the following steps:

1. **Creating a backup copy**

   You can create a backup copy using the administrator menu or in Technical Support Mode:

   How to create a backup copy in the administrator menu

   > The backup copy of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform contains databases (alerts database, VIP status details, the list of data excluded from the scan, notifications) and Central Node or PCN settings only.

   1. Sign in to the management console of the server which you want to back up over SSH or through a terminal.
   2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account.

      The application component administrator menu is displayed.
   3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **System administration** section.
   4. Press **Enter**.

      This opens the action selection window.
   5. In the list of actions, select **Backup/Restore settings**.
   6. Press **Enter**.

      This opens the **Backup/Restore settings** window.
   7. In the list of actions, select **New**.
   8. Press **Enter**.

      This opens the **Backup settings** window.
   9. Click **Back up**.

   The backup copy is created.

How to create a backup copy in Technical Support Mode

1. Sign in to the management console of the server which you want to back up over SSH or through a terminal.
2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **Technical Support Mode** section.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.
6. Run the following command:

   ```
   sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore backup
   ```

   You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

   You can use the `-h` command to receive tips on using parameters.

Parameters for creating a backup copy

Required parameter	Parameter	Description
Yes	`-b <path>`	Create a backup copy at the specified path, where <path> is the absolute or relative path to the directory in which you want to create the backup copy.
No	`-c`	Clear the directory before saving the backup copy.
No	`-d <number of stored files>`	Specify the maximum number of backup files stored in the directory, where <number> is the number of files.
No	`-e`	Save files in Storage.
No	`-q`	Save files in quarantine.
No	`-a`	Save files awaiting rescan.
No	`-s`	Save Sandbox artifacts.
No	`-n`	Save Central Node or PCN settings.
No	`-l <filepath>`	Save the command execution result to a file, where <filepath> is the name of the event log file, including the absolute path or relative path to the file.

If additional settings are not defined, the backup copy contains only databases (alerts database, VIP status details, the list of data excluded from the scan, notifications).

Example:

Command for creating a backup copy:

```
sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore backup -b <path> -c -d <number of stored files> -e -q -a -s -n -l <filepath>
```

2 Saving the backup copy to the hard drive

To save the backup copy on the hard drive of your computer, run the following command:

```
scp <name of the account used for working in the administrator menu and in the server management console>@<IP address of the server>:<name of the backup file of the form: data_kata_<date and time of backup copy creation>.tar>
```

Example:

Command for downloading to the hard drive of your computer a backup copy created on a Central Node server with the IP address 10.0.0.10 under the 'admin' account on April 10, 2020 at 10 hours 00 minutes 00 seconds:

```
scp admin@10.0.0.10:data_kata_2020_04_10T10_00_00.tar
```

The backup copy is saved to the current directory on the hard drive of your computer.

3 Reinstalling the application

Remove and reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

When installing the application, you need to specify the same network mask for addressing servers that was specified in the backup copy of the application. If the values do not match, the Embedded Sensor encounters an error after the restoration of the application. If necessary, you can restore the component.

After installation, you must add license keys of the same types (KATA, KATA + NDR) to the application as were added on the server where the backup copy was created. This is necessary to restore all the Central Node, PCN, or SCN settings saved in the backup copy.

4 Uploading a backup copy to the server

Upload your backup copy to the Central Node server by running the following command:

```
scp <name of the backup file of the form: data_kata_<date and time of backup copy creation>.tar> <name of the account used for working in the administrator menu and in the server management console>@<IP address of the server>:
```

Example:

Command for uploading a backup copy created on April 10, 2020 at 10 hours 00 minutes 00 seconds to the Central Node server with the IP address 10.0.0.10 under the 'admin' account:

```
scp data_kata_2020_04_10T10_00_00.tar admin@10.0.0.10:
```

The backup copy is uploaded to the current directory on the Central Node server.

5 Restoring data from a backup copy

You can restore data from a backup copy on the Central Node server using the administrator menu or in Technical Support Mode:

How to restore data in the administrator menu

1. Sign in to the management console of the server whose data you want to restore over SSH or through a terminal.
2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **System administration** section.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action selection window.
5. In the list of actions, select **Backup/Restore settings**.

6. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the **Backup/Restore settings** window.

7. In the list of files containing backup copies of the application, select the file from which you want to restore the server data.

   If the necessary file is not listed, upload the file containing the backup copy to the server.

8. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action selection window.

9. In the list of actions, select **Restore <name of the backup file of the form: data_kata_<creation date and time of the backup copy>.tar>**

10. Press **Enter**.

    This opens the action confirmation window.

11. Click **Restore**.

    The process of restoring the server data from the backup copy starts.

The settings for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports are restored automatically if the names of network interfaces are the same on the server where the backup copy was created and on the server where data is being restored from the backup copy.

How to recover data in Technical Support Mode

1. Sign in to the management console of the server whose data you want to restore over SSH or through a terminal.

2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **Technical Support Mode** section.

4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

6. Run the following command:

```
sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore restore
```

   You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

   You can use the `-h` command to receive tips on using parameters.

Data restoration parameters

Required parameter	Parameter	Command description
Yes	`-r <path>`	Restore data from a file containing a backup copy, where <path> is the full path to the backup file.
No	`-l <filepath>`	Save the command execution result to a file, where <filepath> is the name of the event log file, including the absolute path or relative path to the file.

Example:

Command for restoring the data from a backup copy:

```
sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore restore -r <path> -l <filepath>
```

The settings for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports are restored automatically if the names of network interfaces are the same on the server where the backup copy was created and on the server where data is being restored from the backup copy.

The backup copy of server settings does not contain PCAP files of recorded mirrored network traffic. You can save and restore PCAP files on your own by copying them from the /data/volumes/dumps directory of the connected storage. After restoring data, you must connect your external storage.

If the hardware configuration of the Central Node server on which the backup copy was created differs from the hardware configuration of the server on which you are planning to restore the server settings, you need to reconfigure the application scaling settings after restoring.

Backing up and restoring the data of the Central Node server deployed as a cluster

This scenario describes the procedure for backing up and restoring data on a Central Node server deployed as a cluster.

Backing up and restoring data on the Central Node server deployed as a cluster involves the following steps:

1. **Creating a backup copy**

   You can create a backup copy using the administrator menu or in Technical Support Mode.

   A backup copy must be created on each processing server in the cluster. You need to keep the copy with the largest size.

How to create a backup copy of the application in the administrator menu

The backup copy of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform contains databases (alerts database, VIP status details, the list of data excluded from the scan, notifications) and Central Node or PCN settings only.

1. Enter the management console of any functioning worker server in the cluster over SSH or using a terminal.
2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **System administration** section.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action selection window.
5. In the list of actions, select **Backup/Restore settings**.
6. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the **Backup/Restore settings** window.
7. In the list of actions, select **New**.
8. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the **Backup settings** window.
9. Click **Back up**.
10. Repeat steps 2 through 9 on each worker node in the cluster.

Backup copies are created. For restoration, you need to keep the copy with the largest size.

How to create a backup copy of the application in Technical Support Mode

1. Enter the management console of any functioning worker server in the cluster over SSH or using a terminal.
2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **Technical Support Mode** section.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.
6. Run the following command:

   ```
   sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore backup
   ```

You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

You can use the `-h` command to receive tips on using parameters.

7. Repeat steps 1 through 6 on each worker node in the cluster.

Backup copies are created. For restoration, you need to keep the copy with the largest size.

Parameters for creating a backup copy

Required parameter	Parameter	Description
Yes	`-b <path>`	Create a backup copy at the specified path, where <path> is the absolute or relative path to the directory in which you want to create the backup copy.
No	`-c`	Clear the directory before saving the backup file.
No	`-d <number of stored files>`	Specify the maximum number of files stored in the directory, where <number> is the number of files.
No	`-n`	Save Central Node or PCN settings.
No	`-l <filepath>`	Save the command execution result to a file, where <filepath> is the name of the event log file, including the absolute path or relative path to the file.

If additional settings are not defined, the backup copy contains only databases (alerts database, VIP status details, the list of data excluded from the scan, notifications).

Example:

Command for creating a backup copy:

```
sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore backup -b <path> -c -d <number of stored files> -e -q -a -s -n -l <filepath>
```

2 Saving the backup copy to the hard drive

To save the backup copy on the hard drive of your computer, run the following command:

```
scp <name of the account used for working in the administrator menu and in the server management console>@<IP address of the server>:<name of the backup file of the form: data_kata_<date and time of backup copy creation>.tar>
```

Example:

Command for downloading to the hard drive of your computer a backup copy created on a Central Node server with the IP address 10.0.0.10 under the 'admin' account on April 10, 2020 at 10 hours 00 minutes 00 seconds:

```
scp admin@10.0.0.10:data_kata_2020_04_10T10_00_00.tar
```

The backup copy is saved to the current directory on the hard drive of your computer.

3 Reinstalling the application

Remove and reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

When installing the application, you need to specify the same network mask for addressing servers that was specified in the backup copy of the application. If the values do not match, the Embedded Sensor encounters an error after the restoration of the application. If necessary, you can restore the component.

After installation, you must add license keys of the same types (KATA, KATA + NDR) to the application as were added on the server where the backup copy was created. This is necessary to restore all the Central Node, PCN, or SCN settings saved in the backup copy.

4 Uploading a backup copy to the server

Upload your backup copy to the Central Node server by running the following command:

```
scp <name of the backup file of the form: data_kata_<date and time of backup copy creation>.tar> <name of the account used for working in the administrator menu and in the server management console>@<IP address of the server>:
```

Example:

Command for uploading a backup copy created on April 10, 2020 at 10 hours 00 minutes 00 seconds to the Central Node server with the IP address 10.0.0.10 under the 'admin' account:

```
scp data_kata_2020_04_10T10_00_00.tar admin@10.0.0.10:
```

The backup copy is uploaded to the current directory on the Central Node server.

5 Restoring data from a backup copy

You need to start the data restoration process from the largest backup copy created at step 1 of this scenario. You need to start the recovery on a worker server on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled.

You can restore data from a backup copy on the Central Node server using the administrator menu or in Technical Support Mode:

How to restore application data in the administrator menu

1. Enter the management console of any functioning cluster server over SSH or using a terminal.
2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **Technical Support Mode** section.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.
6. Specify the address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled:

   ```
   sudo docker node ls -q | sudo xargs docker node inspect -f '{{ if eq (index .Spec.Labels "infrastructure.span") "true" }}{{ .Description.Hostname }}{{ end }}'
   ```

   The address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled.
7. Log in to the management console of this server using the SSH protocol:

   ```
   ssh admin@<server address obtained at step 6>
   ```
8. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **System administration** section.
9. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action selection window.
10. In the list of actions, select **Backup/Restore settings**.

11. Press **Enter**.

    This opens the **Backup/Restore settings** window.

12. In the list of files containing backup copies of the application, select the file from which you want to restore the server data.

    If the necessary file is not listed, upload the file containing the backup copy to the server.

13. Press **Enter**.

    This opens the action selection window.

14. In the list of actions, select **Restore <name of the backup file of the form: data_kata_<creation date and time of the backup copy>.tar>**

15. Press **Enter**.

    This opens the action confirmation window.

16. Click **Restore**.

    The process of restoring the server data from the backup copy starts.

The settings for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports are restored automatically if the names of network interfaces are the same on the server where the backup copy was created and on the server where data is being restored from the backup copy.

If the names of the network interfaces do not match, after performing step 11 of the instructions above, you will be prompted to select the network interfaces for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports.

How to restore application data in Technical Support Mode

1. Enter the management console of any functioning cluster server over SSH or using a terminal.
2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **Technical Support Mode** section.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.
6. Specify the address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled:

   ```
   sudo docker node ls -q | sudo xargs docker node inspect -f '{{ if eq (index
   .Spec.Labels "infrastructure.span") "true" }}{{ .Description.Hostname }}{{ end
   }}'
   ```

   The address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled.

7. Log in to the management console of this server using the SSH protocol:

   ```
   ssh admin@<server address obtained at step 6>
   ```

8. Start the data restoration process by running the following command:

   ```
   sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore restore
   ```

You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

You can use the `-h` command to receive tips on using parameters.

Data restoration parameters

Required parameter	Parameter	Command description
Yes	`-r <path>`	Restore data from a file containing a backup copy, where <path> is the full path to the backup file.
No	`-l <filepath>`	Save the command execution result to a file, where <filepath> is the name of the event log file, including the absolute path or relative path to the file.

Example:

Command for restoring the data from a backup copy:

```
sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore restore -r <path> -l <filepath>
```

The settings for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports are restored automatically if the names of network interfaces are the same on the server where the backup copy was created and on the server where data is being restored from the backup copy.

If the names of the network interfaces do not match, after performing step 6 of the instructions above, you will be prompted to select the network interfaces for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports.

The backup copy of server settings does not contain PCAP files of recorded mirrored network traffic. You can save and restore PCAP files on your own by copying them from the /data/volumes/dumps directory of the connected external storage. After restoring data, you must connect your external storage.

If the hardware configuration of the Central Node server on which the backup copy was created differs from the hardware configuration of the server on which you are planning to restore the server settings, you need to reconfigure the application scaling settings after restoring.

Backing up and restoring the data of the Central Node server in distributed solution and multitenancy mode

This scenario describes the procedure for backing up and restoring data on Central Node servers deployed in distributed solution or multitenancy mode.

To back up and restore data when using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you must connect to each Central Node server in the hierarchy and follow the steps of the instructions below.

Backing up and restoring data on Central Node servers deployed in distributed solution or multitenancy mode involves the following steps:

1. **Creating a backup copy**

   You can create a backup copy using the administrator menu or in Technical Support Mode:

   How to create a backup copy in the administrator menu if the Central Node is installed on a server

   > The backup copy of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform contains databases (alerts database, VIP status details, the list of data excluded from the scan, notifications) and Central Node or PCN settings only.

   1. Sign in to the management console of the server which you want to back up over SSH or through a terminal.
   2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account.

      The application component administrator menu is displayed.
   3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **System administration** section.
   4. Press **Enter**.

      This opens the action selection window.
   5. In the list of actions, select **Backup/Restore settings**.
   6. Press **Enter**.

      This opens the **Backup/Restore settings** window.
   7. In the list of actions, select **New**.
   8. Press **Enter**.

      This opens the **Backup settings** window.
   9. Click **Back up**.

   The backup copy is created.

   How to create a backup copy in Technical Support Mode if the Central Node is installed on a server

   1. Sign in to the management console of the server which you want to back up over SSH or through a terminal.
   2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account.

      The application component administrator menu is displayed.
   3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **Technical Support Mode** section.
   4. Press **Enter**.

      This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
   5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

6. Run the following command:

   `sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore backup`

   You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

   You can use the `-h` command to receive tips on using parameters.

Parameters for creating a backup copy

Required parameter	Parameter	Description
Yes	`-b <path>`	Create a backup copy at the specified path, where <path> is the absolute or relative path to the directory in which you want to create the backup copy.
No	`-c`	Clear the directory before saving the backup copy.
No	`-d <number of stored files>`	Specify the maximum number of backup files stored in the directory, where <number> is the number of files.
No	`-e`	Save files in Storage.
No	`-q`	Save files in quarantine.
No	`-a`	Save files awaiting rescan.
No	`-s`	Save Sandbox artifacts.
No	`-n`	Save Central Node or PCN settings.
No	`-l <filepath>`	Save the command execution result to a file, where <filepath> is the name of the event log file, including the absolute path or relative path to the file.

If additional settings are not defined, the backup copy contains only databases (alerts database, VIP status details, the list of data excluded from the scan, notifications).

Example:

Command for creating a backup copy:

```
sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore backup -b <path> -c -d <number of stored files> -e -q -a -s -n -l <filepath>
```

How to create a backup copy in the administrator menu if the Central Node is installed as a cluster

The backup copy of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform contains databases (alerts database, VIP status details, the list of data excluded from the scan, notifications) and Central Node or PCN settings only.

1. Enter the management console of any functioning worker server in the cluster over SSH or using a terminal.

2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **System administration** section.

4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action selection window.

5. In the list of actions, select **Backup/Restore settings**.

6. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the **Backup/Restore settings** window.

7. In the list of actions, select **New**.

8. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the **Backup settings** window.

9. Click **Back up**.

10. Repeat steps 2 through 9 on each worker node in the cluster.

Backup copies are created. For restoration, you need to save the copy with the largest size.

How to create a backup copy in Technical Support Mode if the Central Node is installed as a cluster

1. Enter the management console of any functioning worker server in the cluster over SSH or using a terminal.

2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **Technical Support Mode** section.

4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

6. Run the following command:

   ```
   sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore backup
   ```

   You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

   You can use the `-h` command to receive tips on using parameters.

7. Repeat steps 1 through 6 on each worker node in the cluster.

Backup copies are created. For restoration, you need to keep the copy with the largest size.

Parameters for creating a backup copy

Required parameter	Parameter	Description
Yes	`-b <path>`	Create a backup copy at the specified path, where <path> is the absolute or relative path to the directory in which you want to create the backup copy.
No	`-c`	Clear the directory before saving the backup file.
No	`-d <number of stored files>`	Specify the maximum number of files stored in the directory, where <number> is the number of files.

No	`-n`	Save Central Node or PCN settings.
No	`-l <filepath>`	Save the command execution result to a file, where <filepath> is the name of the event log file, including the absolute path or relative path to the file.

If additional settings are not defined, the backup copy contains only databases (alerts database, VIP status details, the list of data excluded from the scan, notifications).

Example:

Command for creating a backup copy:

```
sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore backup -b <path> -c -d <number of stored files> -e -q -a -s -n -l <filepath>
```

2 Saving the backup copy to the hard drive

To save the backup copy on the hard drive of your computer, run the following command:

```
scp <name of the account used for working in the administrator menu and in the server management console>@<IP address of the server>:<name of the backup file of the form: data_kata_<date and time of backup copy creation>.tar>
```

Example:

Command for downloading to the hard drive of your computer a backup copy created on a Central Node server with the IP address 10.0.0.10 under the 'admin' account on April 10, 2020 at 10 hours 00 minutes 00 seconds:

```
scp admin@10.0.0.10:data_kata_2020_04_10T10_00_00.tar
```

The backup copy is saved to the current directory on the hard drive of your computer.

3 Reinstalling the application

Remove and reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Data can be restored from backup only to a server with the Central Node role. If you assign the PCN or SCN role to the server before you begin, the restoration process will fail.

When installing the application, you need to specify the same network mask for addressing servers that was specified in the backup copy of the application. If the values do not match, the Embedded Sensor encounters an error after the restoration of the application. If necessary, you can restore the component.

After installation, you must add license keys of the same types (KATA, KATA + NDR) to the application as were added on the server where the backup copy was created. This is necessary to restore all the Central Node, PCN, or SCN settings saved in the backup copy.

4 Uploading a backup copy to the server

Upload your backup copy to the Central Node server by running the following command:

```
scp <name of the backup file of the form: data_kata_<date and time of backup copy creation>.tar> <name of the account used for working in the administrator menu and in the server management console>@<IP address of the server>:
```

Example:

Command for uploading a backup copy created on April 10, 2020 at 10 hours 00 minutes 00 seconds to the Central Node server with the IP address 10.0.0.10 under the 'admin' account:

```
scp data_kata_2020_04_10T10_00_00.tar admin@10.0.0.10:
```

The backup copy is uploaded to the current directory on the Central Node server.

5 Restoring data from a backup copy

You can restore data from a backup copy on the Central Node server using the administrator menu or in Technical Support Mode:

How to restore data in the administrator menu if the Central Node is installed on a server

1. Sign in to the management console of the server whose data you want to restore over SSH or through a terminal.
2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **System administration** section.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action selection window.
5. In the list of actions, select **Backup/Restore settings**.
6. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the **Backup/Restore settings** window.
7. In the list of files containing backup copies of the application, select the file from which you want to restore the server data.

   If the necessary file is not listed, upload the file containing the backup copy to the server.
8. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action selection window.
9. In the list of actions, select **Restore <name of the backup file of the form: data_kata_<creation date and time of the backup copy>.tar>**
10. Press **Enter**.

    This opens the action confirmation window.
11. Click **Restore**.

    The process of restoring the server data from the backup copy starts.

The settings for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports are restored automatically if the names of network interfaces are the same on the server where the backup copy was created and on the server where data is being restored from the backup copy.

How to restore data in the administrator menu if the Central Node is installed as a cluster

1. Enter the management console of any functioning cluster server over SSH or using a terminal.
2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **Technical Support Mode** section.

4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

6. Specify the address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled:

   ```
   sudo docker node ls -q | sudo xargs docker node inspect -f '{{ if eq (index .Spec.Labels "infrastructure.span") "true" }}{{ .Description.Hostname }}{{ end }}'
   ```

   The address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled.

7. Log in to the management console of this server using the SSH protocol:

   ```
   ssh admin@<server address obtained at step 6>
   ```

8. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **System administration** section.

9. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the action selection window.

10. In the list of actions, select **Backup/Restore settings**.

11. Press **Enter**.

    This opens the **Backup/Restore settings** window.

12. In the list of files containing backup copies of the application, select the file from which you want to restore the server data.

    If the necessary file is not listed, upload the file containing the backup copy to the server.

13. Press **Enter**.

    This opens the action selection window.

14. In the list of actions, select **Restore <name of the backup file of the form: data_kata_<creation date and time of the backup copy>.tar>**

15. Press **Enter**.

    This opens the action confirmation window.

16. Click **Restore**.

    The process of restoring the server data from the backup copy starts.

The settings for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports are restored automatically if the names of network interfaces are the same on the server where the backup copy was created and on the server where data is being restored from the backup copy.

If the names of the network interfaces do not match, after performing step 11 of the instructions above, you will be prompted to select the network interfaces for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports.

How to restore data in Technical Support Mode if the Central Node is installed on a server

1. Sign in to the management console of the server whose data you want to restore over SSH or through a terminal.
2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **Technical Support Mode** section.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.
6. Run the following command:

   ```
   sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore restore
   ```

   You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

   You can use the `-h` command to receive tips on using parameters.

Data restoration parameters

Required parameter	Parameter	Command description
Yes	`-r <path>`	Restore data from a file containing a backup copy, where <path> is the full path to the backup file.
No	`-l <filepath>`	Save the command execution result to a file, where <filepath> is the name of the event log file, including the absolute path or relative path to the file.

Example:

Command for restoring the data from a backup copy:

```
sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore restore -r <path> -l <filepath>
```

The settings for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports are restored automatically if the names of network interfaces are the same on the server where the backup copy was created and on the server where data is being restored from the backup copy.

[How to restore data in Technical Support Mode if the Central Node is installed as a cluster]

1. Enter the management console of any functioning cluster server over SSH or using a terminal.
2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the **Technical Support Mode** section.
4. Press **Enter**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **Enter**.

6. Specify the address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled:

   ```
   sudo docker node ls -q | sudo xargs docker node inspect -f '{{ if eq (index .Spec.Labels "infrastructure.span") "true" }}{{ .Description.Hostname }}{{ end }}'
   ```

   The address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled.

7. Log in to the management console of this server using the SSH protocol:

   ```
   ssh admin@<server address obtained at step 6>
   ```

8. Start the data restoration process by running the following command:

   ```
   sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore restore
   ```

You can also specify one or multiple parameters for this command (see the table below).

You can use the `-h` command to receive tips on using parameters.

Data restoration parameters

Required parameter	Parameter	Command description
Yes	`-r <path>`	Restore data from a file containing a backup copy, where <path> is the full path to the backup file.
No	`-l <filepath>`	Save the command execution result to a file, where <filepath> is the name of the event log file, including the absolute path or relative path to the file.

Example:

Command for restoring the data from a backup copy:

```
sudo kata-run.sh kata-backup-restore restore -r <path> -l <filepath>
```

The settings for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports are restored automatically if the names of network interfaces are the same on the server where the backup copy was created and on the server where data is being restored from the backup copy.

If the names of the network interfaces do not match, after performing step 6 of the instructions above, you will be prompted to select the network interfaces for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports.

If the hardware configuration of the Central Node server on which the backup copy was created differs from the hardware configuration of the server on which you are planning to restore the server settings, you need to reconfigure the application scaling settings after restoring.

After restoring the data, you do not need to reconnect the SCNs to the PCN: the PCN connection settings and the list of connected SCNs are restored from the backup copy.

The backup copy of server settings does not contain PCAP files of recorded mirrored network traffic. You can save and restore PCAP files on your own by copying them from the /data/volumes/dumps directory of the connected storage. After restoring data, you must connect your external storage.

Limitation that applies when restoring data in distributed solution and multitenancy mode

After restoring data in the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, new alerts created by the AM technology may not be displayed in the table of alerts. You can check whether the limitation applies to you and take steps to fix it, if necessary.

To see if new alerts are being displayed in the table of alerts:

1. Enable the monitoring point for the Sensor that you are using.
2. If you are using a stand-alone Sensor, use SHH or a terminal to log in to the management console of that Sensor server.
3. If you are using the Embedded Sensor, log in to the management console of the Central Node server that hosts the Embedded Sensor over SSH or using a terminal.

   If the Central Node is deployed as a cluster, you need to log in to the management console of the worker server on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled.

   How to find out the address of this server

   1. Enter the management console of any functioning cluster server over SSH or using a terminal.
   2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application component.

      The application component administrator menu is displayed.
   3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the Technical Support Mode section.
   4. Press Enter.

      This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.
   5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select Yes and press Enter.
   6. Specify the address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled:

      ```
      sudo docker node ls -q | sudo xargs docker node inspect -f '{{ if eq (index
      .Spec.Labels "infrastructure.span") "true" }}{{ .Description.Hostname }}{{ end }}'
      ```

      The address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled.
   7. Log in to the management console of this server using the SSH protocol:

      ```
      ssh admin@<server address obtained at step 6>
      ```
4. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.
5. In the application administrator menu, select Technical Support Mode.
6. Press ENTER.
7. This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

8. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select Yes and press ENTER.

9. Run the following command:

```
watch "curl http://127.0.0.1:9191/metrics | grep
preprocessor_files_extracted_fromhttp"
```

If 0 is displayed for the *preprocessor_files_extracted_fromhttp* field, follow the steps below to remove the limitation.

To remove the limitation when using Embedded Sensor:

1. Log in to the management console of the Central Node server that hosts the Embedded Sensor over SSH or using a terminal.

   If the Central Node is deployed as a cluster, you need to log in to the management console of the worker server on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled.

   How to find out the address of this server

   1. Enter the management console of any functioning cluster server over SSH or using a terminal.

   2. When prompted, enter the user name and password of the administrator account of the application component.

      The application component administrator menu is displayed.

   3. In the list of sections of the application administrator menu, select the Technical Support Mode section.

   4. Press Enter.

      This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

   5. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select Yes and press Enter.

   6. Specify the address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled:

      ```
      sudo docker node ls -q | sudo xargs docker node inspect -f '{{ if eq (index
      .Spec.Labels "infrastructure.span") "true" }}{{ .Description.Hostname }}{{ end }}'
      ```

      The address of the worker server in the cluster on which mirrored SPAN traffic processing is enabled.

   7. Log in to the management console of this server using the SSH protocol:

      ```
      ssh admin@<server address obtained at step 6>
      ```

2. Raise the privileges of the user by running the following command:

   ```
   sudo -i
   ```

3. Run the following commands:

   ```
   kata-sensor-tool reset
   ```

   ```
   kata-sensor-tool reset-core
   ```

```
kata-sensor-tool init-embedded-sensor
```

4. Verify that a new alert is displayed in the table of alerts by following the steps of the instructions for checking new alerts.

The limitation is removed.

To remove the limitation when using a Sensor installed on a server separately from Central Node:

1. Delete the connected Sensor in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform web interface.
2. Log in to the management console of that Sensor via the SSH protocol or through a terminal.
3. Raise the privileges of the user by running the following command:

   ```
   sudo -i
   ```

4. Run the following command:

   ```
   kata-sensor-tool reset
   ```

5. Reconnect the Sensor to the Central Node.
6. Verify that a new alert is displayed in the table of alerts by following the steps of the instructions for checking new alerts.

The limitation is removed.

Contents of exported data

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform may contain user data and other confidential information. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator must take steps to ensure the security of this data when creating a backup copy, when replacing equipment on which the application is installed, or in other cases when it may be necessary to permanently delete data. The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator bears responsibility for access to data stored on application servers.

You can create a backup copy of the following data:

- The application database.
- Objects in Storage.
- Files from alerts generated during a rescan.
- Sandbox artifacts.
- Configuration files.
- Central Node settings.

Before restoring data from backup, the data listed above is cleared on the Central Node server on which you are recovering the application.

Contents and amount of data exported to create a backup copy

Data type	Exported data	Application operation mode	Deployment method

Central Node settings, including the TLS certificate of the server.
The application database on Central Node:
• Network traffic events
• Alerts and VIP statuses of alerts
• Risks and anomalies
• Scan exclusion rules
• Allow rules for NDR events
• Network traffic anomaly detection rules
• Dictionaries
• Information about files in Storage
• List of computers with Endpoint Agent
• Device information:
  • Inventory of devices
  • List of user accounts registered in the operating systems of the devices
  • List of executable files on devices
  • List of observables
  • Address spaces of devices
• Labels assigned to devices
• Information about the location of devices on the network interaction map
• General reports and report templates
• NDR reports and report templates
• User account data
• User activity log
• Network session data
• Topology map
• Notifications
• Settings of the Embedded Sensor.
	Central Node settings, if selected.
	Application databases, by default.
		Standalone Central Node server.	All deployment methods.

PCN connection settings List of connected SCNs	Yes	Distributed solution and multitenancy mode.	All deployment methods.
PCN settings, including the TLS certificate of the server.	Custom	Distributed solution and multitenancy mode.	All deployment methods.
SCN settings, including the TLS certificate of the server.	Custom As for a standalone Central Node server.	Distributed solution and multitenancy mode.	All deployment methods.

Data type	Exported data	Application operation mode	Deployment method

Application databases on the PCN:
• Network traffic events
• Alerts and VIP statuses of alerts
• Risks and anomalies
• Scan exclusion rules
• Allow rules for NDR events
• Network traffic anomaly detection rules
• Dictionaries
• Information about files in Storage
• List of computers with Endpoint Agent
• Device information:
  • Inventory of devices
  • List of user accounts registered in the operating systems of the devices
  • List of executable files on devices
  • List of observables
  • Address spaces of devices
• Labels assigned to devices
• Information about the location of devices on the network interaction map
• General reports and report templates
• NDR reports and report templates
• User account data
• User activity log
• Network session data
• Topology map
• Notifications
• Settings of the Embedded Sensor.
	Default	Distributed solution and multitenancy mode.	All deployment methods.

Configuration files (except for the MDR integration file).	Yes	All modes.	All deployment methods.
Backup	Custom	All modes.	Non-high-availability version.
Sandbox artifacts.	Custom	All modes.	Non-high-availability version.
Files from alerts generated during a rescan.	Custom	All modes.	Non-high-availability version.
Events database.	None.	All modes.	All deployment methods.
License keys.	None.	All modes.	All deployment methods.
SPAN traffic dumps	None.	All modes.	All deployment methods.
Settings for saving dumps of SPAN traffic to an external storage.	None.	All modes.	All deployment methods.
Network interface settings.	None.	All modes.	All deployment methods.
Settings of monitoring points added for the Embedded Sensor.	None.	All modes.	All deployment methods.
Settings of Sensors installed on a different server than the Central Node.	None.	All modes.	All deployment methods.
Settings and list of integration servers.	None.	All modes.	All deployment methods.
Settings and list of connectors.	None.	All modes.	All deployment methods.

Restoring the Embedded Sensor after restoring the application from a backup copy

If the network mask in the backup copy of the application does not match the network mask in the application that was used as the basis for the restoration, the Embedded Sensor encounters an error after the restoration. We recommend checking the current network mask to ascertain that the error is due to a mismatch.

To check the current value of the network mask,

Select the **Sensor servers** section of the application web interface.

The current value of the network mask is displayed on the component card under the name of the component. If the values do not match, follow the steps in the instructions to restore the Embedded Sensor.

After restoring the component, the settings for the ICAP integration with the proxy server and the SMTP and POP3 integrations with the mail server are reset. The settings for forwarding traffic from the Endpoint Agent to the Sensor server, if configured, are also reset.

To restore the Embedded Sensor:

1. Select the **Sensor servers** section in the window of the application web interface.
2. Click the card of the relevant component.

   This opens a window with information about the component.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. The component card is deleted.
5. Sign in to the management console of the Central Node server that hosted the relevant Embedded Sensor using SSH or a terminal.
6. Raise the privileges of the user by running the following command:

   ```
   sudo -i
   ```
7. Run the following commands:

   ```
   kata-sensor-tool reset
   kata-sensor-tool init-embedded-sensor
   ```

The Embedded Sensor is restored. Information about the component is displayed in the **Sensor servers** section.

If restoration fails, please contact Technical Support.

Upgrading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Before installing the upgrade package, we recommend first creating a backup of the current state of each Central Node server to be updated and downloading it to the hard drive from the application administrator menu. If installing an application upgrade package fails, or if you need to reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you can use the backup copy of the application.
We also recommend learning about the limitations of the version to which you are upgrading.

You cannot migrate from the non-high-availability version of the application to the high availability version by upgrading it — if you are using the non-high-availability version of the application, you can only install the non-high-availability version during the upgrade, and vice versa.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform version 8.0 does not include the KEDR functional unit. During the upgrade, all data associated with it will be deleted. If you are using the KEDR functional unit, we recommend migrating this data to the Open Single Management Platform system before upgrading. For details on data migration, see the Online Help of Kaspersky Endpoint Detection and Response Expert (on-premise).

When you upgrade the application to version 8.0.1, the following data is deleted:

- KEDR event database
- IOC files and their associated custom IOC rules
- TAA (IOA) rules
- Exclusions from TAA (IOA) rules
- Policies and prevention rules
- Tasks assigned to the Endpoint Agent computer
- Quarantine on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server and objects placed in it
- Notification rules for alerts generated as a result of scanning by the Targeted Attack Analyzer and IOC technologies.
- Check boxes for the Targeted Attack Analyzer and IOC technologies in the alert notification rules, if multiple technologies were selected when creating an alert rule, including these.
- Notification rules for the status of the TAA component.

Upgrading the application involves the following steps:

1. Upgrading the Sandbox component.

   The application does not have a procedure for upgrading the component. You must install version 8.0 of the component.

After installing the component, you need to set the maximum number of simultaneously running virtual machines. The default value is 48.

When installing the component on a VMware ESXi virtual machine, you must set up a configuration described in *Calculations for the Sandbox component* section.

2. Upgrading the Central Node component.

   - If the component is deployed on the Ubuntu operating system, you can upgrade the component in one of the following ways:

     - From version 7.1.3 or 7.1.7 to version 8.0

       In this case, follow one of the following instructions: *Upgrading Central Node installed on a server* or *Upgrading Central Node installed as a cluster*.

     - From version 8.0 to version 8.0.1

       In this case, you need to follow the instructions in the *Upgrading Central Node from version 8.0 to version 8.0.1* section.

   - If the component is deployed on the Astra Linux operating system, you can upgrade the component in one of the following ways:

     - From version 7.1.1 or 7.1.3 to version 8.0

       In this case, follow one of the following instructions: *Upgrading Central Node installed on a server* or *Upgrading Central Node installed as a cluster*.

     - From version 8.0 to version 8.0.1

       In this case, you need to follow the instructions in the *Upgrading Central Node from version 8.0 to version 8.0.1* section.

   Versions earlier than 8.0 cannot be upgraded to version 8.0.1. If you are using an older version of the application, you must upgrade Central Node to the specified versions in the following order: 3.7 → 3.7.1, 3.7.1 → 3.7.2, 3.7.2 → 4.0, 4.0 → 4.1, 4.1 → 5.0, 5.0 → 5.1, 5.1 → 6.0, 6.0 → 6.0.2, 6.0.2 → 6.1, 6.1 → 7.0.3, 7.0.3 → 7.1.1 / 7.1.2, 7.1.1 / 7.1.2 → 7.1.3, 7.1.3 → 7.1.7, 7.1.1, 7.1.3, 7.1.7 → 8.0.

   If you have connected and configured external storage for Embedded Sensor, after the update, you need to follow the steps of the *Restoring data in external storage for the Sensor component instructions.*

3. Upgrading the Sensor component installed on a standalone server.

   The application does not have a procedure for upgrading the component. You need to install version 8.0.1 of the component, keeping in mind the recommendations.

4. Upgrading the Endpoint Agent component:

   - Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Windows.
   - Kaspersky Endpoint Security for Linux.

If you are using email sensors, you do not need to upgrade them. After updating Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, integration with them is preserved.

Upgrading Central Node installed on a server

Before installing the application upgrade package, it is recommended to first create a backup of the current state of each Central Node server to be updated and download it to the hard drive from the application administrator menu. If installing an application upgrade package fails, or if you need to reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you can use the backup copy of the application.
We also recommend learning about the limitations of the version to which you are upgrading.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you need to upgrade each Central Node in accordance with the following procedure without disconnecting the SCNs from the PCN.

The disconnection of SCNs from the PCN is irreversible, you cannot reconnect an SCN to any PCN server.

You must first update the PCN first, then each SCN one by one. Upgrading SCNs before the PCN or upgrading multiple servers in parallel will cause the application to become inoperable.

The upgrade is delivered as an upgrade package. The package is included in the application distribution kit.

To upgrade Central Node installed on a server:

1. Remove integration servers if any have been added.

   We recommend saving the settings of removed integration servers in any convenient way. After upgrading the application, you can restore these settings manually.

   All steps described below must be performed on servers in Technical Support Mode after elevating user privileges using the `sudo -i` command.

2. If you have upgraded Central Node to version 7.0.3 from version 6.1 or earlier, run the following commands:

   ```
   rm -rf /data/upgrade/
   rm -rf /opt/upgrade_venv
   ```

   If you never upgraded to version 7.0.3, skip this step.

3. Place the application upgrade package on the Central Node server in the `/data` directory.

4. Sign in to the management console of the Central Node server where you want to perform the upgrade via SSH or through the terminal.

5. Make sure you have more than 100 GB of free space on the /dev/sda2 partition.

6. Unpack the upgrade archive:

   ```
   tar xvf /data/kata-upgrade-8.0.0.1-x86_64_en-ru-zh.tar.gz -C /data/
   ```

7. If you are upgrading Central Node from version 7.1.7, run the following command:

```
kata-allow-upgrade-from717
```

> If you are upgrading Central Node from a different version, skip this step.

8. Install the upgrade package by running the following commands:

   ```
   cd /data/upgrade/
   ./run_kata_upgrade.py
   ```

   The user name entry window is displayed.

9. In the displayed window, in the **Username** field, enter the name of the user with administrator rights, select the **OK** button and press **Enter**.

   Default value: **admin**.

10. In the displayed window, in the **Password** field, enter the password of the user with administrator rights, select the **OK** button and press **Enter**.

    This opens the window for entering the path to the update archive.

11. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Data directory** field, enter the path to the update archive, select the **OK** button and press **Enter**.

    Default value: **/data/upgrade**

12. In the displayed window, confirm the refusal to use the KEDR functionality.

13. In the displayed window, select the localization language for the NDR functionality.

    Parts of the application related to NDR functionality will be displayed in the selected language.

    After some time, the console will display a message prompting you to power off the server.

14. After the message prompting you to power off the server is displayed, run the following command:

    ```
    poweroff
    ```

15. Mount the Ubuntu-based ISO image of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform 8.0 (kata-cn-**8.0.0.1**-inst.x86_64_en-ru-zh.iso). If you are using Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform based on the Astra Linux operating system, follow the instructions to create an ISO image.

16. Boot from the device that has the mounted iso image.

17. In the GRUB bootloader menu, select one of the following commands:

    - When upgrading a Central Node deployed on Astra Linux:
      - select **Upgrade 7.1.1.530** if you are upgrading the component from version 7.1.1
      - select **Upgrade 7.1.3.533** if you are upgrading the component from version 7.1.3 or 7.1.7
    - When updating a Central Node deployed on the Ubuntu operating system, select **Upgrade 7.1.3.533** if you are upgrading a component from version 7.1.1, 7.1.3, or 7.1.7.

18. Follow the remaining steps of the wizard to complete the upgrade on the server.

The Central Node component is upgraded.

After upgrading, you must log in again to the Central Node server management console over SSH or through the terminal.

If, after upgrading a Central Node component that has been used in distributed solution and multi-tenancy mode to version 8.0, the Embedded Sensor is missing, you need to restore its functionality by removing the limitations.

Upgrading Central Node installed as a cluster

Before installing the application upgrade package, it is recommended to first create a backup of the current state of each Central Node server to be updated and download it to the hard drive from the application administrator menu. If installing an application upgrade package fails, or if you need to reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you can use the backup copy of the application.
We also recommend learning about the limitations of the version to which you are upgrading.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you need to upgrade each Central Node in accordance with the following procedure without disconnecting the SCNs from the PCN.

The disconnection of SCNs from the PCN is irreversible, you cannot reconnect an SCN to any PCN server.

You must first update the PCN first, then each SCN one by one. Upgrading SCNs before the PCN or upgrading multiple servers in parallel will cause the application to become inoperable.

The upgrade is delivered as an upgrade package. The package is included in the application distribution kit.

To upgrade Central Node installed as a cluster:

1. Remove integration servers if any have been added.
2. We recommend saving the settings of removed integration servers in any convenient way. After upgrading the application, you can restore these settings manually.

   All steps described below must be performed on servers in Technical Support Mode after elevating user privileges using the `sudo -i` command.

3. If you upgraded Central Node to version 7.0.3 from version 6.1 or earlier, go to the cluster server where the 7.0.3 upgrade package was placed and run the following commands:

   ```
   rm -rf /data/upgrade/
   rm -rf /opt/upgrade_venv
   ```

   If you never upgraded to version 7.0.3, skip this step.

4. Log in to any of the storage servers in the Central Node cluster and check if the Ceph storage is working. To do so, execute the following command:

```
ceph -s | grep health:
```

The Ceph storage is healthy if the following value is returned:

```
health: HEALTH_OK
```

If the value is different from `health: HEALTH_OK`, please contact Technical Support.

5. Log in to each of the storage servers and restart the kata-osd-starter service:

   ```
   systemctl restart kata-osd-starter
   ```

6. Make sure the Kafka service is working:

   a. Find out which servers in the cluster have the 'manager' role in Docker swarm. To do this, run the following command on any of the cluster servers:

      ```
      docker node ls
      ```

      A list of cluster servers is displayed. Look at the `MANAGER STATUS` column in the list: if a server has `Leader` or `Reachable` in that column, it means it has the 'manager' role.

   b. Run the following command:

      ```
      docker service ps kata_product_main_1_schema_registry
      ```

      Look at the value in the `NODE` column to determine which server has the Schema Registry.

   c. Log in to the server with the Schema Registry and run the following command:

      ```
      docker exec -it $(docker ps | grep schema_registry | awk '{ print $1 }') curl http://127.0.0.1:8081/subjects
      ```

      If you get a JSON with a list of subjects, it means the Kafka service is working.

7. Place the application upgrade package on the Central Node cluster server with the manager role in the Docker swarm, in the `/data` directory. To view the role, use the `$ docker node ls` command.

8. Enter the management console of the relevant server over SSH or through a terminal.

9. Make sure you have more than 100 GB of free space on the /dev/sda2 partition on each server in the cluster.

10. Unpack the upgrade archive:

    ```
    tar xvf /data/kata-upgrade-8.0.0.1-x86_64_en-ru-zh.tar.gz -C /data/
    ```

11. If you are upgrading Central Node from version 7.1.7, run the following command:

    ```
    kata-allow-upgrade-from717
    ```

    > If you are upgrading Central Node from a different version, skip this step.

12. Install the upgrade package by running the following commands:

    ```
    cd /data/upgrade/
    ./run_kata_upgrade.py
    ```

    The user name entry window is displayed.

13. In the **Username** field, enter the name of the user with administrator rights, select the **OK** button and press **Enter**.

    Default value: **admin**.

14. In the **Password** field, enter the password of the user with administrator rights, select the **OK** button, and press **Enter**.

    This opens the window for entering the path to the update archive.

15. In the **Data directory** field, enter the path to the update archive, select the **OK** button, and press **Enter**.

    Default value: **/data/upgrade**.

16. In the displayed window, confirm the refusal to use the KEDR functionality.

17. In the displayed window, select the localization language for the NDR functionality.

    Parts of the application related to NDR functionality will be displayed in the selected language.

    After some time, the console will display a message prompting you to power off the server.

18. Connect to the server that you want to power off over SSH or through a terminal.

19. Run the `poweroff` command.

20. Mount the Ubuntu-based ISO image of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform 8.0 (kata-cn-8.0.0.1-inst.x86_64_en-ru-zh.iso). If you are using Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform based on the Astra Linux operating system, follow the instructions to create an ISO image.

21. Boot from the device that has the mounted iso image.

22. In the GRUB bootloader menu, select one of the following commands:

    - When upgrading a Central Node deployed on Astra Linux:
      - select **Upgrade 7.1.1.530** if you are upgrading the component from version 7.1.1
      - select **Upgrade 7.1.3.533** if you are upgrading the component from version 7.1.3 or 7.1.7
    - When updating a Central Node deployed on the Ubuntu operating system, select **Upgrade 7.1.3.533** if you are upgrading a component from version 7.1.1, 7.1.3, or 7.1.7.

23. Follow the remaining steps of the wizard to complete the upgrade on the server.

24. After the upgrade is complete, go to the console of the server you connected to at step 8, type `next`, and press **`Enter`**.

    A script is started that completes the upgrade process. After the update is complete, the console displays a message telling you to shut down the next server in the cluster.

25. Repeat steps 18 to 24 for each server in the cluster.

    > The last server to be updated is the server to which you connected at step 8. For that server, step 24 is omitted.

The Central Node component is upgraded.

> After updating the component, you must log in again to the Central Node server management console over SSH or through the terminal.

If, after upgrading a Central Node component that has been used in distributed solution and multi-tenancy mode to version 8.0.1, the Embedded Sensor is missing, you need to restore its functionality by removing the limitations.

Upgrading Central Node from version 8.0 to version 8.0.1

Before installing the application upgrade package, it is recommended to first create a backup of the current state of each Central Node server to be updated and download it to the hard drive from the application administrator menu. If installing an application upgrade package fails, or if you need to reinstall Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, you can use the backup copy of the application.
We also recommend learning about the limitations of the version to which you are upgrading.

If you are using the distributed solution and multitenancy mode, you need to upgrade each Central Node in accordance with the following procedure without disconnecting the SCNs from the PCN.

The disconnection of SCNs from the PCN is irreversible, you cannot reconnect an SCN to any PCN server.

The upgrade is delivered as an upgrade package. The package is included in the application distribution kit.

To update Central Node:

1. If Central Node is installed on a server:

   a. Place the application upgrade package on the Central Node server in the `/data` directory.

   b. Sign in to the management console of the Central Node server where you want to perform the upgrade via SSH or through the terminal.

2. If Central Node is installed as a cluster:

   a. Place the application upgrade package on the Central Node cluster server with the manager role in the Docker swarm, in the `/data` directory. To view the role, use the `$ docker node ls` command.

   b. Enter the management console of the relevant server over SSH or through a terminal.

3. Before extracting the archive, delete the `upgrade` directory by running the following command:

   ```
   rm -rf /data/upgrade
   ```

4. Make sure that the /dev/sda2 file system has more than 140 GB of free space.

5. Unpack the upgrade archive:

   ```
   tar xvf /data/kata-upgrade-8.0.1.1-x86_64_en-ru-zh.tar.gz -C /data/
   ```

6. Install the upgrade package by running the following commands:

   ```
   cd /data/upgrade/
   ./run_kata_upgrade.py --patch-version 801
   ```

   The user name entry window is displayed.

7. In the displayed window, in the **Username** field, enter the name of the user with administrator rights, select the **OK** button and press **Enter**.

   Default value: **admin**.

8. In the displayed window, in the **Password** field, enter the password of the user with administrator rights, select the **OK** button and press **Enter**.

   This opens the window for entering the path to the update archive.

9. This opens a window; in that window, in the **Data directory** field, enter the path to the update archive, select the **OK** button and press **Enter**.

   Default value: **/data/upgrade**

10. In the displayed window, select the localization language for the NDR functionality.

    Parts of the application related to NDR functionality will be displayed in the selected language.

11. Delete the temporary files of the installer by running the following command:

    ```
    rm -rf /data/upgrade /data/install_data
    ```

    If you are upgrading a Central Node deployed as a cluster, this command must be run on each server in the cluster.

The Central Node component is upgraded.

After the update is complete, we recommend restarting all updated Central Nodes. If Central Node is installed as a cluster, we recommend restarting all cluster servers one by one.

Restoring the Embedded Sensor after the upgrade in distributed solution and multitenancy mode

Embedded Sensor may be missing after upgrading a Central Node component that had been used in the distributed solution and multitenancy mode to version 7.1.1, 7.1.2, or 7.1.3.

To remove the limitation:

1. If, after upgrading the Central Node component, the Embedded Sensor is present but dsabled, remove Sensor in the web interface.

2. Sign in to the management console of the Central Node server on which you want to upgrade the Embedded Sensor over SSH or using a terminal.

3. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

4. In the application administrator menu, select Technical Support Mode.

5. Press **ENTER**.

6. This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

7. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **ENTER**.

8. Run the following command:

   ```
   docker service update --cap-add=CAP_DAC_OVERRIDE --cap-add=CAP_IPC_LOCK --cap-add=CAP_SYS_PTRACE kata_product_main_1_preprocessor_span
   ```

9. If the Embedded Sensor was not restored, clear the databases by running the following command:

   ```
   kata-sensor-tool reset-core
   ```

   The Embedded Sensor is restored after approximately one minute.

Upgrading Sensor installed on a standalone server

The application does not have a standard upgrade procedure. You must install the component version 8.0.1.

The following recommendations apply to installing the component:

1. Save the settings of the Sensor component in a convenient format; for example, you can make screenshots. If you use BPF and Regexp traffic filtering, we recommend saving the filtering rules to a file.

2. Install the Sensor component.

3. Connect the installed Sensor component to the Central Node component.

4. Manually restore your saved settings of the Sensor component.

5. Connect the external storage.

6. Follow the steps of the *Restoring data in external storage for the Sensor component* instructions to restore data saved in the storage while using the previous version of the application.

Restoring data on external storage connected to the Sensor component

To restore data on external storage connected to the Sensor component

1. If you want to restore data to an external storage connected to the Embedded Sensor, use SSH or a terminal to log in to the management console of the Central Node server where the Embedded Sensor is located.

2. If you want to restore data to an external storage connected to a Sensor component that is installed separately from the Central Node, use SSH or a terminal to log in to the management console of the Sensor server.

3. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was specified during installation of the component.

   The application component administrator menu is displayed.

4. In the application administrator menu, select **Technical Support Mode**.

5. Press **ENTER**.

   This opens the Technical Support Mode confirmation window.

6. Confirm that you want to manage the application in Technical Support Mode. To do so, select **Yes** and press **ENTER**.

7. Run the following command:

   find /data/volumes/dumps/traffic -depth -maxdepth 2 -mindepth 2 -type f -exec mv {} /data/volumes/dumps/traffic \;

Data in external storage is restored.

Contents and amount of information kept when upgrading the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Information about the contents and amount of data kept when upgrading Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to version 8.0.1 is provided in the following table.

Contents and volume of data saved when upgrading the application to version 8.0.1

Data type	Data saved during upgrade

Central Node or PCN settings	All data except:
	• License keys
	• Connectors that **do not** satisfy the following conditions:
	  • Connector type: managed
	  • Host node: Central Node with SPAN traffic processing enabled or with a Embedded Sensor
	  • IP address of the Central Node server: 127.0.0.1
	• Embedded Sensor settings
	• Settings for integration with the Sensor component
	• Settings for integration with the Sandbox component
	• Settings for integration with KSN, KPSN, and MDR
	• Settings for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports in the high availability version of Central Node
	• Recorded dumps of mirrored network traffic from SPAN ports

Application databases on the Central Node or PCN (alert database, NDR event database, application performance monitoring data, custom rule database, Storage, information about devices (including information about device users, executable files, and address spaces), network sessions, network interaction map, risk and anomaly data, application messages, audit log).	All data except: • Files in the scan queue when Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is upgraded • Files in the rescan queue when Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is upgraded • Dashboard customization settings • Integration server settings • Endpoint Agent settings • Alert data older than 360 days at the time when the update is installed. Data of alerts less than 360 days old is kept.
Events database.	All data.

Data type	Data saved during upgrade
Storage and quarantine	All data.
Sandbox artifacts.	All data.

Managing application components in the administrator menu

Before entering the administrator menu, make sure the following is true:

- Access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator menu and server management console is possible only from computers to which you have granted such access.
- Computers to which you grant access are inside the secure perimeter of your network.

  You can configure access to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform administrator menu and server management console from certain computers using the iptables command-line utility. For detailed information about managing iptables, see the iptables documentation.

To get started in the component administrator menu:

1. Use SSH or a terminal to log in to the management console of the Central Node or Sandbox server.
2. When the system prompts you, enter the administrator user name and the password that was set during the installation of the application.

   The component administrator menu is displayed.

How to use the administrator menu

To move between menu items, press the **Up** and **Down** arrow keys.

To enter to the selected menu section, press the **ENTER** key.

To go back to the previous menu level, select **Go back** and press the **ENTER** key.

To apply the settings, select **Apply changes** and press the **ENTER** key.

To select horizontally arranged confirmation buttons, press the **Right** and **Left** arrow keys.

To press the selected button, press the **ENTER** key.

To finish, select **Logout**.

Central Node administrator menu

The following options are available in the Central Node administrator menu:

- Read the End User License Agreement, KSN Statement, Privacy Policy, or information about third-party code:

  Legal information → Show EULA

  Legal information → Show KSN statement

Legal information → Show privacy policy

Legal information → Third-party code

- Select network protocols for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

  Program settings → Configure traffic capture → Setup capture protocols

  By default, receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports is enabled for all network protocols except **HTTP2**.

- Resize the temporary storage for incoming traffic:

  Program settings → Configure storage → Changing the size of the traffic hot ring

- Resize the file storage:

  Program settings → Configure storage → Changing the size of the file storage

  The **Changing the size of the traffic hot ring** and **Changing the size of the file storage** sections provide information about the current storage size for incoming traffic and the maximum file size that can be placed in the storage. These values are calculated automatically when you configure the application sizing. We strongly recommend **against** changing these values.

- Configure the retention period for system logs and detections:

  Program settings → Configure storage period for detects and logs → Change storage period

- Configure the network interface:

  Network settings → Interface configuration → <network interface> → Configuration type

- Configure the date and time on the server:

  Date and time settings → Now: <date and time> → Change date

  Date and time settings → Now: <date and time> → Change time

- Change the time zone of the server:

  Date and time settings → Configure timezone

- Enable or disable synchronization with NTP servers:

  Date and time settings → Enable NTP synchronization

- Add or remove an NTP server:

  Date and time settings → NTP: <N> item(s) → New (add a new NTP server)

  Date and time settings → NTP: <N> item(s) → <NTP server> (remove a previously added NTP server)

- View server SSH keys:

  System administration → Show SSH host keys

- Back up server data:

  System administration → Backup/Restore settings → New

- Restore data from backup:

  System administration → Backup/Restore settings → <backup file name>

- Change administrator password:

  System administration → Change admin password

- Enter Technical Support Mode:

  Technical Support Mode

- Download system logs or delete previously downloaded logs:

  Download system logs → **New** (download a new system log)

  Download system logs → **<system log>** (delete a previously downloaded system log)

- Restart the server:

  Reboot the machine

- Power off the server:

  Power-off the machine

- Finish managing the administrator menu and log out:

  Logout

Sensor administrator menu

If you selected network protocols to get mirrored traffic from SPAN ports, configured the size of file storage or the traffic capture bandwidth on the standalone Sensor **before** connecting it to the Central Node and want to change these settings **after** connecting, you need to follow the steps to prepare to changing the settings. After completing the preparation, you can change the settings.

The following options are available in the Sensor administrator menu:

- Read the End User License Agreement, KSN Statement, Privacy Policy, or information about third-party code:

  Legal information → **Show EULA**

  Legal information → **Show KSN statement**

  Legal information → **Show privacy policy**

  Legal information → **Third-party code**

- View the TLS certificate used by the server:

  Program settings → **Manage server certificate** → **View certificate info**

- Apply a previously uploaded TLS certificate:

  Program settings → **Manage server certificate** → **Install from file**

- Generate a new TLS certificate for the server:

  Program settings → **Manage server certificate** → **Generate new**

- Download the TLS certificate used by the server:

  Program settings → **Manage server certificate** → **Get current certificate**

- Select network protocols for receiving mirrored traffic from SPAN ports:

  Program settings → **Configure traffic capture** → **Setup capture protocols**

  By default, receipt of mirrored traffic from SPAN ports is enabled for all network protocols except **HTTP2**.

- Configure traffic capture bandwidth:
  Program settings → Configure traffic capture → Traffic capture bandwidth (Mbps)
- Limit the size of files sent for scanning to Central Node:
  Program settings → Configure object processing → File size limit
- Resize the file storage:
  Program settings → Configure storage → Changing the size of the file storage
- Resize the temporary storage for incoming traffic:
  Program settings → Configure storage → Changing the size of the traffic hot ring

  This section informs you about the current size of the storage for incoming traffic. The storage size is calculated automatically when you configure the application sizing. We strongly recommend **against** changing this value.

- Configure the retention period for system logs and detections:
  Program settings → Configure storage period for detects and logs → Change storage period
- Enable or disable the use of a proxy server:
  Program settings → Configure Proxy → Enabled
- Set the proxy server IP address:
  Program settings → Configure Proxy → Host
- Set the proxy server port:
  Program settings → Configure Proxy → Port
- Set the user name for authentication at the proxy server:
  Program settings → Configure Proxy → Username
- Edit proxy server integration settings:
  Program settings → Configure Proxy → Edit
- Enable or disable the use of a proxy server when connecting to local network addresses:
  Program settings → Configure Proxy → Local addresses
- Configure the network interface:
  Network settings → Interface configuration → <network interface> → Configuration type
- Configure DNS:
  Network settings → DNS resolver configuration
- Configure the date and time on the server:
  Date and time settings → Now: <date and time> → Change date
  Date and time settings → Now: <date and time> → Change time
- Change the time zone of the server:
  Date and time settings → Configure timezone

- Enable or disable synchronization with NTP servers:
  Date and time settings → Enable NTP synchronization
- Add or remove an NTP server:
  Date and time settings → NTP: <N> item(s) → New (add a new NTP server)
  Date and time settings → NTP: <N> item(s) → <NTP server> (remove a previously added NTP server)
- Change administrator password:
  Passwords → Change the system administrative account password
- View server SSH keys:
  System administration → Show SSH host keys
- Configure SNMP connection:
  System administration → SNMPd monitoring settings
- Enter Technical Support Mode:
  Technical Support Mode
- Download system logs or delete previously downloaded logs:
  Download system logs → New (download a new system log)
  Download system logs → <system log> (delete a previously downloaded system log)
- Restart the server:
  Reboot the machine
- Power off the server:
  Power-off the machine
- Finish managing the administrator menu and log out:
  Logout

Sandbox administrator menu

The following options are available in the Sandbox administrator menu:

- Enter Technical Support Mode:
  Technical Support Mode
- Configure network interfaces:
  Network settings → Management interface
- Configure internet access from virtual machines in Sandbox:
  Network settings → Malware interface
- Configure network routes:
  Network settings → IPv4 Routes

- Configure DNS:

  Network settings → DNS Settings

- Change administrator password:

  Change the system administrative account password

- Restart the server:

  Reboot the machine

- Power off the server:

  Power-off the machine

- Finish managing the administrator menu and log out:

  Logout

Using the KATA API

You can configure the integration of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform with external systems to scan files stored in such systems and to provide access to information about all alerts of the application to the external systems.

API method calls are available only to authorized external systems. For authorization, the application administrator must create a request to integrate the external system with the application. Then the administrator must process the request in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

If you have deployed the Central Node and Sensor components as a cluster, you can configure high availability integration with an external system using one of the following options:

- Using the Round Robin function.
- Configure the external system so that if a timeout occurs, the external system switches between the IP addresses of the cluster servers.

To configure high availability integration with an external system using the Round Robin function:

1. Configure Round Robin on the DNS server for the domain name corresponding to the Central Node cluster.
2. Specify this domain name in the mail server settings.

Integration with the external system is configured based on the domain name. The external system will communicate with a random server in the cluster. If this server fails, the external system will communicate with another healthy server in the cluster.

Integrating an external system with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

To start working with the API, you need to integrate an external system with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. The external system must complete authorization on the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform server.

To integrate an external system with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform:

1. Generate a unique identifier of the external system for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform – `sensorId`.

2. Generate a certificate for the external system server.

3. Create any request containing a `sensorId` from the external system in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. For example, you can create a request to scan an object from an external system in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

   The web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform will display the request for authorization from the external system. Contact the application administrator to process the request.

If you need to change the external system server certificate, repeat the steps for integrating the external system with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

API for scanning objects of external systems

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides the HTTPS REST interface for scanning objects saved in external systems.

For scanning objects stored in external systems, the following Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform interaction scenario is recommended:

1. **Creating a request for scanning objects using the `HTTP POST` method**

2. **Creating a request for scan results using the HTTP `GET` method**

   The API interface is asynchronous, which means that Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform scans objects in the background instead of immediately upon request of the external system. For this reason, you must periodically send a request from the external system using the HTTP `GET` method to receive the scan results. The recommended frequency for sending a request is once per minute.

   You can also configure forwarding of notifications about detected objects in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

3. **Creating a request to delete scan results using the HTTP method `DELETE`**

   You can delete the results of scanning a specified object or all objects.

Working with a cluster

If the external system consists of several servers that are combined into a cluster, it is recommended to use one ID (`sensorId`) for all servers. If this is the case, a single integration request will be displayed for the entire system in the web interface of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. If it is necessary to differentiate the receipt of scan results over individual servers, you can assign a unique instance ID (`sensorInstanceId`) to each server.

Limitations

The maximum allowed number of object scan requests from external systems and the maximum allowed size of a scanned object are set in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform configuration file.

If the maximum allowed number of simultaneous object scan requests is exceeded, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not process further requests until the number of object scan requests is less than the maximum allowed number. Until this condition is met, the return code 429 is issued. You must try the scan request again later.

If the maximum allowed object size is exceeded, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform does not scan the object. Return code 413 is generated when the HTTP `POST` method is created. You can find out the maximum allowed size of an object by using the `GET` method to view the list of object scan restrictions.

Request to scan objects

To create a request for scanning objects, the HTTP `POST` method is used. You can create a request by using the cURL command-line utility, for example.

You can set the parameters for executing a cURL command by using additional switches (see the table below).

Please refer to the cURL documentation for more information about cURL command switches.

Command syntax

```
curl --cert <path to the TLS certificate file> --key <path to the private key file> -X
POST "<URL of the server with the Central Node component>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/<sensorId>/scans?sensorInstanceId=<sensorInstanceId>" -F
"content=<path to the file that you want to scan>" -F scanId=<scan request ID> -F
"objectType=file"
```

If the request is processed successfully, the `OK` status will be displayed.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`sensorId`	UUID	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`content`	file	Contents of the scanned object.
`scanId`	string	Unique ID of the scan request. It must be generated in the external system. It cannot contain spaces or special characters. Do not use file names as a scan request ID. If this parameter is not defined, viewing scan results is not available.

Parameter	Type	Description
`objectType`	string	Type of scanned object. Possible value of the parameter: `file`.
`sensorInstanceId`	string	Unique ID of the external system instance. Servers combined into a cluster are also considered to be instances of an external system. This parameter is optional.

Returned value

Return code	Description
`200`	Request to scan objects successfully created.
`401`	Authorization required.
`429`	Number of requests exceeded. Repeat the request later.
`500`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Example of entering a command with switches

```
curl --cert /root/cert.pem --key /root/server.key -
X POST "https://10.10.10.1:443/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/dd11a1ee-a00b-111c-b11a-11001b1f1111/scans?
sensorInstanceId=instance1" -F "content=@/tmp/test" -F scanId=1 -F "objectType=file"
```

Request for scan results

To create a request for receiving scan results, the HTTP `GET` method is used. You can create a request by using the cURL command-line utility, for example.

You can set the parameters for executing a cURL command by using additional switches (see the table below).

Please refer to the cURL documentation for more information about cURL command switches.

Command syntax

```
curl --cert <path to the TLS certificate file> --key <path to the private key file> -X
GET "<URL of the server with the Central Node component>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/<sensorId>/scans/state?sensorInstanceId=
<sensorInstanceId>&state=<one or more scan statuses that you want to display in scan
results>"
```

If the request is sent successfully, a list of requests for scanning objects and the results of scanning these objects will be displayed. The scan results will be filtered by the statuses that you specified in the `state` parameter. For example, if you specified `state=processing,detect` in the request for scan results, the application will display only the object scan requests that are being processed or in which the application has detected a threat.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`sensorId`	string	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`state`	array (string element type)	Object scan status. When this parameter is defined, the scan results will be filtered by status. Indicate one or more statuses separated by commas. The following parameter values are available: • `detect` • `not detected` • `processing` • `timeout` • `error`
`sensorInstanceId`	string	Unique ID of the external system instance. Servers combined into a cluster are also considered to be instances of an external system. This parameter is optional.

Response

HTTP code: 200

Format: JSON

```
type Response []Scans

type Scans struct {
ScanID integer `json:"scanId"`
State array `json:"state"`
}
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
`204`	No contents.
`404`	No scan results found for the specified ID.
`500`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Example of entering a command with switches if you want to display all object scan statuses in the scan results

```
curl --cert /root/cert.pem --key /root/server.key -X GET "https://10.10.10.1:443/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/dd11a1ee-a00b-111c-b11a-11001b1f1111/scans/state?sensorInstanceId=instance1&state=detect,not%20detected,processing,error,timeout"
```

Request to delete scan results

To create a request to delete the scan results for one or more objects, use the `DELETE` method. You can create a request by using the cURL command-line utility, for example.

Command syntax

```
curl --cert <path to the TLS certificate file> --key <path to the private key file> -X
DELETE "<URL of the server with the Central Node component>:<port, 443 by
default>/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/<sensorId>/scans/<scanId>"
```

If the request is processed successfully, the object scan results will be deleted. The `OK` status is displayed.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`sensorId`	string	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`scanId`	string	Unique ID of the object scan request. If this parameter is not defined, the scan results for all objects will be deleted.

Returned value

Return code	Description
`200`	Request to delete scan results successfully created.
`401`	Authorization required.
`404`	No scan results found for the specified ID.
`500`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Command input example

```
curl --cert /root/cert.pem --key /root/server.key -
X DELETE "https://10.10.10.1:443/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/dd11a1ee-a00b-111c-b11a-11001b1f1111/scans/1"
```

Request to display object scan restrictions

To create a request to display the application's restrictions on scanning objects (for example, by size), the HTTP `GET` method is used. You can create a request by using the cURL command-line utility, for example.

Command syntax

```
curl --cert <path to the TLS certificate file> --key <path to the private key file> -X GET "<URL of the server with the Central Node component>:<port, 443 by default>/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/<sensorId>/scans/filters"
```

If the request is processed successfully, the application's object scan restrictions will be displayed. For example, the `maxObjectSize` restriction is the maximum allowed size of an object that you can submit for scanning.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`sensorId`	string	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Response

HTTP code: 200

Format: JSON

```
type Response struct {
MaxObjectSize integer `json:"maxObjectSize"`
Version string `json:"version"`
}
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
`401`	Authorization required.
`500`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Command input example

```
curl --cert /root/cert.pem --key /root/server.key -X GET "https://10.10.10.1:443/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/dd11a1ee-a00b-111c-b11a-11001b1f1111/scans/filters"
```

API that external systems can use to receive information about application alerts

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform provides an API that lets external systems access information about all alerts of the application and not just to scan results for objects stored in these external systems.

In order to receive information only for alerts that satisfy certain conditions, you can specify filters in the request parameters.

> The application does not automatically send information about new alerts based on prior requests. A new request must be sent to receive up-to-date information.

Special considerations for operation in the distributed solution

If the application runs in distributed solution mode, you must separately configure the integration with the external system for each PCN and SCN server from which you want to receive information about alerts. This limitation is due to the fact that the web interface of the PCN server displays information about all alerts, but the alerts database stores only those alerts that have been registered on that specific server.

Request to display alert information

You can create a request for information about alerts generated as a result of scanning by the following technologies:

- Anti-Malware Engine
- Sandbox
- YARA
- URL Reputation
- Intrusion Detection System
- Intrusion Detection System (NDR)
- Aggregated Alerts (NDR)

To create a request for information about Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform alerts, the HTTP `GET` method is used. You can create a request by using the cURL command-line utility, for example.

Command syntax

```
curl --cert <path to the TLS certificate file> --key <path to the private key file> -X GET "<URL of the server with the Central Node component>:<port, 443 by default>/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/<sensorId>/detects?detect_type=<one or more technologies that were used to generate the alert>&limit=<number of alerts in the response to the request>&token=<request ID>"
```

If the request is processed successfully, you will see a list of alerts generated by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform on the server of the external system.

Settings

Parameter	Type	Description
`sensorId`	String	Unique ID of the external system used for authorization in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
`detect_type`	Array	The technology that created the alert while scanning. You can specify a comma-separated list of technologies. Possible values: • `am` – Anti-Malware Engine • `sb` – Sandbox • `yara` – YARA • `url_reputation` – URL Reputation • `ids` – Intrusion Detection System • `NDR_Ids` – Intrusion Detection System (NDR) • `NDR_External` – Aggregated Alerts (NDR) If this parameter is not specified, information about all alerts listed above is provided.
`limit`	Integer	Number of objects for which information is provided in response to the request. Allowed values: integers from 1 to 10,000. The default value is `1000`.
`token`	String	Request ID. If this parameter is specified, a repeated request does not show alert information that was obtained by prior requests. This helps avoid the duplication of information about the same alerts in case of repeated requests. If this parameter is not specified, information about all alerts is provided.

Response

HTTP code: 200

Format: JSON

```
type Response struct {
Detects array `json:"detects"`
Token string `json:"token"`
}
```

Returned value

Return code	Description
`400`	Incorrect parameters.
`429`	Number of requests exceeded.
`401`	Authorization required.
`500`	Internal server error. Repeat the request later.

Example of entering a command with switches

```
curl --cert /root/cert.pem --key /root/server.key -X GET "https://10.10.10.1:443/kata/scanner/v1/sensors/dd11a1ee-a00b-111c-b11a-11001b1f1111/detects?detect_type=am,sb&limit=100&token=7b226f6666736574223a20307d"
```

Scope of transmitted data

Information that is transmitted for each detection is listed in the following table.

Scope of information transmitted for an alert

Parameter	Value	Description
`alertID`	Integer value.	Alert ID.
`eventTimeStamp`	Date and time.	Event time.
`detectTimestamp`	Date and time.	Time when alert information was recorded in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform database.
`importance`	One of the following values: • `high` • `medium` • `low`	Alert importance.
`objectSource`	One of the following values: • `web` • `mail` • `endpoint` • `external` • `dns`	Source of the detected object.
`technology`	One of the following values: • `am` – Anti-Malware Engine • `sb` – Sandbox • `yara` – YARA • `url_reputation` – URL Reputation • `ids` – Intrusion Detection System	Technology that was used to detect the object.
`objectType`	One of the following values: • `file`. • `email`. • `host` (for remote domains or hosts).	Type of detected object. If detection is performed during a email scan (`email` object type), detection details may also contain the following: • `mailFrom` – source address of the message • `rcptTo` – destination address of the message
`object`	Depends on the type of detected object.	Data on the detected object.

Parameter	Value	Description
detection	Depends on the technology that was used to detect the object.	Data on detected threats.
details	Depends on the source of detected object.	Data on the environment of detected objects.

Data on detected objects

The scope of transmitted data on detected objects depending on the type of the object is listed in the following table.

Data on detected objects

	Parameter	Data type	Description	Example
file	processedObject.MD5	MD5	MD5 hash of the file or composite object that was sent for scanning.	1839a1e9621c58dadf782e131df3821f
	processedObject.SHA256	SHA256	SHA256 hash of the file or composite object that was sent for scanning.	7bbfc1d690079b0c591e146c4294305da1cee857e12db40f431
	processedObject.fileName	String	Name of the file or composite object that was sent for scanning.	EICAR-CURE.com
	processedObject.fileType	String	Type of the file or composite object that was sent for scanning.	GeneralTxt
	processedObject.fileSize	Integer	Size of the file or composite object that was sent for scanning, in bytes.	184
	detectedObject.MD5	MD5	MD5 hash of the file (simple object or file within a composite object) in which the threat was detected.	1839a1e9621c58dadf782e131df3821f
	detectedObject.fileName	String	Name of the file (simple object or file within a composite object) in which the threat was detected.	EICAR-CURE.com
	detectedObject.fileSize	Integer	Size of the file (simple object or file within a composite object) in which the threat was detected, in bytes.	184

	Parameter	Data type	Description	Example
URL	detectedObject	String	URL of the detected object.	http://example.com/link
host	detectedObject	Array	List of domains to which detected objects belong. For the URL technology, as well as for objects with the objectSource=dns parameter, the list can contain several domains.	example.org, example.net

Data on detected threats

The scope of transmitted data on detected threats depending on the technology that was used to generate the alert is listed in the table below.

Data on detected threats

Technology	Parameter	Description	Data type	Example
One of the following technologies: • Anti-Malware Engine. • YARA. • Intrusion Detection System.	detect	List of detected threats.	Array	HEUR:Trojan.Win32.Generic, Trojan-DDoS.Win32.Macri.avy, UDS:DangerousObject.Multi.Generic
	dataBaseVersion	Version of databases used to scan the file.	Integer	201811190706
Sandbox	detect	List of detected threats.	Array	HEUR:Trojan.Win32.Generic, Trojan-DDoS.Win32.Macri.avy, UDS:DangerousObject.Multi.Generic
	image	Name of the virtual machine image where the file was scanned.	String	Win7
	dataBaseVersion	Database version in the following format: <version of the application databases which were used to scan the file> / <version of the IDS module databases>.	Integer	201902031107/ 201811190706
URL Reputation	detect	List of URL Reputation categories for the detected object (for objects of type URL or host).	Array	Phishing host, Malicious host, Botnet C&C(Backdoor.Win32.Mokes)

Data on the environment of detected objects

The scope of transmitted data on the environment of detected objects depending on the source of the object is listed in the following table.

Data on the environment of detected objects

Source of the object	Parameter	Description	Data type	Example
web	sourceIP	IP address of the computer that established the connection.	IP address	192.0.2.0
	sourceHostname	Name of the computer that established the connection.	String	example.com
	destinationIp	IP address of the computer with which the connection was established.	IP address	198.51.100.0
	destinationPort	Port of the computer with which the connection was established.	Integer	3128
	URL	URL of the web resource that was accessed. IDS technology detections do not have this parameter. For URL technology detections, this parameter has the same value as the detectedObject parameter.	String	https://example.com:443/
	method.	HTTP request method.	String	Connect
	referrer	URL from which the redirect was made.	String	https://example.com:443/
	agentString	User agent header of the HTTP request that contains the name and version of the client application.	String	Mozilla/4.0
mail	mailFrom	Sender's email address.	String	sender@example.com
	mailTo	Comma-separated list of recipient email addresses.	Array	recipient1@example.com, recipient2@example.com
	subject	Subject of the message.	String	'You are the winner'

Source of the object	Parameter	Description	Data type	Example
	messageId	Email message ID.	String	1745028736.156014.1542897410859.JavaMail.svc_jira_poo
• endpoint • external	hostName	Name of the computer on which the detection was generated.	String	computername.example.com
	IP	IP address of the computer on which the detection was generated.	IP address	198.51.100.0
dns	sourceIp	IP address of the computer which initiated the DNS connection.	IP address	192.0.2.0
	destinationIp	IP address of the computer with which the DNS connection was established (typically, a DNS server).	IP address	198.51.100.0
	destinationPort	Port of the computer with which the DNS connection was established (typically, a DNS server).	Integer	3128
	dnsMessageType	Type of the DNS message: • Request • Response	String	Request
	dnsRequestType	One of the following DNS request types: • A. • AAA. • CNAME. • MX.	String	MX
	domainToBeResolved	Domain name from the DNS request.	String	example.com

Using NDR API

The REST API server, which provides access to the NDR functionality to external systems, runs on the Central Node server and processes requests using the REST (Representational State Transfer) architectural style. Requests to the REST API server are made using HTTPS. You can configure the REST API server under **Settings** → **Connection Servers** (including replacing the default self-signed certificate with a trusted certificate).

The JSON format is used to represent data in requests and responses.

The documentation containing descriptions of requests based on the REST architectural style is published as an Online Help Guide on the Kaspersky Online Help page. This documentation is a developer guide in English. The developer guide also provides sample code and detailed descriptions of callable elements that are available in requests sent to the REST API server.

Open the documentation describing requests to the REST API server, version 4

External systems can use Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API to:

- Receive information about devices known to the application.
- Add, modify, and delete devices.
- Receive information about registered network traffic events (NDR events).
- Send NDR events to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform (the system event type with code 4000005400 is used for registering the events).
- Receive information about detected vulnerabilities.
- Receive application messages and audit records.
- Receive information about allow rules.
- Enable, disable, and delete allow rules.
- Receive information about risks associated with devices.
- Receive information about address spaces.
- Send the network topology map report to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.
- Send, receive, and delete information about users on devices.
- Send and receive information about applications and patches on devices.
- Send and delete information about executable files on devices.
- Send the contents of the device logs.

- Receive the following application data:
  - List of servers with application components
  - List of monitoring points and their parameters
  - List of supported protocol stacks and their parameters
  - List of NDR event types and their parameters
  - Current state and operating mode of technologies
  - Application version and release dates of the installed updates
  - Information about the added license key
  - Application localization language

External systems using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API connect to the Central Node component via connectors. Connectors use certificates for a secure connection. For each external system that you want to send requests to the REST API server, you need to create a separate connector in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

The external system must use an authentication token to connect to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform issues an authentication token at the request of an external system and token uses the certificates of the connector that was created for this system. The authentication token remains valid for 10 hours. The external system can renew the authentication token by special request.

Documentation containing a description of queries for authentication token operations is published as an Online Help Guide on the Kaspersky Online Help page. This documentation is a developer guide in English.

Open the documentation describing queries for authentication token operations, version 4

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API allows interacting with external systems in the following ways:

- Interaction based on the REST architectural style
- Interaction over the WebSocket protocol

External systems can use the WebSocket protocol for interaction in the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API to create subscriptions to modified values received by the application.

Ensuring security when using Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API

External systems access the functionality of the application using the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API by establishing encrypted HTTPS connections. Certificates issued by the Central Node component of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform are used to secure the connections. This component issues certificates for the connectors that external systems use to connect to the Server.

A separate connector must be created in Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform for each external system. A connection can be established through a connector only by using the specific certificate that was issued by the Central Node component and saved in the communication data package for that connector. A connection cannot be established if the external system presents a certificate from a different connector, a different Central Node component of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, or a certificate used for other connections (for example, a certificate of the Sensor component).

After establishing an encrypted connection, the external system must request an *authentication token* for the connector that the external system will use in requests sent to the Central Node REST API server.

An authentication token is valid for 10 hours after it was issued. If a token needs to be used for a longer period, the external system must request a time extension before the token expires.

For information about requests and methods supported by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API, see the documentation for the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API.

When processing requests from external systems, Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform uses the audit log to record information about attempts to perform the following operations:

- Receive an authentication token.
- Extend the validity period for an authentication token.
- Add a device to the table of devices.
- Edit device information.
- Delete a device.
- Query the audit log (when first reading audit entries through the connector after loading the web server).

Creating and using connectors for Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API

To enable interaction between an external system and Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform API, you need to add a connector for that system. When creating a connector, you must indicate the **Generic** system type for the connector.

When adding a connector and when creating a new communication data package for this connector, the Central Node generates a communication data package that you need to use for the connector to work.

A communication data package is an archive containing the following files:

- The certificates.pfx file contains the encrypted public key of the Central Node certificate and the certificate issued by the Central Node for the connector (with the private key). The contents of the file are encrypted with the password that was set when the connector was added or when a new communication data package was created for this connector.
- The metadata.json file contains the configuration data for the connector. Data is represented in JSON format.

The listed files must be used to connect the external system through the connector. To decrypt the certificates.pfx file and apply the certificate and keys that it contains, you can use the standard methods for handling files of this format (for example, `openssl` commands). The addresses specified in the metadata.json file are required for the connector to work and for sending requests to the REST API server.

The certificate and configuration data in the communication data package are valid until a new communication data package is created or until the connector is removed from the application.

Sources of information about the application

This section describes the sources of information about the application.

You can choose the most convenient source of information depending on the importance and urgency of the issue.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform page on the Kaspersky website

On the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform page, you can find general information about the application, its capabilities and features.

The Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform page contains a link to the online store. In the online store, you can buy the application or renew the license.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform page in the Knowledge Base

Knowledge Base is a section on the Technical Support website.

On the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform page in the Knowledge Base, you can read articles that provide useful information, recommendations, and answers to frequently asked questions about purchasing, installing, and using the application.

Knowledge Base articles can answer questions related not only to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform but also to other Kaspersky applications. Knowledge Base articles may also contain news from Technical Support.

Discussing Kaspersky software on the Forum

If your question does not require an immediate answer, you can discuss it with Kaspersky experts and other users on our Forum.

On the Forum, you can view existing topics, post comments, and create new discussion topics.

Contacting the Technical Support Service

This section describes the ways to get technical support and the terms on which it is available.

How to obtain Technical Support

If you cannot find a solution to your problem in the program documentation or in one of the sources of information about Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform, we recommend that you contact Technical Support. Technical Support staff will answer your questions about installing and using Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Kaspersky provides support of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform throughout its life cycle (see the product life cycle page). Before you contact Technical Support, please read the technical support rules.

You can contact Technical Support in one of the following ways:

- visit Technical Support website
- Send a request to Technical Support through the Kaspersky CompanyAccount portal.

Technical Support via Kaspersky CompanyAccount

Kaspersky CompanyAccount is a portal for companies that use Kaspersky software. The Kaspersky CompanyAccount portal is designed to facilitate interaction between users and Kaspersky experts through online requests. The Kaspersky CompanyAccount portal allows monitoring the progress of online request processing by Kaspersky staff and keeping the history of electronic requests.

You can register all of your organization's employees under a single account on Kaspersky CompanyAccount. A single account lets you centrally manage electronic requests from registered employees to Kaspersky and also manage the privileges of these employees via Kaspersky CompanyAccount.

The portal Kaspersky CompanyAccount is available in the following languages:

- English
- Spanish
- Italian
- German
- Polish
- Portuguese
- Russian

- French
- Japanese

To learn more about Kaspersky CompanyAccount, visit the Technical Support website.

Glossary

Advanced persistent threat (APT)

A sophisticated targeted attack against the corporate IT infrastructure that simultaneously uses different methods to infiltrate the network, hide on the network, and gain unobstructed access to confidential data.

Alert

A record of the detection or a set of detections made as a result of scanning the object with Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform modules and technologies. Displayed in the table of alerts.

Alternate data stream

Data streams of the NTFS file system (alternate data streams) are intended for additional attributes or information on a file.

Each file in the NTFS file system consists of a set of streams. The main stream contains the file contents. The other (alternate) streams are intended for metadata. Streams can be created, deleted, individually saved, renamed, and can even be run as a process.

Alternate streams can be used by hackers for concealed transmission or receipt of data from a computer.

Anti-Malware Engine

Application core. Scans files and objects for viruses and other threats to the corporate IT infrastructure using anti-virus databases.

Backdoor program

A program planted by hackers on a compromised computer in order to be able to access this computer in the future.

Central Node

Application component. Scans data, analyzes the behavior of objects, and publishes analysis results in the web interface of the application.

Communication channel bandwidth

The highest possible speed of information transfer in the specific communication channel.

CSRF attack

Cross-Site Request Forgery (also referred to as an "XSRF attack"). Attack on website users by exploiting vulnerabilities of the HTTP protocol. The attack enables actions to be performed under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website. For example, under the guise of an authorized user of a vulnerable website, a hacker can covertly send a request to the server of an external payment system to transfer money to the hacker's account.

Detection

The result of an object being scanned by an individual module or component of the application.

Distributed solution

Two-level hierarchy of servers with Central Node components installed. This hierarchy allocates a primary control server *(Primary Central Node (PCN))* and secondary servers *(Secondary Central Nodes (SCN))*.

Dump

Contents of the working memory of a process or the entire RAM of the system at a specified moment of time.

End User License Agreement

Binding agreement between you and AO Kaspersky Lab, stipulating the terms on which you may use the application.

Endpoint Agent component

Application component. Installed on workstations and servers of the corporate IT infrastructure that run Microsoft Windows and Linux operating systems.

ICAP client

The system through which Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives traffic.

ICAP data

Data received by the ICAP protocol (Internet Content Adaptation Protocol). This protocol allows filtering and modifying data of HTTP requests and HTTP responses. For example, it allows scanning data for viruses, blocking spam, and denying access to personal resources. The ICAP client is normally a proxy server that interacts with the ICAP server by the ICAP protocol. Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform receives data from the proxy server of your organization after this data was processed on the ICAP server.

Intrusion Detection System

Application module. Scans the Internet traffic for signs of intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure.

IOA

Indicator of Attack. Description of suspicious behavior of objects within a corporate IT infrastructure that may indicate a targeted attack on that organization.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform

Solution designed for the protection of a corporate IT infrastructure and timely detection of threats such as *zero-day attacks*, *targeted attacks*, and complex targeted attacks known as *advanced persistent threats* (hereinafter also referred to as "*APT*").

Kaspersky Private Security Network

A solution that allows users of Kaspersky anti-virus applications to access Kaspersky Security Network databases without sending data from their computers to Kaspersky Security Network servers.

Kaspersky Secure Mail Gateway

A solution designed for protection of incoming and outgoing email against malicious objects and spam, and for content filtering of messages. The solution lets you deploy a virtual mail gateway and integrate it into the existing corporate mail infrastructure. An operating system, mail server, and Kaspersky anti-virus application are preinstalled on the virtual mail gateway.

Kaspersky Security Network (KSN)

An infrastructure of cloud services that provides access to the online Kaspersky Knowledge Base that contains constantly updated information about the reputation of files, web resources, and software. The use of data from Kaspersky Security Network ensures faster responses by Kaspersky applications to threats, improves the performance of some protection components, and reduces the likelihood of false alarms.

Kaspersky Threat Intelligence Portal

Kaspersky information system Contains and displays reputation information for files and URL addresses.

KATA

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack. Functional block of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform which detects threats on the perimeter of the enterprise IT infrastructure.

Kerberos authentication

A mechanism for mutual authentication of client and server before a connection is established between them, which allows communication over unprotected networks. The mechanism is based on using a ticket, which is issued to the user by a trusted authentication center.

Keytab file

A file containing pairs of unique names (principals) of clients that are allowed to use Kerberos authentication and encrypted keys derived from the user password. Systems that support Kerberos use keytab files to authenticate users without entering a password.

Local reputation database of KPSN

Database of the reputations of objects (files or URLs) that is stored on the Kaspersky Private Security Network server but not on Kaspersky Security Network servers. Local reputation databases are managed by the KPSN administrator.

Malicious web addresses

URLs of resources distributing malicious software.

MIB (Management Information Base)

Virtual database used to manage objects that are transmitted over the SNMP protocol.

Mirrored traffic

A copy of traffic redirected from one switch port to another port of the same switch (local mirroring) or to a remote switch (remote mirroring). The network administrator can configure which part of traffic should be mirrored for transmission to Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform supports receiving mirrored traffic from aggregating devices: a network packet broker or a network tap. If filtering is to be applied to traffic coming from aggregating devices, the hardware requirements of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform must be adjusted. To determine the actual hardware requirements of the solution, we recommend doing a pilot deployment first.

MITM attack

Man in The Middle. An attack on the IT infrastructure of an organization in which a hacker hijacks the communication link between two access points, relays it, and modifies the connection between these access points if necessary.

MITRE technique

The MITRE ATT&CK (Adversarial Tactics, Techniques & Common Knowledge) database contains descriptions of hacker behavior based on the analysis of real attacks. It is a structured list of known hacker techniques represented as a table.

Multitenancy

Operation mode in which Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform is used to protect the infrastructure of multiple organizations or branch offices of the same organization simultaneously.

New generation threats

Corporate IT infrastructure threats capable of overwriting, altering, encrypting, or distorting their code to a point where matches against signatures can no longer be detected by a security system.

NTP server

Precision time server using the Network Time Protocol.

Observables

Files and URLs to which access attempts from the organization's internal network have been registered.

OpenIOC

An open, XML-based standard for describing indicators of compromise containing over 500 different indicators of compromise.

Phishing URL addresses

URL addresses of resources designed to obtain unauthorized access to confidential data of users. Phishing is usually aimed at stealing various financial data.

Sandbox

Application component. Starts virtual images of operating systems. Starts files in these operating systems and tracks the behavior of files in each operating system to detect malicious activity and signs of targeted attacks to the corporate IT infrastructure.

Sensor

Application component. Receives data.

Service principal name (SPN)

Unique ID of the service on the network for Kerberos authentication.

SIEM system

Security Information and Event Management System. Solution for managing information and events in an organization's security system.

Signature

Code in information protection databases that contains a description of known threats.

SPAN

Switch Port Analyzer. Technology for mirroring traffic from one port to another.

Syslog

The standard for sending and recording messages about events occurring in the system employed on UNIX™ and GNU/Linux platforms.

Targeted attack

Attack that targets a specific person or organization. Unlike mass attacks by computer viruses designed to infect as many computers as possible, targeted attacks can be aimed at infecting the network of a specific organization or even a separate server within the corporate IT infrastructure. A dedicated Trojan program can be written to stage each targeted attack.

Tenant

An individual organization or branch office of an organization to which the Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform solution is being provided.

TLS encryption

Encryption of connection between two servers, which ensures secure transmission of data between servers on the Internet.

Tracing

The application is run in debugging mode; after each command is executed, the application is stopped and the result of this step is displayed.

VIP status

Status of detections with special access permissions. For example, alerts with the VIP status cannot be viewed by users with the **Security officer** role.

YARA

Application module. Scans files and objects for signs of targeted attacks on the corporate IT infrastructure using YARA Rules databases created by users of Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform.

YARA rules

A publicly available classification of malware, which contains signatures of signs of targeted attacks and intrusions into the corporate IT infrastructure, which is used by Kaspersky Anti Targeted Attack Platform to scan files and objects.

Zero-day attack

An attack targeting the corporate IT infrastructure by exploiting zero-day vulnerabilities in software. These are software vulnerabilities that hackers find and exploit before the software vendor has a chance to release a patch.

Zero-day vulnerability

A software vulnerability that hackers find and exploit before the software vendor has a chance to release a patch with fixed program code.

Information about third-party code

Information about third-party code is contained in the file named legal_notices.txt in the application installation folder.

Trademark notices

Registered trademarks and service marks are the property of their respective owners.

Adobe, Flash are registered trademarks or trademarks of the Adobe company in the United States and/or other countries.

AMD is a trademark or registered trademark of Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.

BACnet is a trademark of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.

Apple, Mac, Macintosh, macOS, and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc.

BitTorrent is a trademark of BitTorrent, Inc.

Ubuntu is a registered trademark of Canonical Ltd.

Cisco, Jabber are registered trademarks or trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and certain other countries.

Citrix is a registered trademark or trademark of the Cloud Software Group, Inc. and / or its subsidiaries in the United States and / or other countries.

Docker and the Docker logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Docker, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. Docker, Inc. and other parties may also have trademark rights in other terms used herein.

Dropbox is a trademark of Dropbox, Inc.

Radmin is a registered trademark of Famatech.

General Electric and Multilin are registered trademarks of General Electric.

Google, Android, Chrome, Google Chrome are trademarks of Google LLC.

HL7 is a registered trademark of Health Level Seven International and its use of the trademark does not constitute an endorsement by HL7.

IBM, DB2 are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation registered in many jurisdictions around the world.

Intel, Core, and Xeon are trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries.

Linux is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.

Microsoft, Active Directory, Excel, Internet Explorer, Office 365, PowerPoint, PowerShell, SQL Server, Win32, Windows, Windows PowerShell, Windows Server, and Windows XP are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.

MOXA is a registered trademark of Moxa Inc.

Mozilla and Firefox are trademarks of the Mozilla Foundation in the United States and other countries.

DICOM is the registered trademark of the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) for its Standards publications relating to digital communications of medical information.

NVIDIA is a registered trademark of the NVIDIA Corporation.

ONVIF is a trademark of ONVIF, Inc.

OpenSSL is a trademark of the OpenSSL Software Foundation.

Oracle, Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Python is a trademark or registered trademark of the Python Software Foundation.

Red Hat, CentOS are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Remote Utilities is a registered trademark of Remote Utilities LLC in the United States and/or other countries.

Schneider Electric is a trademark of Schneider Electric.

Siemens is a registered trademark of Siemens AG.

Debian is a registered trademark of Software in the Public Interest, Inc.

Dameware is a trademark owned by SolarWinds Worldwide, LLC or its affiliates and registered with the United States Patent and Trademark Office, and possibly registered or pending registration in other countries.

The names, images, and logos that identify UserGate products and services are trademarks of UserGate and/or its subsidiaries or affiliates, and these products are the property of UserGate.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Limited.

ClickHouse is a trademark of YANDEX LLC.